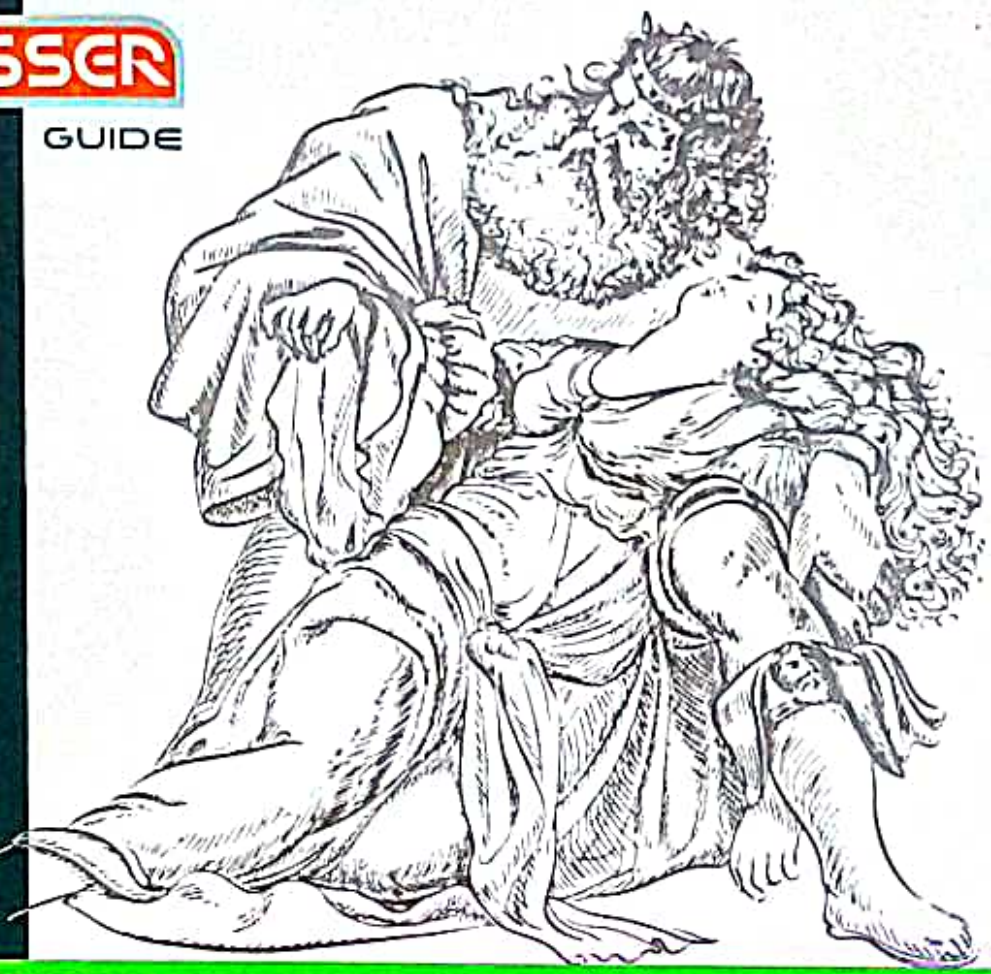
EL-MOASSER
GUIDE



New Hello!

& King Lear

By A Group Of Supervisors

FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE

للصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

طبعة جديدة
طبقًا لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤

GPS
تطبيق التعلم التفاعلى

2nd Sec.
2024
FIRST TERM
عام - أزهرى

CONTENTS

Module 1 **Health and Safety**

UNIT 1 Staying healthy page 10

UNIT 2 Eating around the world page 63

UNIT 3 The future of food page 117

Revision 1 page 173

Module 2 **Making connections**

UNIT 4 Changing English page 177

UNIT 5 Being smart online page 237

UNIT 6 Learning from our mistakes page 288

Revision 2 page 337

Monthly assessments page 341

PLAY **King Lear** page 347

First Term توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثانى الثانوي للعام الدراسى ٢٠٢٣/٢٠٢٤

Months	New Hello! English for Secondary Schools Year Two (SB+WB)
October	Unit 1 + Unit 2 + Unit 3
November	Unit 3 Cont. + Revision 1 + Unit 4
December	Unit 5 + Unit 6
January 2024	Revision 2 + General Revision



UNIT

1 Staying healthy

SB pages 6 : 15 WB pages 2 : 7

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
 A poster about how to perform first aid
- **Writing :**
 A persuasive email to a friend
- **Listening :**
 A news report about medical support for athletes: An explanation of the immune system
- **Speaking :**
 Suggesting solutions to problems; Persuading
- **Language :**
 Present and past necessity and lack of necessity
- **Life skills :**
 Resilience

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 6 : 9 WB pages 2 & 3



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

act (ed) (v)	يتصرّف - تَصَرُّف/سلوك	infect (ed) (v)	يُصيب بعدوى - يلتهب
action (n)	القيام بشيء - تَصَرُّف - حَذْف	infection	عدوى - مرض مُعدي
react (ed) (v)	يستجيب - يتصرف بناء على	operate (d) (v)	يُشغّل - يجري جراحة
reaction (n)	استجابة - رد فعل	operation (n)	تشغيل - عملية جراحية
allow (ed) (v)	يدع / يترك - يسمح	perform (ed) (v)	يقوم بـ - يؤدي
allowance (n)	سماح - علاوة	performance (n)	اداء -عرض
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	resilience (n)	المَرُونَة - اللِّين
guide (d) (v/n)	يُرشِد - مُرشِد	severe (adj)	شديد - حادّ
guidance (n)	إرشاد	technique (n)	أسلُوب / تِقنِيّة

2 Important Vocabulary

active (adj)	نشيط	first aid (kit)	(صندوق) الإسعافات الأولية
ambulance (n)	عربة إسعاف	flat (adj)	مُستوٍ - مُسطّح
athlete (n)	رياضيّ - لاعب ألعاب القوى	fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
athletic (adj)	رياضيّ	injure (d) (v)	يصيب - يؤذي
AHC = Athletic Heart Centre	المركز الرياضي للقلب	injured (adj)	مُصاب
available (adj)	مُتاح - متوافر	injury (n)	إصابة
bandage (n)	ضمادة	instructions (n)	أوامر / تعليمات
base (n)	قاعدة - أساس	major (adj)	رئيسي - كبير
bleed - bled - bled (v)	ينزف	medical (adj)	طِبّيّ
bone (n)	عظمة	normal (adj)	طبيعي - عاقل
breathing (n)	التنفس	pioneer (n)	رائد
centre (n)	منتصف - وسط	place (d) (v/n)	يضع - مكان
check (ed) (v)	يفحص	press (ed) (v)	يضغط
chest (n)	الصدر	respond (ed) (v)	يستجيب - يتجاوب
collaboration (n)	تعاون	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
competition (n)	مسابقة - منافسة	rise - rose - risen (v)	يرتفع
		sign (n)	علامة - إشارة

details (n)	تفاصيل	sudden (adj)	مفاجئ
disease (n)	مَرَض	survive (d) (v)	يلجو - يبقي حياً
educate (d) (v)	يُعلِّم	technology (n)	التكنولوجيا
else (adv)	ايضاً - اخر	tight (adj)	مشدود - ضيق
emergency (n)	الطوارئ	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب - يَتدرَّب
examination (n)	فحص - امتحان	trophy (n)	البطولة / التتويج
executive (n)	تنفيذي		الرياضي - كأس
expert (n - adj)	خبير	wrap (ped) (v)	يغلِّف

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
perform (ed) (v) يقوم بـ	to do an action
infection (n) مرض معدي	a disease caused by a virus or bacteria
react (ed) (v) يستجيب	to do something because something else has been done
severe (adj) شديد - حادّ	(of a disease) very serious خطير
technique (n) أسلوب / تقنيّة	a way of doing something with a skill

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. Patients with COVID-19 should be isolated due to the danger of
 a. infection b. injection c. reaction d. infected

(أبو حماد ٢٠٢٣)

2. "His job is to guide the tourists." The word 'guide' in this sentence is a/an
 a. adverb b. noun c. verb d. adjective

(طيبي روكسي الثانوية ٢٠٢٣)

3. A British team the first heart transplant operation. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)
 a. did b. made c. operated d. carried

4. Scientists take notes of the when two chemical substances are mixed together.

(سوهاج - الشيماء الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

 a. browser b. reaction c. button d. cookies

5. We almost differently to the same stimulus. (سيدي بشر الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. act b. action c. react d. reaction

6. The Captain was with COVID-19 while he was in Morocco.
a. guided b. reacted c. acted d. infected

(اسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

7. Archaeologists now use modern such as ultrasonic rays.
a. tricks b. magics c. techniques d. designs

(مبت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)

8. Don't be strict صارم/حازم all the time. You need some to be able to adapt to different situations. (احمد موافى المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. resilience b. resilient c. sick d. sickness

9. Doctors do their best to fight diseases. (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. infectious b. suspicious c. vulgar d. fabulous

10. He was taken to a bigger hospital as his injury was
a. tiny b. danger c. severe d. infection

(اسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

11. It is necessary to know how to CPR in case you should help in an emergency حالة طوارئ.
a. perform b. make c. allow d. guide

12. You need much more training to improve your
a. guide b. expert c. infection d. performance

13. As a foreigner غريب in Egypt, I need someone to me.
a. cause b. guide c. publish d. develop

14. He gets a/an of 2000 pounds a month.
a. allowance b. athlete c. persuasion d. a & c

15. Young people need They do not have enough experience in life.
a. operation b. performance c. guidance d. a & b

16. Dr Magdy Yacoub used to on people with heart problems.
a. allow b. operate c. infect d. affect

17. CPR stands for cardiopulmonary
a. rescue b. repetition c. reaction d. resuscitation

18. I did not attack him. I in self-defence دفاع عن النفس.
a. educated b. acted c. allowed d. guided

2 Important vocabulary

19. Several Olympic were accused of متهم taking performance enhancing drugs منشطات. (القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)
a. athletes b. athletics c. athletic d. doers

20. All citizens must work hard to achieve progress in with the government. (القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)
a. collection b. collaboration c. civilization d. innovation

21. I don't believe what you have said about the competition. You should your sources. (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
a. check b. shake c. shock d. chink

22. You should read the before using a new electrical set جهاز.
a. inspections b. infections c. instructions d. symptoms
(بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)

23. To stop the bleeding نزيف, ... a bandage firmly around the injured limb.
a. chop b. peel c. remove d. wrap
(شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

24. The engine of this car needs careful
a. solution b. safety c. examination d. technology

25. You can talk to the director. He is the one in charge المسئول here.
a. locked b. immediate c. tight d. executive

26. It is necessary for a football pitch ملعب to be with no slopes انحدار.
a. flat b. fat c. fit d. float

27. You need to put a/an on the cut to stop the bleeding.
a. injury b. bandage c. allowance d. muscle

28. Your headache will surely to this strong painkiller مُسكِّن.
a. press b. act c. rise d. respond

29. The ambulance took the man to the nearest hospital.
a. health b. healthy c. injured d. injuring

30. When the lungs are infected, ... becomes very difficult.
a. breathing b. allowing c. bleeding d. wrapping

31. The club cupboard is full of
a. sicknesses b. shoulders c. injuries d. trophies

32. The police launched شن a/an attack on the terrorists إرهابيين who were not prepared.
a. abroad b. ill c. sudden d. suddenly

33. Use the fire exit مخرج الحريق in case of
a. allowance b. emergency c. guidance d. hygiene

34. After the accident, I saw a man
a. reacting b. responding c. bleeding d. wrapping

35. Your heart and lungs are in your
a. shoulder b. chest c. head d. back

36. Prices as a result of the Russian attack on Ukraine.
a. pressed b. acted c. rose d. responded

37. Naguib Mahfouz was a real He was the first Arab writer to write great novels.
a. pioneer b. follower c. athlete d. performer

38. I asked you to the vase carefully on the table. Why did you drop it?
a. bleed b. place c. press d. lie

39. the door before you go to bed.
a. Allow b. Operate c. Lock d. Infect

40. There's a deep cave at the of the mountain.
a. reaction b. disease c. first aid d. base

41. the red button to turn on the machine.
a. Press b. Act c. Rise d. Respond

3 Definitions

42. To is to do an action. (احمد مواقف المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. infect b. boost c. perform d. react

43. To is to do something because something else has been done.
a. perform b. react c. act d. operate

44. When an illness or injury is very serious, we say it is
a. immune b. severe c. available d. medical

45. A/An is a way of doing something with a skill.
a. technique b. organ c. immune system d. cell

46. A/An is a disease caused by a virus or bacteria.
a. infection b. operation c. virus d. guidance

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	an action	يتصرّف - يتخذ إجراء	have	good hygiene	يتبع قواعد النظافة الجيدة
	a sport	يمارس رياضة		severe injuries	لديه إصابات بالغة
do / perform	a job	يؤدي مهمة عمل	make	sure	يتأكد
	CPR	يقوم بالإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	miss	the chance	يُضيّع الفرصة
	first aid	يقوم بعمل الإسعافات الأولية	pass	an exam	يجتاز امتحان
get	an infection	يُصاب بمرض مُعدي	stay	safe	يبقى بأمان
give	infection	يعدي - يصيب بعدوى	suggest	solutions to	يقترح حلول لـ

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
collaboration	تعاون	partnership, cooperation
disease	مَرَض	illness
guide	يُرشِد - ينصح	direct, advise
normal	طبيعي - مألوف	usual, regular, ordinary, average
normal	عاقل - سوي	sane, rational
perform	يقوم بـ - يؤدي	act, take action, carry out
react	يستجيب	respond
reaction	استجابة	response
severe	شديد - حاد	acute, serious, grave, dangerous, profound
severe	عنيف - قوي	fierce, violent, strong

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
disease/illness	مَرَض	health, well-being	الصحة
encourage ... to	يشجع ... أن	discourage ... from	يثني ... عن
guide	يُرشِد - ينصح	mislead, misguide	يضلل
lock	يشبك - يقفل	unlock	يفتح - يفك

move closer to	يدنو من / يقترب من	move away from	يبتعد عن
normal	طبيعى - مألوف	abnormal, unusual	غير طبيعى - غير مألوف
normal	عاقل - سوى	insane, irrational	غير عاقل - معتوه
react	يستجيب	cease	يمتنع/يتوقف
severe	عنيف - قوى	gentle, mild	لطيف - معتدل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

infect	
infect (ed) (v) يعدى - يلتهب	- Coronavirus patients can **infect** others.
infection (n) عدوى - مرض مُعْدِى	- Coronavirus patients can give others the **infection**.
infectious (adj) مُعْدِى - مسبب للعدوى	- Coronavirus disease is **infectious**.
infected (adj) ملتهب - مصاب بالعدوى	- He is well. He is no longer **infected**.
Perform	
perform (ed) (v) يقوم بـ - يؤدى	- I can **perform** CPR.
performance (n) أداء -عرض	- The **performance** of CPR needs skill.
performer (n) مؤدٍى - ممثل	- He is a good **performer**.
react	
react (ed) (v) يستجيب - يتصرف	- She **reacted** angrily to my suggestion.
reaction (n) استجابة - رد الفعل	- She showed an angry **reaction** to my suggestion.
reactor (n) مُفاعِل	- Nuclear **reactors** المفاعلات النووية are dangerous to people's health.
reactionary (adj) متحفظ	- He is a **reactionary** person who refuses any change.
severe	
severity (n) شدة - حدة	- I didn't expect the **severity** of her reaction.
severe (adj) شديد - حاد	- I didn't expect her **severe** reaction.
severely (adv) بشدة - بحدة	- I didn't expect she would react **severely**.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

be right to	يكون محقاً فى	on a flat surface	على سطح مستوٍ
call for help	يطلب المساعدة	on top of	فوق
check every detail	يتحقق من كل جزئية	send blood around	يضخ الدم خلال
explanation of / for	تفسير / توضيح لـ	severe injury	إصابة شديدة
follow the instructions for	يتّبع التعليمات الخاصة بـ	small enough to	صغير بما يكفى لكى
in the correct way	بالطريقة الصحيحة	stay fit	يظل لائقًا بدنيًا
keep the heart strong	يحافظ على القلب بصحة جيدة	sudden death	الموت المفاجئ
		take up a sport	يبدأ ممارسة رياضة
		medical support for	الدعم الصحى لـ

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

allow ... to	يدع / يترك / يسمح لـ... ان	look around	يبحث فى المكان المحيط
care about	يهتم بـ	place ... on	يضع ... على
disagree about	يختلف على	press down	يضغط لأسفل - يَدُك
forget about	ينسى امر	pull ... out	يرفع - ينزع / يخلع
forget to	ينسى ان	rise up	يرتفع - يعلو
get into	يدخل إلى	take up	... يقبل القيام بـ - يبدأ ممارسة
get on	يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

breathe - breath

- **breathe (d) (v)** يتنفس
 - The performance of CPR helped the injured man breathe normally.
- **breath (n)** النَفَس
 - It is normal for your breath to be warm.

encourage - discourage

- **encourage + object** مفعول **to + inf.** يشجع شخص علي القيام بشيء
 - His mother encourages him to do a sport to keep fit.
- **encourage + (inf. + ing) / n.** يشجع علي
 - The government encourages starting private businesses.
- **discourage + object** مفعول **from + (inf. + ing)** يُثني ... عن / يصرف ... عن
 - I discourage Rodayna from listening to bad songs.

infection - illness - disease - sickness

- **infection (n)** عدوي / مرض (ناتج عن الفيروسات والبكتيريا)
 - Smallpox الجدرى and COVID- 19 are dangerous infections.
- **illness (n)** مرض / إعياء (خلل بالجسد أو العقل)
 - She suffers from a serious illness.
- **disease (n)** مرض (من نوع معين مثل الانفلونزا أو السرطان ...)
 - Flu is a common disease in winter.
- **sickness (n)** إعياء (يمنع من القيام بالعمل مثلا)
 - My sickness stopped me from going to school.

raise - rise

- **raise (d) (v) + مفعول** يرفع- يجمع مال - يُربّى - يطرح موضوع أو سؤال
 - Wars raise prices. ترفع
 - This charity raises money for the poor. تجمع مال
 - Parents work hard to raise their children. يُربى
 - Sama raised an important question during the lecture. طرحت
- **rise (rose - risen) (v)** (بدون مفعول) يرتفع - يزداد - تُشرق - ينهض
 - Prices rise during wars. ترتفع / تزداد
 - The sun rose and warmed the area. اشرقت
 - I rose to welcome my guests. نهضت

sign - signal

- **sign (n)** لافتة (يافطة)
 - You can know the distance from road signs.
- **signal (n)** إشارة (تردد موجات الراديو والهاتف المحمول ...)
 - There is no signal in this remote area.
- **sign/signal (n)** إشارة/علامة (على شيء /بداية شيء/نهاية شيء ...)
 - He paid some of the price in advance مقدما as a sign (-signal) of readiness الجاهزية/الاستعداد.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

- ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. It's necessary to know how to First Aid. (القاهرة - أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. do b. perform c. suggest d. a & b

2. You mustn't CPR unless the person is lying on his/ her back.
a. do b. open c. make d. carry

3. When there's a pandemic جائحة, you may an infection.
a. do b. get c. suggest d. make

4. You can do
a. a sport b. sure c. safe d. the chance

5. "Coronavirus is a severe disease." In this sentence, 'severe' is antonymous with
a. serious b. mild c. tired d. acute

6. "From her behaviour, it is clear that she is not normal". The word "normal" here can be replaced by
a. sane b. insane c. irrational d. unusual

7. "You are obliged to follow the law". In this sentence, 'follow' is the antonym of
a. carry out b. boost c. obey d. break

8. You need to a good hygiene in order to keep healthy.
a. have b. do c. make d. call

9. If you want to succeed in life, never any chance to learn.
a. miss b. get c. a & b d. cause

10. '.....' is to mild as 'irrational' is to 'normal'.
a. Gentle b. Severe c. Unusual d. Abnormal

11. She encouraged me to save my money. She me from buying unnecessary things.
a. wanted b. supported c. discouraged d. forced

12. A: Do you want to move it the wall ? B: No, move it closer.
a. nearer to b. away from c. a & b d. towards

13. If your child wants to take a new sport, a doctor must check his heart pulse first. (ابجا ٢٠٢٢)
a. in b. up c. out d. off

14. A : Is your offer still available ? B: Forget it. I've changed my mind.
a. to b. from c. about d. to

15. You to leave this job. It is boring.
a. right b. are right c. have no right d. righter

16. You don't realise the of the weather in Canada in winter.
a. guide b. guidance c. severe d. severity

17. Be careful or you will be with smallpox.
a. infect b. infection c. infectious d. infected

18. Children need their parents to them.
a. guide b. guidance c. severe d. severity

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

How to Perform First Aid كيف تقوم بالإسعافات الأولية

(SB page 7)



Step (1) Step (2) Step (3)

❶ If you find an ill or **injured**(1) person, you must **check**(2) the area around them first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then **move closer to**(3) the person and look carefully at him/her. Does he/she **seem**(4) to be very ill? Does he/she have **severe**(5) **injuries**(6)?

❷ If the person is **awake**(7) but not **bleeding**(8), you have to ask him/her how he/she feels and what happened. Check his/her body for **signs** (9) of injury or **infection**(10). You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

❸ If the person doesn't reply, touch his/her **shoulder**(11) or foot and shout to see if he/she **reacts**(12), and remember to check for **normal**(13) **breathing**(14).

❹ If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the **emergency**(15) **services**(16) **immediately**(17) (123).

❺ If you know how to **perform**(18) **CPR**(19), you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is **lying**(20) on his/her **back**(21) on a **flat**(22) surface such as the floor.

❻ **Place**(23) your hand on the **centre**(24) of the person's **chest**(25).

(1) مُصاب
(2) يفحص
(3) يدنو من
(4) يبدو
(5) شديد
(6) إصابات
(7) مُستيقظ - واعي
(8) ينزف
(9) علامات - إشارات
(10) عدوى
(11) كتف
(12) يستجيب
(13) طبيعي
(14) التنفس
(15) الطوارئ
(16) خدمات
(17) في الحال
(18) يقوم بـ
(19) الإنعاش القلبي
(20) مُستلقي
(21) الظهر
(22) مستوى - مسطح
(23) ضع
(24) منتصف - وسط
(25) الصدر

Put your other hand **on top of**(26) the first hand and **lock**(27) your fingers **together**(28). Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.

7 You don't have to **press**(29) down on the person's chest very much – only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on his/her chest and **allow**(30) it to **rise up**(31) again. You have to do this 100 to 120 **times**(32) a minute until the person starts breathing again.

(26) فوق
(27) يقفل
(28) معًا
(29) يضغط
(30) يدع
(31) يرتفع
(32) مرات

2 Listening Texts

Athletic Heart Centre (AHC)

(SB page 8)



Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young **athletes**(1) believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. **However**(2), health experts agree that athletes must get a **special**(3) heart examination before they can be **completely**(4) sure that they don't have a problem.

For example(5), in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian **footballer**(6) from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab **fell down**(7) while he was training. **Sadly**(8), although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't **survive**(9).

Fortunately,(10) Egypt became a **pioneer**(11) in athletic heart **care**(12) in 2018 when it **established**(13) the first Athletic Heart Centre in the **Middle East**(14) in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every **detail**(15) of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes **abroad**(16).

(1) رياضيون
(2) مع ذلك
(3) خاص
(4) تماماً
(5) على سبيل المثال
(6) لاعب كرة قدم
(7) يسقط
(8) من المُحزن
(9) يبقى حياً
(10) لحسن الحظ
(11) رائد
(12) رعاية
(13) يشئ
(14) الشرق الأوسط
(15) تفاصيل
(16) بالخارج

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the **Executive Director**[17] of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national team take full tests of their hearts before major competitions, such as the World Handball Championships And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have **published**[18] a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death.

Young athletes, and their families, mustn't **miss this chance**[19] to learn about the importance of heart **examinations**[20] to stay fit and healthy.

(17) المدير التنفيذي
(18) ينشر
(19) يضيّع الفرصة
(20) فحوصات

Keeping a healthy heart

(WB page 3)

Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So, what should parents do to help their children **stay free from**[1] heart disease?



Your heart **pumps**[2] about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise – that means mum and dad **as well as**[3] the children.

Try to walk, **cycle**[4], swim or play games outside **as often as you can**[5]. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to **take up**[6] a new sport, send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably **be fine**[7], but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat **healthily**,[8] too. Show your children that they need to look at the **labels**[9] before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it.

Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts **for life!**[10]

(1) يظل معافي من
(2) يضخ
(3) بالإضافة إلى
(4) يركب دراجة
(5) كثيراً قدر المستطاع
(6) يبدأ
(7) بخير
(8) بطريقة صحية
(9) ملصقات
(10) مدى الحياة

UNIT 1

3 Video script

How to perform CPR

(SB page 7)

Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance arrives.

(1) قاعدة اليد
(2) عظمة
(3) منطقة الصدر
(4) يضغط

So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often.

Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the **base of your hand**(1) on the **bone**(2) in the centre of their **chest**(3). Then, put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together.

Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and **press**(4) 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest. Then keep your hands on the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again.

Repeat this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrives.

PART IV LANGUAGE

must / have to

1 must

يجب أن / من الضروري أن / من اللازم أن

Active Statement الجملة الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم	**Subj.** الفاعل **+ must / mustn't + inf.** المصدر... . - I must follow the school rules. - You mustn't drive a car without a licence.
Yes / No Question السؤال بـ «هل»	**Must + subj. + inf. ...?** - Must you speak loudly all the time?
(Wh-) Question السؤال بأداة استفهام	**Q.W.** اداة استفهام **+ must + subj. + inf. ...?** - What must we do when the traffic light is red?
Passive Statement المبنى للمجهول	**Obj.** المفعول **+ must / mustn't + be + p.p.** - The school rules must be followed. - A car mustn't be driven without a licence.

Brief Notes ملاحظات موجزة

١ يُستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد (must) :

- Students must to follow the school rules. (✗)
- Students must follow the school rules. (✔)

٢ يُمكن استخدام (must) كإسم بمعنى (ضرورة / فرض) :

- Following the school rules is a must.
- Working hard is a must to reach your goals.

لاحظ استخدام (to) بعد (must) فى المثال السابق لكن (must) هنا اسم وليست فعل.

٣ لا توجد صيغة ماض لـ (must) للتعبير عن الضرورة وفى هذه الحالة نستخدم (had to) لتؤدى نفس الغرض فى الماضى :

- I must take my driving test yesterday. (✗)
- I had to take my driving test yesterday. (✔)

كما يمكن استخدام تعبيرات بديلة فى الماضى لتعطى معنى قريب من (must) مثل :

- It was necessary to + inf. … .
- It was necessary to take my driving test yesterday.
- It was a necessity to + inf. … .
- It was a necessity to take my driving test yesterday.
- It was a must to + inf. … .
- It was a must to take my driving test yesterday.

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. A driver must a driving licence.
 a. holds b. to hold c. hold d. holding
2. One obey the law.
 a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
3. One break the law.
 a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
4. The law broken.
 a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be
5. The law followed.
 a. must b. mustn't c. must be d. mustn't be

6. Defending homeland الدفاع عن الوطن is a

a. must b. necessary c. necessity d. a & c

7. In the past, people hunt for food.

a. must b. mustn't c. had to d. had

Uses of "must"

- تستخدم (must + inf.) فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل فى الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن القوانين والقواعد العامة (وليس فى وقت محدد) :

ex. - Drivers must wear seatbelts.

٢ التعبير عن الالتزام الداخلى النابع من رغبة شخصية إذا كان الفاعل (I – We) :

ex. - I must work hard for the exams. (رغبتى الشخصية فى النجاح هى التى تفرض علىّ ذلك)

- I must buy a present for my mother tomorrow. (أنى لم تفرض علىّ شراء هدية لها)

- We must buy souvenirs for our friends here. (أصدقائنا لم يطلبوا هدايا)

٣ إعطاء نصيحة قوية (لشخص مُقرّب أومن طبيب لمريض مثلا) :

ex. - You must stop smoking.

- You must wash your hands before you eat.

٤ توجيه الدعوة بقوة (دعوة حارّة لشخص مُقرّب) :

ex. - Sama, you must come to my birthday party tonight.

- You must come and see us at the weekend.

٥ تُستخدم صيغة الاستفهام للانتقاد أو اللوم :

ex. - Must you talk while you are eating? (انتقاد سلوك غير مقبول)

- Why must you shout at me all the time? (لوم او عتاب)

Uses of "mustn't"

- تستخدم (mustn't + inf.) فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل فى الحالات التالية :

١ التعبير عن المنع او التحريم (prohibition) او عدم السماح (طبقاً للقوانين والقواعد والأعراف) :

ex. - You must not park outside the entrance.

- You must not make loud noise after 9 o'clock.

٢ إعطاء نصيحة قوية (لشخص مقرب أومن طبيب لمريض مثلا) :

ex. - You mustn't waste your time, son.

٣ التحذير من القيام بشىء قد يترتب عليه ضرر أو خطورة :

ex. - You mustn't tell this news to anyone. It's a secret.

Other ways to say "mustn't"

- هناك طرق عديدة للتعبير عن المنع / التحريم مثل :

1 - It isn't / legal قانونى / permitted مسموح _ + to + inf. مصدر

= It is illegal غير قانونى / against the law + to + inf.

= Subj. + be + not + allowed / permitted + to + inf.

= (Inf. + ing) + be + (not allowed / against the law)

ex. - It isn't permitted (legal) to park your car here.

= It is illegal (against the law) to park your car here.

= You aren't allowed to park your car here.

= Parking your car here isn't allowed (legal / permitted).

= Parking your car here is illegal (against the law).

2 - It is banned / prohibited / forbidden محظور / ممنوع + to + inf.

= Subj. + be + banned / prohibited/ forbidden + from + (inf. + ing)

= (Inf. + ing) + be + banned / prohibited/ forbidden

ex. – It is banned/ prohibited / forbidden to park your car here.

= You are banned/ prohibited / forbidden from parking here.

= Parking your car here is banned/ prohibited / forbidden.

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A visitor to a hospital smoke. It is banned.
 a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't
2. A visitor to a hospital stop smoking there. It is banned.
 a. must b. mustn't c. should d. shouldn't
3. "You must come and have dinner with me." This is a
 a. must b. necessity c. suggestion d. warm invitation
4. "You stop taking this medicine until I tell you to do so," said Dr Mustafa
 a. banned to b. must be c. mustn't d. don't have to
5. Having got a red card in the last match, you are from taking part in the tomorrow's match.
 a. permitted b. banned c. obliged d. licensed

2 have to / has to يجب أن / من اللازم أن

Active Statement المبنى للمعلوم	**Subj.** الفاعل **+ have to / has to + inf.** المصدر - تستخدم **(has)** مع الفاعل المفرد والغالب **(he - she - it)** : - You have to follow the school rules. - Sama has to pay the electricity bill tomorrow.
Negative النفى	**Subj.** الفاعل **+ don't / doesn't + have to + inf.** - You don't have to get up early. We are on holiday. - Rodayna doesn't have to buy a pen. She has two pens.
Yes / No Question السؤال بـ «هل»	**Do / Does + subj. + have to + inf.**? - Do they have to wait for the manager? - Does Ahmed have to attend the meeting?
(Wh-) Question السؤال بأداة استفهام	**Q.W.** أداة استفهام **+ do / does + subj. + have to + inf.**? - What does Abdu have to do to join the club?
Passive statement المبنى للمجهول	**Obj.** المفعول **+ have / has + to be + p.p.** - The electricity bill has to be paid.

Brief Notes ملاحظات موجزة

١ لاحظ أن نفى **(have / has to)** الشائع هو **(don't / doesn't have to)** وليس **(haven't / hasn't to)** :

- Ahmed **hasn't to** get up early on Fridays. (✗)
- Ahmed **doesn't have to** get up early on Fridays. (✔)

٢ فى الإنجليزية البريطانية تُستخدم **(have / has got to)** مثل **(have / has to)** كالتالى :

- Rodayna **has got to check** the inbox every morning. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Rodayna **hasn't got to check** the inbox every morning. (نفى)
- **Has** Rodayna **got to check** the inbox every morning? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- How often **has** Rodayna **got to check** the inbox? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- The inbox **has got to be checked** every morning. (مبنى للمجهول)

- تذكر أن صيغة الماضى من **(have / has got to)** هى **(had to)** وليس **(had got to)** :

- Malak **had got to borrow** money after losing her purse. (✗)
- Malak **had to borrow** money after losing her purse. (✔)

٢ تستخدم (need / needs to) مثل (have / has to) كالتالى :

- Yara **needs to take** a language course. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Yara **doesn't need to take** a language course. (نفي)
- **Does** Yara **need to take** a language course? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What **does** Yara **need to take** ? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- A language course **needs to be taken** by Yara. (مبنى للمجهول)

- تذكر أن (needn't) لا يتبعها حرف الجر (to) :

- Mum **needn't to go** shopping every day. (✗)
- Mum **needn't go** shopping every day. (✔)

Mini Test 3 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have the baby.
 a. to feed b. feed c. to be fed d. be fed
2. The baby has
 a. to feeding b. feed c. to be fed d. be fed
3. to leave now ?
 a. Have you b. Have you got c. Do you have d. b & c
4. Ayman to do all these jobs alone.
 a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. haven't d. don't have
5. Ayman and Ashraf to do all these jobs alone.
 a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. haven't d. don't have

Uses of "have to / has to"

١ التعبير عن الالتزام المفروض من الخارج (أى يوجد اجبار) مثل الإلتزام بالقوانين والقواعد فى مواقف محددة فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل :

ex. - I have to pay the bill الفاتورة or the internet service will be disconnected.
- My children have to study ancient history at school next year.

٢ تُستخدم (will have to + inf.) للتعبير عن شئ من المهم القيام به فى المستقبل :

ex. - The flight is at six in the morning, so we'll have to get up very early.

٢ تُستخدم (had to + inf.) كصيغة الماضى من (have to / must) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بصفة عامة فى الماضى :

ex. - Aya **had to cook** the family dinner yesterday. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Aya **didn't have to cook** the family dinner yesterday. (نفى)
- **Did** Aya **have to cook** the family dinner yesterday? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What **did** Aya **have to do** yesterday? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- The family dinner **had to be cooked** (by Aya) yesterday. (مبنى للمجهول)

mustn't & don't / doesn't + have to + inf.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (mustn't) و (don't / doesn't + have / need to) :

١ تعبر (mustn't) عن الإلزام (لا يجب – غير مسموح – ممنوع) :

ex. - Students **don't have to** make noise in the exam room. (✗)
- Students **don't need to** make noise in the exam room. (✗)
- Students **mustn't** make noise in the exam room. (✔)

٢ تعبر الصيغ التالية عن عدم الضرورة :

- **don't / doesn't have to + inf.**
- **don't / dosn't need to + inf.**
- **needn't + inf.**

ex. - Students **mustn't** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✗)
- Students **don't have to** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✔)
- Students **don't need to** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✔)
- Students **needn't** get up early on Friday as it is a holiday. (✔)

didn't need to & needn't have + p.p.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't + need / have to + inf.) و (needn't have + p.p.) :

١ تعبر (didn't + need / have to + inf.) عن شىء كان الفاعل يعلم انه ليس ضرورياً لذلك لم يقم به :

ex. - It was raining, so I **didn't need to water** the flowers.
(It wasn't necessary, so I didn't do that.)

٢ تعبر (needn't have + p.p.) عن شىء لم يكن الفاعل يعلم انه ليس ضرورياً ولذلك تم القيام به :

ex. - Ali **needn't have bought** meat. We have enough in the freezer.
(Ali didn't know that we have enough meat, so he bought more unnecessarily.)

Mini Test 4 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You to renew your driving licence next month.
 a. have b. will have c. must d. a & b
2. I to stay up late last night to look after my baby sister who was ill.
 a. have b. must c. had d. needn't
3. Mr Abdulrahman to buy a tenth-generation laptop because his old one had become old-fashioned.
 a. had got b. had c. has d. have
4. You smoke in a public place.
 a. mustn't b. must c. haven't to d. don't have to
5. You buy a new pen. You can borrow mine.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. haven't to d. didn't have to
6. You needn't out in this bad weather. You can get what you need delivered to your home.
 a. go b. to go c. have to go d. b & c
7. I knew I had enough time. So, I
 a. needn't have hurried b. needn't to hurry
 c. needn't hurry d. didn't have to hurry

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The airline postpone the flight to Cairo last week owing to the bad weather. (الخميس ٢٠٢٣)
 a. has to b. had to c. didn't have to d. doesn't have to
2. The airline postpone the flight to Cairo tomorrow owing to the bad weather.
 a. has to b. had to c. didn't have to d. doesn't have to
3. It was not raining yesterday, so we to take a taxi. (العصرالية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. don't have b. have c. had d. didn't have
4. It was raining yesterday, so we to take a taxi.
 a. don't have b. have c. had d. didn't have

5. It is not raining today, so we to take a taxi.
 a. don't have b. have c. had d. didn't have
6. It is raining today, so we to take a taxi.
 a. don't have b. have c. had d. didn't have
7. Since his car is being repaired, he to go to Alex by train.
 a. has b. must c. didn't have d. doesn't have
8. Since his car has been repaired, he to go to Alex by train.
 a. has b. had c. didn't have d. doesn't have
9. Since his car was being repaired, he to go to Alex by train.
 a. has b. had c. didn't have d. doesn't have
10. Since his car had been repaired, he to go to Alex by train.
 a. has b. had c. didn't have d. doesn't have
11. Your brother get his passport before flying to the Netherlands. (العمرانية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. needn't b. has to c. needs d. had got to
12. Your brother get his visa before flying from Cairo to Aswan. It is an internal flight.
 a. needn't b. has to c. needs d. had got to
13. We wash these tomatoes. They have been already washed. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٢)
 a. must b. don't have to c. mustn't d. have to
14. We wash these tomatoes. It is important to do so.
 a. must b. don't have to c. mustn't d. needs to
15. She come with us if she doesn't want to. (القصر - الزيلية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. has to b. needn't c. mustn't d. must
16. She come with us because she didn't want to.
 a. had to b. needn't c. mustn't d. needn't have
17. She come with us because she had a role to play.
 a. had to b. needn't c. mustn't d. needn't have
18. We lock the car, it's safe here. (إدارة بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)
 a. needn't b. mustn't c. can't d. shouldn't
19. We lock the car, it's unsafe here.
 a. needn't b. needn't have c. had to d. need to
20. We locked the car; it was safe there.
 a. needn't b. needn't have c. had to d. need to

21. We lock the car, it was not safe there.
a. needn't b. needn't have c. had to d. need to

22. I see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with him. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٢)
a. needn't b. don't have to c. mustn't d. must

23. I see the head teacher. I have already discussed everything with him.
a. needn't b. don't have c. mustn't d. must

24. Using mobiles is prohibited here. You use them. (هليوبوليس ٢٠٢٢)
a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. mustn't

25. A visitor to a hospital smoke. It is banned.
a. must b. mustn't c. don't have to d. needn't

26. Modern hospitals have the best technology to help patients. (الملتزه - الحرمين المتميزة ٢٠٢٢)
a. mustn't b. have to c. needn't d. don't have to

27. We talk together. It was an exam. (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. mustn't b. didn't have to
c. weren't allowed to d. needn't

28. It was first aid. (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
a. must to do b. must to doing
c. a necessity to do d. a necessity to doing

29. Since this is a private parking area, you its use. (مطوبس - برلبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
a. don't have to b. are allowed to
c. are banned from d. mustn't

30. "No parking" sign means that you park here.
a. needn't b. aren't allowed to
c. are allowed to d. must

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 10 & 11 WB pages 4 & 5



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

boost (ed) (v)	يُعزِّز - يوطِّد - يدعم	immune (adj)	ذو مناعة - مُحصَّن
boost (n)	تعزيز - توطيد - دعم	organ (n)	عضو (بالجسم)
cell (n)	خلية	viral (adj)	فيروسى - واسع الانتشار
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى	virus (n)	فيروس

2 Important Vocabulary

brain (n)	المخ	ordinary (adj)	عادي- معتاد
brilliant (adj)	بارع/ذكى - لامع	perfect (adj)	كامل/تام - ممتاز
champion (n)	بطل	persuade (d) (v)	يُقنع
championship (n)	بطولة	persuading (n)	الإقناع
cough (ed) (v/n)	يسعل / يكح - السعال	persuasive (adj)	مُقنع
course (n)	مقرر تعليمى	pleasure (n)	سعادة/سرور
cover (ed) (v/n)	يُغطى - غطاء	protect (ed) (v)	يحمي
diet (n)	نظام غذائى	reason (n)	سبب
explanation (n)	شرح - تفسير	regular (adj)	مُنتظِم
flu (n)	إنفلونزا	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
improve (d) (v)	يُحسِّن - يتحسن	remind (ed) (v)	يُذكِّر
join (ed) (v)	يلتحق بـ - ينضم إلى	separate (d) (adj - v)	منفصل - يفصل - ينفصل
label (n)	مُلصَق		
lie – lay - lain (v)	يستلقى - يتمدد	serious (adj)	خطير - جاد
lying (n)	الاستلقاء / التمدد / الكذب	sick (adj)	مريض
lung (n)	الرئة	situation (n)	موقف
microscope (n)	ميكروسكوب	support (ed) (n - v)	الدعم - يدعم
mistake (n)	خطأ	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
muscle (n)	عضلة		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
boost (v) تعزز - يوطد - يدعم	to help someone or something to improve يتحسن or get better
cell (n) خلية	the smallest separate منفصل part of a plant or animal
immune system (n) الجهاز المناعى	a way that your body protects يحمى you from disease المرض
organ (n) عضو (بالجسم)	a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart
virus (n) فيروس	very small living thing كائن حى that causes disease

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. The system protects your child's body from outside invaders, such as bacteria, viruses, fungi, and toxins. (الواسطي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. moral b. immature c. immune d. inner
2. The advertisement campaign has succeeded in sales of the new product. (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)
 a. pulling b. depriving c. boosting d. discouraging
3. His good manners have made him to evil ideas. (حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٣)
 a. available b. affected c. influenced d. immune
4. The liver الكبد is a/an and so is the heart. (شراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. member b. organ c. planet d. virus
5. A/An can make a lot of people very ill. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
 a. muscle b. orange c. virus d. brain
6. Coronavirus "COVID 19" is a disease. (السيدى سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. bacteria b. viral c. viruses d. fungi
7. COVID-19 attacks and destroys the of the lungs.
 a. virus b. cells c. allowance d. bandage

8. Our manager is very He makes you do what he wants easily.
(أسوان - محمد مكاوى الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. aggressive b. persuasive c. available d. cooperative

9. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your
(أسيوط - جمال فرغلى بلين ٢٠٢٢)
a. muscle b. cell c. surface d. lungs

10. I strongly the view that education should be available to everyone.
(ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
a. support b. risk c. disrespect d. disagree

11. She has one of the most minds in the country. She's really one of a kind فريدة من نوعها.
(هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
a. horrific b. brilliant c. horrible d. a & b

12. She pays visits to her grandma every Friday.
a. separate b. regular c. persuading d. simple

13. The on the packet shows the ingredients المكونات.
a. champion b. flu c. label d. diet

14. Cancer is a/an disease.
a. serious b. flat c. infected d. gentle

15. He was, so he took two days off إجازة لمدة يومين.
a. infection b. disease c. sickness d. sick

16. It's usual for a person who has flu to
a. operate b. lock c. cough d. smell

17. You need to rest in bed if you have a bad
a. champion b. flu c. label d. diet

18. The heart is the that does most of the work in the body.
a. medicine b. boost c. muscle d. hand

19. I'd like to get a clear for your negative situation. I want to understand.
a. allowance b. explanation c. performance d. examination

20. Following the right helps you keep healthy and fit.
a. champion b. flu c. label d. diet

21. The charger is a piece of equipment attached with the mobile in the same package.
a. separate b. regular c. persuading d. persuasive

3 Definitions

22. The system is the system in your body that protects it against illness.
a. immune b. respiratory c. digestive d. movement

23. A/An is the smallest separate part of a plant or animal.
a. sell b. organ c. immune system d. cell

24. To is to help someone or something to improve or get better.
a. infect b. boost c. perform d. react

25. A/An is a very small living thing that causes disease.
a. infection b. operation c. virus d. guidance

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	exercise	يتدرب	**have**	flu	يعاني من الإنفلونزا
get	a cold	يصاب بنزلة برد	**make**	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
	a virus	يصاب بعدوى فيروسية	**sound**	perfect	يبدو مثاليًا
	better	يتحسن	**stay**	calm	يظل هادئًا
	enough sleep	يحصل على نوم كاف	**take/do**	a course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
boost	يُعزِّز - يدعم	improve, enhance, support
boost	يزيد - يروج لـ	increase, promote, publicise
brilliant	بارع/ذكي - لامع	excellent, intelligent
persuasive	مُقنِع	convincing
improve	يُحسِّن - يتحسن	enhance
separate	منفصل	disconnected, isolated

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
boost	يزيد - يروج لـ	decrease, hinder	يقلل - يعوق
brilliant	بارع/ذكي - لامع	ordinary, common	عادي
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب ان	find it easy to	يجد من السهل أن

improve	يتحسن	deteriorate, decline	يتدهور - يتلاشى
persuasive	مُقنِع	unconvincing	غير مُقنِع
separate	منفصل	connected, related	متصل - مرتبط

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسيه

boost	
boost (ed) (v) يَعزّز/ يوطّد / يدعم	- The new hotel will **boost** tourism in our area.
boost (n) تعزيز / دَعم	- The new hotel will be an important **boost** to tourism in our area.
immune	
immunize/ise (d) (v) (يُطعّم) ضد الأمراض - يُحصّن	- This vaccine المصل **immunizes** us against coronavirus.
immunity (n) المناعة - الحصانة	- This vaccine provides us with **immunity** against coronavirus.
immune (adj) ذو مناعة - ذو حصانة	- This vaccine makes us **immune** to coronavirus.
virus	
virus (n) فيروس	- This disease is caused by a **virus**.
viral (adj) فيروسى - واسع الانتشار	- This is a **viral** disease.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as possible	بقدر الإمكان	living thing	كائن حي
come very close to	يدنو جداً من	move closer to	يدنو من / يقترب من
exercise regularly	يتدرب بانتظام	stays up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
get ill more often	يمرض كثيراً	such as	مثل
get sick from	يصاب بالإعياء من	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
in the first place	في المقام الأول	two-day course	برنامج تدريبي مدته يومان

6 Verb + Preposition معل + حرف جر

fall down	يسقط / يقع	protect ... from / against	يحمى ...من
fight against	يكافح / يقاتل ضد	remember to	يتذكر أن
go out	يخرج	reply to	يرد علي
hear from	يسمع من (يتواصل مع)	stay up	يسهر
look forward to + (inf. + ing)	يتطلع إلي	talk to	يتحدث إلى / مع
		worry about	يقلق علي

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

boost - boast

• **boost (ed) (v)** يعزّز - يدعم - يُقوّي
- Eating fresh fruit and vegetables boosts the immune system.

• **boast (ed) (v)** يفتخر - يتباهى- (بنفسه)
- He is a boring person. He boasts about his rich family all the time.

lie - lay

• **lie - lay - lain - lying (v)** يرقد / يتمدد - يكمن في - يقع / يوجد
- He lay in bed to rest. (رقد / تمدد)
- The problem lies in that he doesn't want to work hard. (تكمن في)
- Egypt lies in the north of Africa. (تقع / توجد)

• **lay - laid - laid - laying (v)** يضع - يُبيض - يُعدّ / يُجهّز
- He laid the glass carefully on the floor. (وضع)
- The bird has laid two eggs. (وضع البيض)
- Mum started to lay the table for lunch. (أعدّ)

• **lie - lied - lied - lying (v)** يكذب - يُضلّل
- He lied when he said that his uncle is an ambassador. سفير

• **lie to + شخص** يكذب علي
- Don't lie to your mother again.

• **lie about + ش** يكذب بخصوص
- He lied about his job. He is a driver, not a lawyer.

organ - member

• **organ (n)** عضو من أعضاء الجسم
- The heart and the brain are the most important organs.

• **member (n)** عضو (في فريق أو مجموعة أو نادي ... إلخ)
- The manager welcomed the new members of the staff.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. We should follow the precautionary measures الإجراءات الاحترازية or we'll the virus. (القاهرة - أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. miss b. get c. play d. cause

2. Don't the same mistake as I did. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
 a. do b. make c. try d. return
3. Rodayna a language course.
 a. made b. did c. stayed d. increased
4. "The first-minute goal boosted the team's confidence." The verb 'boosted' here is synonymous with
 a. decreased b. hindered c. supported d. proved
5. We sat under a tree to protect us the burning sun.
 a. with b. against c. to d. for
6. **A :** Do you find it to work abroad ? **B :** Not in the least. It is interesting.
 a. hard b. hardly c. common d. persuasive
7. The exercise I have is enough for today.
 a. stayed b. done c. made d. called
8. To keep healthy, you need to enough sleep.
 a. cause b. suggest c. get d. stay
9. Don't to others. People always appreciate those who tell the truth.
 a. lay b. lain c. lie d. laid
10. If you go on staying late, you will fall ill. (السبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. down b. forward c. up d. up on
11. She looks forward Paris for the first time.
 a. to visiting b. visit c. to visit d. visited
12. Try to keep away from direct sunlight much as possible.
 a. by b. for c. as d. like
13. I'm worried about my brother in Italy. I haven't heard him for ages.
 a. with b. that c. of d. from
14. It is important for a driver to think
 a. fastly b. fast c. quickness d. quiet
15. Your encouragement تشجيع has given me
 a. boost b. boosts c. a boost d. boosted
16. Some scientists think that people who have caught COVID-19 do not have complete from catching it again.
 a. immune b. immunity c. react d. reaction

17. Egypt is an important of the international society.
a. member b. organ c. muscle d. sense

18. Do your best to the sales of the your products.
a. infect b. lay c. boast d. boost

19. Stop about things you have not done.
a. infecting b. laying c. boasting d. boosting

20. He about his exam results. He got a low mark.
a. laid b. lied c. lay d. lain

21. A hen some eggs in that hole.
a. laid b. lied c. lay d. lain

22. The child on the floor and soon fell asleep.
a. laid b. lied c. lay d. lain

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 11)

(1) يصيب - يؤذى
(2) هل هذا صحيح
(3) يفكر بسرعة
(4) مواقف
(5) خبير
(6) دورة تدريبية مدتها يومان
(7) يبدو
(8) رائع / جيد

Hi Fares,

How are you?



It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course next week! I really think you should join them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will **injure**(1) themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, **right**(2)?

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can **think fast**(3) and you know how to stay calm in difficult **situations**(4), You don't have to become an **expert**(5), just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The **two-day course**(6) your friends want to do **sounds**(7) **perfect**(8).

Talk to you soon!

Mahmoud

(WB page 5)

To : Healthtoday@mail.com

From : Shady@mail.com



Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a **pleasure**(1) to see them. **Unfortunately**(2), because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to **keep clean**(3) and **stay healthy**(4).

At the moment, many people in my area have the **flu**(5) and so these things are even more important than **usual**(6). What can I do to **persuade**(7) my cousins to change how they behave?

They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they **cough**(8), they do not **cover**(9) their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and **getting dirty**(10).

They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to **remind**(11) them to do it.

I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't **give the flu to**(12) older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I look forward to(13) hearing from you.

Yours,

Shady

(1) سعادة - بهجة
(2) لسوء الحظ
(3) يحافظ علي النظافة
(4) يحافظ علي الصحة
(5) نزلة البرد
(6) معتاد / مألوف
(7) يقنع
(8) يكح - يسعل
(9) يغطي
(10) يتسخ
(11) يُذكّر
(12) ينقل عدوي البرد لـ
(13) يتطلع إلي

2 Listening Texts

The Immune System

(SB page 10)



Our **organs**(1) are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the **brain**(2) that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The **immune system**(3) comes from the cells and organs that work together to **protect us from**(4) diseases.

The immune system does this by **destroying**(5) things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something **ordinary**(6), like the kind of **cold**(7) we all get sometimes, or it could be something **serious**(8) like the COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus **gets into**(9) a part of the body, a **message**(10) is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system **reacts**(11) by sending **cells**(12) to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate living things in our bodies and they are small enough to **fight against**(13) a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can **boost**(14) our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green **leaves**(15). We also need to exercise **regularly**(16). We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as **active**(17) **as possible**(18).

We also need to **make sure**(19) that we get enough sleep. For most people that means **at least**(20) seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to **avoid**(21) getting a virus or an infection **in the first place**(22).

We also need to do things like **covering**(23) our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

(1) أعضاء
(2) المخ
(3) الجهاز المناعي
(4) يحمينا من
(5) تدمير
(6) عادي
(7) نزلة برد
(8) خطير
(9) يدخل
(10) رسالة
(11) يستجيب
(12) خلايا
(13) يكافح - يحارب ضد
(14) يُعزِّز
(15) اوراق النبات
(16) بانتظام
(17) نشيط
(18) قدر المستطاع
(19) يتأكد
(20) على الأقل
(21) يتجنب
(22) في المقام الأول
(23) تغطية

PART IV LANGUAGE

General Exercise On Language

O Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Wait a minute, Ali. You take a taxi. I will give you a lift.
 a. have to b. mustn't c. don't have to d. must
2. You see a doctor. You look very ill.
 a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. don't have to
3. You take an umbrella if you are going to Egypt. It doesn't often rain there.
 a. haven't to b. don't need to c. must d. need to
4. You take that book back to the library yet. You can keep it for another week.
 a. must b. don't have to c. need to d. mustn't
5. You speak so loudly. We are in the library.
 a. need to b. mustn't c. needn't d. don't have to
6. When you arrive in another country, you show your passport.
 a. mustn't b. should c. have to d. don't need to
7. What do I do to get a driving license?
 a. must b. have to c. will have to d. have got to
8. Does he bring the money with him?
 a. have to b. need c. ought to d. have got to
9. You help me if you don't have time. I can do it myself.
 a. don't have to b. hasn't got to c. have to d. mustn't
10. Hurry up, Rodayna. We be late.
 a. didn't have to b. mustn't c. haven't got to d. needn't
11. He tell me again. I can remember everything he said.
 a. doesn't have to b. haven't got to
 c. mustn't d. needn't to

12. Nada buy a new tablet. Her old one is still very good.
a. mustn't b. don't need to c. hasn't got d. doesn't have to

13. My aunt was in hospital. I visit her yesterday.
a. had got to b. needn't c. must d. had to

14. I've warned you before. You play football in the street.
a. don't have to b. needn't c. mustn't d. don't need to

15. Ahmed can't come out with us this evening. He work.
a. need b. has to c. need to d. should

16. He hasn't been asked to do more jobs, so I think he to.
a. don't have b. haven't got c. don't need d. hasn't got

17. I'm sorry. You bring your pet into school.
a. haven't got to b. mustn't c. don't have to d. needn't

18. It's a secret, OK? You tell anyone else.
a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. don't have to

19. You aren't allowed to stop here. You do that.
a. don't have to b. needn't c. mustn't d. haven't got to

20. I'm not deaf. You shout.
a. are not permitted b. are prohibited
c. aren't allowed d. don't have to

21. In most parks, you walk on the grass.
a. needn't to b. aren't allowed to
c. don't have d. haven't got

22. If you come to Britain, you visit us. We'd love to see you.
a. would b. must c. need d. ought

23. He had to come early because it necessary.
a. is b. was c. will be d. had

24. I be at work at 8 a.m. or my boss will be furious.
a. should have b. must c. need d. have to

25. I phone my friend this evening. I promised him I would.
a. need b. have to c. should have d. must

26. You buy a pen. I can lend you one.
a. don't have b. needn' t c. don't need d. haven't to

27. We forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
a. haven't got to b. mustn't c. should d. have to

28. You any more salt to the food. Now, we can't eat it.
a. needn't have added b. should add
c. didn't have to add d. need to add

29. We give our homework to the teacher until next week. We still have time.
a. mustn't b. don't have to c. should d. need to

30. You such a long essay. The teacher asked for 300 words and you have written 700.
a. needn't have written b. had to write
c. didn't have to write d. should have written

31. According to my promise, I remember to phone my brother Ahmed tonight.
a. don't have to b. must c. mustn't d. have got

32. Here's your present. You open it before your birthday! Let it be a surprise.
a. don't have to b. needn't c. mustn't d. don't need to

33. It's a holiday today, so we go to school. However, the school library is open.
a. don't have to b. mustn't c. have got to d. have to

34. You can't turn right here. You to turn left.
a. must b. have c. has got d. should

35. If you go to Egypt, you forget to go to the Pyramids. They are great.
a. don't have to b. needn't c. don't need to d. mustn't

36. You be noisy. Dad is trying to listen to important news.
a. needn't b. don't have to c. mustn't d. haven't got to

37. She's really a nice person. You meet her.
a. must b. have to c. have got to d. need

3 Check your understanding

38. Tomorrow is a public holiday, so you
 a. mustn't get up early
 b. needn't have got up early
 c. have to get up late
 d. needn't get up early

39. I wasted much money on that food.
 a. I needn't buy it
 b. I needn't have bought it
 c. I didn't need to buy it
 d. I didn't have to buy it

40. Which of the following best suits one of the written items of a law?
 a. Students must wear the school uniform.
 b. Students have to wear the school uniform.
 c. Students need to wear the school uniform.
 d. Students had to wear the school uniform.

41. Which of the following is most appropriate when you talk to a schoolmate who isn't wearing the school uniform?
 a. You mustn't wear the school uniform.
 b. You have to wear the school uniform.
 c. You can wear the school uniform.
 d. You needn't wear the school uniform.



PART THREE | Skills & Advanced Notes



تنويه | لإتقان المهارات استخدم كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

stop + obj.

• stop + obj. مفعول + from + (inf.+ ing) = stop + obj. مفعول + (inf.+ ing) ... بمنع من أن

ex. - We must stop people from polluting the river.
= We must stop people polluting the river.

stop + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

• stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً

ex. - On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruit.

• stop + (inf. + ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء (بشكل دائم - أو مؤقت)

ex. - My uncle has stopped smoking and his health is better now.

he or she versus they

هناك أسماء وضمائر تستخدم كمذكر أو كمؤنث مثل:

- person - child - teacher - researcher - doctor - student ... etc.
- someone - somebody - everyone ... etc.

وعندما نشير إلى أى من الأسماء والضمائر السابقة وما يشبهها بضمير يمكن أن نتبع أىّ من الطرق التالية :

١. استخدم ضمائر أو صفات الجمع التالية : (they - them - their - theirs)

ex. - I hear a child crying. They may be hungry. Their mother must feed them.

٢. استخدم ضمائر المذكر و المؤنث كالتالى : (he or she - him or her - his or her - his or hers)

ex. - I hear a child crying. He or she may be hungry. His or her mother must feed him or her.

٣. استخدم ضمير المذكر فقط أو المؤنث فقط إذا كان المتحدث متأكداً من النوع :

ex. - This is a school for boys. A student has written his name on the desk. He is careless.

start / begin + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

يأتي بعد (start / begin) المصدر مضافا له (ing) أو (to + inf.) دون فرق في المعني:

ex. - He began working / to work for this company last year.

لكن بعد (starting / beginning) نستخدم (to + inf.) فقط:

ex. - I was starting to do my homework when the phone rang. (Not : starting doing)

as

١. يُستخدم بعدها اسم يدل علي الوظيفة أو المرحلة العمرية أو الدور أو المظهر:

ex. - As a boy, he worked in a bakery.
- He works as a police officer.

٢. يأتي التصريف الثالث بعد (as) ويكون إختصاراً لجملة مبنية للمجهول:

ex. - He works hard as required. (= as it is required)

٣. تُستخدم (as) وبعدها جملة كرابطة بين الجمل بمعاني مختلفة:

ex. - She broke the cups as she was taking them to the kitchen. (= when /while)
- As he makes a lot of mistakes, he doesn't get good marks. (= Because)

like

١. تُستخدم كحرف جر بمعني (مثل / يشبه) مع أفعال منها :

(be / look /sound / feel / taste / seem / eat / drink / grow)

ex. - She looks like her aunt. - He eats like a horse.

٢. تُستخدم لاعطاء أمثلة بعدها بمعني : (for example / such as)

ex. - Colours like green, pink, and red are suitable for you.

Sentence adverb

هناك بعض الظروف التي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغير معني الجملة بالكامل ، و غالبا تستخدم في بداية الجملة مثل:

- من المحزن Sadly - من الغريب Strangely - لحسن الحظ Fortunately/Luckily
... من المدهش Surprisingly - من المثير للإهتمام Interestingly

ex. - Fortunately, I had enough money.
- Strangely, he agreed to help us.

Verb + adj.

يمكن أن تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد:

- يعطي مذاق taste - يبدو sound - يبدو appear - يبدو seem - يبدو look - يكون be
يعطي شعورًا أو ملمس feel - يعطي رائحه smell

ex. - Ahmed looks happy. - He seems a nice boy. = He seems nice.
- Mum's food smells delicious.

General Exercise On Language Hints

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The traffic policeman stopped me in front of the bank.
a. to park b. from parking c. parking d. b & c

2. The child looked with his new toy.
a. happy b. happily c. happiness d. happening

3., my team lost the match.
 a. Sad b. Sadness c. Sadly d. Saddened
4. Viruses COVID-19 and SARS have caused thousands of deaths.
 a. as b. like c. such d. as if
5. a student, you should study hard
 a. As b. Like c. Such d. As from
6. Because she was hungry, she stopped a cold drink and a snack from the supermarket.
 a. from buying b. buying c. to buying d. to buy
7. She stopped junk food because it is harmful.
 a. buy b. buying c. to buying d. to buy
8. It will start
 a. to rain b. raining c. to raining d. a & b
9. It is starting
 a. to rain b. raining c. to raining d. a & b
10. A person should know what goal in life is.
 a. his b. her c. their d. our

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

Everyone likes to stay fit and healthy, but not everyone succeeds in doing that. Staying healthy is important to ensure a happy life. There are two main **tips** that people have to follow in order to stay healthy. One of the most helpful ways to stay healthy is to have healthy food and eat it at an appropriate time.

Healthy eating is the cornerstone in preventing our health from many conditions such as diabetes, heart diseases, cancer and blood pressure. Junk foods should be avoided. Instead of having these fast and unhealthy foods, the diet should contain leafy vegetables, fresh vegetables, fruits, milk and fish. One's diet has a key impact on their overall health.

Healthy food gives an individual strength and even improves their appearance. Healthy food is good for both an individual's body and skin. Exercising is a physical activity that enhances physical fitness and health. For instance, walking and cycling are the important exercise that the human should do to ensure keeping the body healthy and fit. Therefore, find some time about 30 minutes per day to do exercises. Being healthy is not hard to control, be active and be healthy.

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The main idea of the passage is how to
 a. exercise b. eat healthy food
 c. lead a healthy life d. be active
2. The underlined word "tips" in the passage means "" .
 a. advice b. chance c. money d. ends
3. It's important to eat healthy food at a/an time.
 a. bad b. suitable c. usual d. unusual
4. According to the passage, ... are the most important exercises for us.
 a. swimming and running b. walking and riding bikes
 c. swimming and riding bikes d. playing football and riding bikes
5. is enough daily time to do exercises.
 a. Half an hour b. Quarter of an hour
 c. One hour d. Two hours
6. Healthy eating prevents many such as diabetes.
 a. vegetable b. exercises c. fast food d. diseases
7. Healthy food makes us
 a. stressed b. weak c. bad d. strong
8. A good diet should contain
 a. fruit and vegetables b. sweets
 c. junk food and vegetables d. pizza

2 Writing Tips - Persuading إرشادات خاصة بالكتابة - الإقناع

- عند محاولة إقناع شخص ما بالقيام بشئ ما يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية :

• **It's great that +** جملة ... إنه لشيء عظيم أن ...

- It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course!

• **I really think you should + inf.** أعتقد فعلاً انه يجب عليك أن ...

- I really think you should join the course.

• **Everyone has to + inf.** يجب على الجميع أن ...

- Everyone has to know how to do first aid.

• **You never know when +** جملة ... لا يمكنك أن تعلم متى ...

- You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them.

• **You would want, right?** إنك قد تريد أن ، هل هذا صحيح؟

- You would want other people to help you too, right?

• **I'm sure you would + inf.** إني متأكد انك سوف ...

- I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations.

- **you don't have to + inf.** ـــ إنك لست مضطراً لان...
 - You don't have to become an expert, just learn enough so you can help someone.
- **..... sounds perfect.** إن ... يبدو رائعاً.
 - The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect.

Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

Model email

Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words to your friend John to persuade him to learn how to perform first aid. Your name is Ashraf and your email is ashraf@mail.com and your friend's email is john@mail.com.

To: john@mail.com
From: ashraf@mail.com
Dear John,

How are you ? I hope you are your best. I have heard they are starting a course in the local hospital to teach the citizens in the neighbourhood how to do first aid. I write this email to you to try to persuade you to join the course with me.

Perhaps you know it is great to learn a new skill that is very useful. I really think you should join the course. First of all, I would like to tell you why it is important to learn how to perform first aid.

Everyone has to learn this skill because they may need it one day. You never know when an accident happens. When accidents happen, there are people who are badly injured. Some of them may not be able to breathe. What would you do then?

Perhaps you would say that you would call the emergency services, right? Of course, you must call the emergency services. But what if the nearest emergency service centre is far away? What would you do then? Would you stand there doing nothing for the people that were dying because you could not help ?

I'm sure you would want to help. However, you can't help unless you know how to help. Performing first aid needs special skills you should learn. The first aid course is a golden chance you should never miss. By the way, the course is free. I hope very much that you would agree to join the course with me.

I'm looking forward to your positive reply.

Yours,
Ashraf

3 Translation الترجمة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Health is a crown on the heads of healthy people only seen by patients. It is a must to do your best to keep healthy.

a. الصحة تاج على رؤوس الأصحاء لا يراه المرضى. من الضروري أن تبذل قصارى جهدك للحفاظ على صحتك.

b. الصحة تاج على رؤوس الأصحاء يراه غير المرضى. من الضروري أن تبذل قصارى جهدك للحفاظ على صحتك.

c. الصحة تاج على رؤوس الأصحاء لا يراه إلا المرضى. من الضروري أن تبذل قصارى جهدك للحفاظ على صحتك.

d. الصحة تاج على رؤوس الأصحاء لا يراه إلا المرضى. من الضروري أن تكون الأفضل للحفاظ على صحتك.

2. Following a good diet contributes to keeping healthy. Try to eat the right quantities of various foods to supply your body with what it needs.

a. إن اتباع نظام غذائي جيد يساهم في الحفاظ على الصحة. حاول أن تأكل الكميات المناسبة من الأطعمة المختلفة لتزويد جسمك بما يحتاجه.

b. إن اتباع نظام غذائي جديد يساهم في الحفاظ على الصحة. حاول أن تأكل الكميات المناسبة من الأطعمة المختلفة لتزويد جسمك بما يحتاجه.

c. إن اتباع نظام غذائي جيد يساهم في الحفاظ على الصحة. حاول أن تأكل السمات المناسبة من الأطعمة المختلفة لتزويد جسمك بما يحتاجه.

d. إن اتباع نظام غذائي جيد يساهم في الحفاظ على الصحة. حاول أن تأكل الكميات المناسبة من الأطعمة المختلفة لتوفير جسمك لما يحتاجه.

3. You aren't allowed to violate the rules of your society. It has always been said that you are free as long as you cause no harm.

a. غير مسموح لك أن تنتهك قواعد مجتمعك. لطالما قيل إنك حُر طالما تَضُر.

b. غير مسموح لك أن تنتهك قواعد جمعيتك. لطالما قيل إنك حُر ما لم تَضُر.

c. غير مسموح لك ألا تنتهك قواعد مجتمعك. لطالما قيل إنك حُر ما لم تَضُر.

d. غير مسموح لك أن تنتهك قواعد مجتمعك. لطالما قيل إنك حُر ما لم تَضُر.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. لعلك تعلم أن الحصول على قدر كافٍ من النوم كل ليلة من العوامل الهامة التي تساعدك في الحفاظ على صحتك البدنية والنفسية على حد سواء.

a. You probably know that getting enough sleep all night is an important factor in helping you maintain both your physical and mental health.

b. You surely know that getting enough sleep every night is an important factor in helping you maintain both your physical and mental health.

c. You probably know that getting enough sleep every night is an important factor in helping you maintain both your psychological and mental health.

d. You probably know that getting enough sleep every night is an important factor in helping you maintain both your physical and mental health.

٢. عليك أن تتأكد من حصولك على العناصر الغذائية الضرورية التي تضمن حصول جسمك على كل ما يحتاجه للبقاء بصحة جيدة، ولابد أن تتجنب الوجبات السريعة.

a. You have to make sure that you get the necessary nutrients that ensure that your body gets everything it needs to stay healthy, and you must avoid junk food.

b. You have to make sure that you get the necessary nutrients that reassure that your body gets everything it needs to stay healthy, and you must avoid junk food.

c. You had to make sure that you get the necessary nutrients that ensure that your body gets everything it needs to stay healthy, and you must avoid junk food.

d. You have to make sure that you get the necessary nutrients that ensure that your body get everything they need to stay healthy, and you must avoid junk food.

٣. من الضروري ممارسة بعض التمرينات الرياضية بشكل ملتظم، فذلك من العادات الهامة التي تحافظ على لياقتك وتساعد على قيامك بالأنشطة اليومية بكفاءة.

a. It is necessary to do some regular exercise. This is one of the important habits that keep you fit and helps you carry out your daily activities efficiently.

b. It is necessary to do some regular exercise. This is one of the important habits that keeps you fit and help you carry out your daily activities efficiently.

c. It is necessary to do some regular exercise. This is one of the important habits that keeps you fit and helps you carry out your daily activities efficiently.

d. It is necessary to do some regular exercise. This is one of the important habits that keeps you fit and helps you get up your daily activities efficiently.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

1 Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

boost

• **boost (ed) (v)** يُعزز - يُنعش - يُقوي

- The new decisions of the government have boosted the economy.
- The new advertisement will surely boost the sales. المبيعات

للحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **boost someone's confidence / ego** يُعزز ثقة ... بنفسه

- My father's encouraging words boosted Sama's confidence.

• **boost someone's morale** يرفع معنويات ...

- The first goal boosted the team's morale.

• **boost / boost up = raise (v)** يرفع / يرفع إلى أعلى

- The child wanted me to boost him to look out from the window.

• **boost (to / for) (n)** تعزيز - إنعاش

- The tourist season is a real boost to the economy.

للحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- provide / give a boost يعطي دفعة - get / receive a boost يتلقى دعم
- morale / ego boost دعم معنوي - دفعة معنوية

cell

• **cell** خلية (حيوانية / نباتية)

- Our bodies consist of a great number of cells.

• **cell** زنزانة (حجرة داخل سجن)

-The dangerous criminal was locked alone in a cell.

• **cell** جهاز لتوليد الكهرباء

- Some street lights depend on solar cells. الخلايا الشمسية

• **cell** تنظيم سري صغير

- The police have arrested some terrorist cells. الخلايا الإرهابية

• **cell phone** تليفون محمول (في الإنجليزية الأمريكية)

- The battery of my cell phone was empty, so I couldn't call you.

immune

- **immune (adj)** لديه مناعة ضد - مُحصّن ضد (لا تُستخدم قبل الاسم)
 - He has caught smallpox الجدرى before, so he is immune for life
- **immune response / reaction** الاستجابة المناعية - رد فعل جهاز المناعة
 - Because he is healthy, his immune response succeeded in fighting the virus.
- **immune (to / from) (adj)** لديه حصانة ضد - لا يتأثر بـ (لا تُستخدم قبل الاسم)
 - Old people are sometimes immune to new ideas.
 - Parliament members are immune from arrest.
- **immunity (to / from) (n)** المناعة ضد - الحصانة ضد
 - People who have got the virus before have immunity to it.
- **immunize (against) (v)** يُحصّن ضد
 - In Egypt, all children are immunized against infectious diseases.
- **immunology (n)** علم المناعة
 - He is expert in immunology.
- **immunologist (n)** عالم متخصص في علم المناعة
 - He is an immunologist.

infect

- **infect (ed) (with) (v)** يُعقّم / يُطَهّر ≠ disinfect يُعدي - يصيب بمرض
 - A lot of people have been infected with COVID- 19.
- **infect (ed) (with) (v)** يلوث بـ (غالبًا تكون الجملة مبنية للمجهول)
 - The vegetables from this farm are infected with harmful chemicals.
- **infect (ed) (with) (v)** يُعدي - ينتقل بالإيحاء
 - Keep your children away from that bad boy. His bad behaviour will infect them.
- **infection (of / in) (n)** عدوي - مرض مُعدي
 - He has a bad infection in the right eye.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- suffer from an infection — يعاني من عدوى
- get / develop an infection — يُصاب بعدوى
- treat / fight / combat an infection — يعالج / يكافح عدوى
- spread an infection — ينشر عدوى
- be exposed to an infection — يعاني من عدوى
- clear up an infection — يزيل العدوى / التلوث
- serious / severe / acute infection — عدوي شديدة

• **infectious (adj)** ناقل للعدوي - مُعْدي
- Flu is an infectious disease.

• **infected (adj)** مُصاب بالعدوي
- I didn't know I was infected until I had been examined by a doctor.

virus

• **virus (n)** فيروس (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)
- This virus does not infect people.

• **virus (n)** فيروس حاسوبي (برنامج ضار)
- It was a virus sent in an email that destroyed my laptop.

• **virulent (adj)** شديد العدوى
- Coronavirus is so virulent.

• **viral (adj)** فيروسي
- She has a viral infection.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- carry a virus حامل للفيروس
- get / contract a virus يُصاب بفيروس
- be infected with a virus يُصاب بفيروس
- be exposed to a virus مُعرض للإصابة بفيروس
- pass on / transmit a virus يعدى بفيروس
- a virus spreads ينتشر الفيروس
- go viral ينتشر بسرعة (على وسائل التواصل)

2 Word Formation تكوين الكلمات

-ion / - ance

تُستخدم النهايتان (-ion) و (-ance) لتكوين الأسماء من بعض الأفعال :

-ion		-ance	
Verb	**Noun**	**Verb**	**Noun**
act يؤدي / يتصرف	action اداء - حدث	allow يسمح	allowance علاوة - سماح
infect يعدي - يلتهب	infection عدوي	guide يرشد	guidance إرشاد
operate يُشغل	operation تشغيل	perform يؤدي	performance اداء -عزف

لاحظ حذف حرف (e) غير المنطوق عند إضافة النهايات (- ion / - ance)

UNIT 1

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. His strength as a politician in that he is a good speaker.
 a. lies b. lays c. lain d. laid
2. He was arrested because he joined a criminal
 a. severity b. organ c. muscle d. cell
3. These children have been vaccinated تم تطعيمهم. They are
 a. immune b. immune people
 c. immune children d. b & c
4. Ibrahim is really a good student. His energy and enthusiasm حماس have all the students in the class.
 a. spoiled b. diseased c. infected d. a & c
5. Once I tweeted the news, it went It was retweeted by thousands of people.
 a. various b. viral c. infected d. infectious

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You to the office. It wasn't necessary.
 a. had to go b. needed to go
 c. needn't have gone d. have to go
2. Policemen wear a uniform. It is a rule.
 a. have to b. should c. need to d. must
3. I get up early on school days.
 a. mustn't b. have to c. don't have to d. must
4. Owing to the fact that tomorrow is a national holiday, I get up early.
 a. needn't to b. haven't to c. mustn't d. won't have to
5. More money has been wasted. You bought all these toys.
 a. can't have b. should have c. need have d. needn't have

Test on Unit 1

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

درس

التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My father always advises us to be to the power of advertising and not to buy things which we don't need. (البحيرة - إدارة التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
 a. immune b. respiratory c. prohibited d. allowed
2. COVID-19 is a/an , not a microbe.
 a. heart b. immunity c. virus d. organ
3. The advertisement will really the number of toys the shops sell. *(WB)*
 a. infect b. guide c. allow d. boost
4. You can see a/an of an onion using a simple microscope. *(WB)*
 a. cell b. immune c. virus d. organ
5. Mr Ayman applies the latest in business management.
 a. resilience b. techniques c. pioneers d. emergency
6. To keep fit, try to take a sport.
 a. up b. down c. off d. out
7. I the umbrella, it was not raining. (مطوبس - برنبال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. needn't have taken b. don't need to take
 c. needn't to take d. needn't take
8. We to wear a uniform at school. (الجيزة - أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)
 a. have b. must c. should d. can
9. You eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. don't have to
10. She had already had her lunch. You her all these sandwiches.
 a. don't need to buy b. needn't buy
 c. needn't have bought d. didn't have to buy

(القاهرة - أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

11. I have been tired all week. I get more sleep.
 a. don't have to b. must c. needn't d. have got
12. I think you see a doctor.
 a. may b. ought c. have to d. should

13. I want to go to university. I apply before the deadline.
a. shouldn't b. need to c. don't need d. mustn't

14. In some countries, children wear school uniform.
a. don't need b. mustn't c. don't have d. don't need to

15. My son study mathematics at school next year so that he can join the faculty of engineering.
a. need b. has to c. needn't d. needn't have

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Do you wish you could be in perfect health your entire life? Recent scientific research has shown that if people just practised three simple behaviours, they could not only prolong their lives but make them healthier as well. If you are willing to commit to leading a longer and healthier life, first, eat the right foods in the right amounts. Three-fourths of your plate should be filled with fruits, vegetables and the whole grains. If you can't give up eating meat, choose lean meat. Eat poultry, fish, beans and foods that are low in saturated fats, cholesterol, salt and sugar. People who wish they could more easily control the amount they eat may find that using a smaller plate will help.
Next, exercise at least 30 minutes a day at least three days a week. If you exercise five or more days a week of at least 75 minutes each time, the result will be even better for you. This helps increase muscle, strengthen bones and improve balance.

Third, make sure to get sufficient sleep. If you are over the age of 18, you probably need seven to nine hours to sleep each night. If you cannot get that much sleep, take a short nap for 20-30 minutes per day. These behaviours are the keys to living a longer and healthier life. Imagine, if you had started these behaviours years ago, you would be way ahead of the game!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

16. What is the main idea of the passage?
a. Showing the importance of sleep
b. Encouraging people to practise sports
c. Telling people what to eat
d. Giving advice on how to stay healthy

17. The underlined word "This" refers to
a. doing exercise b. eating healthy food
c. sufficient sleep d. all of them

18. Why do you think people need to keep themselves healthy ?

a. To build strong muscles
b. To enjoy their lives
c. To improve balance
d. To go on the game

19. According to the passage, the underlined word "**prolong**" means

a. shorten
b. lengthen
c. widen
d. weaken

20. Which of the following sentences is NOT correct ?

a. We are what we eat.
b. Eat the right foods in the right amounts.
c. We should get enough sleep.
d. Eat food high in saturated fats.

21. The expression "**lean meat**" refers to

a. red meat.
b. meat rich in fat.
c. fish meat.
d. meat low in fat.

22. Which of the following best summarizes the last paragraph ?

a. You are way ahead of the game if you practise well.
b. Children under the age of 18 don't need to sleep well.
c. You are the winner in the long run if you eat, exercise and sleep well.
d. All of us get tired if we don't sleep well.

23. Who is the intended audience for this article ?

a. Only children and kids
b. Elderly people
c. Both the young and the old
d. Sportsmen and women

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

You must pay regular visits to your physician, at least once every six months. That is necessary to make sure that everything is all right.

a. يجب أن تدفع لزيارات منتظمة لطبيبك ولو لمرة واحدة على الأقل كل ستة أشهر. هذا ضروري للتأكد من أن كل شيء على ما يرام.

b. يجب أن تقوم بزيارات منتظمة لطبيبك ولو لمرة واحدة على الأقل كل ستة أشهر. هذا ضروري للتأكد من أن كل شيء على ما يرام.

c. يجب أن تدفع ثمن زيارات منتظمة لطبيبك ولو لمرة واحدة على الأقل كل ستة أشهر. هذا ضروري للتأكد من أن كل شيء على ما يرام.

d. يجب أن تقوم بزيارات منتظمة لطبيبك ولو لمرة واحدة على الأقل بعد ستة أشهر. هذا ضروري للتأكد من أن كل شيء على ما يرام.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لابد أن تلتزم بالقواعد والقوانين المنظمة لشئون الحياة في المجتمع، فالمواطن الصالح هو الذي يفكر دائماً في البناء ويقف بكل حزم ضد كل الظواهر السلبية.

a. You must violate the rules and laws regulating the affairs of life in society. A good citizen is the one who always thinks about building and stands firmly against all negative phenomena.

b. You must follow the rules and laws regulating the affairs of life in society. A good citizen is the one who always thinks about building and stands firmly against all negative phenomena.

c. You must follow the rules and laws regulating the affairs of life in society. A good citizen is the one who always think about building and stand firmly against all negative phenomena.

d. You must follow the roles and laws regulating the affairs of life in society. A good citizen is the one who always thinks about building and stands firmly against all negative phenomena.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :

Describe why the immune system is important and what We can do to boost it.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



UNIT

2

Eating around the world

SB pages 16 : 25 WB pages 8 : 13

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
 An excerpt from Aunt Jo's Scrap-Bag An Old fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M Alcott Two articles about ways of eating around the world
- **Writing :**
 A questionnaire on young people's food preferences
- **Listening :**
 Descriptions of international meals
- **Language :**
 Comparative and superlative adjectives
- **Speaking :**
 Communicating opinions and beliefs
- **Life skills :**
 Critical thinking Respect for diversity Negotiation

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 16 : 19 WB pages 8 & 9



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

amount (n)	كمية	prepare (d) (v)	يُعِدّ / يجهّز
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل بـ - يُخبي مناسبة	rare (adj)	نادر
eat out	يأكل خارج المنزل	salty (adj)	مالح
expensive (adj)	غالي الثمن	serve (d) (v)	يخدم / يقدم طعام أو شراب
get together	يلتقى - يتجمّع	spicy (adj)	مُتبّل - به توابل
occasion (ed) (n - v)	مُناسبة - يُسبب	strong (adj)	نفّاذ (ذو رائحة قوية)
popular (adj)	منتشر - شائع	traditional (adj)	تقليدي

2 Important Vocabulary

cornbread (n)	خبز الذرة	prawns (n)	جمبري كبير - قريدس
curious (adj)	فضولي	pumpkin (n)	اليقطين
curry (n)	الكاري (نوع من البهارات الهندية)	recent (adj)	حديث
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	roast lamb (n)	لحم ضان مشوي
dessert (n)	الحلوى (بعد الوجبة)	roast (n/adj)	(لحم) مشوي
dish (n)	صنف من الطعام - طبق	roasted (adj)	مشوي - محمص
event (n)	مناسبات هامة - حدث	seafood (n)	طعام البحر
exist (ed) (v)	يوجد	shellfish (n)	الصدفيات - المحاريات
extract (ed) (n - v)	اقتباس - يقتبس	smell (n)	الرائحة
festival (n)	عيد - مهرجان	snow (n)	الجليد
fried (adj)	محمّر - مقليّ	survive (d) (v)	ينجو/ يبقى على قيد الحياة
gather (ed) (v)	يلتقي -يتجمع	sweet potatoes (n)	بطاطا
herring (n)	الرنجة	takeaway (n)	وجبات جاهزة
laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك - يقول ضاحكًا	Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
native (adj)	محلي -أصلي	turkey (n)	الديك الرومى
old-fashioned (adj)	عتيق - قديم جدًا	vegetable (n/adj)	أحد الخضروات - متعلق بالخضروات
oysters (n)	المحّار	whatever (adj)	أيًا كان/مهما كان
pie (n)	فطيره		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
amount (n) كمية	- a quantity كمية of something - how much of something there is
celebrate (d) (v) يحتفل بـ - يُحيي مناسبة	to do something fun ممتع to show that an event مناسبة is special خاص
eat out يأكل خارج المنزل	to have a meal وجبة outside your home
get together يلتقي	- to meet people and spend time with them - to meet with other people
occasion (n) مُناسبَة	a time when something special happens
prepare (d) (v) يُعِدّ / يجهّز	to get something ready for use
serve (d) (v) يخدم / يقدم طعام أو شراب	to give someone food or drinks as part of a meal
traditional (adj) تقليدي	following a way of doing something that has existed موجودة for a long time

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. You'd better try to reduce the of fat in your diet. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. quality b. amount c. prawn d. recipe
2. My mother's birthday is today and we are going out for a meal to (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)
 a. relate b. celebrate c. commemorate d. separate
3. I mostly have my meals indoors, but every now and then I eat
 a. up with b. in c. together d. out
4. The food's quite , but it's really nice. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
 a. tasty b. delicious c. expensive d. tasteful
5. Let's together this weekend. It would be nice to see you!
 a. go b. come c. get d. do (السويس ٢٠٢٣)
6. The wedding party was a good to see a lot of old friends and relatives. (حلوان - الأشموليين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. occasions b. occasional c. occasion d. occasionally

7. Mohammed Salah has become with people in Egypt. (كفر شكر ٢٠٢٢)
 a. famous b. populated c. popular d. polluted
8. The doctor talked with his patient to him for the worst. (سمالوط ٢٠٢٣)
 a. train b. arrange c. organize d. prepare
9. Protecting animals and plants from extinction is the responsibility of all countries. (بشواي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. dangerous b. rare c. remote d. domestic
10. I like food. However, it is unhealthy. It makes blood pressure rise.
 a. tasty b. rare c. home-made d. salty
11. In Greenland, it is traditional for men to a special meal of whale for women to enjoy. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
 a. serve b. surf c. survive d. spend
12. This dish is and delicious. Enjoy! (شراكيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. rotten b. spicy c. nasty d. dusty
13. Some spices have a smell.
 a. strong b. fried c. grilled d. tasteless
14. People no longer use means of communication. They have become old-fashioned. (أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. modern b. global c. artificial d. traditional

2 Important vocabulary

15. Of the six people injured in the crash, only two (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. survived b. served c. existed d. ate out
16. Some from trees, like cinnamon, can be used as drinks.
 a. constructs b. abstracts c. distracts d. extracts
17. The 6th October Victory is a great in our contemporary history. (الدقهلية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. series b. accident c. event d. episode (إجا ٢٠٢٢)
18. We have a vegetable garden in our house. In this sentence, the word "vegetable" is a/an (الدقهلية - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. noun b. adverb c. adjective d. determiner
19. The boys at nine to watch the match at the café.
 a. roasted b. existed c. gathered d. fried

20. This car make is no longer produced. It is
a. fashionable b. fashion c. old-fashioned d. modern
21. To meat is to cook it without liquid in an oven.
a. roast b. exist c. gather d. wake
22. Which of the following is/are seafood?
a. Prawns b. Herring c. a & b d. Lamb
23. We say that someone is when they want very much to know about things.
a. stupid b. impolite c. traditional d. curious
24. This chef has created this delicious
a. bowl b. pot c. dish d. plate
25. Fish, shellfish and oysters are
a. seabed b. seafood c. sea level d. sea life
26. Eid al-Adha and Christmas are which most Egyptians celebrate.
a. parties b. weddings c. funerals d. festivals
27. **A:** How do you like your fish, Sir? **B:**, please.
a. Fry b. Fried c. Frying d. Grilling
28. A/An is a type of shellfish that can be eaten, and that produces a jewel called a pearl اللؤلؤ.
a. oyster b. pie c. pumpkin d. cornbread
29. Dinosaurs on the earth millions of years ago.
a. roasted b. existed c. gathered d. woke

3 Definitions

30. A/An is a quantity of something or how much of something there is.
a. occasion b. amount c. prawn d. option
31. To is to do something fun to show that an event is special.
a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out
32. To is to have a meal outside your home.
a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out
33. To is to meet people and spend time with them.
a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out
34. A/An is a time when something special happens.
a. occasion b. amount c. prawn d. option

35. To is to get something ready for use.
a. prepare b. get together c. celebrate d. eat out

36. To is to give someone food or drinks as part of a meal.
a. prepare b. get together c. serve d. eat out

37. To be means following a way of doing something that has existed for a long time.
a. traditional b. personal c. fried d. simple

38. is a day when people in the USA and Canada give thanks to God for the good harvest and for health.
a. Thanksgiving b. Celebration
c. Sham El-Nessim d. The Big Friday

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

bring	good luck يجلب الحظ السعيد		**get**	together يلتقي - يتجمّع	
do	something fun يقوم بشيء مُبهج		**make**	noise يحدث ضجيجًا	
fall	asleep يستغرق بالنوم		**serve**	the food يقدم الطعام	
have	... for dessert يأكل ... كحلوي		**spend**	time with يقضي وقتًا مع	
	a meal يتناول وجبة		**take**	place يحدث	
	whatever we liked نحصل على ما نشاء				

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
delicious	لذيذ	tasty, mouthwatering
gather	يلتقي - يتجمع	collect, crowd, meet up, get together
old-fashioned	عتيق - قديم جدًا	traditional, conventional, outdated
popular	منتشر - شائع	famous, renowned
rare	نادر	unique, scarce, uncommon
traditional	تقليدي	conventional, customary, old-fashioned

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
delicious	لذيذ	tasteless	بلا طعم
gather	يلتقي · يتجمع	scatter	يتشتر
old-fashioned	عتيق · قديم جدًا	modern, fashionable, new	حديث · على الموضة
popular	منتشر · شائع	unknown, unpopular, obscure	غير معروف
rare	نادر	ordinary, usual, common	عادي/شائع
traditional	تقليدي	unconventional, modern, novel	غير تقليدي - حديث

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

celebrate	
celebrate (d) (v) يحتفل بـ - يُحيي مناسبة	- We celebrated Sama's success yesterday.
celebration (n) احتفال	- We gave a celebration on the occasion of Sama's success yesterday.
celebrity (n) شخص مشهور	- Mohammed Salah is a football celebrity.
celebrated (adj) مشهور	- Mohammed Salah is a celebrated footballer.
occasion	
occasion (ed) (v) يُسبب	- Your success has occasioned us real happiness.
occasion (n) مُناسبة	- We were really happy on the occasion of your success.
occasional (adj) متقطع - عابر	- I pay my uncle occasional visits.
occasionally (adv) احيانًا	- I occasionally visit my uncle.
prepare	
prepare (d) (v) يُعِدّ / يجهّز	- I prepared well for my presentation.
preparation (n) تجهيز · تحضير	- I made good preparations for my presentation.
prepared (adj) مُعَدّ - مستعد - جاهز	- I was well-prepared for my presentation.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a bit worried about	قلق قليلًا علي	it's a lot like	إنه يشبه كثيرًا
a Thanksgiving dinner	عشاء عيد الشكر	late at night	في وقت متأخر من الليل
all the time	طوال الوقت	me too	وانا ايضًا
almost all	تقريبًا كل	Native Americans	سكان أمريكا الأصليين
almost none	تقريبًا لا أحد / لا شيء	on different occasions	في مناسبات مختلفة
at a time	في المرّة الواحدة	on the menu	في القائمة
at least	علي الأقل	on the side of	علي جانب
at Thanksgiving	في عيد الشكر	ready to/for	جاهز/مستعد لـ
be curious about	يشعر بالفضول / لديه حب استطلاع بخصوص	that sounds great	ذلك يبدو عظيمًا
get … ready	يجهز شيئًا ما	there's such a lot to do	لدينا الكثير لنقوم به
I can't wait!	أنتظر بفارغ الصبر	visit … for Thanksgiving	يزور … في عيد الشكر
in different colours	بالوان مختلفة	with help from	بمساعدة من
in fact,	في الحقيقة		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	يخص - ينتمي إلي	keep out of	يبتعد عن الطريق
catch up with	ينضم إلى / يتواصل مع - يلحق بـ	look after	يرعي - يعتني بـ
choose to	يختار أن	look like	يشبه
choose from	يختار من بين	tell … about	يخبر … عن
dig …. out of	يستخرج … من	wait for	ينتظر

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

amount – quantity – level

- **amount (n)** كمية / مقدار (من شيء ما)
 - The doctor advised me to reduce the amount of salt in my food.
- **quantity (n)** كمية / مقدار محدد من شيء ما (تستخدم غالبًا في الأوامر والتعليمات المكتوبة)
 - Add the right quantity of salt to your food.
- **level (n)** مستوي او نسبة محددة من شيء ما
 - I want to measure اقيس the level of cholesterol in my blood.

decide – (to/on/that)

• **decide to + inf.** يقرر أن - يتخذ قرارًا بأن (+ مصدر الفعل)

- We decided to spend the mid-year holiday in Aswan.

• **decide that + subj. + verb** يقرر أن - يتخذ قرارًا بأن (+ جملة)

- We decided that we will spend the mid-year holiday in Aswan.

• **decide on + (n) / (inf. + ing)** يختار (+ اسم)

- We decided on Aswan to spend the mid-year holiday in.

= We choose Aswan to spend the mid-year holiday in.

event - occasion - opportunity

• **event (n)** حدث هام / مناسبة هامة

- The match between Al Ahly and Zamalek is the main event this week.

• **occasion (n)** مناسبة اجتماعية أو احتفال

- Sham El-Nessim is an important occasion.

• **opportunity / chance (n)** فرصة

- Go and talk to the manager. Don't miss the opportunity.

traditional - old-fashioned - modern

• **traditional (adj)** تقليدى / تراثى (قد يكون مقبول أو غير مقبول الان)

- Bedouins البدو still wear traditional clothes.
- I don't like his traditional way of thinking.

• **old-fashioned (adj)** عتيق الطراز / عفا عليه الزمن (لم يعد مقبولًا أو مفضلًا الان)

- She looks strange in her old-fashioned dress.

• **modern (adj)** عصري - حديث

- The mobile is a modern invention.

serve - surf

• **serve (d) (v)** يخدم / يقدم (طعام أو شراب)

- She is trained to serve meals in five-star hotels.

• **surf (ed) (v)** يركب الأمواج (علي اللوح)

- You need a lot of training to be able to surf safely.

• **surf (ed) (v)** يتصفح (الإنترنت)

- Don't waste your time in surfing the Net.

UNIT 2

Exercise On Vocabulary study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A meal that is 'delicious' is
 a. tasteless b. tasty c. hot d. chilli
2. "Luxor and Aswan are popular tourist attractions." This means that Luxor and Aswan are not
 a. unknown b. well-known c. famous d. familiar
3. Something that is traditional is
 a. fashionable b. modern c. conventional d. unconventional
4. In an open buffet, guests can whatever they like to eat or drink. (أحمد مواقى المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. fall b. make c. serve d. have
5. The accident place in front of the cinema.
 a. got b. brought c. made d. took
6. The kid asleep while watching a cartoon and his mother took him to bed. (الشرقية – اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. fall b. fell c. felt d. filled
7. Let's together after graduation to see if our dreams have come true. (العامرية – طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. go b. bring c. get d. make
8. The food in this restaurant is nice.
 a. fallen b. spent c. served d. done
9. Your company ضخبة me good luck.
 a. goes b. brings c. makes d. takes
10. Sama laughs loudly whenever her brother something fun.
 a. spends b. uses c. gets d. does
11. This machine used to loud noise.
 a. get b. bring c. make d. take
12. It is a/an that some people eat salted herring on Sham El-Nessim day.
 a. tradition b. traditional c. traditionally d. illegal
13. He visits me in my distant farmhouse.
 a. occasion b. occasional c. occasionally d. regular
14. He pays me visits in my distant farmhouse.
 a. occasion b. occasional c. occasionally d. regularly

15. You must have at five years' experience to get the job.
a. least b. last c. list d. lost

اسعد سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٢ ج

16. Farmers dig potatoes the earth.
a. for b. out c. of d. out of

17. **A:** You will meet all your close friends tomorrow. - **B:** I can't wait! This means that 'B' his / her close friends.
a. doesn't want to meet b. doesn't like
c. wants very much to meet d. isn't yet ready to meet

18. He still finds himself a stranger who does not belong this place or these people.
a. to b. for c. into d. a & b

19. You have three colours to choose
a. of b. from c. for d. to

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving *(SB page 17)*



In September 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 **passengers**(1). **Many**(2) died, but **some**(3) were able to grow food and **survive**(4) with help from **Native**(5) Americans.

Thanksgiving(6) is a day when families **get together**(7) to remember these **events**(8). It is **celebrated**(9) in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called An **Old-Fashioned**(10) Thanksgiving. Here is an **extract**(11):

When they **woke**(12), there was still **a large amount of**(13) snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

(1) المسافرين
(2) الكثيرون
(3) البعض
(4) يبقى حيا
(5) محلي اصلي
(6) عيد الشكر
(7) يلتقي
(8) مناسبات هامة
(9) يحتفل
(10) عتيق
(11) اقتباس
(12) استيقظوا
(13) كمية كبيرة من

"Now, about dinner," she said as they all finished eating. "**Ma**[14] said that we could have **whatever we liked**,[15] but she didn't expect us to have a **traditional**[16] Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a **turkey**[17]?"asked Roxy.

"Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly. All you children have to do is **keep out of the way**[18], and **let**[19] Prue and me work."

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to **prepare**[20] the big **meal**,[21] they got out all the **spoons**[22], dishes, **pots**[23] and pans that they could find.

"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "**Pa**[24] will be here **by that time**[25] and he'll be surprised to find us ready to **serve**[26] the food. There's such a lot to do, and I'm a **bit**[27] worried about the turkey. It's so big!"

"I know," said Prue. "I **fed**[28] it all summer and now it will feed me," she **laughed**[29].

(14) أمي
(15) كل ما نشاء
(16) تقليدي
(17) الديك الرومي
(18) بعادر المكان
(19) يترك / يدع
(20) يُعد
(21) وجبة
(22) ملاعق
(23) إناء
(24) أبي
(25) قبل ذلك الوقت
(26) يقدم
(27) قليلًا
(28) اطعم
(29) ضحكت

New Year Celebrations around the World

(WB page 8)

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to **celebrate**[1] the **start**[2] of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the **occasion**[3].

In Mexico, for example, many people **eat out**[4] at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular **dish**[5] is always **tamales**[6], which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they **get together**[7] with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

In Spain, it is **traditional**[8] to eat twelve **grapes**[9] to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this **particular**[10] **amount**[11] of grapes

(1) يحتفل بـ
(2) بداية
(3) مناسبة
(4) يأكل خارج المنزل .
(5) صنف من الطعام
(6) تاماليس (وجبة مكسيكية)
(7) يلتقي - يتجمع
(8) تقليدي
(9) العنب
(10) معيّن
(11) كم - مقدار

late at night,[12] when the clock reaches **midnight**[13], or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to **prepare**[14] a fish called '**herring**'[15] at **least**[16] five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of **whale**[17] for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and people say the **smell**[18] is very **strong**[19].

(12) في وقت متأخر من الليل
(13) منتصف الليل
(14) يُعِد
(15) الرنجة
(16) على الأقل
(17) الحوت
(18) الرائحة
(19) نفّاذة

2 Listening Texts

A Thanksgiving invitation

(SB page 17)



Amy : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Hoda?

Hoda : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very **curious**[1] about the food you eat.

Amy : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey before? It's a **lot like**[2] chicken but it's very big.

Hoda : Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What **else**[3] do you have?

Amy : We have a **special**[4] kind of bread, called **cornbread**[5]. It's **delicious**[6]. And we have **sweet potatoes**.[7] They're like **normal**[8] potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda : That sounds great. What do you have for **dessert**[9] ?

(1) فضولي
(2) يشبه كثيرًا
(3) أيضًا
(4) خاص - مميز
(5) خبز الذرة
(6) لذيذ
(7) بطاطا
(8) عادي
(9) الحلوى

Amy : My mum makes the most wonderful **pumpkin**(10) **pie**(11). It's very sweet and **heavy**(12). Sometimes I **fall asleep**(13) after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

Hoda : Now, I'm feeling hungry.

Amy : Me too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and **catch up with**(14) friends and family. **That's why**(15) we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda : Great. I can't wait!

(10) اليقطين
(11) فطيرة
(12) كثيف
(13) يستغرق في النوم
(14) ينضم إلى
(15) لهذا السبب

Meals from around the world

(SB page 18)

Nasi goreng



Nasi goreng(1) is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words 'nasi goreng' mean '**fried**(2) rice' in **Indonesian**(3). Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of the **spiciest**(4) meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's **simply**(5) the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by **frying**(6) rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or **prawns**(7) to the pan. It's a bit **saltier**(8) than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually **cheaper**(9) than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it **either**(10) in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

(1) نازي جورينج (أكلة اندونيسية)
(2) محمّر
(3) اللغة الاندونيسية
(4) الأكثر تتبيلًا
(5) ببساطة
(6) تحمير
(7) جمبري كبير- قريدس
(8) أكثر ملوحة
(9) أرخص
(10) إما

Oysters



Oysters(1) are a type of **shellfish**(2) that people **dig**(3) out of the earth under the sea. They're **rarer**(4) than most other types of **seafood**(5) and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the **menu**(6) in **French**(7) restaurants.

(1) المحّار
(2) الصدفيات
(3) يستخرج بالحفر
(4) أكثر ندرة
(5) طعام البحر
(6) قائمة طعام
(7) فرنسي

Mochi



Mochi(1) are sweet, **round**(2) rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most **popular**(3) type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good **luck**.(4)

Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, **flat**,(5) white mochi is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

(1) موتشي (حلوى يابانية)
(2) مستديرة
(3) مشهور · شائع
(4) الحظ
(5) مسلو · مسطح

(WB page 9)

Food in the UK



The UK did not used to be **known for**(1) its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and **chips**(2). The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips is usually cheaper than most other **takeaway food**(3), too. **The British**(4) also like spicy food. **Indian**(5) food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular.

One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is **roast**(6) **lamb**(7), which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They **mostly**(8) eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.

(1) مشهور بـ
(2) رقائق البطاطس
(3) الوجبات السريعة
(4) البريطانيون
(5) هندي
(6) مشوي
(7) لحم الضأن
(8) في الغالب

UNIT 2

3 Video script

Festival meals from different countries

(SB page 17)

(1) أعياد
(2) الفتة
(3) ملفوف الربيع

People in different countries celebrate different **festivals**(1), but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let's look at three examples of special meals from around the world.



Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid al-Adha every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion is a traditional **fattah**(2). Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast.

In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And, finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes **spring rolls**(3), noodles, fish and chicken.

PART IV LANGUAGE

Comparative and Superlative forms صيغ المقارنة و التفضيل

1 Adjectives الصفات

١ الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم و تأتي غالبا قبله :

ex. - He bought an expensive mobile yesterday.
- I saw a frightening animal in the fields.

٢ يمكن ان تأتي الصفة و بعدها الموصوف أو بدون الموصوف بعد الافعال التقريرية مثل :

be - look يبدو - seem يبدو - appear يبدو - sound يبدو - taste يعطي مذاق -
feel يعطي شعورا او ملمس - smell يعطي رائحه

ex. - Leen felt cold. - Ahmed looks happy.
- Mum's food smells delicious.

٣ الصفات التالية لا تستخدم قبل الاسم مطلقًا :

afraid خائف - **awake** مستيقظ - **asleep** نائم - **alone** وحيد - **alight** مُضاء - **alive** حيّ

ex. - She was kind to the afraid child. (✗)

- She was kind to the child who was afraid. (✓)

٤ تأتى الصفة بعد الكلمات التالية وليس قبلها :

- **someone - somebody - something - somewhere**
- **noone - nobody - nothing - nowhere**
- **anyone - anybody - anything - anywhere**
- **everyone - everybody - everything - everywhere**

ex. - I met somebody important. (Not: important somebody)

- He needs to buy everything necessary. (Not: necessary everything)

Mini Test 1 ○ Apply

○✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My brother has got a
 a. mobile good b. good mobile c. well mobile d. mobile well
2. You look You must have passed your driving test.
 a. happy b. happily c. happiness d. unhappy
3. I was surprised to see a/an in the dark street.
 a. afraid boy b. boy afraid
 c. boy who was afraid d. a & c
4. He knows
 a. an evil nobody b. an anybody evil
 c. an evil anybody d. nobody evil

2 Comparative and Superlative Forms صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل

	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
Use الإستخدام	تقارن صفة المقارنة بين طرفين: - Arabic is easier than English. - A lion is more dangerous than a fox. - Chicken is less expensive than meat.	تُميِّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة (أكثر من طرفين): - French is the easiest subject. - The lion is the most dangerous animal. - The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.
Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	يُضاف (er) للنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - fast - faster - old - older يُضاف (r) فقط للنهاية الصفة القصيرة الملتهية بـ (e) : - large - larger - close - closer يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير اذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصيرثم يُضاف (er) للنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - big - bigger - thin - thinner - hot - hotter - fit - fitter	يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلي الصفة القصيرة : - fast - the fastest - old - the oldest يُضاف (the ...+ st) فقط إلي الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) : - large - the largest - close - the closest يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير اذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصيرثم يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلي الصفة القصيرة: - big - the biggest - thin - the thinnest - hot - the hottest - fit - the fittest
Adjectives ending in (y) الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y)	تتحول (y) المسبوقة بحرف ساكن إلي (ier) : - easy - easier - happy - happier - lazy - lazier - healthy - healthier	تتحول (y) المسبوقة بحرف ساكن إلي (the ...+ iest) : - easy - the easiest - happy - the happiest - lazy - the laziest - healthy - the healthiest
Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة	تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلي صيغة المقارنة كالتالي: - more أكثر/less أقل + adj. صفة - more/less beautiful - أكثر/أقل جمالًا	تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلي صيغة التفضيل كالتالي: - the most الأكثر/the least الأقل + adj. صفة - the most/the least beautiful - الأكثر/الأقل جمالًا

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The cheetah is the deer. غزال
 a. fast b. faster c. faster than d. the fastest
2. The cheetah is animal ever.
 a. fast b. faster c. faster than d. the fastest
3. The environment in the countryside is that in the city.
 a. healthier b. healthier than c. healthiest d. the healthiest
4. The countryside has environment ever.
 a. healthier b. healthier than c. healthiest d. the healthiest
5. The tortoise is animal.
 a. the least fast b. fastest c. the fastest d. the faster

ملاحظات عامة على صفات المقارنة

١ يمكن أن نستخدم (less) قبل الصفات القصيرة (ولا يمكن استخدام (more)) :

ex. - Ahmed is stronger than Ali. (✓) - Ali is less strong than Ahmed. (✓)

- Ahmed is more strong than Ali. (✗)

٢ يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية قبل صفات المقارنة لتقوية أو إضعاف الصفة:

- even كثيرًا - much كثيرًا - a lot كثيرًا - far كثيرًا -

ex. -Travelling by train is much slower than travelling by plane.

- slightly بدرجة طفيفة - a bit قليلاً - a little قليلاً

ex. -The weather today is a little colder than yesterday.

٣ لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد (than) :

(يُفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل وضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل)

ex. - He is taller than I am. = He is taller than me.

- We earn more money than they do. = We earn more money than them.

٤ يمكن استخدام (the) مع صفات المقارنة إذا كان بعدها (of) وكانت تشير إلى طرفين :

ex. - Hadeer is the taller of the two sisters.

2

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية :

(first/second/third/fourth/only/ last...etc.)

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

٢ لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية:

my - his - her - your - our - their - its -'s

ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt's best novelist.

- Is Ahmed your youngest brother?

٣ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :

(أ) تستخدم (in) قبل الأسماء المفردة :

ex. - He is the best player in the team.

- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) قبل الأسماء الجمع :

ex. - Sama is the cleverest of her sisters.

(ج) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السلوات :

ex. - The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016.

3 Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة

Adj./adv.	Comparative	Superlative
- bad سيء	- worse	- the worst
- badly بشكل سيء	أسوأ / بشكل أسوأ	الأسوأ / بالطريقة الأسوأ
- far بعيد	- farther أبعد	- the farthest الأبعد
	- further أبعد/أكثر	- the furthest الأبعد/الأكثر
- good جيد	- better	- the best
- well بصحة جيدة	أفضل / بطريقة أفضل	الأفضل / بالطريقة الأفضل / الأكثر
- little قليل الكمية	- less أقل	- the least الأقل
- many كثير العدد	- more أكثر	- the most الأكثر
- much كثير الكمية		
- a lot of كثير للكمية والعدد		

Mini Test 3 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ali is 65 kg and Omar is 72, so Ali is than Omar.
 a. heavier b. more heavy c. less heavier d. less heavy
2. An elephant is than a cow.
 a. the biggest b. much big c. much bigger d. less big
3. A modern BMW is expensive than this old Fiat.
 a. much more b. much c. the most d. a lot
4. Sama is of the two sisters.
 a. younger b. the younger
 c. youngest d. the more young
5. Dubai has the first building in the world.
 a. bigger b. the bigger c. biggest d. the biggest
6. Green is my wife's favourite colour.
 a. most b. the most c. the more d. the less
7. Rodayna is the most helpful person the family.
 a. of b. with c. a & b d. in
8. My car is than yours.
 a. good b. well c. better d. best

4 Expressing equality/inequality

صيغ التعبير عن التساوي/عدم التساوي :

١ تستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوي:

→ **as + adj.** الصفة **+ as**

ex. - Aya is as old as Nada. They are both 17.
- Drinking fresh juice is nearly as useful as eating fresh fruit.

٢ في حالة النفي تستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:

→ **not + as/so + adj.** الصفة **+ as**

ex. - I am not as old as Omar. = - I am not so old as Omar.

٣ لاحظ أن :

→ **as + adj.** الصفة **+ as = the same +** الاسم من الصفة **+ as**

ex. - Ahmed is as old as Hussein. = - Ahmed is the same age as Hussein.

لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (as + اسم + the same) من الصفات الآتية:

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
big / small	size حجم	long	length طول مسافة أو مدة
deep	depth عُمق	old / young	age عُمر
expensive / cheap	price سعر	strong	strength قوة
far / near	distance مسافة	wide	width عَرض/اتساع
high / tall	height ارتفاع/عُلوّ/طول		

ex. - The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.
= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

Mini Test 4 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Amir is as as Omar.
 a. old b. older c. the oldest d. oldest
2. Mr Mohammed and his cousin Adel were born on 26th September, 1976. This means that Adel is Mohammed.
 a. older b. older than c. as old as d. so old as
3. This old car is not that modern one.
 a. as fast as b. so fast as c. less faster than d. a & b
4. Omar is as tall as Ahmed. Ahmed is the same as Omar.
 a. high b. height c. tall d. length

Check your understanding

١ لاحظ استخدام صفة المقارنة بدون (than) :

- Hany is more intelligent than Samy.
= Samy is intelligent, but Hany is more intelligent.

٢ لاحظ استخدام صيغة (كلما كلما) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

→ The + صفة مقارنة + جملة السبب , + the + صفة مقارنة + جملة النتيجة

- Studying hard makes you get higher marks.
= The harder you study, the higher marks you get.

٣ لاحظ الصيغ التالية:

→ 1. جملة تفضيل = No + جملة تساوي

- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
= No river in the world is as long as the Nile.

→ 2. جملة تفضيل + subj. + have/has + ever + p.p.

= Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. + such + (a/an) + adj. صفة + noun اسم

= Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. + (a/an) + noun اسم + as + adj. صفة + as + noun اسم

- She is the most beautiful girl I have ever seen.
= I have never seen such a beautiful girl.
- Ali is the cleverest boy I have ever known.
= I have never known a boy as clever as Ali.

→ 3. طرف أول + be + as + صفة + as + طرف ثان

- الطرف الأول + has / have + the same + الاسم من الصفة + as + الطرف الثاني
= الطرف الأول + and + الطرف الثاني + have + the same + الاسم من الصفة
= الطرف الأول + and + الطرف الثاني + be + of the same + الاسم من الصفة

- Aya is as beautiful as Mariam.
= Aya has the same beauty as Mariam.
= Aya and Mariam have the same beauty.
= Aya and Mariam are of the same beauty.

Mini Test 5 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My grandmother is old, but my grandfather is
 a. as old b. older c. older than d. the oldest
2. The more you exercise, ... you get.
 a. the fittest b. fitter c. the fitter d. more fit
3. Ahmed is the cleverest student in class. No student in class is him.
 a. as clever as b. as cleverer as c. a & b d. the cleverest
4. I am as old as you. We both are the same age.
 a. to b. on c. as d. of

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This is exam I have ever taken. (الفيوم - غرب ٢٠٢٣)
 a. the most difficult b. much more difficult
 c. more difficult than d. less difficult than

2. Water is the expensive of all liquids. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)
 a. little b. less c. least d. more

3. Mrs Azza is tall, but Mrs Fareeda is (شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. less tall b. more tall c. more taller d. less taller

4. The giraffe is animal of all. (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. tall b. the tallest c. taller d. more tall

5. I don't like this jacket. It is than I have expected. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
 a. large b. larger c. the largest d. largest

6. She is a really nice person; one of people I know. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
 a. the nicer b. the nice c. the most nice d. the nicest

7. It's a very valuable painting. It's painting in the gallery. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
 a. the most valuable b. more valuable
 c. the more valuable d. a valueless

8. The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't I thought. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
 a. near b. far as c. as far as d. farthest

9. There are people at the meeting than at the last one. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
 a. fewer b. fewest c. few d. the fewest

10. Let's leave. This's film I have ever watched. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
 a. a bad b. a worse c. the worst d. worst

11. This question is too hard to grasp. Can't you make it ? (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)
 a. simply b. simpler c. more simpler d. as simple

12. I think she is still ill. She looks even than last week. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. worst b. more c. most d. worse

13. Please, could you speak ? (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

a. slowness b. slowest c. more slowly d. the slowest

14. Her dress was more expensive than mine. (شراكيت ٢٠٢٣)

a. lots of b. a lot c. a lot of d. few

15. In the last few months, competition has become (بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)

a. much tougher b. more tough

c. more tougher d. much more tougher

16. You should take two aspirins and go to bed. I 'm sure you will feel better in the morning. (المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

a. most b. more c. a lot d. as

17. Today's weather is than yesterday's. (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

a. much warm b. more warmer

c. a bit warm d. a bit warmer

18. Yesterday was cold but today is (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)

a. much more cold b. even more colder

c. such a cold d. even colder

19. The more you read, the you know. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

a. less b. most c. best d. more

20. food he eats, the less healthy he will become. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

a. The faster b. The more fast c. The much fast d. The fastest

21. Aya is of the two sisters. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)

a. more old b. oldest c. the older d. old

22. This is the second important successful book. (بني سويف ٢٠٢٣)

a. more b. most c. the most d. the least

23. Egypt's important discovery in the last three years is the gas wells in the Mediterranean Sea. (بنا ٢٠٢٣)

a. more b. much more c. the most d. most

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 20 & 21 WB pages 10 & 11



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

difficult (adj)	صعب	personal (adj)	شخصي
give ... a taste of their own medicine	يسقي ... من نفس الكاس	personally (adv)	شخصيًا/بشكل شخصي
option (n)	اختيار - بديل	remember (ed) (v)	يتذكر
optional (adj)	إختيارى	repeat (ed) (v)	يكرر - يعيد
past (n - adj)	الماضي	simple (adj)	بسيط

2 Important Vocabulary

achieve (d) (v)	يحقق / يُنجز	heavy (adj)	ذسم (تصف الطعام)
attractive (adj)	جذاب	lamb (n)	لحم الضأن - حَمَل
beef (n)	لحم بقري	light (adj - n)	خفيف - ضوء
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية
bowl (n)	سلطانية	name (d) (v)	يُسمّي / يذكر اسم
chopsticks (n)	عيدان الأكل (يستخدمها الصينيون)	phrase (n)	عبارة
		questionnaire (n)	استبيان
complicated (adj)	مُعقّد - مُركب	relatives (n)	اقارب
confused (adj)	متحيّر	respect (ed) (v - n)	يحترم - احترام
consider (ed) (v)	يَعتبر ان - يفكر في	rest (ed) (n - v)	المُتبقى - راحة - يستريح
design (ed) (v)	يُصمّم/يضع تصميم	taste (d) (v/n)	يتذوق - مذاق
distant (adj)	بعيد	the British (n)	البريطانيون
foreigner (n)	شخص اجنبي	type (n)	نوع
general (adj)	عام	vertically (adv)	راسيًا

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
option (n) خيار، بديل	a choice اختيار you can make in a particular معين situation
personal (adj) شخصي	belonging يخص or relating يتعلق to one person, rather than وليس to other people or to people in general بصفة عامة
simple (adj) بسيط	not difficult or complicated معقد to do or understand

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. Internet shopping gives customers too many They can find a variety of things. (الصيوم - شرق - ٢٠٢٣)
 a. opinions b. options c. supplies d. methods
2. Stop interfering in my life. It's nothing of your business. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)
 a. public b. specific c. personal d. common
3. This question is You needn't answer it. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)
 a. optional b. vertical c. traditional d. conventional
4. If you want to make someone suffer, give them a of their own medicine. (المنوفية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. test b. taste c. spoonful d. drop
5. I'll show you how to use this user-friendly application. I'm sure you'll find it very
 a. difficult b. complex c. complicated d. simple
6. It is for me to do all these jobs alone. I need somebody to help me.
 a. easy b. simple c. difficult d. different
7. What happened in the can't be changed.
 a. future b. past c. days to come d. b & c

8. Keep a diary to help you what you are supposed to do.
 a. forget b. remind c. remember d. avoid
9. It is foolish of you to your mistakes.
 a. apologise for b. learn from c. avoid d. repeat
10., I prefer we go to Alexandria for the summer holiday.
 a. Personally b. Personal c. Vertical d. Vertically

2 Important vocabulary

11. are a pair of thin sticks that are used for eating with, especially in China. (الدقهلية - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٢ م)
 a. Forks b. Choppers c. Spoons d. Chopsticks
12. I need help with this lesson because I find it (القاهرة - المحمدية ٢٢ م)
 a. simple b. traditional c. personal d. complicated
13. About sixty-five close friends and attended the wedding.
 a. officers b. enemies c. relatives d. passengers

(أجيب تسلسل ٢٢ م)

14. Rokaya was after her grandmother who had the same name.
 a. considered b. named c. achieved d. introduced
15. He lives in a/an village, which makes it difficult to visit him very often.
 a. light b. heavy c. distant d. attractive
16. are people who do not change their traditions easily.
 a. The British b. British c. British city d. British man
17. He is healthy and fit because he eats food and does regular exercise.
 a. heavy b. light c. tight d. a & c
18. He his new friend to us.
 a. considered b. rested c. achieved d. introduced
19. I can't eat anything else. I've already had a meal.
 a. light b. heavy c. distant d. simple
20. You are expected to show respect to other people's
 a. believe b. believes c. beliefs d. believers
21. He gets when I give him several instructions at a time.
 a. confused b. confusing c. simple d. traditional

22. He has great success as a surgeon. He is well-known all over the country.
a. considered b. named c. achieved d. introduced

23. A good writer is supposed to have a/an style to make him popular among readers.
a. rude b. heavy c. distant d. attractive

24. A/An is a written list of questions that are answered by a number of people so that information can be collected from the answers.
a. research b. questionnaire c. test d. examination

25. It is good behaviour to show to old people.
a. respect b. disrespect c. rudeness d. greed

26. Buying all these toys is a waste of money.
a. considered b. named c. achieved d. introduced

3 Definitions

27. To be means not difficult or complicated to do or understand.
a. traditional b. personal c. fried d. simple

28. A/An is a choice you can make in a particular situation.
a. occasion b. amount c. prawn d. option

29. To be means belonging or relating to one person, rather than to other people or to people in general.
a. traditional b. personal c. fried d. simple

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

get	confused يتحير	make	a choice يختار	
go	abroad يسافر إلي الخارج		a good breakfast تُعد إفطارًا جيدًا	
show	respect يُظهر الاحترام		a lot of difference يحدث فرقًا كبيرًا	
sound	nice يبدو لطيفًا		noise يُحدث ضجيجًا	

UNIT 2

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
confused	متحيّر	puzzled, perplexed, mystified
difficult	غير ملائم	inconvenient, inappropriate, unsuitable
difficult	صعب	hard, confusing, mystifying - mysterious - complicated
heavy	ثقيل الوزن	weighty, overweight
heavy	قوي	forceful, strong
personal	شخصي - خاص	private, individual
respect (n)	احترام	esteem, regard
respect (v)	يطيع - يلتزم بـ	obey, follow
respect (v)	يحترم	esteem, show regard for

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة		Antonym (= Opposite)	
difficult	صعب	easy, simple	سهل - بسيط
difficult	غير ملائم	convenient	ملائم
heavy	دَسِم	light	خفيف - ضوء
heavy	قوي	gentle	لطيف
heavy	ثقيل الوزن	thin, light	نحيف
heavy	غزير (تصف المطر)	light	خفيف
personal	شخصي - خاص	general, public	عام
respect (n)	احترام	contempt, disrespect	احتقار - ازدراء
respect (v)	يطيع - يلتزم بـ	ignore, disobey	يخالف - يعصي
respect (v)	يحترم	scorn	يحتقر - يزدري
simple	بسيط	complicated, complex	مُعقّد

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

option		
option (n)	اختيار - بديل	- I had two options.
optional (adj)	اختياري (ليس إجباري)	- This offer is optional.

personal		
personify (v)	يجسد	- Salah personifies the values of self-dependence and perseverance. الاعتماد علي النفس والمثابرة
person (n)	شخص	- Mr Khalid is a good person.
personality (n)	شخصية	- She has got a strong personality.
personal (adj)	شخصي	- He has some personal problems
personally (adv)	بشكل شخصي	- Personally, I don't want to go out.
simple		
simplify (v)	يبسط	- A good teacher can simplify complicated information.
simplicity (n)	البساطة	- I like the simplicity of your style اسلوب.
simple (adj)	بسيط	- I like your simple style.
simply (adv)	ببساطة	- This essay is simply very good.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a great deal of	كثير من	distant past	الماضي البعيد
as part of	كجزء من	in general,	بصفة عامة
at all	علي الإطلاق	light food	طعام خفيف
at the weekends	في العطلات الأسبوعية	likely to	اكثر غرضة لـ/ من الممكن أن
be careful about	يحرص علي	small changes to	تغييرات صغيرة في

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

come from	ياتي من	help with	يساعد في
decide on	يختار / يحدد	relate to	يتعلق بـ
expect ... to	يتوقع من ... ان	start with	يبدا بـ
find out (about)	يكتشف (عن)	think about	يفكر في

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

fried - grilled

- **fried (adj)** مقلي / مُحمَّر (في الزيت)
 - She likes fried potatoes.
- **grilled (adj)** مشوي (في شواية أو علي الفحم)
 - I like grilled fish.

optional - free

- **optional (adj)** اختياري (ليس إجباري)
 - This question is optional. You don't have to answer it.
- **free (adj)** مجاني (بدون مقابل)
 - The drinks are free on Fridays only.
- **free (adj)** حُرّ (غير محبوس أو مقيد)
 - I want to hear your free opinion.
- **free (adj)** متفرغ (غير مشغول)
 - We can meet at the weekend. We both will be free.

personal – private - public

- **personal (adj)** شخصي (يخص الحياة الشخصية للفرد)
 - Don't ask a lot of personal questions. People don't like to talk about that.
- **private (adj)** خاص (غير عام - لا تريد إطلاع الآخرين عليه)
 - He goes to work in his private car. (تخصه هو / ملكه)
 - She doesn't want to discuss her private life with you. (تخصها هي)
- **public (adj)** عام
 - Mass media affect public opinion.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "I find this question very difficult." This means that the question is for me.

 a. confusing b. confused c. easy d. familiar

2. Hot pepper has a strong taste." The adjective 'strong' in this sentence is antonymous with

a. gentle b. sweet c. powerful d. mighty

3. "You have to respect the law." In this sentence, 'respect' can be replaced by

a. disobey b. break c. scorn d. obey

4. "She shows much respect to her husband." The word 'respect' can be replaced by

a. disrespect b. regard c. rudeness d. cowardly

5. The choice you have recently was not the best one.

a. fallen b. made c. served d. gone

6. It is better if a teacher simple language to explain the lesson.

a. shows b. uses c. gets d. does

7. "He looked confused and didn't know what to say." The word 'confused' here means

a. clear-headed b. confident c. puzzled d. a & b

8. is to complicated as unconventional is to traditional.

a. Simple b. Conventional c. Modern d. Novel

9. Something that is not personal is

a. public b. private c. special d. local

10. As a writer, he is famous for the of his style.

a. simplify b. simplicity c. simple d. simply

11. As a writer, he is famous for his ability to express his ideas quite

a. simplify b. simplicity c. simple d. simply

12. His strong makes him influential.

a. person b. personality c. personal d. a & b

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 21)

Can you find three ways that people show respect when they have meals together?



A. Personally, I think it's important to **respect**(1) our older **relatives**(2). When **South Korean**(3) families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The **rest**(4) of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this **shows**(5) your respect for the most important people in your family.

B. As you probably know, people in China usually use **chopsticks**(6) to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is **considered**(7) very **rude**(8) to put your chopsticks **vertically**(9) into your **bowl**(10) of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese **tradition**(11), but for me, **foreigners**(12) who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

C. In my opinion, **lunchtime**(13) isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in **Russia**(14) it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some **light**(15) food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

(1) يحترم
(2) أقارب
(3) من دولة كوريا الجنوبية
(4) بقية
(5) يُظهر
(6) عيدان الأكل
(7) يُعتبر
(8) وقح
(9) رأسيًا
(10) سلطانية
(11) تقليد
(12) أجانب
(13) وقت الغداء
(14) روسيا
(15) خفيف

Writing a professional questionnaire *(WB page 10)*

When you write a questionnaire, the type of questions you use is important. The questions should use simple language and shouldn't be difficult to understand. You don't need to repeat the question. Don't give too many options as this will confuse people. And never ask personal questions. People generally won't want to answer these. Ask one thing at a time. Make sure you don't have two questions in one, for example, 'Do you go abroad often with your friends ?' And don't ask about things which happened a long time in the past. It can be difficult for people to remember. When you are ready, decide on the best time to ask your questions - before people start to forget !

What do people eat for breakfast in your country ? *(WB page 11)*



Adam : **As your probably know**(1), people eat very different things for breakfast around the world.

Shady : Yes, they do. **In my opinion**(2), breakfast is the best meal of the day. What do people eat in other countries ?

Adam : Let's start with the UK. **It is thought that**(3) the British have the most unhealthy traditional breakfast. They have fried eggs, beans, toast and fried meat.

Shady : **Personally**(4), I wouldn't want to eat such a big meal in the morning. What about the French ?

Adam : **I understand that**(5) the French have a much smaller breakfast : just a croissant or piece of bread.

Shady : That sounds nice, but **for me**(6), I'm happy with my usual breakfast of bread, cheese and an egg ! One piece of bread would be too little.

(1) لعلك تعلم أن
(2) في رأيي
(3) يُعتقد أنّ
(4) شخصيًا
(5) إنني أدرك أن
(6) بالنسبة لي

2 Listening Texts

Tips on writing a questionnaire

(SB page 20)



When you're writing a **questionnaire**[1], you need to ask the **right**[2] questions. Some questions are a lot more **useful**[3] than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of **difference**[4].

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always **helpful**[5] to use simple language. If you use **complicated**[6] language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear **meanings**[7]. Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' **instead**[8].

Thirdly, don't have too many **options**[9]. People get **confused**[10] when there are more than six options to **choose from**[11].

Don't ask **personal**[12] questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question **at a time**[13]. Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the **distant**[14] past, especially if they are about something that was **boring**[15].

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

(1) استبيان
(2) صحيح
(3) مفيد
(4) اختلاف
(5) مفيد
(6) معقد
(7) معاني
(8) بدلًا من ذلك
(9) خيارات
(10) متحيّر
(11) يختار من بين
(12) شخصي
(13) في المرة الواحدة
(14) بعيد
(15) ممل

PART IV LANGUAGE

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Football is..... popular game in Egypt.
 a. the most b. less c. most d. more
2. This computer is not expensive as the one I bought yesterday.
 a. most b. as c. less d. more
3. She is as as Sama. They are the same height.
 a. long b. heavy c. high d. tall
4. A chair is..... comfortable than a sofa.
 a. least b. little c. the least d. less
5. This is the company in the world.
 a. more big b. biggest c. bigger d. most big
6. English is than any other language.
 a. the easiest b. more easy c. easier d. easy
7. You look much..... than yesterday.
 a. the happiest b. more happy c. happier d. happy
8. This is the test I've ever taken.
 a. hardest b. less hard c. harder d. hard
9. He is not reliable as his friend.
 a. most b. less c. more d. so
10. The food is not nearly so as it was in the past.
 a. the best b. worse c. better d. good
11. Alaa is a doctor than Omar.
 a. the best b. best c. better d. good
12. An elephant is..... as a tiger.
 a. as fast b. fastest c. faster d. not as fast
13. Bill is much..... than Tom.
 a. the most intelligent b. least intelligent
 c. more intelligent d. intelligent

14. Nobody in our company is Abdulrahman.
a. as efficient b. most efficient than
c. as efficient as d. efficient

15. Climbing is the dangerous sport in the world.
a. as b. less c. most d. more

16. He has much friends than me.
a. more b. the least c. most d. many

17. He thinks that women are divers than men.
a. worst b. the worst c. worse d. bad

18. Cars are twice as as they were a few years ago.
a. more expensive b. most expensive
c. expensive d. less expensive

19. Mr Hassan doesn't earn money as I do.
a. the most b. more c. so much d. as many

2 Special cases

20. Which is, the Nile or the Amazon?
a. as long b. the longest c. longer d. long

21. You didn't do as work as I did.
a. much b. least c. less d. more

22. The warmer the weather is, the I feel.
a. more good b. best c. better d. good

23. It is colder here than in Cairo.
a. most b. more c. much d. very

24. I don't read as books as you do.
a. many b. most c. more d. much

25. Of the four students, Bassim is
a. clever b. cleverer c. cleverest d. the cleverest

26. The white flower is pretty, but I think the red one is even
a. most pretty b. prettier c. prettiest d. pretty

27. Today is hotter than yesterday.
a. more b. less c. least d. a little

28. He was the team's player.
a. the best b. best c. better d. the better

29. It was of her to waste all her money.
a. least foolish b. foolish
c. less foolish d. more foolish than

30. Tablets are becoming popular nowadays.
a. more and more b. much and more
c. more and less d. less and more

31. That is the most beautiful scene I
a. has ever seen b. ever see
c. have ever seen d. ever seen

32. The more books she reads, ... ignorant she is.
a. more b. the less c. much d. less

33. Perhaps I looked bad this morning, but she looked
a. badly b. more badly c. the worst d. worse

34. This is my first successful book.
a. more b. most c. the most d. the least

35. This secretary seems
a. more lazy b. lazily c. lazy d. laziest

3 Check your understanding

36. Sama doesn't have as long hair as Rodayna. Whose hair is less long?
a. Sama's b. Rodayna's c. Both d. None

37. Rokaya has the same cleverness as Leen. This exactly means
a. Both Rokaya and Leen are clever
b. Neither Rokaya nor Leen is clever
c. Rokaya isn't so clever as Leen
d. Rokaya is as clever as Leen

38. I have never seen such an intelligent young man. This exactly means
a. This young man is very intelligent
b. This is the first time I have seen such an intelligent man
c. I have never seen intelligent young men before
d. I haven't ever seen intelligent young men before

39. Mohammed Omar is the tallest person at school.
This exactly means
a. Mohammed Omar is as tall as everyone at school
b. no one at school is taller than or even as tall as Mohammed Omar
c. someone at school is as tall as Mohammed Omar
d. no one at school is less tall than Mohammed Omar

40. If you go on eating a lot of rice, you will put on even more weight.
This means
a. the more rice you eat, the less weight you put on
b. the more rice you eat, the more weight you put on
c. the less rice you eat, the more weight you put on
d. the more rice you eat, the more weight you lose

41. Naglaa is clever, but Esraa is cleverer. This means
a. Esraa is less clever than Naglaa
b. Naglaa is much cleverer than Esraa
c. Naglaa isn't as clever as Esraa
d. Naglaa is as clever as Esraa

42. This is the youngest tree in my garden. What does this mean?
a. No other tree in my garden is as young as this one.
b. Only another tree in my garden is as young as this one.
c. Some other trees in my garden are as young as this one.
d. Some other trees in my garden are the same age as this one.

PART THREE | Skills & Advanced Notes



تنويه لإتقان المهارات استخدم كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

Using quantifiers as pronouns استخدام تعبيرات الكمية كضمائر

يمكن أن تُستخدم تعبيرات الكمية التالية كضمائر تشير إلي عدد أو كمية:
والضمير يعمل عمل الاسم ويحل محله ويتبعه الفعل.

→ **some – any - many - much - little - few - each - either - all - both - none** ... etc.

ex. - A ship arrived in North America with 102 passengers. Many (=Many passengers) died, but some (=some passengers) were able to grow food and survive.

ex. - A lot of students dream about joining the Faculty of Medicine, but only few (= few students) can achieve this goal.

called يُسمَّي / يُدعي

لاحظ استخدام (called) في الصيغة التالية:

→ **... noun + who / which / that + be + called = ... noun + called**

ex. - I have a little daughter who is called Sama.
= I have a little daughter called Sama.

ex. - Abdulrahman wrote a story which is called Sad Horizon.
= Abdulrahman wrote a story called Sad Horizon.

Try + (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)

• **try to + inf.** يحاول أن يفعل شئ مع بذل مجهود

ex. - I tried to answer the question.

• **try + (inf. + ing)** يجرب ليرى النتيجة (لا يوجد بها بذل أى مجهود)

ex. - Try taking an aspirin. Your headache might disappear.

let / allow + obj. مفعول ...

لاحظ الفرق بين (let - allow) في الصيغة التالية:

→ **... let + obj.** مفعول **+ inf.**

→ **... allow + obj.** مفعول **+ to + inf.**

ex. - The manager does not let anyone smoke in the office.
- The manager does not allow anyone to smoke in the office.

في حالة عدم وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing):

ex. - The manager does not allow smoking in the office.

else ايضاً / اخر

تستخدم (else) بعد أدوات الاستفهام بمعنى (أيضًا) :

• **Q.W.** اداة استفهام **+ else** ايضا ?

- Who else did you meet?
- Where else have you been?

تستخدم (else) بعد تراكيب (some - any - no - every) بمعنى (اخر) :

• **someone / anyone / something / anything + else** اخر

- Someone else is knocking on the door.
- I don't want anything else. Thank you.

كما يمكن استخدام (else) بعد (or) للتحذير :

- Do your homework or else you will be punished.

that / which is why + جملة = so + جملة لذلك

- She was very ill. That's why she stayed at home.
= She was very ill, so she stayed at home.

The + Nationalities

تستخدم (the) قبل صفات الجنسية التالية لتدل على شعب ما بصفة عامة ويتبعها فعل جمع:

- **The British / the English / the Irish / the Welsh / the Spanish / the French / the Dutch / the Swiss**
- The British are generally tradition lovers.

كما تستخدم (the) بنفس الطريقة قبل صفات الجنسية المنتهية بـ (ese) :

- **The Japanese / the Chinese/ the Sudanese**..... etc.
- The Japanese are hard-working people.

اما صفات الجنسية الأخرى فيجب ان تجمع بعد (the) لتؤدي نفس المعني:

- **The Egyptians / the Russians/ the Arabs/ the Scots/ the Turks**...etc.
- The Egyptians have a great history and a promising future.

General Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have a close friend Abdul Nasser.
 a. is called b. who is called c. called d. b & c
2. I tried him, but he refused.
 a. helping b. to help c. to helping d. help

3. I advise you to try another key. It might open the lock.
a. using b. to use c. to using d. use

4. My father doesn't allow any of us loud music at night.
a. play b. to play c. playing d. played

5. My father doesn't allow loud music at night.
a. play b. to play c. playing d. played

6. My father doesn't let any of us loud music at night.
a. play b. to play c. playing d. played

7. When I arrived home, I didn't hear the voices of my brothers and sisters. were already in bed.
a. Every b. Some c. All d. Each

8. I don't want to have pizza. I'll have something
a. else b. too c. also d. as well

9. Who did you meet at the party yesterday?
a. also b. as well c. as well as d. else

10. He was tired. That's why he went to bed early." In this context, 'That's why' can be replaced by '.....' .
a. as b. so c. also d. else

11. The French people who like fashion and beauty.
a. has b. is c. are d. was

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

Read the following, then answer the questions: (محافظة كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٣)

The Chinese invented paper and they were also the first to use paper banknotes for money. Before paper notes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders had used metal coins. These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on pieces of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the money with someone they trusted. Instead, they carried a piece of paper which said how much money they had. The trader could use this paper note to promise anyone that they could pay for the goods that they wanted to buy.

UNIT 2

People in Europe only started to use paper banknotes in the seventeenth century. In England, the king needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with **them** and gave handwritten notes saying how much money they had left. The notes said, "I promise to pay the **bearer** the sum of ..." and you can still see the same words on English notes today. Bank workers continued to handwrite notes until 1853, when the first notes were printed. The paper used for banknotes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make the notes stronger than normal paper, most banknotes only last for about two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic notes in 1983. However, the first plastic notes in Egnland were not very successful because the ink came off the notes onto people's hands! Five years later, in 1988, Australia successfully used plastic notes for the first time. Today, many countries use plastic notes, which are stronger than paper notes, last longer and are harder to copy.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Why did Chinese traders first use notes instead of coins ?
 a. Because the coins were too heavy to carry.
 b. Because coins had holes in them.
 c. Because traders could not trust everyone.
 d. Because they preferred paper.
2. Why did banks in England first want people to leave their money with them?
 a. The King needed money to fight a war.
 b. People preferred notes to coins.
 c. People wanted their money to be safe.
 d. Banks opened for the first time.
3. Why were notes handwritten until 1853 ?
 a. It was cheaper this way.
 b. It was faster this way.
 c. There was not any technology to print them before this time.
 d. It was hard to copy the handwriting.
4. What is the main idea of the text ?
 a. Why we use money.
 b. Why we use banks.
 c. The history of paper banknotes.
 d. The history of trade.

5. What does the underlined word **them** refer to ?

a. The King's men. b. The men in France.

c. The people who had the money. d. The banks.

6. What does the word bearer mean ?

a. Someone who works in a bank.

b. A Chinese trader.

c. Someone who carries something.

d. Someone who works for the King.

7. Where were paper banknotes first used ?

a. In China. b. In Europe. c. In England. d. In Australia.

8. When were paper banknotes first used ?

a. In the seventh century. b. In the seventeenth century.

c. In 1988. d. In 1983.

2 Writing Tips – introducing personal opinion and general belief

* التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي والمعتقدات المُتعارف عليها :

عند التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية:

- **Personally, I think that +** جملة ... — شخصيا (أعتقد أن) ...
 - Personally, I think that he will win the race.
- **I understand that ... but for me +** جملة ... — إنني أدرك أن ... لكن بالنسبة لي ...
 - I understand that England is a great country, but for me Egypt is the greatest country ever.
- **In my opinion, +** جملة ... — في رأيي ...
 - In my opinion, education is the best investment استثمار in the country's future.

عند التعبير عن المعتقدات السائدة يمكن الإستعانة بالأساليب التالية:

- **It's believed / thought that +** جملة ... — يُعتَقد أن ...
 - It's believed (thought) that the Ancient Egyptians discovered America!
- **As you probably know, +** جملة ... — لعلك تعلم أن ...
 - As you probably know, no one can travel abroad without having a passport.

UNIT 2

Model Essay

* **Write an essay of about 180 words about the "the ideal food" :**

The ideal food

What is your opinion about ideal food? Does it mean delicious food? Does it mean healthy food? Without any doubt, the answer is both. The ideal food is both delicious and healthy. However, it is important for food to be healthy more than being delicious.

What are the qualities of healthy food? There are different qualities of healthy food. The first of these qualities is that it must contain everything the body needs. A healthy diet has the right amounts of protein, fats and carbohydrates. It should also have all the vitamins that the body needs.

Healthy food must be the right amount of everything. Too much food will surely lead to health problems like putting on weight. Too little food will lead to weakness and food-deficiency نقص problems. The rule is: Get enough of everything.

Food needs to be delicious. Food is one of the enjoyments of life. However, don't let your love for delicious food make you forget that food must be healthy in the first place. If tasty of food makes you enjoy your meal, your health makes you enjoy your life. To sum up, ideal food is healthy, delicious and of the right amount.

3 Translation الترجمة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Food shortage is one of the most important problems that the world is expected to face in the next few years. That's why scientists are working on innovative ways to overcome it. (أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)

a. مشكلة المجاعة في العالم من المشكلات الهامة التي تواجه العالم ويقف العلماء أمامها عاجزون عن إيجاد طريقة مبتكرة لتغلّب عليها.

b. نقص الغذاء أحد أهم المشكلات التي من المتوقع أن يواجهها العالم في السنوات القليلة القادمة، لهذا يعمل العلماء على إيجاد طُرَق مبتكرة للتغلب عليها.

c. نقص الموارد الغذائية من المشكلات التي تواجه العالم اليوم وفي السنوات القليلة القادمة ولذلك يحاول العلماء التغلب عليها بعدة طُرق تقليدية.

d. هناك نقص شديد في الغذاء سوف يواجهه العالم في المستقبل القريب ولا يستطيع العلماء إيجاد حلول له بأي من الطرق الجديدة.

2. Poverty is one of the biggest challenges to the developing countries where people can't fulfill their basic necessities of life.

a. الفقر هو أحد أكبر التغيرات التي تواجه البلدان النامية حيث لا يستطيع الناس تلبية احتياجاتهم الأساسية في الحياة.

b. الفقر أكبر التحديات التي تواجه البلدان النامية حيث لا يستطيع الناس تلبية احتياجاتهم الأساسية في الحياة.

c. الفقر هو أحد أكبر التحديات التي تواجه البلدان النامية حيث لا يستطيع الناس تلبية احتياجاتهم الأساسية في الحياة.

d. الفقر هو أحد أكبر التحديات التي تواجه البلدان النامية حيث يستطيع الناس تلبية احتياجاتهم الأساسية في الحياة

3. Despite the challenges the Egyptian economy is facing, there is determination to overcome them. The economy is expected to witness a growth in the following years.

a. على الرغم من التحديات التي يواجهها الاقتصاد المصري، إلا أن هناك إصراراً على التغلب عليها. من المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد زراعة في السنوات القادمة.

b. على الرغم من التغيرات التي يواجهها الاقتصاد المصري، إلا أن هناك إصراراً على التغلب عليها. من المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نمواً في السنوات القادمة.

c. بسبب التحديات التي يواجهها الاقتصاد المصري، هناك إصراراً على التغلب عليها. من المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نمواً في السنوات القادمة.

d. على الرغم من التحديات التي يواجهها الاقتصاد المصري، إلا أن هناك إصراراً على التغلب عليها. ومن المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نمواً في السنوات القادمة.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. لقد تأثر العالم بأسره بالحرب الروسية الأوكرانية خاصة في الجانب الاقتصادي، فأسعار المواد الغذائية والوقود وغيرها من السلع ارتفعت بشكل جلولي. (نجم حمادي ٢٠٢٣)

a. The whole world affected by the Russian-Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other goods went crazy.

b. The whole world has affected by the Russian-Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other goods went crazy.

c. The whole world was affected by the Russian-Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other goods went crazy.

d. The whole world affected by the Russian-Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other good went crazy.

٢. الماء أساس حياة الإنسان والحيوان والنبات، واستخدامه لا يقتصر على الشرب فقط بل هو أساس الأمن الغذائي للإنسان والحيوان، لذلك لابد من استخدامه بعناية كبيرة.

السؤال ٢٣

a. Water is the basis of human, animal and planet life, and its use is not limited to drinking only, but is the basis of food security for humans and animals. Therefore, it must be used with great care.

b. Water is the basis of human, animal and plant life, and its use is not limited to drinking only, but it is also the basis of food security for humans and animals. Therefore, it must be used with great care.

c. Water is the basis of humane, animal and plant life; its use is not limited to drinking only, but is the basis of food safety for humans and animals. Therefore, it must be used with great care.

d. Water is the basis of human, animal and plant life, and its use is not limited to cooking only, but is the basis of food security for humans and animals. However, it must be used with great care.

٣. لقد بدأت حضارة الإنسان واستقراره مع اكتشافه للزراعة، فالزراعة دفعت الإنسان ليعيش في مكان واحد فظهر مفهوم المجتمع ولنشأت الدولة.

a. Man's civilization and stability began with his discovery of agriculture. Agriculture promoted man to live in one place, thus the concept of society and state appeared.

b. Men's civilization and stability began with his discovery of agriculture. Agriculture promoted men to live in one place, thus the understanding of society and states appeared.

c. Man's civilization and stability began with his invention of agriculture. Agriculture promoted man to live in one place, thus the concept of society and states appeared.

d. Man's civilization and stability began with his discovery of agriculture. Agriculture promoted man to live in one place, thus the understanding of society and state appeared.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

amount

• **amount (of) (n)** كمية / مقدار (من شيء ما)

- Parents should increase the amount of time they spend with their children.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- a considerable amount of كَمّ معقول من
- a small / tiny amount of كَمّ ضئيل من
- no amount of ... can / will مهما زادت كمية ... فلن
- No amount of medicine will help you unless you control what you eat.
- any amount of ما يكفي من
- The hospital doesn't have any amount of oxygen cylinders اسطوانات.

• **amount (ed) (v) + to + noun** ما يقرب من / ما يصل إلي حد

- He spent what amounted to three months doing the research.

celebrate

• **celebrate (d) (v)** يحتفل بـ (بدون حرف جر)

- We celebrated Sama's birthday last Friday.

• **celebrated = famous (adj)** مشهور

- Professor Magdi Yacoub is a celebrated heart surgeon.

• **celebration (n)** احتفال

- The New Year celebration was wonderful.

• **celebrity (n)** شخص مشهور / نجم (اسم يُعد)

- Messi is a sporting celebrity.

• **celebrity (n)** الشهرة (اسم لا يُعد)

- Celebrity isn't all good. Some famous people suffer from it.

• **celebratory (adj)** احتفالي

- I gave a celebratory dinner for the success of the deal. الصفقة

2

occasion

• **occasion (n)** مناسبة (اجتماعية أو احتفال)

- I have met you on several occasions before.

• **occasion (for) (n)** وقت مناسب لـ

- When I finished the deal, I knew it was the occasion for celebrating it with my family.

• **occasion = cause / reason (n)** سبب (لا تُعد بهذا المعني)

- I have my own occasion to refuse his offer.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **If (the) occasion arises** إذا استدعت الضرورة

- If occasion arises when I am in Cairo, I will need to borrow some money from you.

• **on occasion** أحيانًا (في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

- On occasion, I go for a walk by the Nile.

• **on the occasion of** بمناسبة

- On the occasion of his success, he was given a BMW as a present.

• **occasion (ed) (v)** يسبب حدوث

- Our team's great performance has occasioned us real happiness.

• **occasional (adj)** غير منتظم / غرضي /قليل

- Real friends usually forgive يغفر your occasional mistakes.

• **occasionally (adv)** بين الحين والآخر - قلّما

- My old friends and I meet very occasionally.

traditional

• **traditional = conventional (adj)** تقليدي - نابع من التقاليد

- He still follows the traditional family values.
- In the countryside, some people still have a traditional way of life.

• **tradition - traditions (n)** تقليد - تقاليد

- He still follows the traditions and values of family life.

• **in the tradition of** على نهج / على خطى / متشابه فى الاسلوب

- This man is a politician in the tradition of John kennedy.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

اجاب عليه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. " You have no occasion to be sad. You have got the full mark." The word 'occasion' in this sentence means
 a. reason b. event c. influence d. a & c
2. "He enjoys his celebrity." In this sentence, 'celebrity' is a synonym of
 a. famous b. star c. popularity d. celebrated
3. When I saw him counting a lot of money, I knew it was the best to ask him to pay back my money.
 a. celebrity b. event c. celebration d. occasion
4. Although it wasn't his fault, he gave what an apology.
 a. amount in b. amounted to c. amount of d. no amount
5. By, the bride العروسة wears a white dress.
 a. celebration b. celebrity c. tradition d. traditional

Advanced Exercise on Language

اجاب عليه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You can swim as fast as
 a. hers b. his c. him d. he
2. people are entering the competition this year than last year.
 a. Least b. Little c. A few more d. A few
3. It is usual for an apple to taste
 a. worst b. badly c. good d. well
4. Don't go any That dog might be dangerous.
 a. close b. closer c. the closest d. closet
5. Rodayna is quieter than
 a. me is b. I am c. am I d. mine

Test on Unit 2

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

تدرب
التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب
اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the correct answers from a , b , c or d :

1. Different festivals are in various nations with different meals and folk songs. (نشرين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. happened b. done c. celebrated d. performed
2. The club members usually get when they have a serious problem to discuss. (مقاطعة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. on b. over c. up d. together
3. A/An is a time when something special happens. (البشواي الثانوية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. extract b. bandage c. custom d. occasion
4. "Football is popular all over the world." The synonym of 'popular' is (اسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية للغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. special b. private c. common d. personal
5. If something is, you have no right to try to know about it.
 a. special b. personal c. common d. public
6. You have to pay your debt now. It is the only available.
 a. option b. tradition c. questionnaire d. event
7. My villa is big, but yours is
 a. the biggest b. bigger c. so big d. more big
8. The white blouse is nice, but I think the pink one is even
 a. less nice b. nicer c. nicest d. nice
9. Today is colder than yesterday.
 a. more b. less c. bit d. a bit
10. He was our school's head teacher.
 a. the best b. best c. better d. the better
11. It was of her to stop arguing with him.
 a. wisest b. wise c. less wise d. more wise
12. Smartphones are getting popular.
 a. more and more b. much and more
 c. more and less d. less and more
13. The more you eat, ... fit you get.
 a. the most b. the less c. most d. the more
14. This is his second successful film.
 a. more b. most c. the most d. the least
15. Not all children are naughty some quiet.
 a. look b. looks c. are looking d. looked

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

What makes rice popular

It is thought that rice is eaten by more than half of the world's population. What makes it so popular? The rice plant grows in every continent in the world except for Australia. It is not expensive to grow and it is full of important vitamins, which make you healthy. It also has a lot of carbohydrates to give you energy.

Another reason is so popular is that there is not just one type of rice: there are 40,000 different types. It is perhaps not surprising, then, that rice can be cooked in many different ways.

In Egypt, people love rice dishes such as Rozz Me-ammer, which is rice with butter and chicken. In Europe, rice is the main ingredient in Spain's famous Paella, which is a mixture of rice, vegetables, and meat or fish. In Italy, they love Risotto, a rice dish with cheese, olive oil and meat or vegetables. Even in Britain, where rice does not grow, the most popular take-away food is hot Indian curries with rice, or Chinese food with rice.

People love rice in Asia. In Thailand, if you want to ask a person if they have eaten, you ask, "Have you had rice yet?" In China and Korea, the word for food is the same as the word for rice. In Iran, the best cooks are the people who can cook the best rice!

Rice is not only delicious but it is also healthy. In Japan, many people eat Sushi: small balls of rice which people often eat with fish. Traditionally, the rice was used to help **preserve** the fish.

It is believed that more and more people will eat rice in the future and it will probably continue to be one of the world's most famous types of food.

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:**

16. Which of the following is not a reason that rice is very popular?
 a. It is not expensive to grow
 b. There are many ways to eat it
 c. You can buy it in any shop
 d. It is healthy

17. Which rice dish is spicy?
 a. Pella
 b. Rozz Me-ammer
 c. Risotto
 d. Curry

18. The word for rice and food is probably the same in China and Korea because
 a. rice is part of all meals
 b. people have to eat rice
 c. there are not many words in these language
 d. you can only buy rice in the shops

19. The underlined word "**preserve**" means that rice
a. tastes better
b. lasts for a longer time than usual
c. is cooked
d. becomes salty

20. Rice is popular in Britain although it is
a. cheap
b. expensive
c. not grown there
d. healthy

21. Rice recipes are in different countries in the world.
a. exactly the same
b. different
c. typical
d. identical

22. It can be inferred يستنتج from the passage that rice is
a. not a tasty dish
b. a difficult dish to be prepared
c. easy to be cooked
d. an uncommon dish

23. Rice has lots of
a. fats
b. butter
c. protein
d. carbohydrates

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:
We need to pay more attention to health and wellness, whether in our homes, our workplaces or our community.

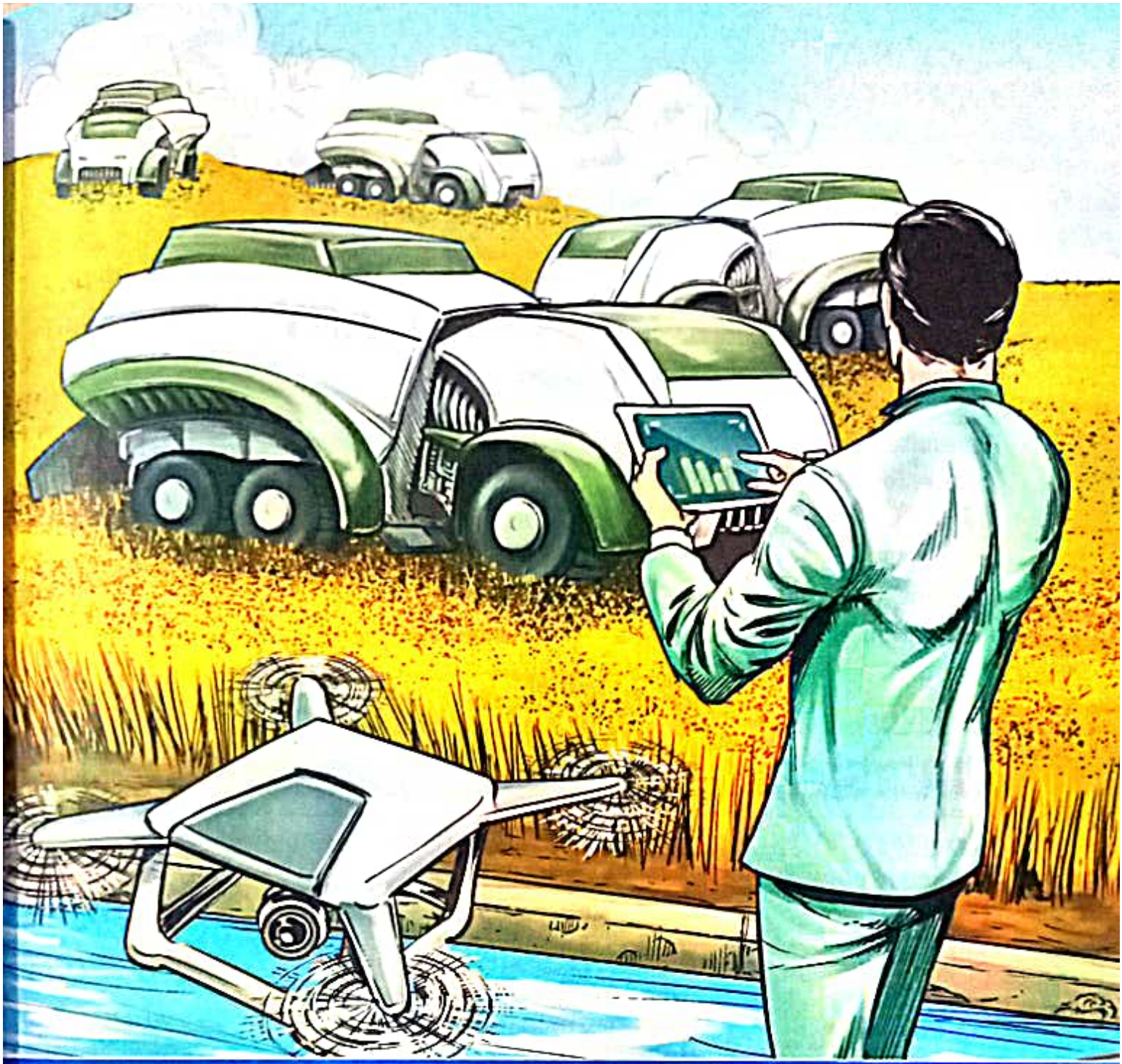
a. نحن بحاجة إلى أن نولي الصحة والعافية المزيد من الاهتمام، سواء في منازلنا أو أماكن عملنا أو مجتمعنا.
b. نحن بحاجة إلى أن نولي الصحة المزيد من الاهتمام، سواء في منازلنا أو أماكن عملنا أو مجتمعنا.
c. نحن بحاجة إلى أن نولي الصحة والعافية المزيد من الاهتمام، سواء في منازلنا أو أماكن علمنا أو مجتمعنا.
d. نحن بحاجة إلى أن نولي الصحة والعافية المزيد من الاهتمام، سواء في منازلنا أو أماكن عملنا أو جمعياتنا.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:
يجب علي الحكومة محاربة الاحتكار لانه يؤدي إلي زيادة الأسعار. (أبشواي ٢٠١٣)

a. The government must be fight monopoly because it increases prices.
b. The government should war monopoly because it decreases prices.
c. The government must fight monopoly because it increases prices.
d. The government should fight control because it increases prices.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :
"How to eat more healthily"

.....
.....
.....



UNIT

3 The future of food

SB pages 26 : 35 WB pages 14 : 19

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
 Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming
- **Writing :**
 Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future, writing a summary
- **Listening :**
 An interview with an expert on sustainable farming
- **Speaking :**
 Speculating about the future
- **Language :**
 Will / Be going to. Future continuous
- **Life skills :**
 Problem solving

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 26 : 29 WB pages 14 & 15



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture (n)	[علم] الزراعة	percent (adj - adv)	بالمائة [٪]
billion (n)	مليار	produce (d) (v)	يُنتِج
crop (n)	محصول غذائي	produce (n)	مُنتَج زراعي
earth (n)	كوكب الأرض - تراب	production (n)	إنتاج
farming (n)	الزراعة	source (n)	مصدر
innovation (n)	ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	sustainable (adj)	مُستدام / دائم- صديق للبيئة
livestock (n)	حيوانات المزارع	variety (n)	تشكيلة - التنوع - نوع / صنف
million (n)	مليون		

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

cause (d) (v/n)	سبب - يُسبِّب	involve (d) (v)	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يُضمِّن
change (d) (n - v)	تغيير - تَغيُّر - يتغير	island (n)	جزيرة
chemicals (n)	المواد الكيميائية	keep - kept - kept (v)	يرعي - يستمر في
climate (n)	المناخ	land (n)	المساحة - الأرض اليابسة
create (d) (v)	يخلق - يبتكر	level (n/adj)	مُستوٍي - مُستوٍي
destroy (ed) (v)	يُدمِّر - يُخرِّب	mention (ed) (v)	يَذكُر - يتحدث عن
dry (adj)	جاف	organisation (n)	مؤسسة - مُنظَّمة
education (n)	تعليم	project (n)	مشروع
effect (n)	تاثير - أثر	proposal (n)	اقتراح - عرض
electric (adj)	كهربي	rainforest (n)	غابة استوائية
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	real (adj)	حقيقي
elsewhere (adv)	في مكان اخر	remove (d) (v)	يزيل
energy (n)	الطاقة	researcher (n)	باحث
environment (n)	البيئة	run - ran - run (v)	يدير / يشرف علي
extraordinary (adj)	استثنائي	save (d) (v)	يُنقِذ - يدّخر/يوفّر
gas (n)	غاز	seriously (adv)	بشدة - بشكل خطير
		solution (n)	حل

grow - grew - grown (v)	ينمو - يزرع	southern (adj)	جنوبي
growing (adj)	متزايد - نامي	space (n)	مساحة - مُتّسع - الفضاء
guest (n)	ضيف	speculate (d) (v)	يتكهّن - يتنبأ - يتفكر
increase (d) (v)	يزداد - زيادة	stuff (n)	أغراض / حوائج
invest (ed) (v)	يستثمر	vehicles (n)	مركبات

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
agriculture (n) (علم) الزراعة	the practice نشاط or science of farming
crop (n) محصول غذائي	a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food
earth (n) كوكب الأرض	the planet كوكب that we live on
farming (n) الزراعة	the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm
innovation (n) ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	(the introduction of الإتيان بـ) new ideas or methods
livestock (n) حيوانات المزارع	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm
produce (n) انتاج زراعي	food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm to be sold ليتم بيعها
production (n) انتاج	the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities
source (n) مصدر	a thing, place, activity etc. that you get something from
sustainable (adj.) مُستدام - صديق للبيئة	- able to continue without causing damage to the environment - able to continue for a long time
variety (n) تشكيلة - التنوع	a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way

UNIT 3

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The farmer keeps a lot of such as goats and sheep. (شرق الشيوخ - ٢٠٢٢)
 a. agriculture b. livestock c. innovation d. crops
2. The ministry of agriculture does its best to produce a wider of food. (أبو المطامير - ٢٠٢٢)
 a. various b. vary c. variety d. verify
3. Brazil's coffee begins to be harvested in May. (التشيوم - تلتية - ٢٠٢٢)
 a. export b. import c. crop d. income
4. does not only mean growing plants, but it includes keeping animals as well.
 a. Farming b. Cultivation c. Hydroponics d. Production
5. Life on the depends mainly on the energy we get from the sun.
 a. floor b. earth c. ground d. soil
6. The state hopes to achieve economic growth which can eventually lead to prosperity. (أرشيد - ٢٠٢٢)
 a. sustainable b. produced c. unreliable d. solvable
7. The whole food chain is affected by the overuse of chemicals in (قاصر - ٢٠٢٢)
 a. variety b. livestock c. agriculture d. innovation
8. Cancer destroys the body's ability to white blood cells. (التشيوم - ٢٠٢٢)
 a. produce b. read c. deserve d. frown
9. Food went up after the company bought new equipment for its factory. (الخميم - ٢٠٢٢)
 a. construction b. reduction c. protection d. production
10. The agent refuses to say anything about his of information. (الوحي - ٢٠٢٢)
 a. author b. source c. resource d. production
11. Farmers sell their fresh to city dwellers شغان.
 a. farming b. farmland c. produce d. agriculture
12. Without, humanity would never have access to modern technologies. (شرق المحلة - ٢٠٢٣)
 a. inspection b. deviation c. innovation d. aviation

2 Important vocabulary

13. Do you know what volcanoes to happen? (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. reasons b. results c. causes d. makes
14. How do you think you will put all that in this small bag?
 (القاهرة - أم كلثوم الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. stuff b. staff c. stiff d. stuffs
15. His that the system should be changed was rejected.
 (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
 a. propose b. proposal c. designation d. creation
16. The government a lot of money in farming and education to develop them. (أحمد حواشى المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
 a. speculates b. spends c. invests d. protects
17. The test will answering questions about a paragraph.
 (بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. consist b. exclude c. involve d. solve
18. It is necessary to sustainable food production methods.
 a. fight b. cut down c. create d. remove
19. He is not sure about what will happen. He just
 a. speculates b. protects c. involves d. makes sure
20. I think that modern farming methods are the best to the food shortage نقص problem.
 a. gap b. type c. investment d. solution
21. He is too young to this large company. He doesn't have enough experience.
 a. run b. heal c. involve d. introduce
22. He does a/an amount of work in a short time. No one else can achieve that.
 a. usual b. normal c. ordinary d. extraordinary
23., where it is usually rainy and hot, have a variety of wildlife.
 a. Seaweeds b. Deserts c. Rainforests d. Rainfall
24. The papers you are looking for aren't in this safe خزينة . They might be in the office.
 a. where b. elsewhere c. where else d. b & c
25. In cities, there's not much to grow crops.
 a. farm b. place c. environment d. space

3 Definitions

26. is the practice or business of growing crops or keeping animals on a farm.
a. Algae b. Farming c. Innovation d. Agriculture

27. is the practice or science of farming.
a. Algae b. Farming c. Innovation d. Agriculture

28. A is a thing, place, activity etc. that you get something from.
a. production b. source c. seaweed d. produce

29. is (the introduction of) new ideas or methods.
a. Algae b. Farming c. Innovation d. Agriculture

30. are animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
a. Planets b. Livestock c. Crops d. Hydroponics

31. The noun means a lot of things of the same type that are different from each other in some way.
a. variety b. farmland c. vegetarian d. hydroponics

32. is the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities
a. Production b. Source c. Seaweed d. Produce

33. is food or other things that have been grown or produced on a farm to be sold.
a. Flour b. Source c. Seaweed d. Produce

34. A/An is a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food.
a. earth b. livestock c. crop d. hydroponics

35. The is the planet that we live on.
a. earth b. soil c. floor d. ground

36. means able to continue for a long time.
a. Innovated b. Various c. Urban d. Sustainable

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

get	worse يزداد سوء	keep	livestock يربي حيوانات مزارع
	smaller يقل - يصغر	make	money from يكسب مال من
	(even) hotter يزداد سخونة		small changes يُحدث تغييرات طفيفة
	warmer يصبح أدفأ		seawater safe to drink يجعل ماء البحر صالحًا للشرب
introduce	a problem يطرح مشكلة/يسبب مشكلة	start	fires يشعل نيران / حرائق
		tell	the difference يَذكر الفرق

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
extraordinary	استثنائي	amazing, incredible, exceptional
innovative	مبتكر	innovatory, original, novel
involve	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يَضمُن	include
keep	يحتفظ بـ	save, retain, hold on to
keep	يبقي / يظل / يستمر في	go on, carry on, persist in
keep	يفي بـ - يُنفِّذ	obey, fulfil, comply with
keep	يُرَبّي - يُدَجّن	raise, look after
keep	يدير - يملك ويعمل في	manage, run
productive	مفيد - مُثمِر	useful, constructive, profitable - fruitful , rewarding
productive	خصب	fertile , fruitful , rich
run	يدير / يشرف علي	be in charge of, operate, manage , control
sustain	يصون - يحافظ علي	maintain
variety	التنوع	diversity
variety	نوع / صنف	sort, type, kind, class, category

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة		Antonym (= Opposite) العكس	
extraordinary	استثنائي	ordinary, usual	عادي - مألوف
involve	يشتمل على - يتضمن - يُضمّن	exclude	يستثني - يستبعد
keep	يحتفظ بـ - يبقي علي	lose, throw away, get rid of	يفقد - يتخلص من
keep	يبقي / يظل / يداوم علي	give up, stop	يمتنع أو يقلع عن
keep	يفي بـ - ينفّذ	disobey, break	يخالف - يحنث بـ
productive	مُنتج - مُثمر	unproductive, fruitless	عقيم - غير مُجدي
productive	خصب	sterile, barren	عقيم - مُجدِب
sustainable	مستدام	unsustainable	غير دائم - متقطّع
variety	التنوع	uniformity, similarity	انتظام - تماثل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

agriculture	
agriculture (n) (علم) الزراعة	- He is an expert in agriculture.
agriculturalist (n) خبير في الزراعة	- He is an agriculturalist.
agricultural (adj) زراعي	- He is an agricultural expert.
innovative	
innovate (d) (v) يخترع - يبتكر	- He is able to innovate new techniques.
innovation (n) ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	- He is good at the innovation of new techniques.
innovator (n) مبتكر / مُخترع	- He is the innovator of several new techniques.
innovative (adj) مبتكر	- He came up with several innovative techniques.
productive	
produce (d) (v) يُنتج	- We produce several crops on our farms.
production (n) إنتاج	- Our production will increase if we use modern technology.

product (n) مُنتج (مفرد منتجات)	- Our high-quality products are sold all over the world.
producer (n) مُنتِج	- Producers of children's clothes earn a lot of money.
produce (n) النتاج الزراعي	- Milk and cheese and other produce are sold in nearby towns.
productive (adj) مُنتِج - مُثمِر	- The apple trees on this farm are really productive.
sustainable	
sustain (ed) (v) يصون - يحافظ على البيئة	- The new law will sustain economic growth.
sustainability (n) الاستدامة - الحفاظ على البيئة	- The new law will support the sustainability of economic growth.
sustainable (adj) مُستدام / دائم- صديق للبيئة	- The new law will make economic growth sustainable.
sustainably (adv) بشكل مُستدام - بشكل غير ضار بالبيئة	- The new law will support economic growth more sustainably.
variety	
vary (ied) (v) يتنوع - يختلف	- Flowers vary in colour and size.
variety (n) تشكيلة - التنوع - نوع / صنف	- Flowers are available in a variety of colours and sizes.
various (adj) عديد - متنوع	- We plant flowers of various colours and sizes.
variable (adj) قابل للتغيُر - متقلب / غير ثابت	- Electric fans have variable speed levels.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

about thirty percent smaller	اصغر بنسبة ٣٠٪ تقريبًا	get cut down	يتم قطعها
according to	طبقًا لـ / حسب	growing world	العالم المتزايد
as a result,	نتيجة لذلك - لذلك	instead of	بدلًا من
by 2030	بحلول عام ٢٠٣٠	on the island	على الجزيرة
climate change	التغير المناخي	So what?	وماذا في ذلك؟
expert on/in/at	خبير في	solutions to/for	حلول لـ
for years to come	لسنوات قادمة	sustainable solutions	حلول مُستدامة
		welcome to	أهلًا بكم في

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

continue to	يستمر في	live on	يعيش على / في
cut down	يقطع / يجتث - يقلل	look after	يرعي / يعتني بـ
deal with	يتعامل مع - يواجه	look for	يبحث عن
feel about	يشعر تجاه	persuade … to	يقنع ... أن
fill in	يملأ (استمارة مثلًا)	remove … from	يزيل ... من
heat … up	يُسخِّن - يُسخَّن	think about/of	يفكر في
increase … by	يزيد ... بنسبة	work with	يعمل مع / في
learn about	يتعلم عن		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

agriculture - farming

• **agriculture (n)** علم زراعة النباتات ورعايتها
- Mr Gamil studied agriculture at Ain Shams University.

• **agriculture (n)** النشاط الزراعي
- In Egypt, agriculture should be one of the main sources of national income.

• **farming (n)** الزراعة (زراعة المحاصيل و تربية الحيوانات في المزارع)
- Sheep farming is common in Australia.

cause - reason + for/that/why

• **cause of + n / (inf. + ing)** السبب في (أن)
- I want to know the cause of your objection. (+ noun)

• **reason for + n / (inf. + ing)** السبب في (أن)
- I want to know the reason for your objection. (+ noun)

• **reason why/that + subj. + v** السبب في (أن)
- I want to know the reason why/that you object. (+ sentence)

(grow) as a transitive or intransitive verb

لاحظ الفرق في المعني بين (grow) كفعل لازم (بدون مفعول) أو كفعل مُتعدي (يتبعه مفعول):

• **grow + no object** ينمو - يكبر - يزداد (وكلهزا ما يتبعه صفة)
- Rainforests grow in areas with heavy rain. تنمو
- When children grow old, they start to depend on themselves. يكبر
- The sheep on the farm grew in number. ازدادت

لاحظ ان :

• **grow + adj.** صفة **= become**

- The boy grew tall. = The boy became tall.

• **grow + object**

- Farmers grow food. يزرع

involve - contain - consist of

• **involve (d) = include (v)** يشتمل علي/يتضمن

- The job of a secretary involves answering phone calls.

= The job of a secretary includes answering phone calls.

• **involve (d) = include (v)** يَضمّن/يُدرج / يضيف (إلي)

- Mr Omar tries to involve all students in the discussion.

= Mr Omar tries to include all students in the discussion.

• **involve (d) = require (v)** يتطلّب/يستلزم

- Coming first involves too much hard work.

= Coming first requires too much hard work.

• **contain (ed) (v)** يحتوي علي (شيء بداخله أو ضمن مكوناته)

- This file contains my personal photos.
- I can't drink my tea because it contains a lot of sugar.

• **consist (ed) of** يتكوّن من (+ المكونات)

- My flat consists of three bedrooms, a reception, two bathrooms and an American kitchen.

livestock - cattle

• **livestock (n)** حيوانات المزارع (تأخذ فعل مفرد او جمع)

- Livestock is sold in this market on Wednesday.
- Livestock are sold in this market on Wednesday.

• **cattle (n)** الماشية من أبقار وعجول (تأخذ فعل جمع)

- Cattle are sold in this market on Wednesday.

source - resource

• **source (n)** مصدر (نحصل منه علي شيء ما) - منبع - سبب

- Journalists usually keep their sources secret. مصدر
- Ethiopia is an important source of the River Nile. منبع
- Your success is the source of our happiness. سبب

UNIT 3

• **resource (n)** مَوْرِد (مفرد موارد) - مَرجِع (مصدر تعليمي او معلوماتي)

- Egypt has a lot of natural resources. موارد
- This book is an important resource for language teachers. مرجع

staff - stuff

• **staff** هيئة العاملين / طاقم العمل (في مؤسسة / شركة)

- The new manager is meeting the staff for the first time tomorrow.

• **stuff** حوائج / لوازم / أشياء / اغراض (كلمة لا تُعدّ)

- I don't like the stuff you are eating. What is it called?
- The shop sells all kinds of stuff.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The weather got
 a. annoyed b. even hotter
 c. stuff d. billions of pounds
2. This forest has 50 varieties of insects." The word 'variety' in this sentence is a synonym of
 a. formality b. sort c. uniformity d. uniform
3. He kept his promise. The verb 'kept' in this sentence is antonymous with
 a. broke b. followed c. fulfilled d. complied with
4. "He runs a supermarket." This means he it.
 a. races b. speeds c. manages d. works
5. Which of the following gives the meaning of 'keeps' in: "He keeps livestock?"
 a. raises b. rises c. carries on d. includes
6. "He kept looking at the sea in silence." 'Kept' here means '.....'.
 a. gave up b. went on c. saved d. stopped
7. "Salah is an extraordinary player." This means Salah is a/an player.
 a. amazed b. amazing c. credible d. ordinary
8. My uncle is expert keeping livestock.
 a. of b. from c. in d. to

9. We need urgent solutions these problems.
a. from b. to c. as d. about

10. This company much money from electronics. (السنبلاوين ٢٠٢٢)
a. did b. gave c. made d. spent

11. The crops on our farm are watered directly from the Nile.
a. done b. taken c. told d. grown

12. The manager involved him in his new staff. The antonym of the word "involved" in this sentence is (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
a. excluded b. included c. added d. recommended

13. We need to work hard for many years to rebuild our country.
a. come b. comes c. has come d. to come

14. Cutting down rainforests will make the climate heat (أحمد موافى المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)
a. in b. out c. up d. down

15. The population of Egypt increased about 2% last year. (بسيون – ناصر الثقوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
a. off b. by c. of d. in

16. The interviewer asked me to fill the application form. (الشرقية – اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
a. in b. down c. up d. on

17. It is a necessity to stop cutting trees in forests.
a. up b. down c. for d. to

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

The future of farming

(SB pages 26 & 27)

1. New solutions (1) for our growing world

According to(2) the United Nations(3), there will be almost 10 **billion(4)** people in the world by 2050. **As a result(5)**, we will have to **increase(6)** our food **production(7)** **by(8)** about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have **space(9)** to keep more **livestock(10)** and grow more **crops (11)**.



(1) حلول
(2) بحسب
(3) الأمم المتحدة
(4) مليار
(5) كنتيجة لذلك
(6) يزيد
(7) إنتاج
(8) بنسبة
(9) مساحة- فُسْح
(10) حيوانات المزارع
(11) محاصيل

Instead(12), they'll need to **look for**(13) more **sustainable solutions**(14) and this will **involve**(15) producing a wider **variety**(16) of food.

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't **tell the difference**(17) between the new burgers and real meat.

(12) بدلاً من ذلك
(13) يبحث عن
(14) حلول مستدامة
(15) يشتمل على
(16) تشكيلة
(17) يذكر الاختلاف

2. Changes in agriculture that can save the land



Researchers(1) from the United Nations (UN) have found that some kinds of **agriculture**(2) are **seriously**(3) **damaging**(4) the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is **due to**(5) farmers using too many **chemicals**(6), so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow without having to use so many chemicals.

In **southern Africa**(7), the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can **expect**(8) that farmers in southern Africa will be using **innovations**(9) in technology to **remove**(10) water from the land and use it **elsewhere**(11).

(1) الباحثون
(2) الزراعة
(3) بشدة
(4) يدمر
(5) بسبب
(6) المواد الكيميائية
(7) إفريقيا الجنوبية
(8) بالوقع
(9) ابتكارات
(10) نازل
(11) مكان آخر

The future of forests

(WB page 15)



The world has been **losing**(1) millions of trees from the rainforests every year for a long time. Many trees get **cut down**(2) **so that**(3) we have wood to make **furniture**(4), and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food.

(1) يفقد
(2) لقطع
(3) لكي
(4) أثاث

However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important **areas**(5). Changes started a long time ago in **Costa Rica**(6). Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central American country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers and **persuaded**(7) them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from **tourism**(8) than from cutting down trees.

(5) مناطق
(6) دولة كوستاريكا
(7) أقنع
(8) السياحة
(9) النجاح
(10) يزداد سوء
(11) الحكومات
(12) يقل
(13) استثنائي

It was a great **success**(9), but things **got worse**(10) in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and **governments**(11) around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut down there has been **getting smaller**(12) every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this **extraordinary**(13) place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.

2 Listening Texts

The population problem in Egypt *(WB page 14)*



The **population**(1) of Egypt is **growing**(2) by nearly two **percent**(3) a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent of its population live on **about**(4) four percent of its **land**(5). It is thought that the population of Egypt will be **around**(6) 128 million by 2030. So, what are the solutions to these problems?

(1) (عدد) السكان
(2) بتزايد
(3) بالمائة (٪)
(4) حوالي
(5) مساحة
(6) حوالي
(7) يستثمر
(8) عاصمة
(9) مشروعات

One plan is to **invest**(7) billions of pounds in a new **capital**(8) city outside Cairo. This is one of the big **projects**(9) that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

(SB page 28)

The rainforest in Borneo



Interviewer : Hello everyone. In today's **show**[1] I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an **expert**[2] on the **rainforests**[3] in Borneo. **Welcome**[4] to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker : A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different **types**[5] of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer : And, what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : Well, Borneo is a large **island**[6] in **South-East Asia**[7], and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, **recently**[8] the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than **usual**[9]. And scientists think that there will be even less **rainfall**[10] on the island in the next few years.

(1) عرض - برنامج حواري
(2) خبير
(3) غابة استوائية
(4) مرحبًا
(5) أنواع
(6) جزيرة
(7) جنوب شرق آسيا
(8) حديثًا
(9) معتاد
(10) (هطول) مطول المطر
(11) لسوء الحظ
(12) حرائق
(13) أكثر
(14) كما ترى
(15) على / على مدار
(16) عقود
(17) فظيع
(18) الحياة النباتية
(19) يسخن

Interviewer : Why is that?

Dr Parker : **Unfortunately**[11], some farmers are cutting down trees and starting **fires**[12] so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get **even**[13] hotter, **you see**[14]. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest **over**[15] the next few **decades**[16]. That would be **terrible**[17] for the animals and **plant life**[18] in the rainforest, and Borneo would **heat up**[19] even more.

Interviewer : Do you think those farmers will **keep**[20] cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker : Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to **feed**[21] their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming **techniques**[22] and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My **organisation**[23] will be **running**[24] an **education**[25] programme next month to help them.

Interviewer : Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

(20) يستمر في
(21) تُطعم
(22) تقنيات
(23) مؤسسة
(24) يدير / يشرف على
(25) تعليم

3 Video script

Three small changes to help the environment

(SB page 27)

Would you like to do more to help the **environment**[1] by living a more sustainable life? It's **actually**[2] easier than you might think. There are many small **changes**[3] you can make that will help to **protect**[4] the Earth. Here are three of them.

Let's start with food. You don't have to become **a vegetarian**[5], but eating less meat will help the environment.
Livestock produce dangerous **gases**[6] and they can damage the land they live on.

When you need to travel, think about whether you really need to go in the car or take the bus. It's often **possible**[7] to walk or **ride**[8] a bike instead and these are more sustainable ways of travelling.

Everyone likes to get new things, but before you ask your parents to buy you new clothes or new games, ask yourself if you really need them. It isn't sustainable for people to continue buying so much **stuff**[9]!

(1) البيئة
(2) في الواقع
(3) تغييرات
(4) يحمي
(5) شخص نباتي
(6) غازات
(7) ممكن
(8) يركب
(9) أغراض / حوائج

PART IV LANGUAGE

Future forms صيغ المستقبل

في هذا الدرس سنعرض لكم بعض الأزمنة والطرق التي تعبر عن استخدامات مختلفة للمستقبل.

1 The Future Simple with "will + inf."

المستقبل البسيط باستخدام

Form	The "will" future
Active المبني للمعلوم	→ **Subj. + will + inf.** ex. - I will buy this mobile.
Passive المبني للمجهول	→ **Obj. + will be + p.p.** ex. - This mobile will be bought (by me).

Uses of "will + inf." استخدامات "will + inf."

1. Future facts الحقائق المستقبلية	ex. - Nada will become four years old next Monday.
2. Prediction without evidence التنبؤ دون دليل	وفي هذه الحالة يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوي على أفعال مثل : **be sure, think, believe, expect, hope, wonder** يتساءل , **be afraid** يخشى , **doubt** يشك ex. - I think the match will be very exciting. - I doubt I'll go out tonight. ومن الممكن أن يُستخدم مع (will) بعض الظروف مثل : **perhaps, possibly, probably, surely, certainly, definitely** ex. - Perhaps I'll see him at the party. - I'll probably stay in Cairo for a week.
3. Quick decisions القرارات السريعة	ex. - That's the phone – I'll answer it.
4. Offers العروض	ex. - I'll go shopping with you if you like.
5. Request الطلب	ex. - Will you help me with my homework?
6. Warning التحذير	ex. - Take the medicine regularly or your health will get worse.
7. Promises الوعود	ex. - I will buy you a new mobile when you pass your final exam.
8. First conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى	ex. - If I have enough money, I will travel around the world.

Mini Test 1 — Apply

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I this medicine after I have lunch.
 a. takes b. took c. will take d. will be taken
2. This medicine after I have lunch.
 a. takes b. took c. will take d. will be taken
3. I expect Omar first next term.
 a. comes b. came c. will come d. will be come
4. What a beautiful dress! I it.
 a. buy b. will buy c. am going to buy d. am buying
5. Leave this heavy bag. I it upstairs for you later.
 a. will carry b. am carrying
 c. am going to carry d. carry
6. Study for your exams or you them.
 a. fail b. will fail
 c. are going to fail d. won't fail
7. I to your birthday if I don't travel. I promise.
 a. will come b. won't come
 c. am going to come d. am coming

2 The future continuous (will / may + be + inf. + ing)

Form	The Future Continuous Tense زمن المستقبل المستمر
Affirmation & Negation الإثبات والنفي	→ **Subj. + will / won't + be + inf. + ing** ex. - Reem will be doing the housework all morning tomorrow. ex. - At five next Friday, I will be visiting one of my old friends.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	→ **Will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...?** ex. - Will Reem be doing the housework all morning tomorrow ?
' Wh__ ' Q السؤال بأداة استفهام	→ **Q.W. + will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...?** ex. - What will Reem be doing all morning tomorrow?

تستخدم (may) بدلًا من (will) للتنبؤ بأحداث قد تكون مستمرة فى المستقبل فى حالة عدم التأكد :

→ **subj. + may be + inf. + ing**

ex. - When Rodayna is 20, she may be studying medicine at university.

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم المستقبل المستمر فى الحالات التالية :

١ التنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمرًا فى وقت معين فى المستقبل:

ex. - Omar will be watching a football match at nine tomorrow.
- This time tomorrow, Sama will be travelling to Cairo with her family.

٢ التنبؤ بحدث سيستمر لفترة فى المستقبل:

ex. - The manager will be interviewing some applicants from three to five tomorrow.

٣ التنبؤ بشيء سيكون سائد ومُتعارف عليه فى المستقبل:

ex. - In 10 years' time, more people will be living in new cities.

٤ التنبؤ بحدث سيكون مستمرًا عندما سيقع حدث آخر فى المستقبل (لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط بعد الروابط الزمنية):

ex. - When you return home, I may be preparing lunch.

٥ تُستخدم مع روابط السبب والنتيجة لتبرير شيء ما فى المستقبل:

ex. - I can't go to the club next Friday because I will be planting some trees in my garden.

٦ تُستخدم صيغة الاستفهام للطلب أو السؤال عن معلومة بشكل مهذب:

ex. - Will you be using your digital camera tomorrow?

٧ غالبًا تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن أحداث مستمرة الآن ونتوقع أن تكون مستمرة أيضًا فى المستقبل:

→ **subj. + will/may + still** لا يزال **+ be + inf. + inf.**

ex. - The number of people may still be increasing in the future.

٨ غالبًا لا يُستخدم المستقبل المستمر أو أى من الأزمنة المستمرة مع أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية:

ex. - At seven tomorrow, the pool will be containing fresh water . (✗)
- At seven tomorrow, the pool will contain fresh water. (✓)

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I the housework all morning tomorrow.
 a. will be done
 b. won't be done
 c. will be doing
 d. going to do

2. If you call me at five, I in bed, but I am not sure.
 a. will be sleeping
 b. may be sleeping
 c. will sleep
 d. may sleep

3. From 5 to 7, I physics.
 a. will be studied
 b. won't be studied
 c. going to study
 d. will be studying

4. Students from home on their tablets in the future. It is just a possibility.
 a. may be studying
 b. may be studied
 c. will be studied
 d. won't be studied

5. I for my exams, so I can't go out with you.
 a. will be studied
 b. will be studying
 c. going to study
 d. am not studying

6. People drive petrol cars now. They petrol cars in thirty years.
 a. will be driven
 b. will still be driven
 c. will still be driving
 d. are still driven

3 The future perfect (will + have + p.p.) المستقبل التام

Active المبني للمعلوم	→ **Subj. + will / won't + have + p.p. ...** **ex.** By lunchtime, my mother will have done the cooking.
Passive المبني للمجهول	→ **Obj. + will / won't + have been + p.p. ...** **ex.** By lunchtime, the cooking will have been done.

Uses الاستخدامات

١ التعبير عن حدث سيكون قد تم بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل ويدل عل ذلك تعبيرات زمنية مثل :
- by/before (six o'clock, midday, midnight, tomorrow, next Monday, 2030 ...)
- My children will have gone to bed by 10 o'clock.
- Before bedtime, Rodayna will have studied Unit 3.

٢ التعبير عن حدث سيكون قد تم قبل وقوع حدث اخر في المستقبل :
- When the bill rings, I will have answered all the questions.
- Sama will have done the shopping before she returns home.

UNIT 3

Mini Test 3 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. By this time tomorrow, he all his tasks.
 a. will be finishing b. would finish
 c. will have finished d. had finished
2. Phone me after 8 o'clock. We will dinner by then.
 a. have b. be having
 c. have had d. have been had
3. Which of the following is correctly structured ?
 a. By next year, I will buy a new car.
 b. By next year, I will have being bought a new car.
 c. By next year, I should have to buy a new car.
 d. By next year, I will have bought a new car.

4 be + going to + inf.

Active المبني للمعلوم	→ **Subj. + am / is / are + going to + inf.** ex. - We are going to build a villa.
Passive المبني للمجهول	→ **Obj. + am / is / are + going to be + p.p. ...** ex. - A villa is going to be built (by us).

Uses of going to الاستخدامات

1. **Personal plans and intentions**
 الخطط الشخصية والنوايا

 plan, have a plan, intend ينوي, **have intentions** لديه النية

 ex. - My brother intends to live in Aswan. He is going to buy a flat there.

2. **Prediction based on evidence or present reality**
 التنبؤ القائم على دليل أو واقع حالي

 والمقصود بالدليل هنا أنه يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بحدوث الشيء في المستقبل:

 ex. - My aunt is pregnant حامل. She is going to have a baby.

3. Prepared decisions القرارات المسبقة	decided, have decided /made a decision / made up his mind اتخذ القرار ex. - I have decided to change my car. I'm going to buy a modern one.
4. Actions that are about to happen أحداث على وشك الوقوع	وفي هذه الحالة يمكن أن نستخدم بعض العبارات الخاصة بالتنبيه أو لفت الانتباه مثل : Watch out! = Look out! انتبه / Be careful! = Take care! احترس ex. - Look out! You are going to drop the plates. (لاحظ أنه أحيانًا يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر لنفس الغرض)

Mini Test 4 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have a plan. I the quality of our products.
 a. will increase
 b. will be increased
 c. am going to increase
 d. will have increased
2. He has already decided. He his old flat.
 a. is going to sell
 b. is going to be sold
 c. will have sold
 d. will sell
3. Be careful, honey. You
 a. will be falling
 b. are going to fall
 c. will be fallen
 d. will have fallen

5 The Present continuous المضارع المستمر

Form	The present continuous
Active المبني للمعلوم	→ Subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing ex. - Ahmed is watching the match at the stadium tomorrow.
Passive المبني للمجهول	→ Obj. + am / is / are + being+ p.p. ex. - The match is being watched at the stadium (by Ahmed) tomorrow.

3

Uses الاستخدامات

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية (أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها فى وقت محدد فى المستقبل لاحظ أنه لابد من وجود تعبير زمنى يدل على المستقبل حتى يعبر المضارع المستمر عن المستقبل)

١ تدل التعبيرات الآتية على وجود ترتيبات :

arranged, made arrangements, prepared, ...

ex. - Everything is arranged. We are leaving to Cairo at five tomorrow.
- She is flying to India in the summer.
- My brother is getting married next month.

٢ الإجتماعات واللقاءات الرسمية وكذلك المناسبات الاجتماعية (مثل حفلات أعياد الميلاد والزفاف والزيارات والمقابلات ...) تستلزم ترتيبات لذلك فهى غالبًا تكون فى صيغة المضارع المستمر بشرط تحديد وقت الحدوث :

ex. - Sama is celebrating her birthday party next Monday.
- My sister is getting married tomorrow.
- We are meeting the minister at eleven o'clock next Tuesday.
- I am having lunch with my uncle next Monday.

٣ يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث على وشك أن تبدأ خاصة مع أفعال مثل:
(come, leave, go ...)

- Sorry, I can't wait. I am leaving for the airport.

٤ غالبًا لا تُستخدَم أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية وفعل (be) في الأزمنة المستمرة :

ex. - I am going to see the coral reefs الشعاب المرجانية in the Red Sea next month during my stay there. (Not: am seeing)

Mini Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some friends by me for lunch as arranged.
 a. will meet b. going to meet
 c. am meeting d. are being met
2. I some friends for lunch as arranged.
 a. will meet b. going to meet
 c. am meeting d. are being met
3. She to Paris at five tomorrow. She's booked a ticket.
 a. will fly b. will be flying c. is flying d. b & c

4. My secretary me at tomorrow's meeting in New York. She has already travelled there.

a. is replacing
b. is being replaced
c. will replace
d. will have replaced

5. She about the latest developments at the meeting tomorrow.

a. will be known
b. knows
c. is knowing
d. is going to know

6 The Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Uses	Subject الفاعل + F.C. التصريف الأول / (inf. + s , es , ies) ...
Events on a timetable أشياء تحدث حسب جدول مواعيد مثل مواعيد وسائل المواصلات - البرامج - الأفلام ... إلخ.	**ex.** - The course starts in October. - The main evening news is at 9 o'clock. - My plane leaves at 7.30 in the morning.

7 General Notes on Future forms

ملاحظات عامة على صيغ التعبير عن المستقبل

١ هناك تعبيرات زمنية دالة على المستقبل بصفة عامة تُستخدم مع جميع صيغ المستقبل منها :
tomorrow / in the future / soon / قريبا **next** (year /month / week / Friday...) ... etc.

٢ الصفات الشخصية الدائمة لا تُعد دليلا و نستخدم معها (will + inf.) :
ex. - Shaza will pass her exams. She's a clever student.

٣ الصفات الوقتية تُعد دليلا و يُفضل أن يُستخدم معها 'be going to'
ex. - Mohammed looks exhausted. I think he is going to sleep on his chair.

٤ تُستخدم (shall) مع (I / We) لتقديم الإقتراحات و العروض :
ex. - Shall we have a cold drink ?

٥ يستخدم المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد ادوات الربط الزمنية :

After / As soon as
When / The moment
+ (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام) ⟶ مستقبل / جملة أمر

ex. - After I arrive (= have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.
- Tell Ahmed to call me when you see (= have seen) him.

Before / By the time	+	(مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام)	⟶	مستقبل / جملة امر

ex. - Before I leave (= have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.
- Don't leave before you finish (= have finished) the report.

مستقبل بسيط منفى (غالبًا) / جملة امر	+ till / until +	مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام

ex. - Mum won't set the table for lunch until my father arrives (= has arrived) home.
- Don't put the bread in the shopping bag until it completely cools/ has cooled.

إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء اخر فى المستقبل القريب فان ما يمنعك يكون مرتبا له. و يمكن فى هذه الحالة استخدام المضارع المستمر أو المستقبل المستمر:

ex. - I can't see you this evening. I'm visiting my uncle in hospital.
- I can't see you this evening. I'll be visiting my uncle in hospital.

General Exercise On Language — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The bus to Aswan at three o'clock tomorrow as usual; it is very fast and comfortable. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. will leave b. leaves c. leaving d. is leaving

2. The room is hot. I the window. (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)
a. am opening b. am going to open
c. will open d. open

3. The school day at 7:30. (طنطا ٢٠٢٣)
a. will start b. is starting c. is going to start d. starts

4. This bag is so heavy. I it for you. (شرقية ٢٠٢٣)
a. will carry b. am carrying
c. will have carried d. will be carried

5. In ten years, more people in the New Administrative Capital. (قنا ٢٠٢٣)
a. are living b. live c. will be living d. living

6. Look at that helicopter coming down. It in a minute. (طامية - ٢٠٢٣)

a. is landing
b. will land
c. is going to land
d. lands

7. This time next week, I will on the beach. (إدارة أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)

a. have sunbathed
b. have been sunbathed
c. be sunbathed
d. be sunbathing

8. It's 11:50 pm. Go quickly to buy this medicine because the pharmacy at midnight.

a. will close
b. is closing
c. closes
d. is going to close

9. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It a busy day. (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. is going to be
b. was
c. will be
d. has been

10. Be careful; the bus towards you. (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)

a. going to come
b. is coming
c. will have come
d. will be coming

11. My brother will go to the park when he his homework. (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)

a. will finish
b. finish
c. had finished
d. finishes

12. I'll help you as soon as I my work. (إدارة أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)

a. have finished
b. finishes
c. had finished
d. will finish

13. We won't start the meeting until you (أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٣)

a. arrive
b. had arrived
c. will arrive
d. arrives

14. He our relatives tomorrow. Everything is arranged. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

a. visits
b. is visiting
c. will be visited
d. is going to visit

15. I can't go to the club at seven next Friday, as I some trees in my garden. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

a. will be planting
b. plant
c. will plant
d. had planted

16. The programme predicts what life like in 40 years' time. (جهينة ٢٠٢٣)

a. would be
b. will have been
c. will be being
d. will be

17. I haven't seen my cousin for five years. I'm sure she (جهينة ٢٠٢٣)

a. grow
b. will have grown
c. will be grown
d. is grow

18. Esraa is known to be clever. She the full mark easily. (سفنكس ٢٠٢٣)

a. is going
b. gets
c. going to get
d. will get

19. I've got a job in Luxor, so I there for the next two years. (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)

a. work
b. was working
c. will have worked
d. will be working

20. By ten o'clock tonight, I all my homework. (المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)

a. finish
b. am finishing
c. will finish
d. 'll have finished

21. When you get off the train, I for you. (حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٣)

a. will wait
b. am going to wait
c. will be waiting
d. will have wait

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 30 & 31 WB pages 16 & 17



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

algae (n)	الطحالب	seaweed (n)	العُشب البحري
essay (n)	مقال	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص - يختصر
farmland (n)	ارض زراعية	summary (n)	مَلخص
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية (بدون تربة)	topic (n)	موضوع - فكرة رئيسية
		urban (adj)	حَضَري - مَدَني
rural (adj)	ريفي	vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتي (لا يأكل اللحوم بأنواعها)

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

argue (d) (v)	يجادل - يناقش - يزعم	leaf - leaves (adj)	ورقة (أوراق) نبات
argument (n)	جدال/نقاش - حُجة/رأي	link (ed) (n/v)	رابط - يربط
chance (n)	فُرصة - الحظ	lose - lost - lost (v)	يفقد - يخسر
contain (ed) (v)	يحتوي على	main (adj)	رئيسي/أساسي
continent (n)	قارّة	miss (ed) (v)	يَفوّت - يفتقد
description (n)	وَصف	notice (d) (v)	يلاحظ
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	original (adj)	أصلي
evidence (n)	دليل	outdoors (adv)	خارج المباني
fact (n)	حقيقة	population (n)	(عدد) السكان
factual (adj)	حقيقي	replace (d) (v)	يحل محل - يستبدل
flow (ed) (n/v)	تَدَفُّق - يتدفق	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام
focus (ed) (v)	يُركّز	several (adj)	عديد - كثير
fresh (adj)	طازج	soil (n)	تربة زراعية
gap (n)	فراغ - فتحة - ثغرة	specific (adj)	مُحدّد
giant (n/adj)	عملاق	surprisingly (adv)	من العجيب
heal (ed) (v)	يلتئم - يمتلئ	tasty (adj)	لذيذ
introduce (d) (v)	يطرح - يقدم	underline (d) (v)	يضع خطًا تحت

UNIT 3

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
algae (n) الطحالب	a very simple plant without stems جذوع or leaves that grows in or near water
hydroponics (n) الزراعة المائية	the process عملية of growing plants in water or sand, rather than بدلًا من in soil
seaweed (n) العُشب البحري	a plant that grows in the sea
summary (n) مُلخَّص	a short description that gives the most important information in a text
vegetarian (n) شخص نباتي	someone who does not eat meat or fish

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. At the end of the 17th century, England was still , depending mainly on agriculture. (الغاطر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

 a. rural b. urban c. space d. spicy

2. In China and Japan, green seaweeds and grow near water and in wet areas. (شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٣)

 a. fruits b. whale c. insects d. algae

3. The main of the debate was the pros and cons of city life. (أسوان - محمد مكاوى الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

 a. topic b. interests c. response d. object

4. Don't ask me to read the whole article. it for me, please. (الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

 a. Predict b. Summarise c. Keep d. Include

5. Being a/an , he eats no meat at all. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

 a. farmer b. agricultural c. sports man d. vegetarian

6. Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of algae are called (أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)

 a. seabed b. seaweed c. sea life d. seashell

7. According to, plants are grown in water not in soil.
a. nature b. traditions c. hydroponics d. seaweeds

8. It is our duty to protect and increase to produce enough food for all people.
a. earth b. farmland c. gap d. solution

9. I have no time to read the whole report. Its is enough.
a. detail b. summary c. phrase d. ocean

10. Some people prefer life to rural ريفي one.
a. clear b. original c. growing d. urban

11. In the exam, you are asked to write a/an, not a single paragraph.
a. summary b. phrase c. essay d. sentence

2 Important vocabulary

12. This wound will take four weeks to (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. cure b. treat c. heal d. deal

13. It would be better if we old glass and plastic.
a. concluded b. included c. introduced d. reused

14. The New Administrative City is a/an project. Imagine building a complete smart city.
a. usual b. giant c. specific d. available

15. The of Egypt is about 104 million people.
a. population b. environment c. rainforest d. area

16. works of art are of great value.
a. Stuff b. Rainfall c. Occasional d. Original

17. The between services in the countryside and the city is very big.
a. capital b. percent c. gap d. a & c

18. All suggests that the new plan could help improve the agricultural sector. القطاع
a. fire b. evidence c. flow d. shows

19. instructions are detailed and exact مضبوط.
a. Usual b. Giant c. Specific d. Available

20., such a short young man joined the basketball team.
a. Efficient b. Efficiently c. Surprising d. Surprisingly

21. To succeed in life, you aren't supposed to any chance available.
a. gain b. use c. miss d. win

22. Plants grow well in rich where it can take in nutrients مغذيات with water.
a. weather b. soil c. atmosphere d. climate

23. In the south of Aswan, the High Dam controls the of water into the Nile.
a. flow b. proposal c. dry d. growth

24. It is a waste of time with him. He won't be persuaded after all.
a. healing b. farming c. creating d. arguing

25. He does all his jobs He is skilled, hard-working and intelligent.
a. efficient b. efficiently c. surprising d. surprisingly

3 Definitions

26. is the process of growing plants in water or sand rather than in soil. (دوس عيسي ٢٠٢٣)
a. Hydroelectricity b. Hydroponics c. Farming d. Agriculture

27. A /An is a person who doesn't eat meat or fish. (سيدي سالم الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)
a. sociologist b. archaeologist c. vegetarian d. architect

28. is a name for plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
a. Sugar cane b. Algae c. Pin tree d. Pineapple

29. A is a plant that grows in the sea.
a. production b. source c. seaweed d. produce

30. A/An is a short description that gives the most important information in a text.
a. earth b. livestock c. agriculture d. summary

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

earn	money	يكسب مال	**keep**	cutting down trees	يستمر في إزالة الأشجار
give	an opinion	يعطي راي	**offer**	the best solution	يقدم الحل الأفضل
make	sense	ذو معنى	**show**	the order	يوضح الترتيب
	... much healthier	تجعل ... صحي بدرجة أكبر	**take**	ages	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
factual	حقيقي	actual, real, true
original	أصلي	native, first
original	حقيقي/اصلي	authentic, real, genuine
specific	مُحدّد	particular, definite
summary	تلخيص	synopsis, outline
urban	حضري - مُدني	civil

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة		Antonyms (= Opposite) العكس	
factual	حقيقي	false, fictional	زائف - خيالي
original	حقيقي/اصلي	fake, copied, imitated	مُزيّف - منسوخ
poor soil	تربة رديئة	rich soil, fertile soil	تربة خصبة
specific	مُحدّد	common, indefinite	عام/غير مُحدّد
urban	حضري - مُدني	rural, primitive	ريفي - بدائي

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

all the evidence suggests that	تشير كل الدلائل إلى أن	open spaces	أماكن مفتوحة
And then?	وماذا بعد؟	opinion about/of/on	راي في
areas with poor soil	مناطق ذات تربة رديئة	over the next decades	خلال العقود القادمة
as much as you can	أقصى ما تستطيع	the arguments against	دلائل النفي
		the arguments for	دلائل الإثبات

based on	قائم على / مبني على	the order in which things happen	ترتيب حدوث الأشياء
due to the fact that	لأن	the reason why	السبب في أن
good for	مفيد لـ	the whole text	النص بالكامل
green space	مساحة خضراء	To conclude,	الخلاصة أن ...
In my view,	من وجهة نظري		
link to	رابط لـ		

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

focus on	يُركِّز على	heal (up)	يلتئم - يتماثل
go up	يرتفع	look back at	ينظر مرة أخرى إلى
grow by	ينمو بمعدل ... / يزيد بنسبة ...	lose up to	يفقد ما يقرب من
grow to	ينمو / يزداد حتى	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

lose - miss

• **lose (lost - lost)** (v) يخسر (مال أو معركة أو مباراة ...)

- People who had trusted El-Mostareeh **lost** their money, livestock or cars.
- Our National team **lost** the final against Senegal.

• **miss (ed)** (v) يُفوِّت/يفوته (وسيلة مواصلات أو موعد)

- I **missed** the school bus.
- She doesn't want to **miss** the start of the film.

• **miss (ed)** (v) يعجز عن (تحقيق أو الوصول لشيء ما) - يفشل في تحقيق

- He **missed** the world record by three seconds.

• **miss (ed)** (v) يفتقد (شخص)

- While I was abroad, I **missed** my family and friends.

outdoor - outdoors

• **outdoor** (adv) خارجيّ/ خلويّ (صفة تُستخدم قبل اسم فقط)

- Football is an **outdoor** sport.

• **outdoors** (adv) بالخارج/ في الخلاء (ظرف يصف فعل ولا يُستخدم قبل اسم)

- Football is played **outdoors**.

summary - abbreviation

• **summary** (n) تلخيص / موجز (كتاب / قصة / مقال / تقرير)

- I didn't read the novel itself. I only read a **summary** of it.

• **abbreviation** (n) اختصار (كلمة أو عبارة)

- Dr is the **abbreviation** of the title 'doctor'.

7 Reading Numbers قراءة الأعداد

١. الأرقام من (٠) إلي (١٩) تُقرأ كالتالي:

0	zero	4	four	8	eight	12	twelve	16	sixteen
1	one	5	five	9	nine	13	thirteen	17	seventeen
2	two	6	six	10	ten	14	fourteen	18	eighteen
3	three	7	seven	11	eleven	15	fifteen	19	nineteen

٢. مضاعفات (١٠) تُقرأ كالتالي:

10	ten	50	fifty	90	ninety
20	twenty	60	sixty	100	(a /one) hundred
30	thirty	70	seventy	1,000	(a /one) thousand
40	forty	80	eighty	10,000	ten thousand

٣. لاحظ قراءة الأرقام التالية:

100,000	(a /one) hundred thousand
1,000,000	(a /one) million
1,000,000,000	(a /one) billion
1,000,000,000,000	(a /one) trillion

٤. عند قراءة عدد مكون من رقمين نبدأ بالعشرات ثم الآحاد و نفصل بينهما بـ (-) :

- **21:** twenty-one
- **47:** forty-seven
- **99:** ninety-nine

٥. تتم قراءة عدد مكون من ثلاث أرقام كالتالي :

عدد المئات + hundred + and + tens عشرات + units آحاد

- **136:** one hundred (and) thirty-six
- **571:** five hundred (and) seventy-one
- **999:** nine hundred (and) ninety-nine

٦. تتم قراءة الاعداد الكبيرة (أكثر من ثلاث أرقام) كالتالي :

أ. نقسم العدد بداية من اليمين إلي مجموعات من ثلاث أرقام

ب. نقرأ كل مجموعة علي حدة بداية من اليسار و نضع بعدها التمييز مثل:

(thousand / million / billion)

جـ نفصل بين كل مجموعة و أخري بـ (,) و ليس (and)

لاحظ قراءة العدد التالي:

- 16,924,479,951:

sixteen billion, nine hundred and twenty-four million, four hundred and seventy-nine thousand, nine hundred and fifty-one

- 2006: two thousand and six

٧. في لغة التحدث غالبا نقرأ الأعداد المكونة من أربع أرقام كل رقمين علي حدة بداية من اليسار:

- **1976:** nineteen seventy-six
- **2010:** twenty ten

٨. لا تُجمع الكلمات التالية اذا جاء قبلها عدد:

(hundred / thousand / million / billion)

- **83,464:** eighty-three thousand, four hundred and sixty-four
- **769:** seven hundred and sixty-nine

Exercise On Vocabulary study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "I like urban life." The adjective 'urban' here is the antonym of
 a. civil b. rural c. modern d. contemporary
2. "We would like you to give us specific examples." The adjective 'specific' here is synonymous with
 a. common b. usual c. indefinite d. definite
3. I can't read the whole work. It is better if you find its for me.
 a. outline b. full copy c. in-length d. whole
4. Plants grow well in soil.
 a. poor b. rocky c. rich d. infertile
5. This copy is NOT It was not drawn by Leonardo da Vinci.
 a. fake b. false c. authentic d. wrong
6. To 'conclude' an essay means to it.
 a. close b. open c. start d. begin
7. The solution you have to the problem can't be applied لا يمكن تطبيقه.
 a. speculated b. invested c. offered d. missed
8. It me ages to finish the summary of that book.
 a. kept b. took c. told d. grew
9. I was asked to my opinion, but I preferred to keep it to myself.
 a. keep b. give c. ask d. damage
10. "This statue is not original." The adjective 'original' in this sentence gives the antonym of
 a. first b. fake c. native d. a & c

11. Focus your study and don't pay attention to anything else.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

a. in b. at c. on d. for

12. A palm tree can grow ten metres.

a. to b. by c. with d. on

13. She lost her necklace. That's the reason she looked unhappy.

a. what b. of c. for d. why

14. "SOS" is a/an for 'Save our souls.

a. staff b. stuff c. summary d. abbreviation

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Is algae the future of food? *(SB page 30)*

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and **dry**(1) for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?



Algae(2) are plants that **grow**(3) very quickly in water and **wet**(4) places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called **seaweed**(5), and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the **ocean**(6).

In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we **breathe**(7).because algae makes a lot of oxygen.

But, will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even **notice**(8). Scientists are already using seaweed to **replace**(9) salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.

(1) جاف
(2) الطحالب
(3) ينمو
(4) مبلل
(5) العُشب البحري
(6) المحيط
(7) يتنفس
(8) يلاحظ
(9) يحل محل

Hydroponics

(WB page 16)



With the population of the world **predicted**(1) to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production.

A possible solution to this problem is using something called **hydroponics**(2). Hydroponics is a way to grow plants **without**(3) using any **soil**(4).

Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which **contains**(5) all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with **poor soil**(6). Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and, **surprisingly**(7), it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is **reused**(8). There are also fewer problems with **insects**(9). Almost any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit and leaves this way.

Some people **argue**(10) that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to **control**(11) the **flow**(12) of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could **offer**(13) the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future, we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, **Antarctica**(14) or even space.

(1) يتنبأ
(2) الزراعة المائية
(3) بدون
(4) التربة
(5) يحتوي على
(6) التربة الرديئة
(7) من العجيب
(8) يعيد استخدام
(9) حشرات
(10) يزعم
(11) يتحكم في
(12) تدفق
(13) يوفر
(14) القارة القطبية الجنوبية

Urban Farming

(WB page 17)



This essay will **focus on**(1) something my uncle is planning to do to help **food production**(2): something called **urban farming**(3).

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends.

(1) يركز على
(2) انتاج الطعام
(3) الزراعة المدنية

Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using **flat roofs**(4), gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

In my view(5), urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn money. They hope they will be selling some of the **produce**(6) to local restaurants and markets.

To conclude(7), urban farming is an interesting idea. All the **evidence**(8) suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much **outdoor space**(9).

(4) الأسطح المستوية
(5) من وجهة نظري
(6) محصول
(7) ختامًا / في النهاية
(8) دليل
(9) الفراغات الخارجية

2 Listening Texts

How to write a summary

(SB page 30)



Amir : Is that your homework, Hany?
Hany : Yes. What's wrong with it? It **took me ages**(1).
Amir : I can see that. It's very long.
Hany : So, what?
Amir : Well, we were asked to write a **summary**(2), and yours looks longer than the **text**(3) we're **summarising**(4)! You know it should be shorter, right?
Hany : Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to **miss**(5) anything important.
Amir : So, what was the text about?
Hany : I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.
Amir : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading **the whole text**(6) and try to understand as much as you can. Ask yourself: What's the **main**(7) idea? How would I **explain**(8) it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.

(1) أستغرق مني وقتًا طويلًا
(2) للخيص
(3) النص
(4) بلخص
(5) يفوت
(6) النص بالكامل
(7) رئيسي
(8) يشرح : يوضح

Hany: But, you know me. I always forget something important.

Amir: Then you should read the text again. But the second time, **underline**(9) the most important words or **phrases**(10) in it. These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important **actions**(11), or phrases for times and places.

Hany: Okay.

Amir: After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write **complete**(12) sentences that **fill in**(13) the **gaps**(14) between those words.

Hany: I see.

Amir: It's also **helpful**(15) to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like 'first', 'after that' or 'finally'.

Hany: And then?

Amir: When you've finished writing your summary, read it again. Check that it's **clear**(16), and then look back at the **original**(17) text to see if you've **included**(18) all the important information.

(9) ضع خط
(10) عبارات
(11) أحداث
(12) كامل
(13) يملأ
(14) فراغات
(15) مفيد
(16) واضح
(17) أصلي
(18) يتضمن

PART IV LANGUAGE

General Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. **A :** Can you come on Monday evening?
 B : I'd love to, but I tennis with friends.
 a. will play b. shall play c. going to play d. am playing

2. I will my uncle off at the airport, so I can't meet you at nine.
 a. be seeing b. see c. have seen d. have been seen

3. It's arranged. We to the Red Sea this summer.
 a. are going b. are going to go
 c. will go d. go

4. I think my brother a doctor. He's very clever.
 a. is b. is going to be c. is being d. will be

5. From five to seven next Monday, I a medical conference.
 a. will have attended b. will be attended
 c. will be attending d. am going to be attended

6. I eighteen next Monday.
 a. am going to be b. will be c. am being d. be

7. The museum typically at 8 a.m.
 a. opens b. is going to open
 c. is opening d. will open

8. Doctors predict they chronic diseases.
 a. are treating b. will treat
 c. are going to treat d. will have treated

9. We've run out of sugar. I to the market and get some.
 a. will go b. have gone c. go d. went

10. **A :** What would you like to start your lunch with, Sir?
 B : Mmm, I with lentil soup.
 a. will start b. am going to start
 c. am starting d. starts

11. It is very cloudy. I think it by the time we are leaving the office.
 a. shall rain b. is going to be rainy
 c. will be rained d. rains

12. **A :** What are you doing next Saturday afternoon?
 B : I'm not sure. I at home.
 a. will be sleeping b. may be sleeping
 c. will have slept d. am sleeping

13. Soon after the exams, Rokaya to Aswan as planned.
 a. will travel b. has travelled
 c. is going to travel d. shall travel

14. I to Paris next Monday. It's all arranged by me.
 a. fly b. am flying c. will fly d. is going to fly

15. The drinks will
 a. be ordered b. be ordering c. have ordered d. order

16. It has already been decided. They a meeting when the new boss has arrived.
 a. will have b. are going to have
 c. having d. shall have

17. People in houses under water in twenty years' time.
 a. may have lived b. will be lived c. may be living d. are living

18. I tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.
a. 'm leaving b. 'll leave c. going to leave d. shall leave

19. I have an intention to study Russian. I for a course.
a. am going to apply b. shall apply
c. am applying d. applies

20. Mustafa joined the Faculty of Medicine two years ago. He as a doctor.
a. will graduate b. is going to graduate
c. graduates d. is graduating

21. This is the key of your new car. You it if you come first.
a. are getting b. are going to get
c. should get d. will get

22. I expect they the match tomorrow.
a. win b. will win
c. are winning d. are going to win

2 Special cases

23. The temperature of the world in the future.
a. will still be rising b. will still have risen
c. is still rising d. still rises

24. **A :** your ebook tomorrow? **B :** No. You can borrow it.
a. Will you have used b. Do you use
c. Are you used d. Will you be using

25. Finish the reports today or you your job.
a. will lose b. lose
c. are losing d. are going to lose

26. This time next Friday, this car to me.
a. will be belonging b. is belonging
c. will have been belonged d. will belong

27. Liverpool's players are known to be skilled. They the match easily.
a. will win b. win c. are winning d. going to win

28. I can't travel at 9 a.m. tomorrow as I a meeting.
a. have had b. going to have c. have d. will be having

29. I want to buy a new car, so I..... save a lot of money.
a. am going to b. will c. am to d. will be

30. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I my homework.
a. would be doing b. would do c. will be doing d. may do

31. She'll phone us as soon as she at Madrid Airport.
a. arrived b. had arrived c. arrives d. arriving

Check your understanding

32. The match starts at nine. That is according to a/an
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

33. I'm sure he will come first. That is a/an
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

34. I'm flying to London at 6:30 next Friday. That is a/an
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

35. I am going to go shopping for clothes next Monday. This is my
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

36. I can't go for a walk tomorrow as
a. I will be helping mum at home. b. I will help mum at home.
c. I am helping mum at home. d. a & c

37. 'Will you be using your tablet tomorrow?". This means
a. I want you to turn off your tablet
b. I want to borrow your tablet
c. I want to tell you about the importance of your tablet
d. I know someone who wants to steal your tablet

38. "People will still be reading paperbacks in the future". This means
a. people look forward to reading paperbacks
b. people don't read paperbacks at present
c. people read paperbacks at present
d. people didn't read paperbacks in the past

39. Rokaya has the intention to revise her physics lessons tomorrow. This means
a. Rokaya will revise her physics lessons tomorrow
b. Rokaya will be revising her physics lessons tomorrow
c. Rokaya is revising her physics lessons tomorrow
d. Rokaya is going to revise her physics lessons tomorrow

40. "He has arranged everything for his wedding next Thursday". This means
a. he is getting married next Thursday
b. he is going to get married next Thursday
c. he will get married next Thursday
d. he will have been married next Thursday

PART THREE | Skills & Advanced Notes



تنويه لإتقان المهارات استخدم كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

so = as a result + جملة لذلك / نتيجة لذلك

• A lot of people drink polluted water, so / as a result they become ill.

للحظ أنه يمكن استخدام (as a result) في نهاية الجملة:

ex. - A lot of people drink polluted water. They become ill as a result.

Surprisingly = It is surprising that من الغريب أن

• **Surprisingly**, he didn't get angry.
= It is surprising that he didn't get angry.

so that / in order that / in the hope that + جملة لكى

• Scientists can modify some genes so that the tomatoes do not rot so quickly.

like = such as مثل / على سبيل المثال

• I don't eat sweet foods like (such as) cakes and candies.

because

• **Because / As / Since** جملة سبب + جملة نتيجة لأن

ex. - Because / As / Since I was injured, I didn't play the match.
= I didn't play the match because / as / since I was injured.

• **Because of / Owing to / Due to** بسبب / **Thanks to** بفضل **+ n / (inf. + ing) +** جملة نتيجة

ex. - Because of / Owing to / Due to being injured, I didn't play the match.
= I didn't play the match because of / owing to / due to being injured.

With + obj. مفعول **+ p.p. ...**

للحظ استخدام الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

- **Because** جملة مبنية للمجهول +
- **Due to / Because of + the fact that** + جملة مبنية للمجهول
- **With + obj.** مفعول **+ p.p. + to + inf.**

ex. - Because the population of the world is predicted to grow, we need to increase food production.
= Due to the fact that the population of the world is predicted to grow, we need to increase food production.
= With the population of the world predicted to grow, we need to increase food production.

leaving out relative pronouns

١. يُمكن أن يتم حذف كلًا من (who – which – whom – that) إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل:

ex. - This is the man who I called yesterday.
= This is the man I called yesterday.

٢. يمكن حذف كلًا من (who – which - that) في الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا جاء بعدهم مبني للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف ضمير الوصل والفاعل ويبقي الفعل مضافا له (ing) :

ex. - The secretary who works here speaks five languages.
= The secretary working here speaks five languages.

ب. إذا جاء بعدهم مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف ايضا ضمير الوصل و (be) ويبقي التصريف الثالث للفعل.

ex. - The bully who was caught last month was sent to prison.
- The bully caught last month was sent to prison.

جـ إذا جاء بعدهم (be) كفعل اساسي وهنا يتم حذف ضمير الوصل و (be)

ex. - The food which is in the fridge is not fresh.
- The food in the fridge is not fresh.

٣. يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان بعده اسم أو صفة بعدها اسم:

ex. - Harry Keen, who is a talented footballer, played for Tottenham, England.
- Harry Keen, a talented footballer, played for Tottenham, England.

get + p.p.

يمكن استخدام (get) حسب الزمن بدلًا من (be) في صيغة المبني للمجهول كالتالي:

- Obj. مفعول + be + p.p.	= Obj. مفعول + get + p.p.
ex. - Criminals are arrested by the police.	= Criminals get arrested by the police.
- I was promoted last month.	= I got promoted last month.

General Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I offered to help him in his difficult situation., he refused.
 a. So b. That's why c. As a result d. Surprisingly
2. We work hard we can achieve our goals in life.
 a. because b. because of c. in order that d. in order to
3. She wasted her time.
 a. So, she failed the exam b. As a result, she failed the exam
 c. She failed the exam as a result d. a, b & c

4. Rokaya loves children, she chose to be a primary school teacher
 a. Because b. Due to c. So that d. In the hope that
5. her love for children, Rokaya chose to be a primary school teacher.
 a. Because b. Due to c. So that d. In the hope that
6. She is engaged to the young man you have played tennis with.
 a. who b. that c. no pronoun d. a, b & c
7. I feel sorry for the tall girl food in this restaurant.
 a. who serves b. serving c. served d. a & b
8. I don't like the food in this restaurant.
 a. who serves b. serving c. served d. a & b
9. With my team to win the cup, I was eager متلهف to watch the match in the stadium.
 a. predict b. predicted c. is predicting d. b & c
10. The victim stabbed طعن with a sharp knife.
 a. got b. was got c. is got d. get

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ Read the following, then answer the questions: (اهتاسيا ٢٠٢٣)

The world Health Organization (WHO) is a specialized agency of the United Nations (UN) that is concerned with international public health. It was established on 7 April 1948, with headquarters in Geneva, Switzerland. Its predecessor, the Health Organization, was an agency of the League of Nations. The constitution of the World Health Organization had been signed by all 61 countries of the United Nations by 22 July 1946, with the first meeting of the World Health Assembly finishing on 24 July 1948. Since its creation, WHO has been responsible for playing a leading role in the eradication of smallpox which is an acute, highly infectious, often fatal disease caused by a poxvirus.

Its current priorities include communicable diseases, in particular, HIV/AIDS, malaria and tuberculosis, the mitigation of the effects of non-communicable diseases; sexual and reproductive health, development, and ageing; nutrition, food security and healthy eating; substance abuse; and drive the development of reporting, publications, and networking. WHO is responsible for the World Health Report, a leading international publication on health, the worldwide World Health Survey, and World Health Day which is celebrated every year on 7 April.

WHO fulfills its objectives through its core functions: providing leadership on matters critical to health and engaging in partnerships where joint action is needed; shaping the research agneda and stimulating the generation, translation and **dissemination** of valuable knowledge; setting norms and standards and promoting and monitoring their implementation; articulating ethical and evidence-based policy options; providing technical support, catalyzing change, and building sutainable instituional capacity; and monitoring the health situation and assessing health trends.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WHO is concerned with diseases.
 a. certain kinds of
 b. communicable not non-communicable
 c. both communicable and non-communicable
 d. non-communicable not communicable
2. One of WHO's missions is to
 a. spread awareness about peace
 b. ensure that wars don't take place
 c. communicate information about diseases
 d. finance countries to build schools
3. The word "**dissemination**" means
 a. prevention b. spread c. protection d. infection
4. AIDS is a/an disease.
 a. non-communicable b. communicable
 c. curative d. ethical
5. What's meant by smallpox?
 a. Symptoms of fever. b. A disease.
 c. A cell phone. d. An operation.
6. The synonym of the word "fatal" is
 a. severe b. fair c. smooth d. pure
7. A word from your own can be replaced by the word "stimulating" is " ".
 a. encouraging b. supporting c. discouraging d. evoking
8. The best tile for this text is " ".
 a. The world Wide Web b. The world Upgrading Ointment
 c. The World Health Organization d. World Hunger Outlook

UNIT 3

2 Writing Tips – Essay writing

* ارشادات خاصة بكتابة المقال :

١. عند التعبير عن الفكرة الرئيسية للمقال نبدأ بـ :

• **The subject of this essay is +** الموضوع ... — موضوع هذا المقال هو ...

- The subject of this essay is the future of farming.

OR: This essay will focus on + الموضوع ... — سوف يركز هذا المقال علي ...

- This essay will focus on the future of farming.

٢. عند التركيز علي مثال محدد نبدأ بـ :

• **In the case of / An example of +** اسم ... — فيما يخص ...

- In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens.

٣. عند التعبير عن سبب حدوث شيء ما نستخدم :

• **... due to the fact that / because +** جملة ... — لأن ...

- Cities are not good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space.

٤. عند التعبير عن المعلومات القائمة علي حقائق نستخدم :

• **All the evidence suggests+** جملة ... — كل الدلائل / الشواهد تشير إلي أن ...

- All the evidence suggests that urban farming could help us grow our own food in the future.

٥. عند التعبير عن الرأي الشخصي في موضوع المقال نستخدم :

• **In my opinion / view+** جملة ... — من وجهة نظري ...

- In my view, urban farming is a great idea.

٦. عند اختتام موضوع المقال نستخدم :

• **In conclusion / To conclude,+** جملة ... — الخلاصة هي أن ...

- To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea.

Model Essay

*** A model Essay about "The Future of Farming" from student's book Page (31)**

The future of farming

This essay will focus يركز on the future of agriculture.

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that, we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future. The Earth's surface سطح is heating up and soon there will be less

land that farmers can use. In the case of Africa, the continent could lose up to 18 percent of its farmland in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently. بكفاءة

Due to the fact that there will be less land available for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead.

In my view, farmers should see this is as a chance to try new techniques and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they are prepared for the future.

To conclude, الخلاصة agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

3 Translation الترجمة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. It is crystal clear that the world is encountering a disastrous food crisis. This makes it inevitable to look for out-of-box ideas to increase food production.

a. من الواضح مثل الكريستال أن العالم يواجه أزمة غذائية كارثية. هذا يجعل من الحتمي البحث عن أفكار خارج الصندوق لزيادة إنتاج الغذاء.

b. من الواضح تماماً أن العالم يواجه أزمة غذائية كارثية. هذا يجعل من الحتمي البحث عن أفكار خارج الصندوق لزيادة إنتاج الغذاء.

c. من الواضح تماماً أن العالم يواجه أزمة غذائية كارثية. هذا يجعل من الحتمي البحث عن الصندوق الخارجي للأفكار لزيادة إنتاج الغذاء.

d. من الواضح تماماً أن العالم يواجه أزمة غذائية كارثية. هذا يجعل من حقي البحث عن أفكار خارج الصندوق لزيادة إنتاج الغذاء.

2. Farmers do not have enough space to keep more livestock and grow more crops. They'll need to look for more sustainable solutions and this will involve producing a wider variety of food.

a. لا يملك المزارعون مساحات كافية لتربية المزيد من الماشية وزراعة المزيد من المحاصيل. سيحتاجون إلى البحث عن حلول أكثر استدامة وسيتضمن ذلك إنتاج مجموعة أكثر تنوعاً من الأطعمة.

b. لا يملك المزارعون مساحات كافية للحفاظ علي الماشية وزراعة المزيد من المحاصيل. سيحتاجون إلى البحث عن حلول أكثر استدامة وسيتضمن ذلك إنتاج مجموعة أكثر تنوعاً من الأطعمة.

c. لا يملك المزارعون مساحات كافية لتربية المزيد من الماشية وزراعة المزيد من المحاصيل. سيحتاجون إلى البحث عن حلول أكثر استدامة وسيتضمن ذلك إنتاج أوسع من الأطعمة.

d. لا يملك المزارعون مساحات كافية لتربية المزيد من الماشية وزراعة المزيد من المحاصيل. سيحتاجون إلى البحث عن أكثر استدامة من حلول وسيتضمن ذلك إنتاج مجموعة أكثر تنوعاً من الأطعمة.

3. We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry for agriculture.

a. سنحتاج إلى إيجاد مصادر مستدامة للغذاء في المستقبل لأنه سيكون هناك المزيد من الناس لإطعامهم وستكون العديد من الأماكن حارة وجافة جداً بشكل يناسب الزراعة.

b. سنحتاج إلى إيجاد مصادر مستدامة للغذاء في المستقبل بحيث لا يكون هناك المزيد من الناس لإطعامهم وستكون العديد من الأماكن حارة وجافة جداً على الزراعة.

c. سنحتاج إلى إيجاد مصادر مستدامة للغذاء في المستقبل لأنه سيكون هناك المزيد من الناس وطعامهم وستكون العديد من الأماكن حارة وجافة جداً على الزراعة.

d. سنحتاج إلى إيجاد مصادر مستدامة للغذاء في المستقبل لأنه سيكون هناك المزيد من الناس لإطعامهم وستكون العديد من الأماكن حارة وجافة جداً على الزراعة.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. تخطو مصر خطوات ثابتة نحو تحقيق نهضة شاملة في كل المجالات، خاصة الصناعة والزراعة والبنية التحتية والتعليم والصحة.

a. Egypt is making steady steps towards achieving a comprehensive renaissance in all fields, especially industry, agriculture, infrastructure, education and health.

b. Egypt is taking steady steps towards achieving a comprehensive renaissance in all fields, especially industry, agriculture, infrastructure, education and health.

c. Egypt is taking study steps towards achieving a comprehensive renaissance in all fields, especially industry, agriculture, infrastructure, education and health.

d. Egypt is taking steady steps towards achieving a comprehensive renaissance in every fields, especially industry, agriculture, infrastructure, education and health.

٢. إن عالم جائع لا يمكن أن يكون مكاناً آمناً للعيش فيه. فالأمن الغذائي من الأولويات التي تسعي كل دول العالم إلى تحقيقه.

a. A hungry world cannot be a safe palace to live in. Food security is one of the priorities that all countries of the world seek to achieve.

b. A hungry flag cannot be a safe place to live in. Food security is one of the priorities that all countries of the world seek to achieve.

c. A hungry world cannot be a safe place to live in. Food security is one of the priorities that all countries of the world seek to achieve.

d. A hungry world can rarely be a safe place to live in. Food security is one of the priorities that all countries of the world seek to achieve.

٣. تعمل مصر على استصلاح مزيد من الأراضي الزراعية في مناطق متفرقة، والهدف الرئيسي من ذلك هو سد النقص في المحاصيل الغذائية.

a. Egypt is working on reclaiming more agricultural lands in different areas, and the main aim of that is to bridge the shortage of food crops.

b. Egypt was working on reclaiming more agricultural lands in different areas, and the main aim of that is to bridge the shortage of food crops.

c. Egypt is working on reclaiming more agricultural lands in different areas, and the mean aim of that is to bridge the shortage of food crops.

d. Egypt is working on reclaiming more agricultural lands in difficult areas, and the main aim of that is to bridge the shortage of food crops.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

agriculture

• **agriculture (n)** علم زراعة النباتات ورعايتها
- He intends to study agriculture at university.

• **agriculture (n)** النشاط الزراعي
- Agriculture employs about 40% of the population in Egypt.

• **agricultural (adj)** زراعي
- It is against the law to build on agricultural land.

• **agriculturalist (n)** خبير زراعي
- According to agriculturalists, this soil is not good for planting rice.

crop

• **crop (n)** محصول غذائي
- The main crop we plant here is wheat.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **grow / plant a crop** يزرع محصول غذائي
- **bring in / harvest a crop** يجني المحصول
- **destroy / damage a crop** يدمر المحصول
- **a cash crop** محصول مخصص للبيع
- **a genetically modified crop** محصول معدل وراثياً

• **crop (ped) (v)** يُثمر - يُنتج الثمار أو الحبوب
- Orange trees crop in winter.

• **crop (ped) (v)** يُقصّر الشعر
- Little children usually do not like to crop their hair short.

• **crop (ped) (v)** يقص الصورة
- He cropped the photo to fit the frame.

innovation

• **innovate (d) (v)** يبتكر
- He has an amazing ability to innovate new ideas for advertisements.

• **innovation (n)** ابتكار - اختراع - فكرة جديدة (اسم معدود)
- A good teacher should come up with يأتي بـ innovations that help his students enjoy learning.

• **innovation (n)** الابتكار - الاختراع (اسم غير معدود)
- The manager of our company encourages innovation in industry. الصناعة

• **innovative / innovatory (adj)** جديد - مُبتكَر - خلاق
- His innovative ideas made the office very successful.

vary

• **vary (ied) (in) (v)** يتنوع - يُنوّع
- As a teacher, you need to vary your teaching methods. يُنوّع
- The plants on the farm vary in size and colour. يختلف / يتنوع

• **variety (in) (n)** تنوّع - نوع
- The variety of programmes attracts viewers. تنوّع
- This zoo has about 3000 varieties of birds and animals. انواع

• **various (adj)** عديد / متعدد / مختلف
- This drink is available in various sizes.

sustainable

• **sustain (ed) (v)** يصون - يحافظ علي - يُبقي على
- It is necessary for a teacher to sustain his students interest.

• **sustain (ed) (v)** يعاني من (بدون حرف جر)
- During COVID -19 pandemic, oil prices sustained a sharp drop. انخفاض

• **sustainable (adj)** صديق للبيئة ≠ **- unsustainable** ضار بالبيئة
- A bike is a sustainable means of transport.

• **sustainable (adj)** مُستدام / دائم
- The government aims at achieving a sustainable economic growth. نمو

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Lake Nasser has more than 15 of fish.
 a. hydroponics b. varieties c. sources d. livestock
2. This is not the You have made a lot of changes to it.
 a. plan original b. plan which is original
 c. original plan d. b & c
3. How do you think you will put all that in this small car?
 a. stuff b. stuffs c. staff d. staffs
4. The neighbour's sheep the grass in my field
 a. harvested b. cropped c. collected d. farmed
5. All the of this farm is sold to the restaurants in the nearby town.
 a. crops b. vegetables c. produce d. cattle

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Look where you are going. You into a hole.
 a. will step b. will be stepped
 c. are going to step d. are to step
2. My wife and I are good at learning languages, so our children good at languages too.
 a. will become b. are going to become
 c. are becoming d. will have become
3. For being stubborn, I expect she easily.
 a. won't persuade b. isn't going to be persuaded
 c. won't be persuaded d. is being persuaded
4. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I my homework.
 a. will have done b. will be done c. will be doing d. do
5. I doubt that he your kind offer.
 a. isn't going to accept b. isn't accepting
 c. don't accept d. won't accept

Test on Unit 3



• Understand • Apply • Create

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Rice is an important in Egypt. (كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. corps b. heart c. crop d. apology
2. To protect the environment, it's advisable to use sources of energy. (شرق الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. imaginary b. unknown c. sustainable d. damaging
3. is the science of growing plants. (أبو حماد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Industry b. Agriculture c. Tourism d. Education
4. The farmer keeps a lot of such as goats and sheep. (شرق الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. agriculture b. livestock c. innovation d. crops
5. This young man is a/an ; he isn't afraid to try something new. He introduces changes and new ideas. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. surveyor b. explorer c. discoverer d. innovator
6. are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of them are called seaweed. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. Algae b. Fungi c. Reefs d. Pesticides
7. Can you tell me when the next train to alexandria ?
 a. leaves b. is leaving
 c. will leave d. is going to leave
8. Two presentations in the conference tomorrow as arranged.
 a. will be given b. are giving c. are being given d. give
9. Look out! You the vase. (الجيزة - أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)
 a. 're going to hit b. will hit c. 're hitting d. hit
10. Don't worry; I won't leave until you (القاهرة الجديدة - مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)
 a. have been arrived b. will arrive
 c. had arrived d. have arrived
11. According to the airline schedule, the plane to London at 7 pm tomorrow. (أجا ٢٠٢٢)
 a. leaves b. will leave
 c. is leaving d. is going to leave
12. Tomorrow afternoon, we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4:30. So at 4 o'clock, we tennis. (ميت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)
 a. are going to play b. will play
 c. will be playing d. play

13. Mariam is thinking about her holiday next week when she on the beach all day. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

a. was lying b. will be lying
c. would be lying d. going to lie

14. At one o'clock tomorrow, I lunch with my friends. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

a. eat b. going to eat
c. will have eaten d. will be eating

15. Daisy has sold her old car. She a new car. It is her plan. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)

a. will buy b. is buying c. is going to buy d. buys

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since **primitive** times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medical purposes. Today, some drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of willow trees اشجار الصفصاف.

Natural remedies علاجات are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole of the plant can be used. The powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones.

Garlic الثوم is just one herb which has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop, you will be struck by different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription. However, about eighty percent of those who **consult** a herbalist متخصص فى الاعشاب have already been to a doctor.

As a result of the worldwide interest in herbal medicines, Egypt has set aside 50,000 acres of land in Beni Suef and Minya for the cultivation of herbs with medical properties. If this experiment is successful, lots of countries may import herbs from Egypt in the near future.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

16. Some modern drugs are still based on

a. chemicals b. ancient tombs
c. herbs d. paintings

17. Garlic is used for treating problems.

a. skin b. hair c. eyesight d. hearing

18. Chemical medicines are herbal ones.
a. safer than b. as dangerous as
c. as safe as d. not so safe as

19. The underlined word "**it**" refers to
a. henna b. garlic c. hair d. the world

20. About of those who consult a herbalist have been to a doctor.
a. 80% b. 18% c. 90% d. 88%

21. Egypt is expected to natural herbs in the near future.
a. import b. buy c. export d. manufacture

22. The word " **primitive**" means
a. primary b. modern c. ancient d. recent

23. The word "**consult**" means
a. advise b. ask for advice c. complain d. devise

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades. Farmers will need to change the old-fashioned ways they farm as a result.

a. من الواضح أن الزراعة ستتغير كثيراً خلال العقود القادمة. سيحتاج المزارعون إلى تغيير الطرق القديمة التي يتبعونها في الزراعة نتيجة لذلك.

b. من الواضح أن الزراعة ستتغير كثيرًا خلال العقود القليلة القادمة. سيحتاج المزارعون إلى تغيير الطرق القديمة التي يزرعونها نتيجة لذلك.

c. من الواضح أن الزراعة ستتغير كثيراً خلال العقود القليلة القادمة. سيحتاج المزارعون إلى تغيير الطرق القديمة التي يتبعونها في الزراعة نتيجة لذلك.

d. من الواضح أن الزراعة لن تتغير كثيراً خلال العقود القليلة القادمة. سيحتاج المزارعون إلى تغيير الطرق القديمة التي يتبعونها في الزراعة نتيجة لذلك.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لابد من إيجاد حلول عملية لمواجهة مشكلة نقص الغذاء في العالم، فعدد السكان فى العالم يتزايد باستمرار وذلك يتطلب زيادة مستمرة في الإنتاج الغذائي.

a. We have to find practical solutions to confront the problem of food shortage in the world. The global population is constantly decreasing and this requires a continuous increase in food production.

b. We have to find practical solutions to confront the problem of food shortage in the world. The global population is constantly increasing and this enquires a continuous increase in food production.

c. We have to find practical solutions to confront the problem of food shortage in the world. The global pollution is constantly increasing and this requires a continuous increase in food production.

d. We have to find practical solutions to confront the problem of food shortage in the world. The global population is constantly increasing and this requires a continuous increase in food production.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on : "The future of farming"

Revision 1

Based On Units 1, 2 & 3

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 20 : 23

PART I VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

boxer (n)	ملاكم	local (adj)	محلي
boxing (n)	الملاكمة	meal (n)	وجبة
certificate (n)	شهادة	register (ed) (v)	يُسجّل
college (n)	كلية - مدرسة عليا	runner (n)	عدّاء
distance (n)	مسافة	search (ed) (v)	يبحث
fatty (adj)	دهني	together (adv)	معاً
large (adj)	كبير	training (n)	التدريب
likely (adj - adv)	على الارجح / في الغالب / محتمل / متوقع		

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a cooking course	يحصل على دورة تدريبية في الطهي	give	... energy	يمد ... بالطاقة
	training	يتمرن		a reason	يعطي مبرر
feel	(a lot) better	يشعر بتحسن (كبير)	have	an accident	يقع له حادث
get	a certificate	يحصل علي شهادة	put	a bandage on	يضع ضمادة علي

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at the start	في البداية	less likely to get ill	أقل عُرضة للمرض
a wide variety of	مجموعة متنوعة من	make me stronger	يجعلني أقوي
fast food	وجبات سريعة	on my own	بمفردي
fatty food	طعام عالي الدهون	on their website	علي موقعهم
in a different way	بطريقة مختلفة	search for	يبحث عن
in two weeks' time	خلال أسبوعين	sit at a desk	يجلس على مكتب
larger amounts of	كميات أكبر من	talk to	يتحدث إلي
less likely to be injured	أقل عُرضة للإصابة		

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 36)

Kareem



I'm a **runner**(1) who **regularly**(2) runs very long **distances**(3). I need to eat **large**(4) **amounts**(5) of pasta, fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough **energy**(6) to run for 30 or 40 kilometres each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to **boost**(7) my **immune system**(8), which means that I'm less **likely**(9) to get ill and have to stop **training**(10). I usually **prepare**(11) my own food at home, but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!

(1) عداء
(2) بانتظام
(3) مسافات
(4) كبير
(5) كميات
(6) طاقة
(7) يدعم
(8) جهاز المناعة
(9) محتمل - متوقع
(10) التدريب
(11) نعد

Amr



I'm a **boxer**(1), so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other **athletes**(2). When I started **boxing**(3), I started eating in a different way. **Instead of**(4) three large **meals**(5) a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide **variety**(6) of food.

I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal. Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight, which means I'm less likely to be **injured**(7). Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, **fatty**(8) food, such as cakes and chocolate.

(1) ملاكم
(2) الرياضيون
(3) الملاكمة
(4) بدلاً من
(5) وجبات
(6) تشكيلة
(7) تصاب
(8) دهني

(SB page 38)

To: Aya@mail.com
From: Hadeer@mail.com

Hi Aya,

How are you today?

I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more **energy**(1) and make you feel a lot better. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food that I usually eat.



(1) طاقة
(2) برنامج تدريبي
(3) معاً
(4) محلي
(5) كلية
(6) مراهقين
(7) يُسجّل
(8) يبحث

Do you want to do a cooking **course**(2) with me so we can learn **together**(3)? There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time at the **local**(4) **college**(5). It's every Tuesday evening from 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. And it's only for **teenagers**(6)!

You don't need to go to the college to **register**(7), you can do it on their website. Just **search**(8) for the cooking courses and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own if you can't make it, but it would be a lot more fun to learn with a friend.

Talk to you soon!

Hadeer

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 37)

Interviewer: Hello and welcome back to the show. Next, we're going to talk to Mariam Mohamed from Giza who has just started to do an interesting **hobby**(1). Could you tell us what you do, Mariam ?

(1) هواية
(2) حادث

Mariam : Yes, sure. In my free time, i'm learning to help people who are ill or who have had **an accident**(2).



Interviewer : That sounds great. So you can learn new **skills**(3) and help other people at the same time.

Mariam : Exactly. I'm doing **a first aid course**(4) with about twenty other young people at our **sports centre**(5).

Interviewer : And will you receive **a certificate**(6) at the end of the course ?

Mariam : Yes. I have to go to at least fifty hours of lessons. Then I'll get my first certificate which shows that I can **perform**(7) **basic**(8) first aid.

(3) مهارات
(4) دورة تدريبية للإسعافات الأولية
(5) مركز رياض
(6) شهادة
(7) يؤدي
(8) أساسي
(9) أساليب
(10) ضمادة / شاش

Interviewer : Great ! So you're learning simple **techniques**(9) to start with and then you'll learn more techniques, is that right ?



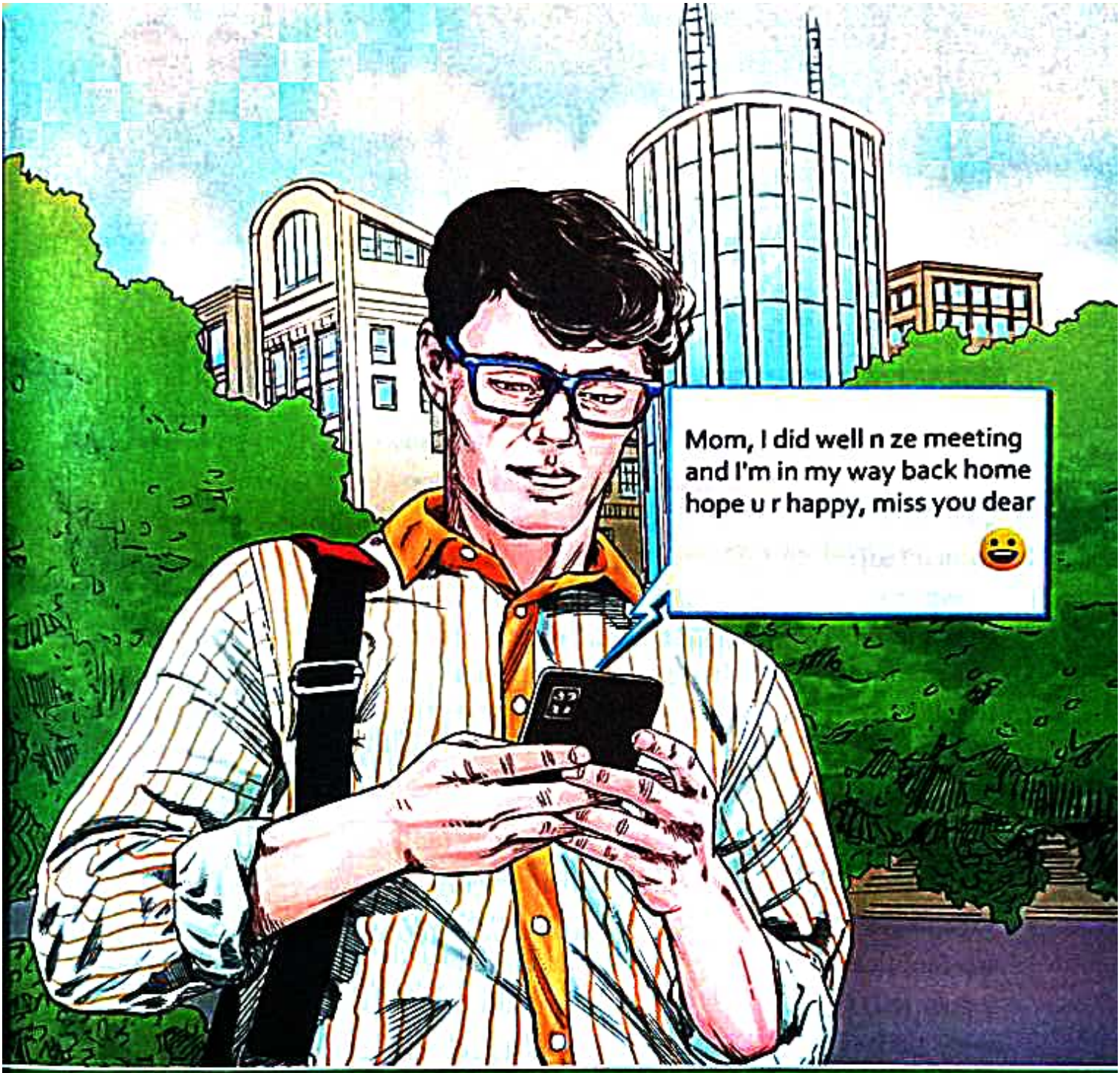
Mariam : Yes. At the start, you need to learn simple things like how to put **a bandage**(10) on someone. You don't have to know how to perform CPR, for example. I'm sure I'll be taking courses for the next few years so, I can learn as much as possible.

Interviewer : And why do you enjoy learning first aid so much ? What's so interesting about it ?



Mariam : Well, it's great to learn something you can use to help people in the future, and the course is really fun too. You don't need to sit at a desk and read books to learn first aid, you need to do it. Our teacher understands that and he makes sure that the lessons are fun.

Interviewer : So you can learn something useful and have fun at the same time. Fantastic !



UNIT

4 Changing English

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 24 : 29

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
 An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post
- **Writing :**
 A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects
- **Listening :**
 A speaker talking about messaging; Tips on how to write a successful blog post
- **Speaking :**
 A debate
- **Language :**
 Reported speech; reporting orders, requests and advice; could/should have + past participle
- **Life skills :**
 Communication

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 42 : 45 WB pages 24 & 25



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	misunderstand - misunderstood (v)	يُسئ فهم
acronym (n)	اختصار بالأحرف الأولى	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة - حتمًا
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيري	negative (adj)	سلبي
formal (adj)	رسمي	positive (adj)	إيجابي
frown (n)	تجهم - عبوس	request (ed) (n - v)	طلب - يطلب
frown (ed) (v)	يغبس - يتجهم (يتكشر)	tone (n)	نبرة الصوت - طابع/أسلوب
innovator (n)	مُبتكر - مُخترع		
linguist (n)	خبير لغة - عالم لغة		

2 Important Vocabulary

actually (adv)	في الحقيقة	everyday (adj)	يومي
admit (ted) (v)	يقر بـ - يعترف بـ	expressions (n)	تعبيرات(وجه)
advantages (n)	مزايا	face-to-face (adj)	وجهًا لوجه
app (application)	تطبيق	facial (adj)	وجهي (خاص بالوجه)
appear (ed) (v)	يظهر -	immediate (adj)	فوري
apply (ied) (v)	يُطبّق - يتقدم بطلب	inform (ed) (v)	يعطي معلومة -يُعلم
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	lovely (adj)	رائع
author (n)	مؤلف	positively (adv)	بشكل إيجابي
aware (adj)	علي علم - مُدرك	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
basic (adj)	أساسي	purpose (n)	غرض
basically (adv)	اساسًا - في الأساس	require (d) (v)	يتطلّب - يستلزم
chat (ted) (n - v)	دردشة - يدردش	research (ed) (n - v)	بحث - يجري بحث
conversation (n)	حوار	response (n)	استجابة - رد
correct (ed) (adj - v)	صحيح - يُصحح	suitable (adj)	مناسب
deal - dealt (d) (v)	يتعامل - يتناول	teenager = teen (n)	فراهق
disadvantages (n)	عيوب	warn (ed) (v)	يُحذّر

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
abbreviation (n) اختصار	a short form صيغة of a word or expression تعبير
acronym (n) اختصار بالحروف الأولى	a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up تكوّن the name of something
emoji (n) رمز تعبيري	an icon used in electronic messages and on websites
formal (adj) رسمي	used in official or serious جاد situations
frown (v) يعبس إنكشر	to have an expression تعبير on your face that shows you are not happy
innovator (n) مُبتكر - مُخترع	someone who introduces changes and new ideas
linguist (n) خبير لغة - عالم لغة	someone who studies or teaches linguistics اللغويات
misunderstand (v) يسئ فهم	to not understand properly
not necessarily (adv) ليس بالضرورة	a response استجابة to something that has been said that may not be true or correct
tone (n) نغمة الصوت / نبرة	the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. We are all indebted مدينين to the great of technology who made our life more comfortable. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. poets b. editors c. explorers d. innovators
2. Social Media are responsible for the explosion of that threaten formal language. (حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٣)
 a. introduction b. abbreviations c. communication d. selfies
3. are used to express emotions in electronic messages. (حرجا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Emojis b. Abbreviations c. Keys d. Symbols
4. FIFA is the for "Federation of International Football Association".
 a. language b. emoji c. acronym d. thesaurus

5. Pollution is a side of modern technology. (إدفو نموذج - الوسطى ٢٠٢٣ م)
 a. positive b. negative c. bright d. clean
6. You should use language when writing to a company. (المعالوط ٢٠٢٣ م)
 a. informal b. unofficial c. personal d. formal
7. Some regard emojis and abbreviations as language innovations. (إسنيوين ٢٠٢٣ م)
 a. linguists b. languages c. linguistics d. bilinguals
8. When she, I knew she was rather angry. (الشهداء ٢٠٢٣ م)
 a. found b. founded c. frowned d. formed
9. I never expected you to me. I am really shocked. (السويس ٢٠٢٣ م)
 a. search b. communicate c. research d. misunderstand
10. His loss of the game doesn't mean he didn't train well. His opponent was just lucky. (إدفو نموذج - بنا ٢٠٢٣ م)
 a. necessarily b. negatively c. necessity d. necessary
11. She tends to adopt a falsely cheerful when she's upset about something. (السودان ٢٠٢٣ م)
 a. tune b. tone c. ton d. sound
12. "You need to work hard all the time." This sentence gives us what can be described as advice.
 a. formal b. informal c. positive d. negative
13. I repeated my, but still he refused.
 a. acronym b. request c. advise d. tone
14. That boy never smiles and has a permanent
 a. laugh b. emoji c. tone d. frown

2 Important vocabulary

15. I had asked you several times, but you gave no to my question. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣ م)
 a. message b. response c. joke d. truth
16. The tour guide the tourists not to go into the desert on their own. (القاهرة - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢ م)
 a. warned b. reused c. discouraged d. suggested
17. I don't know how to with this difficult situation.
 a. require b. admit c. apply d. deal

18. 'Ma3ak' from El-Moasser will help you take online exams according to the new educational system.
a. Section b. Headline c. Purpose d. App

19. Your expressions reflect تعكس your feelings and reaction رد الفعل.
a. endless b. facial c. basics d. basically

20. Law to all citizens.
a. requires b. admits c. applies d. deals

21. You need to know how to deal with the problems of life.
a. everyday b. face-to-face c. aware d. personal

22. The on her face shows that she is disappointed. مُحبَطة
a. suffix b. procedure c. expression d. thesaurus

23. Would you kindly us of your new address?
a. research b. reuse c. include d. inform

24. The main of a fridge is to keep our food fresh for some time.
a. section b. headline c. purpose d. app

25. To be achieved, success planned hard work.
a. requires b. admits c. applies d. deals

26. There should be a/an summit قمة between the leaders of the two countries.
a. everyday b. face-to-face c. aware d. endless

27. The idea of the plan is great, but the details need rethinking.
a. endless b. facial c. basic d. basically

28. What you say is reasonable. معقول
a. endless b. facial c. basic d. basically

29. Some scientists are still a vaccine مصل for this disease.
a. researching b. warning c. interesting d. informing

30. Sadly, I that I have made a mistake.
a. require b. admit c. apply d. deal

31. Be of the dangers that threaten تهدد your country.
a. everyday b. face-to-face c. aware d. personal

3 Definitions

32. To is to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
a. frown b. understand c. smile d. blink

33. The one who knows a lot about a language is called a/an
(العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٢ ٢)

a. scientist b. linguist c. sociologist d. archaeologist

34. language is used in official or serious situations.

a. Necessary b. Not necessary
c. Formal d. Informal

35. A/An is someone who introduces changes and new ideas.

a. blogger b. innovator c. messenger d. linguist

36. A is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.

a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. prefix

37. To is to not understand properly.

a. frown b. understand c. misunderstand d. blog

38. "....." is a response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct.

a. Necessarily b. Not necessarily
c. Formally d. Informally

39. A/An is a short form of a word or expression.

a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym

40. A/An is a word formed from the first letters of the words that make up the name of something.

a. procedure b. innovation c. emoji d. acronym

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	wrong يرتكب خطا	have	an argument يتجادل - يقع في خلاف
get	upset يتزعج		long conversations يجري حوارات مطوّلة
	... wrong يفهم ... بشكل خاطئ	include	a question يُضمّن سؤالًا
	advice يحصل علي النصيحة	introduce	new ideas يطرح أفكارًا جديدة
give	advice يعطي النصيحة	pass	an exam/ a test يجتاز امتحان
	... bad news ينقل لـ ... أخبار سيئة	play	the piano يعزف على البيانو
	the opposite meaning يعطي عكس المعني		

go	home يذهب للمنزل	post	personal information يلشر معلومات شخصية
have	so much fun يمرح كثيرًا	say	... in response to يقول ... ردًا علي
	a negative effect on له اثر سيء علي	take	a selfie يلتقط صورة لنفسه

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
appear	يظهر - يصل	come out, arrive
appear	يبدو	sound, seem, look
aware	علي علم - مُدرِك	well informed, knowledgeable, conscious of, acquainted with, informed about /of
basic	أساسي - محوري	fundamental, primary, principal, chief
formal	رسمي	official, legal, authorized, licensed, documented
necessarily	حتمًا - بالضرورة	inevitably, automatically
request	يطلب	demand, seek
response	استجابة - رد	feedback, reply, reaction

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
aware	علي علم - مُدرِك	unaware, unconscious, ignorant	جاهل بـ - غير مُلِمّ بـ
basic	أساسي - محوري	secondary, trivial, unimportant	ثانوي - تافه - غير مهم
basic	أساسي	extra, minor	إضافي - ثانوي
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
formal	رسمي	informal	غير رسمي - ودي
innovator	مبتكر	imitator	مُقلِّد / مُحاكي
misunderstand	يُسئ فهم	understand, grasp, take in	يفهم - يستوعب
necessarily	حتمًا - بالضرورة	possibly, not necessarily	ممكن -ليس بالضرورة
response	استجابة - رد فعل	action, request	فعل - طلب

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

abbreviation	
abbreviate (d) (v) يختصر	- We abbreviate United Nations to UN.
abbreviation (n) اختصار	- UN is the abbreviation of United Nations.
abbreviated (adj) مُختَصر	- We usually use abbreviated words in messaging.
blog	
blog (ged) (v) يُدوّن	- I always blog about some social problems.
blog (n) مُدوّنة (على الإنترنت)	- I have a blog about social problems.
blogger (n) مُدوّن	- I am a blogger about social problems.
linguist	
linguist (n) خبير لغة - عالم لغة	- He is a famous linguist.
linguistics (n) (علم) اللغويات	- He is expert in linguistics.
linguistically (adv) لغويًا	- This expression is linguistically incorrect.
necessarily	
necessitate (d) (v) يستلزم / يتطلب	- This pain necessitates a surgery.
necessity (n) الضرورة	- It is a necessity for you to have a surgery.
necessary (adj) ضروري	- It is necessary for you to have a surgery.
necessarily (adv) بالضرورة - حتمًا	- He is not necessarily ill. He might be busy.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a guide to messaging	دليل المراسلة	form of communication	أحد طرق التواصل
all about	كل ما يخص	fun to use	ممتع في استخدامه
as a response to	كرد علي - كاستجابة لـ	in response to	ردًا علي
as soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن	laugh out loud	يضحك بصوت عال (يقهقه)
be aware of	علي وعي بـ	messaging apps	تطبيقات التواصل
be careful with	يحرص علي	messaging language	لغة المراسلة
be interested in	مهتم بـ	no longer able to	لم يعد قادرًا علي
be unkind to	يقسو علي	see you later	أراك لاحقًا
be upset with	غضبان من	stay in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال بـ

different from / to	مختلف عن	the negative side of	الجانب السلبي لـ
does not necessarily mean	لا يعني بالضرورة أن	What's up?	ماذا لديك؟ / ما الجديد؟
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	whether ... or not	سواء ... أم لا

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

advise ... to / not to	ينصح ... أن / ألا	order ... to / not to	يأمر ... أن / ألا
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	put ... down	يترك
ask ... to / not to	يطلب من ... أن / ألا	refer back to	يشير إلى
change ... into	يعبر ... إلى	speak/talk to	يتحدث إلى
chat with	يدردش مع	thank ... for	يشكر ... على
come / go back	يعود	waiting for ... to	في انتظار ... أن
encourage ... to / not to	يشجع ... أن / ألا	warn ... to / not to	يحذر ... أن / ألا

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

abbreviation - acronym

- **Abbreviation :** is a short form of a word or expression. "Dr" is the written abbreviation of "Doctor". "Mr" is the written abbreviation of Mister.

هو عبارة أن اختصار لكلمة / عبارة

Word / Expression	Abbreviation	Meaning
tomorrow	2moro	غداً
Great!	Gr8	عظيم!
Please	plz	من فضلك
thank you	thx	اشكرك
as soon as possible	ASAP	بأسرع ما يمكن
see you later	c u l8r	أراك لاحقاً
laugh out loud	LOL	تضحك بصوت عال
I don't know	Idk	لا أعرف - لست أدرى
rolling on the floor laughing	ROTFL	يضحك بشدة (يتدحرج على الأرض من الضحك)
be right back	BRB	سأعود
by the way	BTW	بالمناسبة (على فكرة)

• **Acronym :** is a word made up from the first letters of the name of something such as an organisation. هى كلمة مكونة من الأحرف الأولى لاسم شىء (مثلاً منظمة)

Words / Expressions	Acronym	Meaning
North Atlantic Treaty Organisation	NATO	حلف الناتو
Federation International de Football Association	FIFA	الفيفا (الاتحاد الدولى لكرة القدم)
United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو (منظمة الأمم المتحدة للتربية والعلوم والثقافة)
Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome	AIDS	مرض نقص المناعة المكتسبة
Light Amplification by the stimulated emission of radiation	LASER	اشعة الليزر

لاحظ أن كلمة **(abbreviation)** قد تستخدم أحيانًا للإدى معنى **(acronym)**.

everyday - every day

• **everyday (adj)** يومي (صفة تستخدم فقط قبل اسم)

- Don't worry! It is an everyday problem.

• **every day (adv)** كل يوم (ظرف يُستخدم غالبًا في بداية أو نهاية الجملة)

- I go to school every day. = Every day, I go to school.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The antonym of the word 'innovator' is (أسيوط - الدير ٢٠٢٣)
 a. inventor b. competitor c. imitator d. discoverer
2. A good citizen is aware of the dangers that threaten their country."
 The adjective 'aware' here can be replaced by
 a. conscious b. unconscious c. ignorant d. malware
3. "The smile on her face does not necessarily mean she has no problems." We can use the adverb instead of 'necessarily' in this sentence.
 a. impossibly b. recently c. really d. inevitably
4. "He takes in what you want to say." This means he what you want to say.
 a. understands b. misunderstands
 c. takes out d. doesn't grasp

5. "Include only the basic facts in the report." The adjective 'basic' in this sentence is a synonym of
 a. trivial b. fundamental c. secondary d. unimportant
6. My father warned me that bad company الضحية.
 a. that avoids b. so that we keep c. to keep d. not to keep
7. This bike is different the one we saw yesterday.
 a. with b. for c. after d. from
8. I hope you will in touch with us all.
 a. keep b. stay c. sit d. a & b
9. Do you know how to..... the piano? (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. go b. play c. get d. make
10. Do you think I wrong by telling him the truth? (الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. made b. got c. added d. did
11. I really upset when my father cancelled our trip to Alex. (بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. went b. turned c. got d. held
12. You can drive your car if you a driving test. (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)
 a. pass b. succeed c. support d. park
13. The coach said that he had me in the tomorrow's match squad.
 a. included b. made c. stayed d. said
14. I can't help selfies.
 a. going b. playing c. taking d. giving
15. Do you think it is a that I am in uniform?
 a. necessitate b. necessity c. necessary d. necessarily
16. Playing a full match being fit.
 a. necessitates b. necessity c. necessary d. necessarily
17. 'Doctor' is to 'Dr'.
 a. abbreviated b. abbreviation c. linguist d. linguistics
18. Text is easier on a smartphone than on a traditional mobile phone.
 a. messages b. messaging c. massaging d. conclusion
19. Which of the following is more of an abbreviation?
 a. NATO b. AIDZ c. Gr8 d. a & b

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Text Messaging

(SB page 43)

Plz read this **article**(1) ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u  it! 

For any readers who can't understand the language of **text**(2) **messaging**(3), the translation is: Please, read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.



In text messages, **abbreviations**(4), **emojis**(5) and numbers are all used to make **communication**(6) quicker. The language of text messages doesn't **require**(7) **correct**(8) **spelling**(9), or difficult grammar and **punctuation**(10).

Messaging language is **appearing**(11) in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis . Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!!!!!

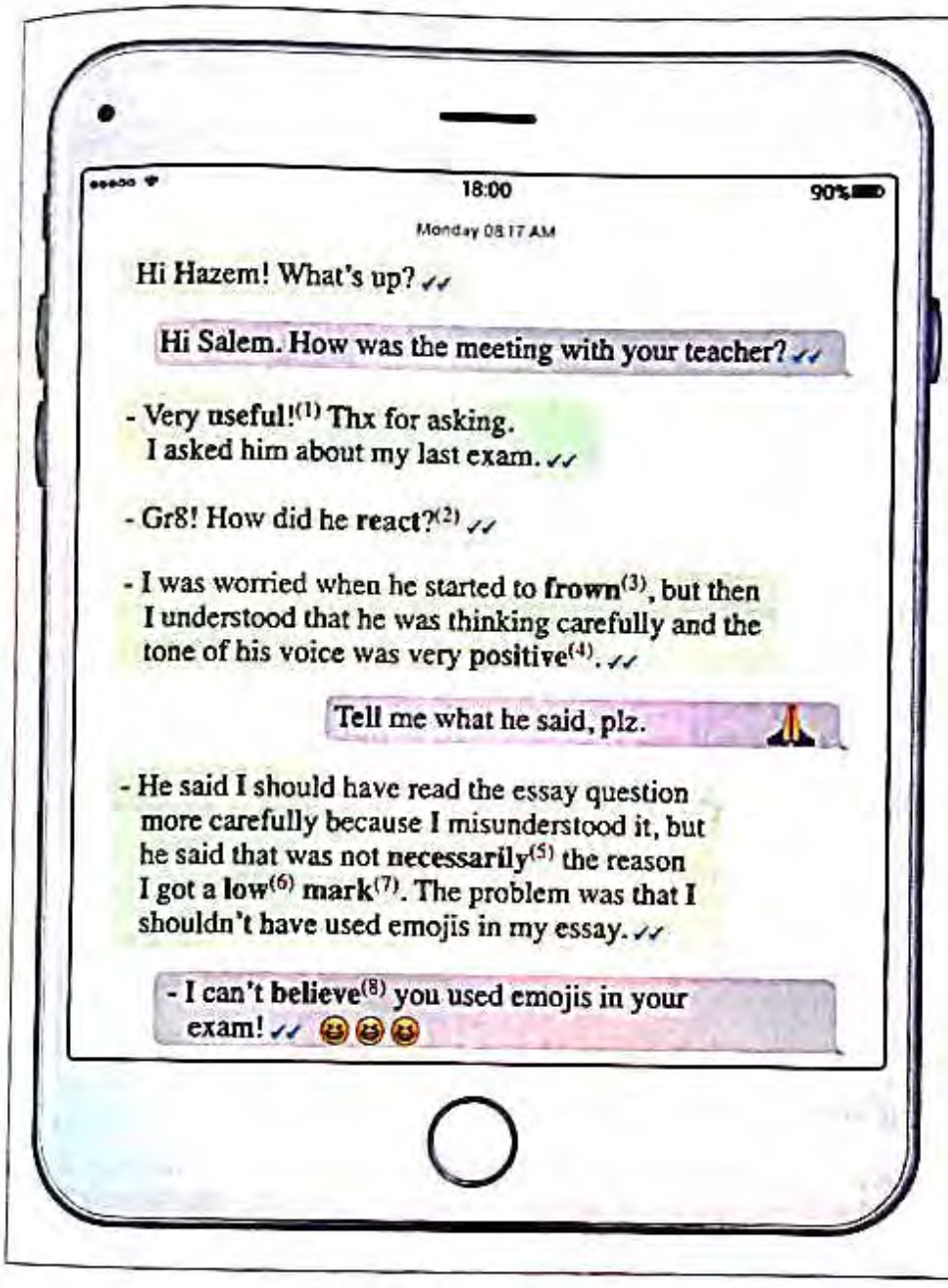
So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't **suitable**(12) in **formal**(13) emails. And now teachers are worried that some **teenagers**(14) are **no longer**(15) able to speak or write using English correctly.

However, some **linguists**(16) suggest that the people who use messaging language are **actually**(17) language **innovators**(18), **introducing**(19) new ideas into English. They **argue**(20) that messaging language is quick, short and **communicates**(21) a lot in a small **space**(22).

Whether(23) or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the **basic**(24) abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

(1) مقال
(2) نص
(3) التراسل
(4) اختصارات
(5) رموز تعبيرية
(6) التواصل
(7) يتطلّب
(8) صحيح
(9) التهجي
(10) علامات الترقيم
(11) يظهر
(12) مناسب
(13) رسمي
(14) مراهقين
(15) لم يعُد
(16) اللغويون
(17) في الحقيقة
(18) مبتكرين
(19) يُقدّم - يطرح
(20) يجادل - يزعم
(21) ينقل - يوصّل
(22) مساحة
(23) سواء
(24) أساسي

(WB page 25)



(1) مفيد
(2) يتصرف
(3) يعبس
(4) إيجابي
(5) بالضرورة
(6) منخفض
(7) درجة
(8) يُصدِّق

Hi Hamdi, I had so much fun this morning ! *(WB page 24)*

laugh out loud LOL. I was on TV, talking about tech, and I **warned**(1) people not to open any **strange**(2) emails. It was great (gr8) ! They asked me to go back next week! I'll see you later (cu 18r) and I will tell you all about it.

(1) يحذر
(2) غريب
(3) أنا مسرور جدًا
(4) معلومات شخصية
(5) يحضر

Khalid

Hey Nadia, thanks (thx) for your help ! **I'm so glad**(3) you advised me to change the photos on my blog. I don't know (idk) what I was thinking! My dad warned me not to post **personal information**(4) , but I didn't think about the photos. I'll change them as soon as possible (ASAP).

Judy

Yasser, why didn't you tell me that you can't find my book? I asked you to look after it. Can you please (PIZ) look for it again and **bring**(5) it to school tomorrow (2 moro)?

Medhat

Nihal, aged(1) 16

(WB page 25)

A new girl has started at our school and I wanted to be **friends with**(2) her. I spoke to her in the **playground**(3) and we took a **selfie**(4) together. That afternoon I posted it **online**(5), but she didn't like the photo and the next day at school she didn't speak to me. What did I do wrong?

(1) بالغ من العمر
(2) يكون صداقة مع
(3) ملعب
(4) صورة شخصية
(5) على الإنترنت
(6) يرسب
(7) يهتم - يبالي

Adam, aged 17

Last week, my friend sent me a text message to say that he was unhappy because he had **failed**(6) a test at school. It was late and I didn't know what to say, so I decided to reply in the morning. But then too many things happened in the morning and I forgot. Now he thinks that I don't **care**(7). What should I have done?

2 Listening Texts

Messaging

(SB page 44)

Presenter: Hello everyone, thanks for **joining**(1) me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about **messaging**(2). My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy.

She is the **author**(3) of the book "A Guide to Messaging" which **encourages**(4) us to use messaging **positively**(5). Welcome to the programme, Dr Magda.

Dr Magda: Thank you. It's **lovely**(6) to be here.

Presenter: So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very **upset**(7). She couldn't stop crying. Eventually she **admitted**(8) that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out **loud**(9) - in **response**(10) to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo.

She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda: This is a good example of why we need to be **aware of**(11) the **advantages**(12) and **disadvantages**(13) of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter: Because messaging is different to speaking face - to - face, isn't it?

Dr Magda: Exactly! Sometimes face - to - face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more **confusing**(14). And this is **basically**(15) because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she **smiling**(16) or **frowning?**(17) And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they making a **joke**(18)?

(1) يلخص
(2) التراسُل - المراسلة
(3) مؤلف
(4) يشجع
(5) بشكل إيجابي
(6) رائع
(7) منزعج
(8) أقرّ - اعترف
(9) بصوت عال
(10) رد
(11) على علم - فنزك
(12) مزايا
(13) عيوب
(14) مُحيّر - مَرَبك
(15) اساساً
(16) مبتسم
(17) عابس
(18) مزحة (نكتة)

Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body **movements**[19]. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we **notice**[20] all these things; **facial**[21] **expressions**[22], body movements and the tone of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often **misunderstand**[23] what the other person is trying to **communicate**[24].

Presenter: So, that's the **negative**[25] **side**[26] of messaging. Is there a positive side?

Dr Magda: Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying **in touch with**[27] friends, but remember that messaging is **designed**[28] to be short and quick so don't expect to have long **conversations**[29], and don't get upset when you get one word or even an **abbreviation**[30] or **acronym**[31] as a response to your message.

Presenter: So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda: Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an **immediate**[32] reply does not **necessarily**[33] mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said 'Can I call you?'

Presenter: So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more **traditional**[34] communication is important.

Dr Magda: I am! **Absolutely**[35]. Messaging is one form of communication not the only form of communication.

Presenter: Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme...

(19) حركات
(20) يلاحظ
(21) وجهي
(22) تعبيرات
(23) يسئ فهم
(24) يتواصل
(25) سلبي
(26) جانب
(27) علي اتصال بـ
(28) مُصمّم
(29) حوار
(30) اختصار
(31) اختصار بالحروف الأولى
(32) فوري
(33) بالضرورة
(34) تقليدي
(35) تماماً

3 Video script

(SB page 43)

Smartphones are changing the **way**[1] we choose to **communicate with**[2] each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to **make phone calls**[3]. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can **keep in contact with**[4] friends, make and **check arrangements**[5], send photos, ask questions and receive answers **within seconds**[6].

(1) طريقة
(2) بالتواصل مع
(3) يجرى مكالمات تليفونية
(4) يبقى على اتصال مع
(5) يراجع/يتحقق من الترتيبات
(6) في خلال ثوان
(7) على وجه الخصوص / خاصة
(8) يزداد بمقدار
(9) يزداد / يرتفع
(10) مراهقين
(11) بالغين سن الرشد

Messaging is now more popular than emails, **especially**[7] between friends and family. Messaging **increased by**[8] 7000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still **rising**[9]. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that **teenagers**[10] send more than most **adults**[11].

Staying in contact with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation or spending time with someone : that's important too.

PART IV LANGUAGE

Part 1: should have – could have

1 should - should have — يجب أن / ينبغي أن

١ نستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة :

→ **should / shouldn't + inf.** يجب / ينبغي أن / ألا

ex. - You should take some rest. You shouldn't work more today.
- You shouldn't eat so much fast food. It's not good for you.

٢ وتُستخدم (should + inf.) لتقديم اقتراحات (suggestion) أو عمل توصيات (recommendation) :

ex. - You should try the fish in this restaurant. It is great.
- You should get a map of Cairo before you go there.

٣ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) للتعبير عن الراي الشخصي:

ex. - Sama should study engineering. She is very clever at maths.

٤ تُستخدم (should + inf.) للتعبير عن التوقع (expectation) :

ex. - Lunch should be served at two. You won't wait long.

٥ يمكن استخدام (ought to + inf.) بدلًا من (should + inf.) :

ex. - You ought to study hard. = You should study hard.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He shouldn't on that wall. It's not safe.
 a. to sit b. sit c. sat d. sits
2. I help mum with the housework?
 a. Should b. Ought c. Ought to d. Should not
3. You play tennis. That's my suggestion.
 a. must b. mustn't c. should d. need
4. I think he pay for half the goods. That's just an opinion.
 a. ought to b. has to c. should d. a & c
5. A: come to work earlier tomorrow?
 B: To check the preparations for the meeting.
 a. Why I should b. Why should I c. I should d. Should I

should be + (inf. + ing)

تتكون الصيغة المستمرة (continuous form) من :

→ **ought to /should + be + (inf. + ing)** من المفترض ان

ex. - Omar should be travelling to Cairo now but he has missed the train.
= Omar is supposed to be travelling to Cairo now but he has missed the train.

Should have + p.p.

١ تتكون الصيغة التامة (perfect form) فى المبنى للمعلوم من :

→ ... ought to /should + have + p.p. ... كان من المفترض ان

ex. - I didn't expect the weather to be so cold in London. I should have brought my jacket. I shouldn't have asked my old mother to come with me. I ought to have thought well before I made that journey.

٢ وتتكون الصيغة التامة فى المبنى للمجهول من :

→ ... ought to /should + have been + p.p. ...

ex. - The email shouldn't have been read by Nada. It wasn't hers.

٣ تستخدم (should have+ p.p.) فى لوم أو انتقاد شخص على عدم فعل شىء كان من المفروض أن يفعله :

ex. - Karim should have cleaned his room. (لكن لم يقم كريم بذلك)

- Ahmed should have paid the bill. (لكن لم يدفع أحمد الفاتورة)

٤ تستخدم (shouldn't have+ p.p.) فى لوم أو انتقاد شخص على فعل شىء كان من المفروض ألا يفعله :

ex. - You shouldn't have got up so late. (لكنك استيقظت متأخراً بالفعل)

- The Emergency Exit doors shouldn't have been locked.

(لكن مخرج الطوارئ كان مغلقاً)

لاحظ : فى اللغة المنطوقة يميل المتحدث الإنجليزى عادة إلى اختصار نطق (should have) فتبدو للسامع (shoulda) أو (should've).

Mini Test 2 ○ Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You should be for the guests when they arrive.
 a. wait b. waited c. waiting d. to wait
2. I don't know what you are doing here. You should the emails in your office at this moment.
 a. be typed b. be typing c. have typed d. to type
3. Areej should have the email.
 a. to sent b. sent c. sends d. send

4. You have arrived a bit earlier. The manager looked annoyed when you entered.
 a. should b. shouldn't c. ought to d. a & c
5. Aya shouldn't the present. It wasn't hers.
 a. have been opened b. be opening
 c. have opened d. to open
6. The email shouldn't by Nada. It wasn't sent to her.
 a. have been opened b. be opening
 c. have opened d. to open
7. "You shouldn't have shouted at your sister." What does this mean?
 a. You didn't shout at her. b. You are meant to shout at her.
 c. You shouted at her. d. b & c
8. You should have driven more carefully. This means you
 a. do b. don't c. did d. didn't
9. You shouldn't have wasted your time. This means that you
 a. do b. don't c. did d. didn't
10. "Sorry, Sama. I shouldn't have shouted at you yesterday." The speaker expresses his / her
 a. regret b. happiness c. obligation d. pleasure

2 could - could have

could – couldn't + inf.

١ تُستخدَم (could + inf.) للتعبير عن قدرة عامة فى الماضى (مثل السباحة وقيادة السيارة والتحدث بلغة معينة ... إلخ) :

→ **... could / couldn't + inf.**

ex. - She could read at the age of five.
- I couldn't swim until the age of twelve.

٢ غالباً لا تُستخدَم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شىء محدد فى موقف معين فى الماضى وهو ما يعرف بـ (past achievement). لكن تستخدم الصيغ التالية:

→ **... was / were able to + inf.** كان قادرًا على

ex. - We were able to arrive home through traffic jam.

→ **... managed to + inf.** تمكن أن

ex. - I managed to repair my car.

→ **... succeeded in + (inf. + ing)** نجح فى أن

ex. - I succeeded in sending that email after many attempts. محاولات

٣ لكن تُستخدَم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء محدد فى موقف معين فى الماضى وهو ما يعرف بـ (past achievement) مع أفعال الحواس والإدراك مثل :

... could + smell, taste, see, hear, touch, think, believe, remember, understand ... etc.

ex. - I knew they were at home. I could hear their voices inside.

- She spoke to me before, but I couldn't remember her name.

- The food was terrible. I could taste nothing but salt.

٤ عند التعبير عن عدم القدرة أو عدم الإستطاعة فى الماضى نستخدم :

→ **couldn't + inf. = wasn't / weren't + able to + inf.**

ex. - I couldn't understand what he said.

= I wasn't able to understand what he said.

٥ استخدامات أخرى لـ (could + inf.) :

1- Making suggestions : تقديم الإقتراحات

Ali: What shall we do tonight? - Omar : We could go to the cinema.

2- Making requests : تقديم الطلبات

ex. - Could you open that door, please ?

3- Asking for permission : طلب الإذن

ex. - Could I use your office tomorrow ?

4- Expressing present / future possibility :

التعبير عن إمكانية حدوث شيء فى المضارع أو المستقبل:

ex. - He could go by bus. (= Maybe he will go by bus.)

- She could be at home. (= Maybe she is at home.)

Mini Test 3 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I found a course at my local college where I train as a teacher.

a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't

2. I looked all over the house, but I find my phone.
 a. couldn't b. wasn't able to c. managed to d. a & b
3. I able to solve the mystery. It was easy for me to do it.
 a. am b. was c. should be d. could be
4. They succeeded the problem with the tablet.
 a. to fix b. to fixing c. in fixing d. a & c

could / couldn't be + (inf. + ing)

١ تستخدم الصيغة المستمرة لعمل استنتاج ضعيف لحدث مستمر فى المضارع :

→ **... could + be + (inf.+ing)... . = ...may/might + be + (inf.+ing)... .**

ex. - I don't know what Aya is doing now. She could be watching TV.
= I don't know what Aya is doing now. She might be watching TV.

٢ تُستخدم الصيغة المستمرة المنفية (can't / couldn't + be + inf. + ing) لعمل استنتاج قوى منفى لحدث مستمر فى المضارع :

→ **...couldn't / can't + be + (inf.+ing)... .** لا يمكن أن

ex. - I am sure Ali is at home now. He couldn't be visiting his uncle.
= I am sure Ali is at home now. He can't be visiting his uncle.

could – couldn't + have + p.p.

لاحظ تكوين الصيغة التامة فى المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول :

→ **subj. + could + have + p.p. ...** (مبنى للمعلوم)

→ **obj. + could + have + been + p.p. ...** (مبنى للمجهول)

- وتُستخدم هذه الصيغة في الحالات التالية :

١ يمكن أن تعبر (could have + P.P.) عن استنتاج ضعيف فى الماضى :

→ **...could + have + p.p. = may / might + have + p.p.**

ex. - He didn't visit us for a long time. He could have been busy.
- He didn't visit us for a long time. He might have been busy.

٢ لكن لاحظ أن (couldn't have + p.p.) تعبر عن استنتاج قوى منفى فى الماضى :

→ ...couldn't + have + p.p. = ...can't + have + p.p. ...

- Mr Ayman's passport is still in the office, so he couldn't (can't) have travelled abroad.

من غير الممكن أن يكون قد سافر وجواز سفره لا يزال فى المكتب.

٣ وتُستخدم (could have + p.p.) عند تخيل حدث أو موقف كان من الممكن حدوثه فى الماضى لكنه لم يحدث :

- Moataz was driving at a mad speed. He could have killed us.

- كان يمكن أن يقتلنا بسبب السرعة لكن لم يحدث شىء والمتحدث فقط يتخيل شىء كان من الممكن حدوثه فى الماضى.

لاحظ : فى اللغة المنطوقة يميل المتحدث الإنجليزى عادة إلى اختصار نطق (could have) فتبدو للسامع :

- (could've) / (coulda)

Mini Test 4 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He have gone to the city centre. He did say he wanted to go shopping.
 a. can't b. could c. couldn't d. mightn't
2. A: Their plane was delayed and they had to wait 20 hours in the airport.
 B: They have been very happy with the airline.
 a. must not b. couldn't c. must d. might
3. They have been at the cafe but I didn't see them.
 a. must b. can't c. couldn't d. could
4. I travelled by train, but I by car.
 a. might have travelled b. could travel
 c. could have travelled d. can travel
5. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and you
 a. may have killed b. must have been killed
 c. could have been killed d. could have killed

General Exercise On Language

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. In the past, people only tell stories by talking to each other.

(سوهاج - البنين ٢٠٢٣)

a. can b. could have c. should have d. could

2. I should a face mask in such a dusty weather, I have caught a virus.

(بني سويف - بنا ٢٠٢٣)

a. have been worn b. have wear c. wear d. have worn

3. I spent the weekend indoors, but I to the club.

a. might have gone b. could go

c. could have gone d. can go

4. He was traveling all day yesterday. So, you have seen him at work.

(المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

a. shouldn't b. could c. ought to d. couldn't

5. Thank you. It's a fantastic gift, but you so much money on me.

(أبو حماد ٢٠٢٣)

a. should have spent b. shouldn't have spent

c. shouldn't spend d. should spend

6. He been ill, I met him in the gym yesterday.

(بلها ٢٠٢٣)

a. could have b. couldn't have c. must have d. couldn't

7. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you me.

(كفر الشيخ - غرب ٢٠٢٣)

a. should phone b. could phone

c. would have phoned d. ought to have phoned

8. My brother to Cambridge University, but he decided to study in Egypt.

(أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)

a. shouldn't have gone b. could have gone

c. could go d. couldn't have gone

9. You missed the interview. You earlier.

a. should come b. must come

c. should have come d. must have come

10. What yesterday to avoid meeting those people? I feel sorry now! (الشروق - الأبطال الرسمية للغات ٢٠٢٣)

a. had I to do
b. should I have done
c. should I do
d. I should have done

11. One day, he went for a walk up a mountain and never came back. He have fallen over a hole. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

a. should
b. shouldn't
c. could
d. can't

12. I feel terribly sick today. I have eaten fast food yesterday. It was a wrong decision. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)

a. should
b. could
c. couldn't
d. shouldn't

13. Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Alexandria ?
- You with your uncle. (نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)

a. could stay
b. managed to stay
c. should stay
d. could have stayed

14. If I were you, I would work to a plan. This sentence means you to a plan. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

a. should have worked
b. could have worked
c. should work
d. shouldn't work

15. It was raining heavily and there weren't any taxis, but in the end I come home safely. (أسيوط - الفتح ٢٠٢٣)

a. was able to
b. could
c. needn't
d. could have

16. I have practised playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret it. (سوهاج - إخميم ٢٠٢٣)

a. shouldn't
b. must
c. ought to
d. could

17. You have heard his phone ringing. He hasn't got a phone. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

a. should
b. couldn't
c. could
d. shouldn't

18. "I should have obeyed my mother." This sentence shows (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)

a. suggestion
b. positive advice
c. regret
d. possibility

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 46 & 47 WB pages 26 & 27



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

communicate (d) (v)	يؤدي معني - يتواصل - يبلغ	messaging (n)	التراسُل - المراسلة
communication (n)	التواصل - الاتصال	procedure (n)	إجراء - نَهج
conclusion (n)	خلاصة - خاتمة - استنتاج	prefix (n)	مقطع بادئ
findings (n)	نتائج	suffix (n)	مقطع ناهي
headline (n)	عنوان رئيسي	selfie (n)	صورة ذاتية
introduction (n)	مقدمة	sub-heading (n)	عنوان ثانوي (فرعي)
message (d) (n - v)	رسالة - يراسل	thesaurus (n)	موسوعة مفردات

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر اهمية

age (n)	عصر - عُمُر	partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
aim (ed) (n - v)	هدف - يهدف إلي	powerful (adj)	قوي
anymore (adv)	لم يَعُد - ليس بعد الآن	proper (adj)	صحيح - مناسب
blog (ged) (n - v)	مُدوَّنة (على الإنترنت) - يُدوِّن	properly (adv)	بشكل مناسب
blogger (n)	مُدوِّن	receive (d) (v)	يتسلَّم - يستقبل
blog post	منشور في مدونة	recognisable (adj)	يسهُل التعرف عليه
cite (d) (v)	يستشهد بـ - يقتبس	record (ed) (v - n)	يسجل - سجِل
comment (ed) (n-v)	تعليق - يُعلِّق	remain (ed) (v)	يبقي/يظل
compare (d) (v)	يقارن	report (ed) (v)	تقرير - يبلغ
debate (d) (n - v)	مناظرة - يتحاور	result (ed) (n/v)	نتيجة - ينتج - يؤدى
endless (adj)	مستمر - بلا نهاية	section (n)	قسم
frequently (adv)	غالبًا - كثيرًا	speaker (n)	مُتحدِّث/ناطق - سماعة
include (d) (v)	يُضمِّن - يضيف	survey (n)	بحث استطلاعي
interest (ed) (n-v)	اهتمام - يثير اهتمام - يُشوِّق	tip (n)	نصيحة
misuse (d) (v)	يسئ استخدام	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
blog (n) مدوّنة	a personal website diary for other people to read
findings(n) نتائج	information that is discovered as the result of research into something
messaging(n) التراسل - المراسلة	the system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment
prefix(n) مقطع بادئ	a group of letters that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning and make a new word
procedure(n) إجراءات - نهج	a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way
selfie(n) صورة شخصية	a photograph you take of yourself
suffix(n) مقطع ناهي	a letter or letters added to the end of a word to form a new word
thesaurus(n) موسوعة مفردات	a book that lists words in groups that have similar meanings

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. A/An should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
 a. subheading b. headline c. conclusion d. address
2. The of an essay has the thesis and the hook.
 a. headline b. body c. conclusion d. introduction
3. "Crime does not pay" is the clear of the film. (أطسا ٢٠٢٢)
 a. message b. innovation c. abbreviation d. introduction
4. We add the 'in' to make the antonym of the word "formal". (المنيا - الشهيد إسلام مصطفى ٢٠٢٢)
 a. suffix b. prefix c. acronym d. synonym

5. Ahmed Galal took a duck-face of himself with his mobile.
a. drawing b. painting c. selfie d. procedure

6. All the necessary protective to face infectious diseases must be cared for. (إبيلا - الشهيد محمد لطفى بنين ٢٠٢٢)
a. ailments b. procedures c. reproach d. censure

7. If you go to a foreign country, you will need English to with people. (العجوزة ٢٠٢٢)
a. kill b. run c. play d. communicate

8. The judge came to the that the thief wasn't telling the truth. (بسيون - ناصر الثانوية بنين ٢٠٢٢)
a. experience b. inclusion c. conclusion d. exclusion

9. Doctors around the world are publishing their about Coronavirus in medical journals. (بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢)
a. findings b. foundlings c. devices d. titles

10. We add the 'ity' to change the adjective 'personal' into a noun.
a. suffix b. prefix c. acronym d. synonym

11. Sama me the good news she had heard.
a. communicated b. toned c. frowned d. messaged

12. You can use for the different parts of the report.
a. prefixes b. headlines c. sub-headings d. apps

13. Smartphones provide a more advanced متقدم system.
a. findings b. selfies c. messaging d. emojis

2 Important vocabulary

14. Don't sugar in the shopping list. We have enough of it.
a. research b. reuse c. include d. inform

15. When writing an essay, focus on the main; don't get distracted يتشتت.
a. tip b. topic c. age d. image

16. His objection to my suggestion was so that I thought I had made a big mistake.
a. powerful b. powerfully c. proper d. properly

17. I got tired of your complaints شكوى. Isn't there anything positive in your life ?
a. endless b. facial c. basic d. basically

18. A lot of young people social media in a way that affects their health and wastes their time.
a. compare b. cite c. post d. misuse

19. Readers are invited to on the novel.
a. aim b. comment c. lie d. favour

20. I put the jewel in its place.
a. powerful b. powerfully c. proper d. properly

21. I put the jewel in its place
a. powerful b. powerfully c. proper d. properly

22. Face-to-face know the reaction of their listeners from their facial expressions.
a. speakers b. procedures c. bloggers d. languages

23. It is honest من الامانة to your sources of information.
a. react b. cite c. comment d. misuse

24. We have had a/an about the effects of messaging on modern society.
a. aim b. comment c. debate d. record

25. I visit him That means I visit him a lot or often.
a. frequently b. anymore c. properly d. uncomfortably

26. Our school library has a large physics
a. section b. headline c. sub-heading d. conclusion

27. After doing research, scientists the results.
a. compare b. interest c. respond d. misuse

28. She at coming first this term.
a. aims b. comments c. debates d. records

29. Some researchers are doing a/an into energy use in our town.
a. response b. topic c. survey d. interest

30. Basketball has never been a/an of mine.
a. response b. topic c. survey d. interest

31. Dr Ahmed can give us several useful on how to do first-aid.
a. tips b. topics c. advice d. advise

32. She holds the world for long-distance running.
a. aim b. comment c. debate d. record

33. Omar does not smoke He used to be a heavy smoker.
a. no longer b. anymore c. properly d. uncomfortably

UNIT 4

3 Definitions

34. A photo that I take of myself is called a/an لربط ٣٤
a. message b. selfie c. call d. email

35. A is a letter or letters added to the end of a word to form a new word.
a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. prefix

36. A/An is a personal website diary for other people to read.
a. blog b. innovator c. messaging d. linguist

37. Information that is discovered as the result of research into something is known as
a. findings b. suffix c. thesaurus d. selfie

38. The system or process of sending messages using electronic equipment is known as
a. blog b. massaging c. messaging d. linguist

39. A is a group of letters that is added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning and make a new word.
a. tone b. suffix c. thesaurus d. prefix

40. A/An is a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way.
a. procedure b. abbreviation c. emoji d. acronym

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

create	new words	ينتج كلمات جديدة	make	different sounds	يصدر أصواتًا مختلفة
do	the same ...	يفعل نفس ـ		a negative comment	يعطي تعليق سلبي
feel	special	يشعر بالتميُّز		a joke	يمزح
give	an opinion	يبدي رأي		new words	ينتج كلمات جديدة
interest	the reader	يثير اهتمام القارئ		sense	ذات معنى
take	photos	يلتقط صور	sound	difficult	يبدو صعبًا
	notes	يدوّن ملاحظات			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
compare	يقارن	contrast, analyse
include	يَضمُن - يضيف	involve, take in, add, insert
interest (n)	انتباه - تشويق	attentiveness
interest (n)	اهتمام - مراعاة	concern
interest (n)	هواية	hobby
interest (v)	يثير اهتمام - يَشوّق	be of interest to, appeal to, attract, fascinate
procedure	إجراء	method
proper	مناسب	suitable, convenient, right
recognisable	مُميّز	obvious, definite

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة		Antonym (= Opposite) العكس	
include	يَضمُن - يضيف	exclude, leave out, omit	يستثني - يستبعد - يحذف
interest (n)	انتباه - تشويق	boredom	الملل
prefix	مقطع بادئ	suffix	مقطع ناهي
proper	مناسب	improper, inappropriate	غير مناسب
recognisable	مُميّز	indefinite, ambiguous	غير محدد/غامض

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

communicate	
communicate (d) (v) يتصل - يتواصل	- Sama has the ability to communicate with others.
communication (n) اتصال - تواصل	- Sama finds communication with others easy.
communicator (n) مُفوّه - بليغ	- Sama is a good communicator.
communicable (adj) مُعدي	- Malaria is a communicable disease.
communicative (adj) مُفوّه - يجيد التواصل	- Sama is communicative with others.
conclude	
conclude (d) (v) يستنتج - يَخلُص إلى	- I concluded my essay. - From my replies, the interviewer concluded that I am the best for the job.
conclusion (n) خلاصة - خاتمة	- I wrote the conclusion of my essay.
concluding (adj) ختامي	- I wrote the concluding paragraph of my essay.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at a different time	في وقت اخر	known as	معروف ك
a 15-year-old daughter	ابنة تبلغ من العمر ١٥ عام	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
at least	على الأقل	on their phones	على هواتفهم المحمولة
be friends with	يكون صداقة مع	rather than	بدلًا من - أفضل من
in general,	بصفة عامة	suitable for	مناسب لـ
innovator with language	مبدع في اللغة	that's why	لهذا السبب
keep in touch with	يبقي على اتصال بـ	the findings of a survey	نتائج دراسة استطلاعية

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add to/into	يضيف إلي	reply to	يرد علي
agree with	يتفق مع	start with	يبدأ بـ
come from	يأتي من	take ... away	يبعد
continue (to + inf.) / (inf. + ing)	يستمر في ان	talk about	يتحدث عن
disagree with	يختلف مع	tell ... to / not to	يحث ـ ان / ألا
learn about	يتعلم عن		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

diary - blog

• **diary = journal** مذكرة / مفكرة ورقية (يكتب فيها الشخص يومياته)

ex. - Some people think that it is old-fashioned to keep a diary.

- I enjoy reading my grandfather's diary.

• **blog = weblog** مدونة علي الإنترنت (لآراء شخص معين او لتخصص بموضوع معين)

ex. - On my blog, I usually post wise sayings. اقوال مأثورة

photo - selfie

• **photo = photograph** صورة بالكاميرا (يلتقطها شخص لآخر/ آخرين)

ex. - You have to attach your photo to the form. استمارة

• **selfie** صورة بالكاميرا (يلتقطها شخص لنفسه بمفرده او لآخرين معه)

ex. - I don't like the selfie I have just taken. I'll take another one.

society - community

- society (n) المجتمع (كلمة عامة لصف الناس الذين يحكمهم قانون واحد او تنظيم مؤسسي واحد)
 - Try to be a good member of your society.
- society (n) جمعية - اتحاد
 - The Egyptian society of Surgeons held a meeting yesterday. جمعية الجراحين المصرية
- community (n) مُجتمع محلي
 - The new monorail will help the whole community.
- community (n) طائفة/ملة/جالية
 - The Egyptian community in Morroco welcomed our team.

title - address

- title (n) لقب عائلي
 - My name is Toqa Ashraf Fathi. My title is Fathi.
- title (n) مُسمّي وظيفي
 - What is your job title?
- title (n) عنوان (كتاب/مقال/درس ...)
 - The title of Unit 4 is 'Changing English'.
- address (n) عنوان (منزل/عمل ...)
 - I wrote the address on the envelope.
- address (n) عنوان (بريد الكتروني/موقع انترنت ...)
 - Write the email address in this line.
- address(ed) (v) يخاطب
 - She addresses her manager politely.

8 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
mis-	happens in the wrong way يسيء / لا يُحسن	understand يفهم use يستخدم	misunderstand يسيء الفهم misuse يسيء استخدام
re-	happens again يعيد / مرة اخري	use يستخدم do يفعل write يكتب	reuse يعيد استخدام redo يعيد فعل rewrite يعيد كتابة
un-	gives a word the opposite meaning تعطي عكس الكلمة	like ملل do يفعل comfortable مُريح changed متغير	unlike علي عكس undo يلغي / يُبطل uncomfortable مُتعب unchanged ثابت / كما هو

UNIT 4

9 Suffixes مقاطع تاهية

Suffix التاهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-able	means possible ممكن / قابل لـ	read يقرا change تغيّر recognise يتعرف علي	readable يمكن قراءته changeable قابل للتغيّر recognisable يُمكن التعرّف عليه
-er	makes the noun for a person تعطي اسم الشخص	do يفعل write يكتب use يستخدم care يرعي speak يتحدث	doer فاعل writer كاتب user مُستخدِم carer ممرضة منزلية speaker مُتحدّث
-less	means without بدون / بنقصه	care رعاية use استخدام end نهاية power قوة	careless مهمل useless بدون فائدة endless بلا نهاية powerless ضعيف / واهن

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. On hearing about diseases every now and then, terror spreads everywhere. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)
 a. communicate b. communication
 c. communicative d. communicable
2. Modern technology and online messaging have led to new words.
 a. doing b. sounding c. making d. interesting
3. "He didn't like the way I talked to him, so he refused to include my name in his group." The verb 'include' is antonymous with
 a. leave out b. involve c. take in d. analyse
4. "Squash interests me." This means it me.
 a. annoys b. attracts c. bores d. bears
5. If something is proper, it is
 a. improper b. inappropriate c. suitable d. wrong

6. When you describe something as 'recognisable', you mean it is
 a. indefinite b. definite c. ambiguous d. difficult
7. I started this business three years ago. I haven't travelled abroad
 a. ago b. since c. for d. along
8. Rodayna continued homework.
 a. doing b. to doing c. do d. being done
9. Adding spices food makes it tastier.
 a. at b. by c. to d. from
10. I was the only student in class to answer that question, which made me special.
 a. feel b. do c. say d. interest
11. Sorry, but what you say doesn't any sense.
 a. include b. make c. get d. have
12. He finds it difficult to find suitable words to his ideas and feelings.
 a. communicable b. communication
 c. communicate d. communicates
13. Charlie was a 32-.....-old man. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. years b. years' c. year's d. year
14. Please, be careful when you take this It will be put on my university ID.
 a. selfie b. painting c. photo d. a & c
15. I lost my in the fire.
 a. diary b. dairy c. blog d. blogger

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Shakespeare and the English language

(SB page 46)



(1) تطور
(2) يصف
(3) صورة شخصية
(4) يزيل
(5) عبارات
(6) مبتكر
(7) يربط
(8) مقاطع بادئة
(9) مقاطع لاحقة
(10) غير مريح
(11) مريح
(12) يبدو

Language is always changing, and new words are **created**(1) all the time. We need new words to **describe**(2) new technology, ideas and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But, when everyone started doing it, the word '**selfie**'(3) became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they **remove**(4) words and **phrases**(5) that we don't use anymore.

Shakespeare was a great **innovator**(6) with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and **connecting**(7) words to make new words. He also added **prefixes**(8) and **suffixes**(9), for example, he created '**uncomfortable**'(10) from '**comfortable**'(11).

Today, the language that Shakespeare used can **sound**(12) difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Endless change التغير المستمر

(WB page 26)

The Romans spoke a language called **Latin**[1] and they first took it to the country they called Britannia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from **Germany**[2] when people called Angles and Saxons arrived about 500 years later. Soon the Land of the Angles became known as England and the English have been using and **misusing**[3] **foreign**[4] words **ever since**[5].

For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from Old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the **French**[6], who arrived in 1066.

Unlike[7] the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with **similar**[8] meanings. French words are **recognisable**[9] because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a **mansion**[10], which is a French word.

In the modern **age**[11], we often **reuse**[12] old words from the past to make new **international**[13] words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter is **Greek**[14] and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a **Russian**[15] **speaker**[16] living in America.

(1) اللغة اللاتينية
(2) دولة ألمانيا
(3) يسيء استخدام
(4) أجنبي
(5) منذ ذلك الحين
(6) اللغة الفرنسية
(7) على عكس
(8) متشابه
(9) يسهل التعرف عليه
(10) قصر (منزل)
(11) عصر
(12) يعيد استخدام
(13) دولي
(14) يوناني
(15) روسي
(16) متحدث

Emoji Fun !

(SB page 47)

Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is, there are no words, just a long line of emojis. This is confusing because our grandparents think the messages are from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis **rather than**[1] **proper**[2] words to communicate what they want to say.

(1) بدلاً من
(2) مناسب

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can **receive**[3] and read **replies**[4] which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel **special**[5] and they will want to communicate more. So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".

(3) يتسلم
(4) ردود
(5) مميز

A summary of a survey into social media use *(WB page 27)*

Introduction

The **aim**[1] of this report is to **summarise**[2] the **findings**[3] of the **survey**[4] into the time students spend using **social media**[5].

(1) هدف
(2) يلخص
(3) نتائج
(4) بحث استطلاعي
(5) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

Procedure

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and **disliked**[6] about using it. We **recorded**[7] our **results**[8] and **compared**[9] them.

(6) يكره
(7) يسجل
(8) نتائج
(9) يقارن
(10) عضو
(11) تعليق
(12) يحتفظ على تواصل مع
(13) اهتمامات
(14) هوايات

Findings

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully.

Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported that at least one **member**[10] of their family had made a negative **comment**[11] about it. However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it.

Most students used social media on their phones. The students used social media to **keep in touch with**[12] their friends, and to follow their **interests**[13] or **hobbies**[14].

Conclusion

In general, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

2 Listening Texts

Tips on writing a blog post

(SB page 47)

Speaker 1 :

Tips on how to write a successful **blog post**[1]

1. Start with your **topic**[2]. Think about what will interest and **inform**[3] your reader.
2. Start with a **headline**[4] for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a **suitable**[5] photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the **sections**[6] of your blog. Add a **sub-heading**[7] for each section/new point.
5. Write your **introduction paragraph**[8]. **Be clear**[9] what the **purpose**[10] of this blog post is. Speak to the reader - use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7. Write a **conclusion**[11]. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself' use "we".
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too **frequently**[12]. Use an online **thesaurus**[13] to **avoid**[14] repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it **make sense**[15] to them?
10. **Cite**[16] all your sources of information.

(1) منشور المدونة
(2) الموضوع
(3) يخبر - تعلم
(4) عنوان رئيس
(5) مناسب
(6) أقسام
(7) عنوان فرعي
(8) فقرة تقديمية
(9) كن واضحًا
(10) غرض / هدف
(11) خاتمة
(12) مرارًا وتكرارًا
(13) معجم المترادفات
(14) يتجنب
(15) تعطي معنى
(16) يستشهد بـ

PART IV LANGUAGE

Part 2: Reporting orders, requests and advice
تحويل جمل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة إلى الكلام غير المباشر

١ تبدأ جملة الأمر المثبت (افعل) فى الكلام المباشر بالفعل في المصدر (inf.):

ex. - "Help your mother, Yara", said Father. (مباشر)
= Father said, "Help your mother, Yara". (مباشر)
- Father asked Yara to help her mother. (غير مباشر)

٢ تبدأ جملة النهي (لا تفعل) فى الكلام المباشر بـ (Don't / Never + inf.) :

ex. - "Don't leave children alone, Azza", said Noha. (مباشر)
= Noha said, "Don't leave children alone, Azza". (مباشر)
= Noha warned Azza not to leave children alone. (غير مباشر)

٣ تتكون جملة الأمر / النهي في الكلام غير المباشر من :

مُبلِّغ +	→ فعل إبلاغ +	→ مخاطب +	→ to / not to +	→ باقى الجملة + ... المصدر inf.
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
Father Noha	asked warned	Yara Azza	to not to	help her mother. leave children alone.

٤ يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب بعد المُبلِّغ (المتكلم)، مثل :

told اخبر/ قال لـ - asked طلب - ordered امر - commanded امر -
reminded ذكّر - warned حذّر - advised نصح - encouraged شجّع -
instructed أمر - invited دعي – wanted اراد - taught علّم -
expected توقع - threatened هدد + obj. المُخاطَب.....

٥ والمُخاطَب يكون اسم أو ضمير مفعول (me – him – her – it – you – us – them) :

ex. - Nader told Salma to study hard.
- I advised her to be more serious.

٦ تُستخدم (to + inf.) بعد المُخاطب بمعنى (أن) :

ex. - He told me to exercise more.

٧ تُستخدم (not to + inf.) بمعني (ألّا ...) في صيغة النفي :

ex. - Areej asked him not to shout at her.

٨ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخَاطب :

ex. - Omar said, "Give me your opinion, Sara". (مباشر)

- Omar asked Sara to give him her opinion. (غير مباشر)

٩ يتم حذف (excuse me - pardon me - please ...) وما شابه :

ex. - "Help your mother, please," said my father. (مباشر)

- My father asked me to help my mother. (غير مباشر)

١٠ يمكن تحويل جملة الطلب التى تكون على هيئة سؤال بنفس الطريقة السابقة – لاحظ الأمثلة التالية :

ex. - "Can you help me, Omar?" said Ali. (مباشر)

= Ali asked Omar to help him. (غير مباشر)

- "Could you lend me 10 pounds?" I said to Areej. (مباشر)

= I asked Areej to lend me 10 pounds. (غير مباشر)

١١ يمكن تحويل جملة الطلب التي تكون على هيئة سؤال بنفس طريقة تحويل (Yes / No Questions) كالتالى :

→ **Speaker + asked / inquired ... + if / whether + subj.**

ex. - "Can you help me, Omar?" said Ali. (مباشر)

= Ali asked Omar if he could help him. (غير مباشر)

- "Could you lend me 10 pounds?" I said to Areej. (مباشر)

= I asked Areej if / whether she could lend me 10 pounds. (غير مباشر)

١٢ فى حالة وجود جملة بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات التالية يكون فعلها (inf. / should + inf.) :

- suggest يقترح - recommend يوصى بـ - insist يصمم - advise ينصح - ask _ يطلب

→ **It + be + (vital ضرورى - essential / crucial ضرورى - important ...)**

ex. - I asked that Sama get / should get ready.

- Rodayna suggested that I be / should be in charge of the project.

- It is important that Ashraf follow / should follow a diet.

Mini Test ○ Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I them to turn the music down as I was trying to sleep. (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. said b. told c. made d. ordered to

2. I was recommended a study plan. (ادفو بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. making b. make c. to make d. be made

3. You must buy me the present. You promised me
(أسوان - محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. not to buy b. buying c. not to forget d. to forget

4. The assistant told me for the shirt over there.
(أحمد موافى المتميزة للغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. whether to pay b. if he pay c. to pay d. to have paid

5. That young man me for some advice. (ادمو بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. wondered b. asked c. inquired d. explained

6. The teacher told us to do exercise No 4. This shows
(الجيزة - أكتوبر ٢٠٢٢)

a. order b. suggestion
c. positive advice d. negative advice

تنويه • راجع الشرح الخاص بـ (should - could) من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

Exercise On Language ○ Apply

○ ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. Ayman should have the problem with his staff.

a. to discuss b. discussed c. discussing d. discuss

2. He is already late. He should the apples with other farmers on the field now.

a. be picking b. be picked c. have picked d. to pick

3. Ola went to a healthcare centre where she get medical help.

a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't

4. We searched the house, but we find the lost keys.

a. couldn't b. wasn't able to
c. managed to d. were able to

5. you succeed in finding a place to stay?

a. Had b. Did c. Does d. Were

6. You should always your hands before you eat.

a. to wash b. wash c. be washed d. washing

7. A: I don't know which sport to choose?
B: You try playing tennis. It's a great game.

a. shouldn't b. should be c. couldn't d. should

8. I think healthcare free for everyone.
 a. should
 b. should be
 c. should have
 d. shouldn't have

9. We should be mum with the housework now.
 a. help
 b. helped
 c. helping
 d. to help

10. I haven't sleep very well recently.
 a. been able
 b. been able to
 c. managed
 d. able to

11. you get me some sugar, please ?
 a. Need
 b. Have
 c. Must
 d. Could

12. I drive a car until I was 40. Then I moved to a farther house, so I had to learn.
 a. am not able to
 b. was able to
 c. couldn't
 d. b&c

13. He went by bus but he have gone in his car.
 a. may
 b. could
 c. must
 d. needn't

14. Mum said we go out for ice cream after dinner.
 a. have
 b. need
 c. could
 d. must

15. They go shopping yesterday because the shops were all closed.
 a. shouldn't
 b. can't
 c. couldn't
 d. mightn't

16. They win the match yesterday.
 a. succeeded
 b. were able
 c. managed to
 d. can

17. The prisoner escaping.
 a. could
 b. was able
 c. managed to
 d. succeeded in

18. My motorbike broke down in the middle of nowhere, but luckily I to fix it.
 a. could
 b. ought to
 c. should
 d. was able

19. I was feeling sick yesterday. I eat anything.
 a. can't
 b. couldn't
 c. am not able to
 d. wasn't able

20. My father encouraged me accept that bad offer.
 a. whether
 b. that
 c. to
 d. not to

21. The teacher asked the children left and right before they crossed the road.
 a. not to look
 b. against looking
 c. about looking
 d. to look

22. I ordered her it that day or it would be too late.
a. that send b. if she sent c. to send d. not to send

23. The policeman instructed the drivers so fast.
a. to drive b. not to drive c. drive d. that drives

2 Special cases

24. I pay the bill to get the internet service back.
a. must b. have to c. should d. could

25. We be kind and helpful to our neighbours.
a. mustn't b. have to c. should d. could

26. You have returned home so late. Your father was furious when you entered.
a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. couldn't d. a & c

27. Omar oughtn't the cake. It wasn't for him.
a. have been eaten b. be eaten
c. to have eaten d. eat

28. The cake shouldn't by Omar. It wasn't for him.
a. have been eaten b. be eaten
c. have eaten d. eat

29. They ought at the traffic lights. They were fined.
a. stop b. to stop
c. to have stopped d. to have been stopped

30. She should have used the knife more carefully. This means she
a. does b. doesn't c. did d. didn't

31. Amira shouldn't have eaten more rice. This means that she
a. do b. don't c. did d. didn't

32. You should have bought the computer when it on sale.
a. is b. was c. has d. had

33. I understand the lesson after you had explained the main points to me.
a. could b. was able to c. succeeded in d. a & b

34. He could have gone there on his own if he
a. wants b. wanted c. had wanted d. will want

35. I don't know where Ahmed is. He could the horse.
a. feed b. have fed c. have been fed d. be feeding

36. I didn't know where Ahmed was. He could to feed the horse.
a. go b. have gone
c. have been gone d. be gone

37. I here when I was young but I can't really remember.
a. could be b. could have been
c. should be d. should have been

38. I to the cinema, but I decided to watch a film on TV.
a. could go b. could be gone
c. could have gone d. should go

39. I thought I saw Ayman in the office that morning but it him. He was in London that day.
a. can't be b. couldn't be
c. could have been d. couldn't have been

40. You destroyed the screen. You have read the instructions properly.
a. couldn't b. can c. must d. mustn't

41. I had my mobile on the bus on my way home. It in the office.
a. couldn't leave b. can't leave
c. couldn't have been left d. couldn't have left

42. He suggested that we the film as it was great.
a. see b. have seen c. sees d. seeing

43. My parents suggested exercise every day.
a. me to do b. that I do c. me doing d. I have done

44. My friend me to be careful about fast cars when I crossed a busy street.
a. reported b. suggested c. warned d. recommended

45. My father recommended a book about space technology.
a. me read b. me to reading c. to me read d. that I read

3 Check your understanding

46. "You should be helping mum with the housework." This means
 a. You are already helping mum with the housework
 b. You are supposed to be helping mum with the housework
 c. You are meant to have helped mum with the housework
 d. You don't have to help mum with the housework
47. "We should be wearing seatbelts
 a. but we are wearing them. b. although we are wearing them.
 c. but we aren't wearing them. d. b & c
48. "Ashraf should have been careful with his money." What does this mean ?
 a. Ashraf was careful with his money.
 b. Ashraf isn't careful with his money.
 c. Ashraf wasn't careless with his money.
 d. Ashraf wasn't careful with his money.
49. Which of the following choices is the most accurate to say you find some difficulty winning the race?
 a. I could win the race. b. I was able to win the race.
 c. I managed to win the race. d. b & c
50. Which of the following choices is / are correct?
 a. I couldn't win the race. b. I wasn't able to win the race.
 c. I managed in winning the race. d. a & b

PART THREE | Skills & Advanced Notes



تنويه لإتقان المهارات استخدم كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

make + object + inf. / adj.

• **make + مفعول + inf.** (معلوم) — بجعل / بجبر

ex. - My father made me water the trees in the garden.

• **be made to + inf.** (مجهول) — بجعل / بجبر

ex. - I was made to water the trees in the garden.

• **make + مفعول + adj.** — بجعل

ex. - Good news makes us happy.

whether ... or ... سواء ... أو ...

١. تُستخدم (whether or) بمعنى (سواء ... أو ...) للتعبير عن بديلين :

Whether + بديل أول + or + بديل ثان

ex. - You will be late whether you take a taxi or go by bus.

٢. تُستخدم (whether ... or not) بمعنى (سواء ... أو لا) لنفي التأثير :

- I will tell the truth whether you like it or not.

aged + عدد سنوات = at the age of + عدد سنوات
= when + subj. + was / were + عدد سنوات

ex. - He died in 2014, aged 86. = He died in 2014 at the age of 86.
= He died in 2014 when he was 86.

like مثل X unlike على عكس

- تُستخدم (like / unlike) كحروف جر بمعنى (مثل – على عكس):

• Like his father, Ahmed is hardworking. They are similar.

• Unlike her mother, Rody is tall. They are different.

Compound adjectives that have numbers
الصفات المركبة التى تتضمن أرقام

١. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم مفرد ثم صفة وبينهم (-) كصفة مركبة للاسم يأتى بعدها :

عدد + اسم مفرد + صفة + اسم موصوف

ex. - Rodayna has a nine - year - old brother.

٢. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم مفرد وبينهما (-) كصفة مركبة للاسم يأتى بعدها :

عدد + اسم مفرد + اسم موصوف

ex. - She is an expert on twentieth-century history.

٣. استخدم رقم وبعده اسم جمع كصفة مركبة للاسم يأتى بعدها :

عدد + اسم جمع + اسم موصوف

- Sama joined a six months' course.

٤. فى حالة وجود كلمة time بعد التعبيرات السابقة نستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد و (s') فى حالة الجمع :

ex. - I will leave in an hour's time.
- In two years' time, my brother will be living in his own flat.

other than - rather than

• **other than** بخلاف / غير

ex. - You should eat another source of protein other than red meat.

• **rather than** افضل من - بدلا من

ex. - I suggest that you do a sport rather than chat online all the time.

Exercise On Language Hints

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Just your presence حضور makes us
 a. happy b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & b
2. We are made by your presence.
 a. happy b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & c
3. I will go out you go with me or not.
 a. weather b. whether c. although d. as

4. Mr Younes died in 2011, ... 107.
a. aged b. was c. was aging d. age

5. Mr Younes died in 2011 when he 107.
a. aged b. was c. was aging d. age

6. Mr Younes died in 2011 at the of 107.
a. aged b. was c. was aging d. age

7. her father, Leen has a serious character. They both work hard.
a. Once b. As c. Unlike d. Like

8. her mother, Aya has long hair. Her mother's is short.
a. Once b. As c. Unlike d. Like

9. In a time, I'll have paid back your money.
a. month's b. months' c. monthly d. a & c

10. There's a seven - - tall tree in front of our house.
a. a metre b. metre c. metres d. metres'

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ Read the following passage, then answer the questions. (بنى سويف - ٢٠٢٣)

"A friend in need is a friend indeed". Has that wise saying been proved to you? Has any of your **close** friends ever stood beside you at the times of sorrow, distress or the times of joy ? That has become a needle in a haystack at those times of struggling and **climbing on the shoulders of others**.

At the very beginning of one's life, a child makes friends with a lot of peers who maybe a mixture of good or bad. He, due to his young age, can't perfectly judge or decide who to continue keeping or losing friendship with. By the time he becomes older, the number of friends decreases to a number that doesn't exceed the number of one hand fingers. It all depends on to what extent they are faithful, selfless and honest to each other.

Friendship that all mankind always search for, as it's mainly a human instinct and man is social by nature, has become a rare value. Friends can help you celebrate good times and provide support in bad ones.
They prevent isolation and loliness and increase your sense of belonging.

UNIT 4

The so-called "friends" on social media, because you only contact with them and limit themselves in comments or emojis to congratulate and condole instead of hastening to stand right next to you unless they have tough conditions, are false friends. My advice is to carefully choose your friends.

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. "**Climbing on the shoulders of others**" This expression describes
 a. true friends
 b. selfish friends
 c. friends on social media
 d. brave friends
2. The word "**decrease**" in the second paragraph is an antonym of
 a. expand
 b. decline
 c. contract
 d. shrink
3. Man always needs friends because
 a. he has much free time
 b. he needs to laugh at others
 c. he is greedy by nature
 d. this is how he was created
4. The writer thinks that true friendship has become
 a. common
 b. widely spread
 c. uncommon
 d. hateful
5. What do you think "emojis" are ?
 a. games for entertainment.
 b. computer devices.
 c. figures and symbols.
 d. tools and equipment.
6. The adjective "**close**" in the first paragraph has the same meaning as
 a. locked
 b. best
 c. hateful
 d. opponent
7. Friendship prevents us from feeling of
 a. loneliness and disconnect
 b. relief and relaxing
 c. fear and horror
 d. calmness and excitement
8. The writer advised us to
 a. text our friends at times of sorrow
 b. decrease the number of our friends
 c. correctly select our friends
 d. correctly use social media

2 Writing Tips - Writing a blog post كتابة منشور مدوّنة

Tips on how to write a successful blog post.

* إرشادات خاصة بكتابة منشور مُدوّنة جيد (نص الاستماع الخاص بكتاب الطالب صفحة ٤٧).

1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.

١. ابدأ بالفكرة الرئيسية وفكر فيما سيثير اهتمام القارئ ويعطيه معلومة.

2. Start with a headline for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.

٢. ابدأ بعنوان رئيسى لمدونتك، ويجب أن يخبر العنوان الرئيسى القارئ عن موضوع المدونة، ويجب أن يكون قصيرًا ويعطى معلومات وأن يكون ممتعًا ويجعل القارئ يرغب فى قراءة بقية المدونة.

3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.

٣. ابحث عن صورة شخصية أو صورة مناسبة والتى ستوضح للقارئ موضوع منشور المدونة.

4. Plan the sections of your blog. Add a sub-heading for each section/new point.

٤. حدد أقسام مدونتك، واضف عنوانًا فرعيًا لكل قسم / نقطة جديدة.

5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.

٥. اكتب فقرة المقدمة، كن واضحا فيما يتعلق بالغرض من منشور المدونة هذا، وتحدث إلى القارئ - استخدم ضمير المتكلم / المتكلمين (I /We). أو ضمائر الغائب (he - she - It) قم بتضمين سؤال.

6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.

٦. اكتب المتن الرئيسى للمدونة، واجعل الجمل والفقرات قصيرة، وقم بتضمين صور حيثما كان ذلك مفيدًا، وقم بالبحث لتجد الحقائق لتضمينها.

7. Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use 'we'.

٧. اكتب خاتمة بالرجوع إلى العنوان الرئيسي الخاص بك والمقدمة، ولا تقم بتضمين معلومات جديدة فى خاتمتك، وتحدث إلى القارئ مرة أخرى وقم بتضمين نفسك، واستخدم الضمير «نحن».

8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently. Use an online thesaurus to avoid repeating the same word too many times.

٨. اقرأ وصحح منشور المدونة الخاص بك، وتحقق من الإملاء والقواعد اللغوية وعلامات الترقيم، وتأكد من أنك لم تكرر الأفكار الرئيسية كثيرًا. استخدم موسوعة مفردات عبر الإنترنت لتجنب تكرار نفس الكلمة مرات عديدة.

9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them ?

٩. اطلب من صديق قراءة منشور المدونة الخاص بك لتتأكد أنه ذو مغزى.

10. Cite all your sources of information.

١٠. اذكر جميع مصادر المعلومات الخاصة بك.

Model Blog Post

Language development

In this post, I am going to throw light on the development of languages. First, I will explain what language development means. Then I will give an example of language development.

Like everything else, languages develop. If you ask me what makes languages develop, I will tell you that it is the nature of things. Nothing stands still يبقى جامدًا . As everything in life develops, language develops necessarily in parallel. بالتوازى

Do you see the inventions which come into existence الوجود every day? Of course, we need names not only for them, but for each part of them as well. That will lead to finding new terms مصطلحات for these inventions and their parts. In this way, new words are added to languages.

I will give you a single example. Before 2013, it was impossible to find the word 'selfie' in any English dictionary. What happened was that modern technology has led to inventing this word. The development of smart phones caused the existence of this word. These mobiles, as you know, have cameras. Young people used their mobiles to take photos of themselves, whether alone or with other friends. A language innovator added the syllable 'ie' to the word 'self'. That's how this new word came into existence.

To conclude, languages develop with the development of life. However, we must do our best to protect the fundamentals أساسيات of languages from being vanished.

3 Translation الترجمة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers send more than adults.

a. يقترح كتاب التقارير أن يتم إرسال أكثر من ٥٦٠ مليار رسالة نصية حول العالم كل شهر، ويبدو أن المراهقين يرسلون أكثر من البالغين.

b. تشير التقارير إلى أنه يتم إرسال أكثر من ٥٦٠ مليار رسالة نصية حول العالم كل شهر، ويبدو أن المراهقين يرسلون أقل من البالغين.

c. تشير التقارير إلى أنه يتم إرسال أكثر من ٥٦٠ مليار رسالة نصية حول العالم كل شهر، ويبدو أن المراهقين يرسلون أكثر من البالغين.

d. تشير التقارير إلى أنه سيتم إرسال أكثر من ٥٦٠ مليار رسالة نصية حول العالم كل شهر، ويبدو أن المراهقين يرسلون أكثر من البالغين.

2. In text messages, abbreviations and emojis are used to make communication quicker. Text messages don't require correct spelling or punctuation.

a. في الرسائل النصية، الاختصارات، يتم استخدام الرموز التعبيرية لجعل الاتصال أسرع. لا تتطلب الرسائل النصية التهجئة الصحيحة أو علامات الترقيم.

b. في الرسائل النصية، يتم استخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية لجعل التواصل أسرع، ولا تتطلب الرسائل النصية التهجئة الصحيحة أو علامات الترقيم.

c. في الرسائل النصية، يتم استخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية لجعل التواصل أسرع، ولا تتطلب الرسائل النصية التهجئة الصحيحة أو الانضباط.

d. في الرسائل النصية، يتم استخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية لجعل التواصل أسرع، ولا تطلب الرسائ النصية الهجاء الصحيحة أو الأرقام.

3. Whether or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Like everything else, language is developing.

a. سواء كنت تحب لغة المراسلة أم لا، فإن اللغة الإنجليزية مستمرة في التغير، فاللغة تتطور مثل كل شيء آخر.

b. سواء كنت تحب الرسائل أم لا، فإن اللغة الإنجليزية مستمرة في التغير، فاللغة تتطور مثل كل شيء آ

c. سواء كنت تحب لغة المراسلة أم لا، فإن اللغة الإنجليزية مستمرة في التغير، فاللغة لا تتطور مثل كل شيء آخر.

d. سواء كنت تحب لغة المراسلة أم لا، فإن اللغة الإنجليزية مستمرة في التغير، فاللغة قد تتطور مثل كل شيء آخر.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. لقد أدي انتشار وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي إلى حدوث تطورات كبيرة وسريعة في اللغات. فهؤلاء الذين يتواصلون عبر الإنترنت يميلون إلى الاختصار.

a. The spread of social media has led to great and rapid developments in languages. Those who communicate online tend to abbreviate.

b. The spread of social media has led to great and rapid developments in languages, those who communicate online tend to be short.

c. The spread of social media has led to great and rapid developments in languages. Those who communicate online intend to be abbreviate.

d. The spread of social media has led to great and gradual developments in languages. Those who communicate online tend to be abbreviate.

٢. هل تعتقد حقاً أن لغة التواصل عبر الإنترنت تمثل خطراً على اللغات الفصحي، أم أن ذلك يعتبر شكل من أشكال التطور الطبيعي للغة.

a. Do you really think that the language of communication on the Internet is a danger to classical languages and this is just a form of natural evolution of the language?

b. Do you really think that the language of communication on the Internet is a danger to formal languages or this is just a form of natural evolution of the language?

c. Do you really think that the language of communication on the Internet is a danger to classical languages or this is just a form of natural evaluation of the language?

d. Do you really think that the language of communication on the Internet is a danger to elastic languages or this is just a form of natural evolution of the language?

٣. لقد كان باستطاعتي السفر إلى أسوان بالطائرة، غير انني فضلت ان أسافر بالقطار لأستمتع بالمناظر الرائعة على جانبي الطريق.

a. I should have travelled to Aswan by plane, but I preferred to travel by train to enjoy the wonderful scenery on both sides of the railway.

b. I was able to travel to Aswan by plane, but I preferred to travel by train to enjoy the wonderful scenery on both sides of the railway.

c. I could have travelled to Aswan by plane, but I preferred to travel by train to enjoy the wonderful scenery on both sides of the railway.

d. I can have travelled to Aswan by plane, but I preferred to travel by train to enjoy the wonderful scenery on the side of the railway.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

abbreviation

- **abbreviate (d) = shorten (ed) (v)** يختصر (كلمة أو عبارة)
 ex. - Arab Republic of Egypt is abbreviated to ARE.
- **abbreviated (adj)** مختصر
 ex. - The minister gave an abbreviated speech.خطبة
- **abbreviation (n)** اختصار
 ex. - WHO is the abbreviation of "World Health Organisation".
 منظمة الصحة العالمية

لاحظ أن:

- **be the abbreviation of / for = be short for** اختصار لـ
 ex. - IT is the abbreviation of / for 'Information Technology'.
 = IT is short for 'Information Technology'.

communicate - communication

- **communicate (d) (with) (v)** يتواصل (مع)
 ex. - We can communicate with people all over the world through social media.
 - He has a special ability to communicate well in writing, not orally. شفهياً

لاحظ أن:

- **communicate + شئ + to + شخص** ينقل رسالة / يبلغ ـ لـ
 ex. - Mr Ayman communicated the good news to the staff of the office.
- **communicate (d) (v)** يعبر عن
 ex. - Rokaya communicated her anger by leaving the room.
- **communicate (d) (v)** ينقل (بالإيحاء) - يُعدي
 ex. - Our manager's confidence is automatically communicated to us.

مما سبق يتضح الفرق بين:

- **communicate with** يتواصل مع / يتصل بـ
 ex. - Modern technology help us to communicate with other people easily.
- **communicate ... to** ينقل إلي / يوصل إلي
 ex. - We will be able to communicate messages to other people that we know.

• **communication (n)** التواصل - الاتصال

ex. - Your communication skills help you succeed at work.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **a channel / a means / form / method / system of communication**

وسيلة أو قناة اتصال / نظام تواصل

ex. - The most common channels of communication used by online businesses are email, newsletters and live chat.

• **communications (n)** وسائل التواصل أو الاتصال

كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الإنترنت و الراديو و التليفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية ، وبهذا المعني فهي جمع دائما:

ex. - Modern communications help us learn and work from home.

• **communicable (adj)** مُعدي (مرض)

ex. - Flu is a communicable disease.

message

• **message (n)** رسالة

ex. - I sent you a message with the information you need.

لاحظ أن:

- a message for رسالة لـ - a message from رسالة من

• **message (n)** مغزي / درس مستفاد

ex. - The message of the film is that old people need special care.

لاحظ أن:

•**get the message** يفهم

- When his expression changed, I knew that he got the message.

•**message (d) (v)** يراسل (عبر الرسائل النصية وغيرها علي وسائل التواصل)

- She messages a lot of people from different countries.

•**messaging (n)** التراسل / التواصل بالرسائل الالكترونية

- Smartphones have made messaging easier.

tone

• **tone (n)** نبرة الصوت (تدل علي مشاعر المتكلم)

- I miss my grandmother's kind tone.

- She doesn't like you to speak to her in a sharp tone.

• **tone (d) / tone up (v)** يشد - يقوّي

- This exercise will tone your arm muscles.

• **tone ... down (phr. v)** يلطّف – يخفف حدة

- Don't be cruel. Try to tone your speech down. قاسي يخفف حدة الحديث

• **tone (n)** اسلوب / طابع / وَقْع

- The essay is sharp in tone. (بمعنى ان المقال ذو طابع حاد)

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "He looked with interest at the advertisement." This means the advertisement to him.
 a. appealed b. interested c. bored d. concerned
2. Through crying, babies manage to their needs to us.
 a. email b. post c. communicate d. connect
3. My father examples of my friends who have got the full mark in the exam I have failed.
 a. commented b. reacted c. cited d. connected
4. He is a simple-minded person. I don't think he will this complex message.
 a. leave b. get c. give d. a & c
5. You can your worry to the children without realizing it.
 a. connect b. communicate c. receive d. check

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ahmed has been studying hard. He do well on the test tomorrow.
 a. could b. should c. might d. has to
2. I wonder why Nada hasn't written to us. We have heard from her last week.
 a. can b. might c. should d. must
3. **A** : He did badly in the exam. **B** : I feel sure he it.
 a. couldn't have passed b. isn't able to pass
 c. succeed in passing d. can't pass
4. "You ought to have told him that the paint on that seat was wet." His trousers
 a. stained b. is staining c. got stained d. a & c
5. She asked that we early.
 a. arrives b. should arrive c. had arrived d. arriving

Test on Unit 4

تنويه

التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

بنك الأسئلة الإلكتروني

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Did you know that "2moro" is the for "tomorrow". (القرية - قطور ٢٠٢٣)
 a. emoji b. abbreviation c. acronym d. prefix
2. To means to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. discourage b. innovate c. frown d. pretend
3. Dr Zewail was a/an, as he presented many new ideas in the field of chemistry. (بني سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢٣)
 a. idiot b. innovator c. philosopher d. linguist
4. I should have listened to his explanation carefully. I what he meant.
 a. recognized b. understood c. misunderstood d. realized
5. Sama the good news she had heard to me.
 a. communicated b. toned c. frowned d. debated
6. Don't meat in the shopping list. We don't have enough money.
 a. research b. reuse c. inform d. include
7. She have gone, but she went.
 a. should b. must c. ought to d. ought not to
8. Mum told us our toys on the floor or we will be punished.
 a. left b. to leave c. not to leave d. had left
9. I suggested that he a mechanic to come and find out what is wrong with car.
 a. calls b. call c. to call d. calling
10. I travelled by train, but I by car. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. had to travel b. could have travelled
 c. might have travelled d. must have travelled
11. Hossam was working with me all day, so you have seen him at the park. (أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
12. My mother warned me touch the hot pan. (الدقهلية - الرديسية الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. don't b. not c. not to d. don't to
13. I don't know where Mai is. She could the cooking.
 a. do b. have done c. have been done d. be doing
14. I didn't know where Mai was. She could shopping.
 a. go b. have gone c. have been gone d. be gone

15. He has left his car over there. He that. There is a "No waiting" sign.

a. mustn't do
b. shouldn't have done
c. shouldn't do
d. should have done

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (السؤال ٢٢ إلى ٢٦)

The digital landscape has put increased pressure on teenagers today, and we feel it. There are so many social media channels: Facebook, Instagram, Snapshot, etc.

A new study has found that teenagers who engage with social media during the night could be damaging their sleep and increasing their risk of anxiety and depression. Teenagers spoke about the pressure they felt to make themselves available 24/7 and the resulting anxiety if they did not respond immediately to texts or posts. Teens are so emotionally invested in social media that a fifth of secondary school pupils will wake up at night and log on just to make sure they don't miss out. Perhaps the worst thing about this is that teenagers need more sleep than adults do, so night-time social media use could be detrimental to their health. A lack of sleep can make teenagers tired, irritable, and depressed.

During the summer holidays, I lost my phone. And for the week that I was phoneless, it felt like a disaster. I love my phone. It gives me quick access to information and allows me to be constantly attached to my friends, to know exactly what is going on in **their** lives. So, when I didn't have my phone for a week, I felt a slight sense of isolation, or if you're not up to speed with the events, fear of missing out. By the end of the week, I got used to not having a phone and I quite enjoyed the break from social media. But there was still a lasting sense of sadness at the back of my mind that there would be conversations I had missed, messages that had been sent, funny videos shared and night-time chats that I would probably never get to see.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

16. The writer the idea of using social media too much.

a. encourages
b. doesn't support
c. praises
d. a & c

17. Why do teens wake up at night and log on?

a. To search for useful information.
b. To send books to friends.
c. To make sure they don't miss out.
d. To ask about friends' health.

18. What does the underlined word '**their**' refer to?

a. The writer's family
b. The writer's friends
c. The writer's neighbours
d. The writer's children

19. What did the writer miss when he lost the mobile phone?

a. Conversations
b. Messages and night-time chats
c. Funny videos shared
d. All of these

20. The study warns teenagers against
a. using social media all night
b. using the digital landscape
c. using Facebook and Twitter
d. not using social media

21. **A:** What does '24/7' mean? **B:** It means
a. 7 days a month
b. 24 days a month
c. all the time
d. 7 hours a day

22. Using social media too much can
a. help teenagers find jobs
b. spoil relations among families
c. strengthen ties among people
d. cause mental illness

23. The synonym of the word 'anxiety' is the state of
a. being easily annoyed
b. being trustworthy
c. being dead
d. lack of hope

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Messaging can be confusing. This is basically because you can't see the other person's face to know whether they are smiling or frowning.

a. يمكن أن تكون المراسلة متحيرة، وهذا في الأساس لأنك لا تستطيع رؤية وجه الشخص الاخر لتعرف ما إذا كان يبتسم أم عابس.

b. يمكن أن تكون الرسالة محيرة، وهذا في الأساس لأنك لا تستطيع رؤية وجه الشخص الاخر لتعرف ما إذا كان يبتسم أم عابس.

c. يمكن أن تكون المراسلة محيرة، وهذا في الأساس لأنك لا تستطيع رؤية وجه الشخص الاخر لتعرف ما إذا كان يبتسم أم عانس.

d. يمكن أن تكون المراسلة محيرة، وهذا في الأساس لأنك لا تستطيع رؤية وجه الشخص الاخر لتعرف ما إذا كان يبتسم أم عابس.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لا يوجد أدنى شك في أن الحفاظ على اللغة يمثل خط الدفاع الأول عن الهوية الثقافية، فاللغة أهم ما يميز ثقافة أي مجتمع وتاريخه.

a. There is no doubt that preserving language is the first line of defence for cultural identity. Language is the most important characteristic of the culture and history of any society.

b. There is doubt that preserving language is the first line of defence for cultural identity. Language is the most important characteristic of the culture and history of any society.

c. There is no doubt that preserving language is the first line of defence for cultural air. Language is the most important characteristic of the culture and history of any society.

d. There is no doubt that preserving language is the first line of defence for cultural identity. Language is the most important advantage of the culture and history of any society.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :

"Why is it important to learn foreign languages?"



UNIT 5

Being smart online

SB pages 52 : 61 WB pages 30 : 35

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
 An article about an online video channel; An article about how to use the internet for research
- **Writing :**
 An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly
- **Listening :**
 Two boys discussing how to use social media. Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people
- **Speaking :**
 A presentation
- **Language :**
 seems to. (be) meant to. (be) supposed to
- **Life skills :**
 Critical Thinking; Resilience

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 52 : 55 WB pages 30 & 31



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adapt (ed) (v)	يتكيف - يتأقلم	sponsored advert (n)	إعلان مُموَّل
advert = ad = advertisement (n)	إعلان	subscribe (d) (v)	يشترك (في موقع) - يشترك
banner advert (n)	لافتة إعلانية	take down (phr.v)	يُزيل (منشور)
consult (ed) (v)	يستشير	targeted advertising (n)	إعلان مُوَجَّه
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	tone (n)	الشعور العام / التَوَجُّه - نبرة الصوت
download (ed) (v-n)	يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت) - يُحمِّل - التنزيل	unreliable (adj)	غير موثوق به
follow (ed) (v)	يتابع - يتبع - يُنفذ	up-to-date (adj)	مُحدَّث
follower (n)	مُتابع	update (d) (v-n)	يُحدِّث - تحديث
post (ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر على مواقع التواصل	upgrade (d) (v)	يُحسِّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة
reliable (adj)	موثوق به	upload (ed) (v-n)	يرفع (على الإنترنت) - الرفع
search results	نتائج البحث	view (n)	عرض - رؤية (منشور/ رسالة)

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

access (n)	مَدخل - امكانية الوصول	obvious (adj)	واضح
advertisers (n)	المُعلنين	print (ed) (v)	يطبع
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	professional (adj)	محترف
browser (n)	متصفح	provide (d) (v)	يزود بـ - يوفر
button (n)	زر	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر
character (n)	رمز خاص - شخصية	relevant (adj)	ملائم - مناسب
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع	resource (n)	مورد - مَنبع
common (adj)	شائع	scan (ned) (v)	يتصفح (بحثاً للبحث عن شيء ما)
effectively (adv)	بشكل فعّال - بكفاءة	series (n)	سلسلة - مسلسل
excuse (d) (n-v)	عذر - يعذر	skim (med) (v)	يتصفح (بحثاً بسرعة)
experience (d) (n-v)	لجربة - يمر بتجربة	smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي
extra (adj-adv)	إضافي	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع

fake (adj)	مزيف - مكذوب	moral (n)	مغزى أخلاقي
honest (adj)	امين	software (n)	برنامج
identity (n)	هوية - شخصية	speed (n)	سرعة
influence (d) (n-v)	تاثير - يؤثر علي	spread - spread (v)	ينشر
install (ed) (v)	يثبت - يركب	stamp (ed) (n - v)	طابع - يضع طابع - يوسم
instant (adj)	فوري	stealing (n)	السرقة
Irish (adj - n)	ايرلندي	suppose (d) (v)	يفترض
journalist (n)	صحفي	task (n)	مهمة
junk food	وجبات سريعة	URL (uniform resource locator)	رابط (الموقع او الصفحة)
keyword (n)	كلمة رئيسية (دلالية)		
knowledge (n)	المعرفة	version (n)	نسخة - إصدار
mega meal (n)	وجبة ضخمة	warning (n	تحذير

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
consult (v) يستشير	to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something
cookies (n) ملفات تعريف الارتباط	information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again
download (v) يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت)	- to move files ملفات from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer (SB) - to save something from the internet onto your computer (WB)
follower (n) مُتابِع	someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites
reliable (adj) موثوق به	- can be trusted or depended on
take down (phr. v) يُزيل (منشور)	- to take something that you have posted online off the internet (SB) - to remove a message or photo you have put on social media (WB)
tone (n) الشعور العام / اللوجه	- the general feeling or attitude expressed in a piece of writing, a speech etc.

update (v) يَحدّث	- to make something more modern and relevant ملائم by adding new information (SB) - to install يُثبّت the most recent version of a program (WB)
upgrade (v) يُحسّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	- to improve or make more efficient كفء - to make something better (WB)
upload (v) يرفع (على الإنترنت)	- to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet (SB) - to put information on social media (WB)
up-to-date (adj) مُحَدّث	- including all the latest information

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. The singer's new song received millions of from his fans. (شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. views b. cookies c. sights d. scenes
2. People who my account on Facebook can view, like and comment on my posts.
 a. advertise b. follow c. update d. download
3. The new factory placed a/an in the local paper asking for a sales manager. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. situation b. advertisement c. experience d. behaviour
4. Why don't you this video to YouTube so that many people can see it? (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. download b. carry c. upgrade d. upload
5. The youth should learn how to to difficult situations. (حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٣)
 a. addict b. name c. adapt d. adopt
6. I must my doctor, I have a chest pain. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. consult b. insist c. insult d. result
7. You can trust him because he is a/an person. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
 a. recognizable b. reliable c. unreliable d. employable

8. Computers and smartphones keep small pieces of information called (أسيوط - الفوصية ٢٠٢٣)

a. tips b. cookies c. banners d. sponsors

9. If you can log on to the network, you can files from there. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. carry b. download c. upload d. bear

10. Click here to be a of the person or group. (أسيوط - جمال فرعلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)

a. post b. view c. follower d. tone

11. Some adverts are because advertisers know what we like. (القاهرة الجديدة – مانور هاوس ٢٠٢٢)

a. strange adverts b. targeted advertising

c. sponsored adverts d. banner adverts

12. If you to the page, you will become a follower. (غرب كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٣)

a. follow b. post c. subscribe d. views

13. Facebook adverts are They are not free.

a. fake b. sponsored c. up-to-date d. reliable

14. The most important search appear first in a browser.

a. engines b. results c. numbers d. assistants

15. To stay safe, ... any photos you don't want others to view or download on social media.

a. upload b. download c. take up d. take down

16. If the of a film is sad, a cheerful person won't like it.

a. profile b. follow c. upgrade d. tone

17. I trust this channel as it provides me with news. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)

a. unreliable b. fake c. up-to-date d. upgraded

18. Facebook regularly asks me to my personal data. (غرب كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٣)

a. update b. outdate c. upgrade d. degrade

19. They've just the timetable, so we know these train times are correct.

a. deleted b. got into c. solved d. updated

2 Important vocabulary

20. Nowadays, we can get any information at the touch of a/an (اسوان – محمد مكاوي الرسمية لغات ٢٠٢٢)

a. monitor b. ring c. button d. expert

21. This painting isn't original. It's (شبراخيت الثانوية بنات ٢٠٢٢)

a. fact b. fake c. facial d. face

22. Unusual weather is becoming more nowadays. Many people don't find it strange. (إدا ٢٠٢٢)
a. common b. rare c. scarce d. favorite

23. There are two of the game, a long one and a short one. (هليوبوليس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
a. virgins b. diversions c. versions d. visions

24. spend millions of pounds to promote / يروج their goods.
a. Advertisers b. Applications c. Adverts d. Advice

25. Working in the same field for twenty years has given him a lot of
a. experience b. installation c. share d. distraction

26. If you are sure about this piece of information, ... your sources.
a. affect b. adapt c. name d. subscribe

27. If you want to be a member of the Twitter society, first download and its application.
a. experience b. install c. share d. distract

28. Have you ever bad behaviour on social media ?
a. experienced b. installed c. typed d. distracted

29. Scientists are still vaccines امصال for COVID- 19.
a. researching b. chatting c. stamping d. firing

30. The hard time he had in prison is still on his memory.
a. researched b. chatted c. stamped d. fired

31. You have no for making such a mistake.
a. excuse b. create c. check d. game

32. The of a story, a novel or a film is the lesson we learn from it.
a. chat b. character c. platform d. moral

3 Definitions

33. To means to make something more modern and relevant by adding new information. (الشرقية – اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
a. upload b. download c. degrade d. update

34. To is to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet or to put information on social media.
a. upload b. upgrade c. consult d. update

35. To is to ask for information or advice from someone because it is their job to know something.
a. download b. take down c. consult d. update

36. To is to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer or to save something from the internet onto your computer.
a. download b. take down c. consult d. update

37. A is someone who looks at the posts shared by a particular person using social networking sites.
a. behaviour b. follower c. cookies d. viewer

38. Something or someone that is can be trusted or depended on.
a. outdated b. unreliable c. reliable d. up-to-date

39. To is to take something that you have posted online off the internet or to remove a message or photo you have put on social media.
a. download b. take down c. consult d. update

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

check	sources يتحقق من المصادر	have	access to لديه حق الوصول لـ		
collect	personal details تفاصيل (بيانات) شخصية		experience in لديه خبرة في		
create	a perfect essay يؤلف مقال نموذجي		knowledge of لديه معرفة بـ		
do	a history essay يكتب مقال خاص بالتاريخ	keep	... safe يبقي ... بأمان		
	research يجري بحثاً	make	a presentation يقدم عرضاً		
	things يقوم بأشياء	name	the sources يذكر المصادر		
give	a homework task يكلّف بمهمة كواجب منزلي	put	... on social media يشر... على مواقع التواصل		
	a presentation يقدم عرض تقديمي	seem	obvious يبدو واضحاً		
	an example يعطي مثال	stay	safe يبقي بأمان		
	information يعطي معلومات	use	... effectively يستخدم ... بشكل فعّال		
go	online يدخل على الانترنت	write	a website يشر محتوي على موقع		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
adapt	يتكيف - يتأقلم	modify, adjust
fake	مزيف - مكذوب	false, forged
honest	امين	trustful, sincere
instant	فوري	urgent, immediate
obvious	واضح	clear, apparent, evident
professional	محترف	expert, experienced
reliable	موثوق به - يُعتَمَد عليه	dependable, trustworthy, dedicated
upgrade	يُحسّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	improve, enhance
upgrade	يُرقّي	promote
up-to-date	مُحدّث	modern, contemporary, fashionable

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة		Antonym (= Opposite) العكس	
adapt	يتكيف - يتأقلم	reject	يرفض
download	يُنزّل (من الإنترنت) - التنزيل	upload	يرفع (على الإنترنت) - الرفع
fake	مزيف - مكذوب	real, genuine, original	أصلي/حقيقي - صحيح
follow	يتابع	block, unfollow	يحظر - يلغي متابعة
follow	يُنفذ - يطيع	break, disobey	يخالف - يعصي
helpful	مفيد	unhelpful	غير مفيد
honest	أمين	dishonest, deceitful	غير أمين - مخادع
instant	فوري	postponed, delayed	مؤجّل - متأخر
obvious	واضح	doubtful, ambiguous	مشكوك فيه - غامض
online	علي الإنترنت/متصل بالانترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
professional	محترف	incompetent, amateur	هاوٍ - غير كفء
reliable	موثوق به - يُعتَمَد عليه	unreliable, untrustworthy	مشكوك فيه - لا يُثق به
upgrade	يُحسّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة	degrade, reduce	يقلل من شأن
upgrade	يُرقّي	downgrade, demote	يُنزّل الدرجة - يخفض المنزلة
up-to-date	مُحدّث	out-of- date, old -fashioned	قديم - عفا عليه الزمن

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

adapt		
adapt (ed) (v)	يتأقلم - يتكيّف	- To succeed in your life, you need to adapt to different situations.

adaptation (n) التأقلم	- Success in your life requires يتطلب adaptation to different situations.
adaptable (adj) مَرِن - مُتأقلم	- To succeed in your life, you need to be adaptable to different situations.
advertise	
advertise (d) (v) يُعلِن عن	- Producers advertise their products in different ways.
advert = ad = advertisement (n) إعلان	- Producers depend on adverts to promote يروج لـ their products.
advertisers (n) المُعلِنين	- Advertisers pay a lot of money to promote their products.
advertised (adj) مُعلَن عنه	- I saw this product advertised on TV.
consult	
consult (ed) (v) يستشير	- You need to consult your doctor about your health.
consultation (n) استشارة	- You need consultation with your doctor about your health.
consultant (n) استشاري - اخصائي	- You need to talk to your consultant about your health.
download	
download (ed) (v) يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت)	- I started to download the file.
download (n) الملف المُنزَّل	- The download will start in five seconds.
downloader (n) برنامج تنزيل ملفات	- I have installed a video downloader on my laptop.
downloadable (adj) قابل للتنزيل	- This video is downloadable.
follower	
follow (ed) (v) يتبع - يتابع	- Thousands of people follow my Facebook page.
follower (n) تابع / مؤيِّد - مُتابِع	- I have thousands of followers on my Facebook page.
following (adj) تالي / تابع	- When I finish this job, I will do the following one.
reliable	
rely (ied) (v) يعتمد	- Don't rely on others to achieve your own work.
reliance (n) التواكُل - الاعتماد على الغير	- Reliance on others to achieve your own work is a bad quality.

reliability (n) الجدارة - الموثوقية	- Your previous سابق success supports your reliability.
reliable (adj) موثوق به	- Your previous success makes you reliable.

subscribe

subscribe (d) (v) يُسجِّل (في موقع) - يشترك	- To subscribe, you have to pay LE 20,000.
subscriber (n) مُشترِك - عضو	- To be a subscriber, you have to pay LE 20,000.
subscription (n) اشتراك	- Subscription costs LE 20,000.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

access to	إمكانية الوصول إلي	free ... for	مجاني لـ ...
all over the world	في كل أرجاء العالم	full of	مملوء بـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	look like	يشبه - يبدو كـ
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	make it personal	تضفي عليها طابع شخصي
careful about	حريص علي	on social media	علي وسائل التواصل
eager to	متلهف لـ	special character	رمز خاص (ليس حرف أو رقم)
fact- checking	توثيق الحقائق	this/that is why	لهذا السبب

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

adapt ... to	توفّق ... مع	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
adapt to	يتكيف مع	take ... off	يزيل - ينزع
check ... against /with	يتحقق من ... من خلال	take down	يزيل ملشور
find out	يكتشف / يعرف	upgrade ... with	يحدّث ... بـ
read on	يستمر في القراءة		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

advertisement - commercial - announcement

- **advertisement / advert / ad** إعلان (تجاري)
 - Some adverts (= ads / advertisements) lie about the quality of the products.
- **commercial** إعلان تجاري (في التليفزيون / الراديو)
 - I change the channel when commercials are shown.
- **announcement** إعلان خبري (نشر تنبيهات - تعليمات - تحذيرات - قرارات)
 - The announcement of the final decision has been delayed until tomorrow.

download - upload

• **download (n)** ملف منزّل من الانترنت ≠ **upload (n)** ملف مرفوع على الانترنت

- There are five downloads in this folder.

• **download (n)** تنزيل الملفات ≠ **upload (n)** رفع الملفات

- The speed of download is always more than the speed of upload.

• **downloading (n)** التنزيل من الانترنت ≠ **uploading (n)** الرفع على الانترنت

- Downloading videos is easier and faster than uploading them.

• **download (v)** ينزّل ملف ≠ **upload (v)** يرفع ملف

- Abdulrahman has downloaded all Al Pacino's films.
- Mr Mohammed used to upload educational files for free.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- download ... from ينزّل ... من - download ... to / onto ينزّل ... إلي
- upload ... to يرفع ... علي

• **downloadable (adj)** قابل للتنزيل

- The files on this website are downloadable.

software - hardware

• **software** برنامج حاسوبي (يؤدي غرض معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي)

- It is better if you download the latest software.

• **hardware** مكونات / أجزاء / أدوات (الحاسب أو غيره)

- The processor is part of the computer's hardware

update – upgrade

• **update** يُحدّث (يجعل الشيء حديثاً)

- The Windows version on your computer needs to be updated.

• **upgrade** يُحسّن (يضيف مزايا أو قدرات أفضل) / يُرقي التطبيق

- To upgrade this application, you have to pay 300 dollars.

Exercise On Vocabulary study

• **O Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Scientific honesty الأمانة العلمية is what makes me my sources.
 a. have b. create c. do d. check
2. My teacher asked me to do
 a. experience b. a history essay c. sources d. a presentation
3. You can a good presentation.
 a. make b. go c. do d. seem

4. When you are online, it is important to safe.
 a. stay b. do c. make d. have
5. "This application is up-to-date." The adjective 'up-to-date' can be replaced by
 a. out-of-date b. modern c. old-fashioned d. powerful
6. "Mr Ashraf is a reliable teacher." In this sentence, 'reliable' means the opposite of
 a. dependable b. untrustworthy c. trustworthy d. real
7. "He follows the law." The verb 'follows' in this sentence is the antonym of
 a. obeys b. breaks c. blocks d. carries on
8. I don't see his posts because he has me
 a. obeyed b. broken c. followed d. unfollowed
9. Yes, I online after I had done all my jobs.
 a. checked b. went c. seemed d. paid
10. After subscription, you will access to everything on our website.
 a. have b. create c. do d. name
11. Successful businesses are highly to economic change.
 (اهليومولبس - مدرسة سانت جوزيف ٢٠٢٢)
 a. adapt b. adopt c. adaptable d. adopting
12. Reliable and trustworthy are
 (اطوبس - بربال الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)
 a. acronyms b. synonyms c. antonyms d. opposites
13. He upgraded his Facebook app the latest software update.
 a. with b. at c. off d. about
14. You have to adapt your spending your income.
 a. to b. of c. from d. by
15. You can on him. Be sure he will do the job efficiently.
 a. rely b. reliable c. unreliable d. reliability
16. I have never doubted your I trust you.
 a. rely b. reliance c. unreliable d. reliability
17. His on others makes him a failure.
 a. rely b. reliance c. unreliable d. reliability
18. I need to get advice from a about my headache.
 a. subscribe b. subscribers c. consultant d. consult
19. I have no time to download these right now.
 a. followers b. follow c. update d. updates

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Doing research online

إجراء الأبحاث على الإنترنت

(SB page 52)

Your teacher has given you a homework **task**(1). Where do you start your **research**(2) ?



The internet is very **useful**(3) with lots of information, but how do you **avoid**(4) **spending**(5) hours reading **unhelpful**(6) **websites**(7) ? **Read on**(8) to **find out**(9) how to use the internet **effectively**.

1. Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have **experience**(11) in or **knowledge**(12) of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.
2. Think about who has written the website. Is it a company that may be trying to **sell**(13) you something?
3. **Check**(14) if the website is **up-to-date**(15). Is the information still **reliable**(16) and useful? When was it **updated**(17) ?
4. Always **consult**(18) more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different **sites**(19) is that you can check the information and you may find **extra**(20) facts.
5. What does the website **look like**(21) ? If it is **badly**(22) **designed**(23) and is **full of**(24) grammar and **spelling**(25) **mistakes**(26), then it is probably not very reliable.
6. Websites that have **named**(27) their **sources**(28) are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.
7. **Save**(29) the **URL (Uniform Resource Locator)**(30) of any useful **pages**(31) or **images**(32) so you can find them easily.

(1) مهمة
(2) بحث
(3) مفيد
(4) يتجنب
(5) قضاء
(6) غير مفيد
(7) مواقع
(8) استمر في القراءة
(9) يكتشف
(10) بشكل فعّال
(11) خبرة
(12) المعرفة
(13) يبيع
(14) يتحقق من
(15) مُحدّث
(16) موثوق به
(17) يُحدّث
(18) يستشير
(19) مواقع
(20) إضافي
(21) يشبه
(22) بشكل سيء
(23) مُصمّم
(24) مملوء بـ
(25) تهجي
(26) أخطاء
(27) يذكر اسم
(28) مصادر
(29) يحفظ
(30) الرابط
(31) صفحات
(32) صور

Hi!

(SB page 53)

Can you help me? I'm trying to do a history essay, but I've spent about 20 hours reading different websites and **blogs**(1), and now I've got pages and pages of **notes**(2). But I'm really **confused**(3). I don't know which sites are good and which aren't - and they all say different things! And now I've forgotten how I found a really good site that I looked at earlier.

Help!!!!!!

Thanks,

Nagwa

(1) مدونات
(2) ملاحظات
(3) محتار

Essay Dun

(WB page 30)

Download this app and you will never have to write an essay again! Just type in the title, the question you need to answer, and the word limit and the app will consult the system to create a perfect essay. It is 100 % reliable and works every time.

Excuse-a-Maker

This useful app has been updated to include 2,000 new excuses which can be adapted to any situation. Just upload a photo of yourself and say why you need the excuse and where you are. You will receive a new up-to-date photo with the time and date stamped on it with your excuse!

Are you internet smart ?

(WB page 30)

هل أنت ذكي في التعامل مع الإنترنت ؟

Do you really know how to **protect**(1) yourself **online**(2) ? There are **several**(3) things you can do to stay safe.

- Choose a strong **password**(4). Did you know the most **common**(5) password in the world is '123456'? The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a **special character**(6) e.g. Tl342mS!*. It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way.
- When you go online, make sure you have **upgraded**(7) your **browser**(8) with the latest **software**(9) **update**(10) before you open a **webpage**(11).

(1) يحمي
(2) على الإنترنت
(3) عديد
(4) كلمة مرور
(5) شائع
(6) رمز خاص
(7) تحسن - ترقي
(8) متصفح
(9) برنامج
(10) تحديث / ترقية البرنامج
(11) صفحة على الإنترنت

• Be careful what you **upload**[12]. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see **behind**[13] you, and take down any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these **tips**[14] seem **obvious**[15], but you'll be surprised how many people are **careless**[16] online. **Stealing**[17] someone's **identity**[18] is more common than you think. Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.

(12) يرفع
(13) خلف / وراء
(14) نصائح
(15) واضح
(16) مُهمِل
(17) سرقة
(18) هوية - شخصية

Targeted advertising

(SB page 54)

Our computers and **smartphones**[1] keep small pieces of information called **cookies**[2], which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies **are meant to**[3] make it easier for us to find things that **interest**[4] us, but they also help **advertisers**[5] to sell things to us. So, when we see an **advert**[6] for something that **seems**[7] to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called **targeted advertising**[8].



(1) هواتف ذكية
(2) ملفات تعريف الارتباط
(3) تهدف إلى
(4) يثير اهتمام
(5) المُعلِنين
(6) إعلان
(7) يبدو
(8) الإعلان الموجّه
(9) يُعلِن عن
(10) لافتة
(11) يظهر
(12) الأغرب
(13) مُموّل
(14) نتائج البحث

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can **advertise**[9] to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large **banner**[10] adverts that always seem to **appear**[11] on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the **strangest**[12] places, like the small **sponsored**[13] adverts that you find in **search results**[14].

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

Don't believe everything you read !

(WB page 31)

The **title**(1) of this article is a piece of advice which we may have heard from our parents or **grandparents**(2). Although it was **true**(3) in the past, the **speed**(4) at which we **have access to**(5) new information means that this **warning**(6) is even more important now.



In the past, **professional**(7) **journalists**(8) always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two **reliable sources**(9) to make sure the story was correct. **Checking sources**(10), and the time needed to **print**(11) something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually a day or two old.

Today the internet **provides**(12) **instant**(13) news and is a place where anyone can **share**(14) information with the rest of the world **at the touch of a button**(15). This means that journalists often need to **publish**(16) their stories quickly, so **fact- checking**(17) isn't as good as it is meant to be. **This is why**(18) not everything you read is what it seems to be.

Even **serious**(19) newspapers, which are supposed to be reliable, can **make mistakes**(20). Shane Fitzgerald, an **Irish**(21) **sociology**(22) student, wanted to **test**(23) the **influence**(24) of the internet. He posted a **fake**(25) phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French **musician**(26) who had recently died had said. Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read **all over the world**(27).

The **moral**(28) of the story is to listen to those with more life experience than you and remember not to **trust**(29) everything you read online without checking it first.

(1) عنوان
(2) أجداد
(3) صحيح
(4) سرعة
(5) لديهم قدرة للوصول لـ
(6) تحذير
(7) محترف
(8) صحفيون
(9) مصادر موثقة
(10) التحقق من المصادر
(11) يطبع
(12) يوفر
(13) فوري
(14) يشارك
(15) بلمسة زر
(16) ينشر
(17) توثيق الحقائق
(18) لهذا السبب
(19) جاد
(20) يرتكب أخطاء
(21) أيرلندي
(22) علم الاجتماع
(23) يختبر
(24) تأثير
(25) مزيفة
(26) موسيقار
(27) في كل أرجاء العالم
(28) مغزى أخلاقي
(29) يثق بـ

PART IV LANGUAGE

1 Seem

- ملاحظات هامة عن الفعل (seem) :

١ تذكر أن الفعل (seem) لا يُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة :

ex. - Mr Mohammed was seeming pleased with his students. (✗)
- Mr Mohammed seemed pleased with his students. (✓)

٢ تذكر أن الفعل (seem) فعل لازم لا يُبنَي للمجهول :

ex. - This student is seemed to be punished. (✗)
- This student seems to be punished. (✓)

- ... seem/seems/ seemed + adjective صفة

الفعل (seem) هو أحد الأفعال التقريرية التي يتبعها صفة وليس ظرف :

ex. - She seems happily. (✗) - She seems happy. (✓)

- ... seem/seems/ seemed + to + inf.

تُستخدم (seem to) بمعني (يبدو أن) لوصف الحالة التي يبدو عليها الأشخاص أو الأشياء :

ex. - Sama seems to have too much work to do. (إثبات)
- Sama doesn't seem to have any free time. (نفي)
- Sama seems not to have any free time. (نفي)

- ... seem/seems/ seemed + to + be + (inf.+ing)

تُستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف حالة مستمرة :

ex. - Ahmed seems to be having some problems.

- ... seem/seems/ seemed + to + have + p.p.

تُستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف حالة كانت مستمرة في الماضي :

ex. - Rodayna doesn't have any money. She seems to have spent all the money on her.

– ... seem/seems/ seemed + جملة

→ **It seems / seemed + (that / like) + جملة** يبدو أن ...

للحظ انه يمكن حذف (that / like) :

ex. - It seemed (that) she didn't like the food.

ex. - It seems (like) he's going to sell his old car.

→ **It seems / seemed + (as if) + جملة** يبدو كما لو أن ...

ex. - It seems (as if) he needs help.

– There seems / seemed to be... ... يبدو أن هناك

ex. - There seems to be a problem with the air conditioner.

ex. - There seemed to be some blood on the floor in the crime scene.

Mini Test 1 Apply

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Rody upset. I wonder what is wrong with her.
 a. seem b. seems c. is seeming d. is seemed
2. It seems the village shop will have to close down. They can't find a buyer for it.
 a. that b. if c. no word d. a & c
3. It seems that she needs help.
 a. as if b. no word c. to me d. b & c
4. He seems busy.
 a. being b. to being c. be d. to be
5. Don't talk loudly. The baby seems in the next room.
 a. sleeping b. asleep c. to be sleeping d. b & c
6. A : Why don't you talk to him now?
 B : Wait. He seems an important meeting.
 a. having b. is having c. to be having d. to have had
7. There seemed no reason why she should not come with us, so we all travelled together.
 a. that b. to be c. as if d. as though

2 mean - meant - meant

– mean + (inf. + ing) يعني / يؤدي إلي/ يستلزم

ex. - Starting a new business means employing a staff.
- Taking the six o'clock train means getting up at five.

- mean that + جملة يقصد

- يُمكن أن تأتي جملة بعد (mean + that) ويمكن حذف (that) :

ex. - Do you mean that I am lazy? = Do you mean I am lazy?

- mean to + inf. ينوي/يقصد/يتعمد

ex. - He didn't mean to hurt you. It was just a mistake
- He didn't intend to hurt you. It was just a mistake.

- ... be meant to + inf. من المفترض أن

١ تُستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن الضرورة (necessity) او الإلزام (obligation) :

ex. - You are meant to start work at seven.

٢ تُستخدم للتعبير عن المسئولية (responsibility) او الواجب (duty) :

ex. - You were meant to keep the children out of trouble.

٣ تُستخدم بمعني (suitable) :

ex. - I don't think she's meant to be a teacher.
= I don't think she's suitable for the job of a teacher.

٤ كما تُستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض من شيء ما (purpose) :

ex. - This map was meant to show the places in this large city.
- School is meant to be educational.

- be meant to + be + p.p.

ex. - My flat is meant to be decorated next week.

- be meant to + be + (inf. + ing).

- تُستخدم هذه الصيغة المستمرة لتدل على حدث مستمر :

ex. - You are meant to be studying your lessons. (حدث مستمر في المضارع)
- You were meant to be studying your lessons. (حدث مستمر في الماضي)

- be meant to + have + p.p.

- تُستخدم هذه الصيغة التامة لتدل علي شيء من المفترض أنه تم بالفعل في الماضي :

ex. - Before the guests arrived, you were meant to have prepared everything.

UNIT 5

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. His happy expression means he has passed the exam.
 a. that b. no word c. a & b d. to
2. Did you mean this number?
 a. to dial b. dial c. that dial d. b & c
3. Why are you here, Ali? You are to be in the garden watering the plants.
 a. had b. meant c. seemed d. b & c
4. This lorry to carry the new furniture.
 a. means b. is meant c. is meaning d. mean
5. Students are meant hard.
 a. to work b. to working c. work d. to be worked
6. The car engine is meant before the drive to Alexandria.
 a. to check b. to be checked
 c. for checking d. to have checked
7. Youssef is meant in his room. I don't know why he is here.
 a. for studying b. to be studied c. to have studied d. to be studying

3 (be) supposed to — من المفترض أن / يُفترَض أن

Important Basics ثوابت هامة

١ هذه الصيغة مبنية للمجهول وتبدأ بالمفعول :

ex. - The boys are supposed to go to bed at nine.

- في المثال السابق للاحظ أن (The boys) مفعول للفعل (suppose) وليست الفاعل

٢ لا يمكن حذف حرف (d) من (supposed) في الصيغة (be supposed to) :

ex. - You are supposed to leave now. (Not: suppose)

٣ للبد من وجود مفعول وفعل (be) حسب الزمن قبل (supposed to). وللبد ان يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل :

v. to be

Obj. المفعول + Present or : Past + supposed to + Inf. ... المصدر

I	am	was	supposed to	take part in the match.
He / She / It	is	was		have enough food.
You / We / They	are	were		be at work at 8:30.

Simple present form الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع

تتكون الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع من :

Obj. المفعول + am is are + supposed to + inf. ... المصدر

- I	am	supposed to	be there at 10.
- Aya	is	supposed to	arrive soon.
- The students	are	supposed to	study hard for the exam.

وتُستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن اعتقاد شائع (common belief) بخصوص شخص / شيء معين :

ex. - This school is supposed to have the best staff.
= Many people think that this school has the best staff.

٢ التعبير عن التوقع (expectation) أو الترتيب (arrangement) في المضارع أو المستقبل:

ex. Manager: How many clients am I supposed to meet tomorrow?
Secretary: You are supposed to meet four clients, Sir.

٣ التعبير عن المسئولية (responsibility) أو الإلزام (obligation) أو الواجب (duty) في المضارع أو المستقبل:

ex. - You are supposed to be quiet in a library.
- Leen is supposed to look after her baby sister when her mother goes out tomorrow.

٤ التعبير عن النية (intention) أو الغرض (purpose) من شيء / شخص ما:

ex. - A TV channel logo is supposed to help viewers recognise it.
- A mobile is supposed to be used for making and receiving calls.
= A mobile is meant to be used for making and receiving calls.
= A mobile is intended to be used for making and receiving calls.

Simple past form الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي

تتكون الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي من :

Obj. المفعول + was were + supposed to + inf. ... المصدر

- Ahmed	was	supposed to	arrive home at nine.
- The tourists	were	supposed to	visit the pyramids.

وتُستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن نية أو غرض لم يتحقق:

- You were supposed to come first, but we were shocked by your low marks.

٢ التعبير عن ترتيب أو توقع لم يتحقق في الماضي، وغالباً يصاحبها توضيح لذلك:

- I regret missing my plane. I was supposed to fly to London yesterday.

Continuous form الصيغة المستمرة

تتكون الصيغة المستمرة في المضارع والماضي من :

Obj. المفعول + be + supposed to + be + (inf. + ing) ...

- Rodayna	is	supposed to	be sleeping now.
- My brother	was	supposed to	be playing in the garden.

وتُستخدم الصيغة المستمرة فى التعبير عن حدث من المفترض أن يكون مستمراً حسب الزمن :

ex. - I don't know why Rokaya isn't in her office. She is supposed to be typing some business letters.

ex. - Yara is supposed to be flying to London at five o'clock tomorrow.

ex. - Omar was supposed to be watering the plants in the garden yesterday morning.

Perfect form الصيغة التامة

تتكون الصيغة التامة من :

Obj. المفعول + be + supposed to + have + p.p. ...

- Sama	was	supposed to	have written the essay.
- The gardeners	were	supposed to	have watered the plants.

وتستخدم هذه الصيغة فقط في الماضي عندما يكون الإفتراض نفسه في الماضي ويخص أحداث سابقة عليه (يشبه استخدام الماضي التام):

ex. - When I saw Ahmed in the club, he was supposed to have taken his training.

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your new job is to be more interesting and rewarding.
 a. suppose b. supposing c. supposed d. supposedly
2. Omar's plane supposed to land at nine o'clock tomorrow.
 a. is b. was c. had d. has
3. Omar's plane supposed to land at nine o'clock yesterday.
 a. is b. was c. had d. has
4. Sama is supposed a taxi home after she finishes work today.
 a. to take b. to be taken c. to be taking d. to have taken
5. Sama has finished her work and now she is supposed a taxi home.
 a. to taking b. to be taken c. to be taking d. to have taken
6. "You were supposed to be in your office at eight, Rokaya." This means Rokaya in time.
 a. was b. wasn't c. isn't d. is

Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They are supposed the meeting to discuss this urgent matter. (أحوش عيسى ٢٠٢٣)
 a. attend b. to attend c. attending d. to attending
2. The festival to bring people together. (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. is meant b. supposed c. seem d. seems that
3. The film to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin on time. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. seem b. meant c. was supposed d. supposed
4. This play seems boring. (ابشواي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. to be b. being c. been d. has been
5. That piece of cloth to be a shirt, but the tailor made it a pair of trousers. (إبتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
 a. seemed b. supposed c. was meant d. was supposing
6. Nora is wearing a nice new dress. She beautiful. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. seems b. feels c. is seemed d. means

7. Schools to follow rules of safety. (بنجروم - اطفيح ٢٠٢٣)
a. supposed b. are meant c. are seemed d. must

8. Saber's phone never stops ringing. He to know a lot of people. (السيوط - الشتح ٢٠٢٣)
a. is seeming b. seems c. was meant d. was supposed

9. Why are you still awake? You to be sleeping now. (أبو القطاعير ٢٠٢٣)
a. are supposed b. seem c. meant to d. are supposing

10. I can't see this photo clearly. What is it ?
a. meant to be b. seemed to be c. supposed to d. meaning to be

11. They are happy; they be having a nice time. (إدفو كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٣)
a. are meaning to b. supposed to c. seem to d. won't

12. This cafe to serve nice coffee. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)
a. supposed b. is seemed c. means d. is meant

13. It seems; I can hear the rain drops on my window. (إسنا ٢٠٢٣)
a. rains b. rain c. to have rained d. to be raining

14. You to be here an hour ago! (كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)
a. were supposed b. meant
c. are seemed d. were supposing

15. I should have set the alarm clock as I was to meet my friend this morning. (أسوحاج - دهينة ٢٠٢٣)
a. seemed b. meant c. suppose d. pretending

16. Mohammed Abdel Wahab to be very healthy before having a heart attack in 2006. (أسوحاج - لحميم ٢٠٢٣)
a. meant b. supposed c. seemed d. known

17. The planned project more than just a train station. (المنيا ٢٠٢٣)
a. seems to b. meaning c. is meant to be d. is supposed

18. Adverts be honest, but we must be careful. (أسوحاج - البلينا ٢٠٢٣)
a. are meant b. are supposed to
c. are seemed to d. meant to

19. Libraries to be a place for reading. (السيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)
a. mean b. supposed c. are meant d. were meant

20. There to be a problem with the trains this morning. (إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)
a. is supposed b. is meant c. means d. seems

21. The Eiffel Tower to attract people to one of the exhibitions, but it has become one of the monuments.
a. was meaning b. seems c. was meant d. is meaning

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 56 & 57 WB pages 32 & 33



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

addict (n)	مُدمِن	sensible (adj)	حكيم - عقلاني
addicted (adj)	مُدمِن	symbol (n)	رمز
behaviour (n)	سلوك - تَصَرُّف	year of birth	سنة الميلاد
profile (n)	الملف الشخصي		

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر أهمية

anyway (adv)	علي اي حال	likes (n)	إعجابات (لايكات)
brainstorm (ed) (v)	يستثير التفكير	platform (n)	مَنصّة - رصيف
connect (ed) (v)	يدخل على - يتصل - يربط	plus (conj)	بالإضافة إلي (ذلك)
criticise (d) (v)	ينتقد	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
cute (adj)	جميل	privacy (n)	الخصوصية
develop (ed) (v)	يُطوِّر - يتطور	programmers (n)	مُبرمِجين
distract (ed) (v)	يُشتِّت - يصرف انتباه	programming (n)	البرمجة
employee (n)	مُوظَّف	rank (ed) (n - v)	رُتبة - يضع في منزلة
entertain (ed) (v)	يُسلّي - يُرَفِّه عن	register (ed) (v)	يُسجِّل
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يُفسر	represent (ed) (v)	يُمثِّل
feelings (n)	مشاعر	share (d) (v)	يشارك - ينشر
fire (d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	similar (adj)	مُشابِه - متشابه
forever (adv)	للأبد	solve (d) (v)	يحل
forum (n)	مُنتدي	superficiality (n)	سطحيّة - عدم تركيز
game (d) (v - n)	يلعب - مباراة / لعبة	useful (adj)	مفيد
highlight (ed) (v)	يُبرز - يُسلِّط الضوء علي	victim (n)	ضحية
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر

UNIT 5

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
addict (n) مُدمِن	someone who is very interested in something and spends a lot of time doing it
behaviour(n) سلوك - تَصَرُّف	the things that a person or animal does
profile(n) الملف الشخصي	a short description وَصف that gives important details تفاصيل about a person, a group of people, or a place
sensible(adj) حكيم - عقلاني	reasonable and shows good judgment حُكم
symbol (n) رمز	a picture or shape that has a particular meaning or represents a particular organization or idea
view (n) عرض - رؤية	an occasion when a post, an image or a video is watched online

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. Some people have a fake on social media to deceive others.
(الجمع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
a. symbol b. versions c. profile d. ideas

2. If you want to use social media safely, you need to be more
(أشربين ٢٠٢٣)
a. sensing b. sensible c. sensation d. sensitive

3. The flag is a/ an of our country so, we should all respect it.
a. status b. image c. symbol d. story

4. Experts warn us that many kids have become to surfing the internet.
(أسيوط - جمال فرغلي بنين ٢٠٢٢)
a. addicted b. attained c. attacked d. applied

5. People judge يحكم علي you through your
a. app b. application c. advert d. behaviour

6. Which of the following is one of the important personal details?
a. Year of birth. b. Date of the day.
c. Search results. d. Targeted advertising.

7. She is a/an to chocolate cookies. She likes them very much.
(الشرقية - اللغات الرسمية ٢٠٢٢)
a. expert b. follower c. source d. addict

2 Important vocabulary

8. When we were young, our grandfather's stories us a lot.
(امبت سلسيل ٢٠٢٢)

a. entertained b. delayed c. inspected d. trained

9. Don't let what people say you. Concentrate on your goal.
(اطوبس - بربيال القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

a. district b. distract c. deposit d. despise

10. This discusses environmental issues.

a. forum b. privacy c. pros d. cons

11. We had a meeting to new ideas.

a. brainstorm b. install c. rank d. represent

12. I think is a promising career.

a. viewpoint b. presentation c. programming d. superficiality

13. It is a waste of time online.

a. excusing b. creating c. checking d. gaming

14. Salah has been as the most important player in the team.

a. ranked b. explained c. brainstormed d. represented

15. I prepared well for my at the meeting, so my audience liked it.

a. feelings b. presentation c. programming d. superficiality

16. I some of the videos from the school trip on the school site.

a. experienced b. installed c. shared d. distracted

17. Some people are interested in the number of they have on their posts.

a. knowledge b. likes c. victims d. warnings

18. You should respect the of others.

a. forum b. privacy c. pros d. cons

19. He is one of the ordinary people, so they think he them.

a. solves b. registers c. brainstorms d. represents

20. I respect your about my suggestion even if I do not think it is right.

a. viewpoint b. presentation c. programming d. superficiality

21. Work hard or you will be

a. researched b. chatted c. stamped d. fired

22. He was the of a car accident in which he lost his leg.

a. stamp b. identity c. victim d. effect

23. You can find a lot of professional educational on the internet.

a. buttons b. arguments c. platforms d. morals

24. You can make money online., you can have fun.
a. Plus b. Because c. Instead of d. So

25. The of his writing is the main reason for his failure.
a. viewpoint b. presentation c. programming d. superficiality

26. The media the bad need for economic growth to solve most of our problems.
a. ranked b. highlighted c. brainstormed d. represented

3 Definitions

27. is the things that a person or animal does.
a. View b. Behaviour c. Tone d. Cookies

28. A/An is someone who is very interested in something and spends a lot of time doing it.
a. innovator b. programmer c. addict d. downloader

29. A is a short description that gives important details about a person, a group of people, or a place.
a. like b. cookie c. file d. profile

30. means reasonable and shows good judgment.
a. Sensible b. Behavioural c. Reliable d. Up-to-date

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a blog post on يكتب منشور عن	**look**	terrible يبدو فظيعاً
	... for a job يقوم بـ... كوظيفة	**make**	rules يضع قواعد
game	online يلعب على الإنترنت	**miss**	something important يفتقد شيئاً هاماً
get	back to يعود إلي	**pay**	attention to يلتبه لـ
go	on forums يدخل على المنتديات	**post**	a message يرسل رسالة
have	effects on له تأثيرات على	**represent**	feelings يمثل او يشير إلي مشاعر
	likes يحصل على إعجابات	**show**	strange behaviour يتصرف بغرابة
keep	... entertained يُسلي		

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
criticise	ينتقد	blame, disapprove of
entertain	يُسلّي - يُرفّه عن	please, amuse, satisfy
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss, sack
sensible	حكيم - عقلاني - واقعي	practical, realistic, responsible, reasonable, rational, logical

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة		Antonym (= Opposite) العكس	
criticise	ينتقد	praise, approve of	يمتدح - يستحسن
entertain	يُسلّي - يُرفّه عن	displease, annoy, upset	يضايق
fire	يفصل من العمل	hire, employ, take on	يوظّف - يُشغّل
sensible	حكيم - عقلاني - واقعي	foolish	أحمق
strange	غريب	familiar, usual	مألوف - معتاد
stupid	غبي	intelligent, smart	ذكي
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

addict	
addict(n) مُدمِن	- He is a drug addict.
addiction(n) إدمان	- He suffers from drug addiction.
addicted(adj) مُدمِن	- He is addicted to drugs.
behave	
behave (d) (v) يتصرف	- This boy behaves badly.
behaviour (n) سلوك - تَصَرُّف	- This boy's behaviour is bad.
behavioural (adj) سلوكي	- This boy has behavioural problems.
criticise	
criticise (d) (v) ينتقد	- He criticises films.
critic (n) ناقد	- Critics talked about my latest film positively.
critical (adj) نقدي - حَرِج	- I didn't like her critical comments. (نقدي) - I was in a critical (حرج) situation.
criticism (n) النقد	- Positive criticism is useful.

employ	
employ (ed) (v) توظّف - يستغل	- This supermarket has employed 20 assistants. - Egypt has employed bright sunlight to generate electricity.
employer(n) صاحب عمل	- As a teacher, the government is my employer.
employee(n) مُوَظّف	- The employees here like their jobs.
employable(adj) قابل للتوظيف	- If you are employable, this means you have good qualifications and skills.
employment (n) التوظيف - الاستغلال	- The employment of young people is one of the goals of the new plan.
unemployment (n) البطالة	- Unemployment is a big problem.

entertain	
entertain (ed) (v) تسلّي / ترفّه عن	- There are some shows to entertain children.
entertainer(n) فنان ترفيهي	- This singer is a great entertainer.
entertaining(adj) مُسلٍّ	- This show is entertaining.
entertainment(n) التسلية/الترفيه	- For entertainment, you can go to the cinema.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

addicted to + n / (inf.+ing)	مُدمِن علي	keep in contact with	يبقي علي اتصال بـ
after all,	علي اي حال	loads of	الكثير من
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ - بسبب	on your own	بمفردك/وحدك
be distracted with / by	مُشتّت بـ	on your profile	علي حالتك [صفحتك الشخصية]
for ages	لفترة طويلة	set of	مجموعة من
have nothing to do with	لا علاقة له	so far	حتى الآن
I see your point	أفهم ما تقصد	social media app	تطبيق تواصل اجتماعي
in a few years' time	خلال سنوات قليلة	the other day	مؤخراً
in person	شخصياً	young people	الشباب
in short	باختصار		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

chat to / with	يدردش مع	go out	يخرج
connect to	يدخل علي	put up	يضع - يرفع
decide to	يقرر ان	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
divide into	يقسم إلي - ينقسم إلى		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

app - application

• app = application تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين علي الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف)

- An antivirus is an app (=application) that protects a computer from malware برمجيات خبيثة and viruses.

• application طلب التحاق (بنادي أو جامعة أو وظيفة ... إلخ)

- The secretary received 200 applications. (Not : apps).

platform - pavement

• platform (n) رصيف محطة القطار أو المترو

- The train to Aswan leaves at 9:00 from platform 11.

• platform (n) منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث)

- He felt embarrassed مُحرج when he climbed the steps to the platform.

• platform (n) منصة الكترونية

- Mr Mohammed will launch his educational platform soon.

• pavement (n) رصيف الشارع

- Cars are not allowed to park on the pavement.

represent - act

• represent (v) تمثّل (ينوب عن شخص أو مؤسسة ...)

- Rodayna represented our office at the conference.

• act (v) تمثّل (يقوم بدور في فيلم/مسرحية ...)

- He wants to act and become a movie star.

• act (v) يتصرف

- I didn't know how to act at that difficult situation.

sensible - sensitive

• sensible عاقل / حكيم / معقول

- Stopping the war was a sensible decision.

• sensitive حسّاس / سريع التأثر

- I was a sensitive child. I got upset very easily.

UNIT 5

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d :

1. I a blog post on yesterday's match.
 a. did b. gamed c. represented d. paid
2. My teacher said that I had a perfect essay.
 a. paid b. done c. looked d. played
3. When you like something, you it.
 a. approve of b. disapprove of c. criticise d. agree
4. When something is rational, it is
 a. foolish b. sensible c. particular d. general
5. To "entertain" is antonymous with
 a. displease b. please c. amuse d. satisfy
6. He lost his job. He was
 a. hired b. sacked c. employed d. taken on
7. He gained much weight his love of food.
 a. so b. so far c. that's why d. as a result of
8. I download trusted from Google Store.
 a. apps b. ads
 c. adverts d. announcements
9. The attention I to what the teacher said helped me understand the lesson.
 a. checked b. went c. seemed d. paid
10. Amr put a nice photo of his on his Instagram yesterday.
 a. out b. in c. up d. down
11. I share a lot of interests my cousin Malak.
 a. in b. with c. for d. on
12. 'For ages' means for
 a. good b. bad c. a long time d. years
13. Our university accepts from Arab students.
 a. apps b. applications c. a & b d. applicable
14. Don't be so to criticism. Try to benefit from it.
 a. sensitive b. sensible c. reliable d. unreliable

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 56)

Hamdi : Hey Khaled, can you help me?
I'm **doing a blog post on**(1) how to use social media well. Can you help me think of some interesting points to include, please?

Khaled : Yes, sure. What have you got **so far**(2) ?

Hamdi : OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your **profile**(3). That's important on social media.

Khaled : **Definitely**(4) !

Hamdi : Great! What shall I write?

Khaled : Well, I like seeing who I'm **chatting with**(5) on social media, so I believe you should always **put up**(6) a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I **hate**(7) it when people have **symbols**(8) or something **instead of**(9) their photo – you don't know who you are talking to.

Hamdi : I disagree, symbols tell you more about someone's thinks.

Khaled : Really, Hamdi? Well, I think it's important that people don't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your date of birth to show your age.

Hamdi : I see your point. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad **behaviour**(10). So, I think you're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

Khaled : After all, you have to be **sensible**(11) on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.

(1) بكلف مشور عن
(2) حتى الان
(3) الملف الشخصي
(4) بالتأكيد
(5) بدردش مع
(6) بضع
(7) بكره
(8) رموز
(9) بدلا من
(10) سلوك
(11) عاقل

(WB page 32)

Hanan : Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up **the other day**(1) about **social media behaviour**(2) in Egypt?

Leila : No, I was too busy updating my profile.
Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

(1) مؤخرا
(2) سلوك على مواقع التواصل

Hanan : I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. **Anyway**[3], as I was saying, did you know that Hany's post said that 22 million people in Egypt **connect to**[4] one **popular social media app**[5] every day?

Leila : Wow! That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media **platform!**[6] But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

Hanan : Don't you worry about what all those people might see **on your profile**[7] ? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something **stupid**[8] now, and in a few years' time you **apply for**[9] a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

Leila : **I see your point**[10], but in my opinion, social media should be personal and **has nothing to do with**[11] your job.

Hanan : I disagree. I read about a man who was **fired**[12] from his job for **criticising**[13] his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

Leila : I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

Hanan : The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there **forever**[14]. So, be careful with those **selfies**[15] you're taking! **Plus**[16], Hany told me that he was once the **victim**[17] of bad **behaviour**[18] after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans. He reported it and everything is **fine**[19] now, but it really **affected**[20] him at the time.

Leila : Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so **cute**[21] and my selfies all **look terrible**[22] anyway!

Hanan : I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it's a safer photo, too.

Leila : Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?

(3) على أي حال
(4) يدخل على
(5) تطبيق تواصل اجتماعي شهير
(6) قلصة
(7) على حائط [صفحتك الشخصية]
(8) غبي
(9) يتقدم بطلب لـ
(10) أفهم ما تقصد
(11) لا علاقة له بـ
(12) يفصل من العمل
(13) ينتقد
(14) للأبد
(15) صورة سيلفي
(16) بالإضافة لذلك
(17) ضحية
(18) سلوك
(19) بخير
(20) يؤثر على
(21) جميل
(22) يبدو فظيعاً

(SB page 57)

(1) تسليهم
(2) شاعر بالملل
(3) مثل
(4) مُدمِن لـ
(5) يفتقد شيئاً هاماً
(6) خلافات - نزاعات
(7) في أوقات الوجبات
(8) نخرج معاً
(9) تخيل
(10) الكثير من
(11) يلعب على الإنترنت
(12) البرمجة
(13) يدخل على المنتديات
(14) يدردش مع
(15) مُبرمجين
(16) يقوم بها كوظيفة
(17) يحل
(18) لها علاقة بـ

Narrator: 1

Dalida : Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect that the internet has on young people is it **keeps them entertained**(1) – there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never **bored**(2).

Narrator: 2

Injy : Hi, I'm Injy. **Like**(3) most of my friends, I think I'm **addicted to**(4) the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm **missing something important**(5). It means I have a lot of **arguments**(6) with my parents **at mealtimes**(7) and when we **go out together**(8).

Narrator: 3

Ayman : Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. **Imagine**(9) if you had to go to the library and read **loads of**(10) books for every homework or project!

Narrator: 4

Osama : Hi, my name's Osama. I **game online**(11) which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life, but I do worry about my sister. She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.

Narrator: 5

Girl 2 : Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer **programming**(12) so I **go on forums**(13) to **chat to**(14) other **programmers**(15) – students and people who **do it for a job**(16). I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't **solve**(17) **to do with**(18) programming, someone on the forum can usually help me.

UNIT 5

2 Video script

(SB page 56)

Social media can keep us **in contact with**(1) friends, **entertain**(2) us and keep us up-to-date. So, it's important to know how to use it safely.

First of all, take care with **privacy settings**(3). Make sure that the only people who can see what you're posting are people who you want to contact online.

Think carefully about the information that you share. Why not use a nice image instead of your face in your profile ? And never put real details about yourself online, such as your date of birth, school, home address or your telephone number.

Don't be unkind. If you haven't got anything nice to say, don't say anything. And always check that you know who you are sending messages to. Is it one person or a large group ?

If you want to meet more people online, there are lots of groups that you can join. Look for one with people who share your interests. But if anyone asks to meet you in person, tell an adult. Never meet them **on your own**(4).

(1) على تواصل مع
(2) تسلى
(3) إعدادات الخصوصية
(4) بمفردك

Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. He unfriendly at first, but when you know him well, you will change this opinion.
 a. seems like b. is seeming c. seems d. seems that
2. They have attacked our borders. حدود This war!
 a. means b. intends c. supposes d. refers
3. Both Aya and you supposed to attend yesterday's meeting.
 a. am b. is c. are d. were
4. Whenever I hear Fayrouz's songs, it seems I haven't grown older since I first started to listen to them.
 a. as b. as if c. to d. a & b
5. When you look at famous people like Messi, they to have no problems at all. However, this is not true.
 a. seem b. seems c. are seeming d. seemed
6. You're to support your sister; not to shout at her.
 a. suppose b. supposing c. supposed d. supposedly

7. It this man helps everybody in need.
a. seems to be b. seems that c. seems d. b & c

8. The car engine is meant
a. to check b. to be checked c. be checked d. that check

9. All students are supposed ready for the exams.
a. be b. to be c. being d. to being

10. One of the team members to attend the press conference. المؤتمر الصحفي
a. suppose b. is supposed c. are supposing d. are supposed

11. "You are meant the car engine.
a. to check b. to be checked c. be checked d. that check

12. The new furniture supposed to be delivered next Monday.
a. is b. are c. was d. were

13. My English is much better than it was two years ago. For example, listening difficult, but now it is quite easy.
a. seems b. seemed c. seemed like d. seems like

14. Sorry! I didn't to interrupt you."
a. suppose b. mean c. seem d. b & c

15. The new furniture supposed to be delivered last Monday, but nothing arrived.
a. has b. are c. was d. were

16. She seems excited about the offer.
a. like b. as if c. to be d. that

17. He is supposed a rest after he studies unit 5.
a. to take b. to be taken c. taking d. to have taken

18. His happy expression means he has passed the exam.
a. that b. no word c. a & b d. to

19. This film seems boring.
a. being b. to be c. now word d. b & c

20. He has studied unit 5 and he is supposed a rest now.
a. be taken b. taking c. to be taking d. have taken

21. A rest is supposed after he studies unit 5.
a. be taken b. to be taken c. to be taking d. have taken

2 Special cases

22. Amr supposed to have called his parents.
a. is being b. isn't c. was d. had

23. Ali wasn't at school today. That's strange because he well last evening at the party.
a. seemed b. seemed like c. seemed to d. seemed as if

24. What ?
a. is this word meaning b. was that word meaning
c. this word means d. does this word mean

25. "When I get home, my mum supposed to be preparing lunch.
a. is b. was c. has been d. had been

26. most students in secondary schools want to join the faculty of medicine.
a. He seems b. They seem c. It seems d. It is seemed

27. I don't know why he is unhappy. After coming first, he is supposed to his most important goal for the year.
a. achieve b. be achieved c. be achieving d. have achieved

28. Getting up late means the train to Aswan.
a. misses b. miss c. missing d. to miss

29. When I called him, he was supposed to the essay. That's why I was surprised when he told me that he had already finished it.
a. be busy doing b. be still doing
c. have already done d. a & b

30. "When I called him, he was supposed to the essay. That's why I was surprised when he told me that he hadn't finished it by then.
a. be busy doing b. be still doing
c. have already done d. a & b

31. My father meant for you the office.
a. run b. to run c. that runs d. runs

32. Some new clients were supposed to by my manager yesterday.
a. meet b. be met c. have been met d. a & b

33. "Supposing you lost your money; how would you react?
a. that b. no word c. to d. a & b

34. Ashraf seemed He took part in a full match.
a. not good b. well c. fitly d. unfit

35. I must apologise, but really I didn't you any harm.
a. mean b. suppose c. seem d. make

36. There to be no reason for alarm.
a. seems b. seem c. is seeming d. is seemed

37. Amira that her mother will support her.
a. is supposed b. supposes c. supposing that d. a & b

38. The new flat a view of the Nile.
a. means to have b. means to be had
c. is meant to have d. is meant to be had

Check your understanding

39. "The police suspect يشك that he has a criminal background تاريخ إجرامي." What does this mean?
 a. It seems that he has a criminal background.
 b. He seems to have a criminal background.
 c. a & b
 d. His background is criminal.

40. "The wedding party is supposed to start at 11 p.m." This sentence expresses a/an
 a. arrangement
 b. common belief
 c. obligation
 d. purpose

41. "You were supposed to be in shape, Saleh." This means Saleh overweight.
 a. isn't
 b. was
 c. wasn't
 d. was never

42. "I meant Rodayna to look after the baby." This means
 a. I intended to choose Rodayna to look after the baby
 b. I was against leaving the baby with Rodayna
 c. I told Rodayna not to look after the baby
 d. a & c

43. "I don't think you are meant for a lawyer." This means you are not for this job.
 a. important
 b. obliged
 c. suitable
 d. a & b

44. "You aren't supposed to use your mobile while driving." Which of the following give / gives the same meaning?
 a. You mustn't use your mobile while driving.
 b. You don't have to use your mobile while driving.
 c. You are allowed to use your mobile while driving.
 d. a & c

45. "I think she is busy." What does this mean?
 a. She seems to have been busy.
 b. It seems that she is busy.
 c. She seems to be busy.
 d. b & c

46. "You passed your exams, Ali. So, you were expected to be happy." This means
 a. Ali looks happy
 b. Ali looked happy
 c. Ali didn't look happy
 d. Ali doesn't look happy

47. You aren't supposed to smoke in a public place." This means
 a. Smoking in a public place is allowed
 b. Smoking in a public place isn't allowed
 c. Smoking in a public place was allowed
 d. Smoking in a public place wasn't allowed

PART THREE | Skills & Advanced Notes



تنويه لإتقان المهارات استخدم كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

adapt

• **adapt to** يتكيف / يتأقلم مع

بهذا المعني يأتي بعد (adapt to) اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

ex. - Camels have adapted to life in the desert.

- Sama has adapted to travelling a lot as an air hostess. مضيفة طيران

• **adapt ... to** يُكيِّف / يُهيئ ... لـ

بهذا المعني يأتي بعد (adapt ... to) فعل في المصدر (inf.) :

ex. - Engineers have adapted petrol engines to use natural gas. الغاز الطبيعي

• **adapt ... for** يُهيئ / يُعِد ... لـ

ex. - They adapted this part of the park for children.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

• **adaptability (n)** قابليّة التّكيُّف (القدرة علي التّكيُّف مع موقف أو وضع معين)

ex. - His adaptability to different situations makes him successful.

• **adaptation (n)** عملية التّكيُّف أو التهيئة - التأقلم

ex. - Adaptation to life in a foreign country takes some time.

ولاحظ أيضاً الفرق بين :

• **adaptable (adj)** قابل للتكيف مع / سهل التّكيُّف مع / مَرِن

ex. - He is adaptable to different situations.

• **adapted (adj)** مُهيّأ / مُكيَّف مع

ex. - This engine is well-adapted to using vegetable oil.

spend

• **spend money on+ n. / (inf.+ ing)**

= spend the money to + inf. ينفق المال علي

ex. - I spent a lot of money on (building) this house.

= I spent a lot of money to build this house.

• spend time + n. / (inf.+ ing) يقضي الوقت في

ex. - He spent an hour writing an essay.

• It's a waste of time / money + (inf.+ ing) إنها مضيعة للوقت / المال

ex. -It's a waste of time chatting online.

Plus

يُمكن استخدام (plus) لربط جملتين بمعني (بالإضافة إلي ذلك)

• Plus + جملة = in addition / besides + جملة

ex. - She works hard. Plus, she looks after a big family.

= She works hard. In addition, she looks after a big family.

= She works hard. Besides, she looks after a big family.

be/have

• to do with + اسم = be related to + اسم متعلق بـ / على علاقة بـ

ex. - She is confident. It has something to do with her happy childhood.

teach – learn

- يمكن استخدام (how to + inf.) او (to + inf.) بعد الفعلين learn/teach :

ex. - I want you to teach me (how) to ride a horse.

- بينما يستخدم (how to + inf.) بعد الفعلين (know/show)

- A young girl showed me how to operate the machine.

Exercise On Language Hints

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Rodayna has adapted in the countryside.
 a. to live b. to living c. to life d. b & c
2. I adapted the water pump on electricity instead of petrol.
 a. to run b. to running c. running d. b & c
3. Sama spends her pocket money chocolate.
 a. to buy b. buying c. on buying d. a & c
4. It is a waste of money all this chocolate, Sama.
 a. to buy b. buying c. on buying d. a & c

5. I spent the weekend after the plants in the garden.
 a. looking b. to look c. on looking d. look
6. At the weekend, I was busy after the plants in the garden.
 a. looking b. to look c. on looking d. look
7. He studies medicine., he is a professional squash player.
 a. In addition b. Plus c. a & b d. In addition to
8. Omar refused to take the money. It is with his honesty.
 a. being done b. to be done c. doing d. to do
9. I taught Ahmed how
 a. drive b. to drive c. driving d. a & b
10. I showed him to park his car.
 a. where b. how c. if d. a & b

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ Read the following, then choose the correct answer a , b , c or d:

Imagine that you are a fly. You are just flying around the sky, looking for a place to rest, when you see a nice pink leaf. "That looks like a nice place to land." You think to yourself in your fly head. As you rest your feet on the leaf", you notice something strange. This leaf is hairy. You begin to make your move, but you trigger the plant's reaction. Snap! In one-tenth of a second, you are caught in the Venus flytrap. You will be digested in five to twelve days. Welcome to the world of carnivorous plants!

There are over a quarter of millions plant species. Only 600 or so are carnivorous as they attract, trap, and eat insects. Like other plants, they get nutrients from the sun and soil through photosynthesis. Unlike other plants, they get other nutrients from their prey. Carnivorous plants live in places where the soil lacks nutrients.

Pitcher plants trick their prey into landing on them. They offer nectar, a sweet liquid, to the foolish insects that the plant eats. True to their name, pitcher plants have deep spaces. Their landing surface is slippery. They have inward pointing hairs, making it hard to escape. The fly lands on the pitcher plant to eat that nectar, but slips into a hole filled with digestive fluids and is eaten.

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Venus flytrap is a species of
 a. meat-eating animal b. meat-eating plants
 c. plant-eating animals d. insect-eating animals

2. Pitchers offer to trick insects.
a. algae b. soil c. stone d. sweet liquid

3. The passage is mainly about
a. carnivorous plants b. herbivorous animals
c. domestic plants d. carnivorous animals

4. Pitchers get their nutrients from all the following except
a. the sun b. their prey c. nectar d. the soil

5. According to the passage, we know that
a. all plants are prey b. some plants are carnivores
c. all plants are carnivores d. some plants are victims

6. Photosynthesis is the process through which plants get
a. pollination b. multiplication
c. nutrition d. reproduction

7. According to the passage, flies and insects that
a. feed on fish b. are eaten by animals
c. feed on meat d. are eaten by plants

8. Pitchers grow in soil.
a. fertile b. poor c. rich d. fruitful

2 Writing Tips – Opinion with reason إرشادات الكتابة : إعطاء الرأى المسبب

Giving opinion with reasons التعبير عن الرأي مع ذكر السبب

form	example
I think / believe...because... اعتقد ان ... لان ...	- I think all people should help charity organisation because it needs help.
In my opinion / view...as... من وجهة نظري، ... لان ...	- In my opinion, he should take a rest as he looks very tired.
If you ask me, ... should + inf. ... so that في رأيي، ينبغي على ... ان ...لكي ...	- If you ask me, you should join a charity so that you can help poor people.
- I agree / disagree because ... اتفق / لا اتفق لان ...	- I agree because doing a sport keeps you fit.
- I see your point, but ... اتفهم وجهة نظرك لكن ...	- I see your point, but buying this car will cost a lot of money.

Model Email

* **Write an email of about (180) words to your friend Nadi(a) telling him / her about the advantages and disadvantages of smart phones. Your email is nabil(a)@student.com and your friend's email is nadi(a)@student.com**

From : nabil (a)@student.com

To : nadi (a)@student.com

Subject : advantages and disadvantages of smartphones

Dear Nadi(a),

How are you, Nadia? I hope you and your family are your best. It gives me great pleasure to send this email to you. I want to tell you about my opinion of smartphones.

Like everything else, smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On one hand, they have made communication easier than before. You can call anybody anywhere at any time. You can also send text messages. They allow you to send and receive video calls. You can also log on the internet quickly through them. Smart phones have a lot of applications that give you access to huge information and let you follow unlimited people and webpage. So, no surprise to know that you can work and get money through smartphones.

On the other hand, mobile phones have some disadvantages. People have stopped visiting each other because it has become easier to phone them. Some young people use smartphones in bad ways. They can also cause some health problems.

Finally, I think that we have to use smartphones in a way that makes us benefit from them and, at the same time, avoid their downsides. Now, what do you think of smartphones? I'm waiting for your reply.

Yours,

Nabil(a)

3 Translation الترجمة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. It has been proven that nothing remains impossible in science. In the near future, we will have different kinds of medicine for treating all diseases.

a. لقد ثبت أنه لا يوجد شيء مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج بعض الأمراض.

b. لقد ثبت أنه يوجد شيء مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج جميع الأمراض.

c. لقد ثبت أنه لا يوجد شيء غير مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج جميع الأمراض.

d. لقد ثبت أنه لا يوجد شيء مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج جميع الأمراض.

2. A lot of people are interested in using different means of communication. These means enable them to do various tasks as quickly as they can.

a. يهتم الكثير من الناس باستخدام وسائل اتصال صعبة. هذه الوسائل تمكنهم من القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

b. يهتم الكثير من الناس باستخدام وسائل اتصال مختلفة. هذه الوسائل تمكنهم من القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

c. لقد اهتم الكثير من الناس باستخدام وسائل اتصال مختلفة. هذه الوسائل مكنتهم من القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

d. يهتم الكثير من الناس باستخدام وسائل اتصال مختلفة. هذه الرسائل تمكنهم من القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

3. There are a lot of vacant jobs that can be done online. These jobs can vary and may suit a lot of people who are currently unemployed.

a. هناك الكثير من الوظائف الشاغرة التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. يمكن أن تختلف هذه الوظائف وقد تناسب الكثير من الأشخاص العاطلين عن العمل حاليًا.

b. هناك الكثير من الوظائف الشاغرة التي لا يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. يمكن أن تختلف هذه الوظائف وقد تناسب الكثير من الأشخاص العاطلين عن العمل حاليًا.

c. هناك الكثير من الوظائف الشاغرة التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. يمكن أن تتنوع هذه الوظائف وقد تناسب الكثير من الأشخاص العاطلين عن العمل حاليًا.

d. هناك الكثير من الوظائف الشاغرة التي يمكن القيام بها بدون الإنترنت. يمكن أن تتنوع هذه الوظائف وقد تناسب الكثير من الأشخاص العاطلين عن العمل حاليًا.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. الكل يُخطئ، لكن معظمنا لا يعرف كيف يستفيد من أخطائه. إن ارتكاب الأخطاء لا يؤدي بالضرورة إلى نتائج سيئة، فالتعلُّم من الخطأ مهارة علينا جميعاً اكتسابها. (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

a. Everybody makes mistakes, but most of we don't see how to earn from their mistakes. Making mistakes does necessarily lead to good results. Admitting from mistakes is skillful we all have to realise.

b. Everyone makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to benefit from their mistakes. Making mistakes does not necessarily lead to bad results. Learning from mistakes is a skill we all have to acquire.

c. Everyone makes mistakes, but most of us don't understand how to gain from their mistake. Doing mistakes does not necessarily lead to bad results. Learning from mistakes is skillful we all have to win.

d. All makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to profit from our mistakes. Mistakes do not lead to bad results. Teaching from mistakes is a skill we all have to acquire.

٢. لا تشارك معلوماتك الشخصية على مواقع الإنترنت غير الموثوقة. فقد يستخدمها المجرمون في ابتزازك ولهديدك. (شربين ٢٠٢٣)

a. You should never share your personal information on the unreliable websites. The criminals might use it to threaten and blackmail you.

b. You should use your personal information on the unreliable websites. The criminals must use it to threaten and blackmail you.

c. You will never share your personal information on the unreliable websites. The criminals have to use it to threaten and blackmail you.

d. You should never share your personnel information on the mistaken websites. The criminals might make it to threaten and blackmail you.

٣. لقد اختلفت حياة الإنسان عما كانت عليه في القرون الماضية، وقد حدث ذلك بسبب وسائل الاتصالات والتي لم تكن متاحة قبل ذلك.

a. Man's life has become different from that was in the past centuries. That happened thanks for means of communication which weren't available before that.

b. Man's life has become different from that was in the past countries. That happened because of means of communication which weren't available before that.

c. Man's life has become different from what it was like in the past centuries. That happened because of means of communication which weren't available before that.

d. The man's life has become different from that was in the past centuries. That happened thanks to modern means of communications which weren't available before that.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

consult

• **consult(ed)(v)** يبحث عن معلومة في (بدون حرف جر)
- You can consult GPS if you get lost.

• **consult someone = see / ask someone** يستشير / يطلب المشورة / يستفتي
- I usually consult my lawyer about legal affairs. الأمور القانونية

• **consult with** يتشاور مع
- I need to consult with my lawyer.

• **consultant(n)** مستشار / ناصح / خبير
- You need advertising consultants to help you with the new marketing campaign. حملة تسويقية

• **consultant(n)** استشاري (طبيب خبير في فرع معين من الطب)
- Do you agree with me that a young doctor is sometimes more helpful than a consultant?

download - upload

• **download (n)** ملف مُنزَّل من الانترنت ≠ **upload (n)** ملف مرفوع على الانترنت
- There are five downloads in this folder.

• **download (n)** تنزيل الملفات ≠ **upload (n)** رفع الملفات
- The speed of download is always more than the speed of upload.

• **downloading (n)** التنزيل من الانترنت ≠ **uploading (n)** الرفع على الانترنت
- Downloading videos is easier and faster than uploading them.

• **download (v)** يُنزِّل ملف ≠ **upload (ed) (v)** يرفع ملف
- Abdulrahman has downloaded all Al Pacino's films.
- Mr Mohammed used to upload educational files for free.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:
- download ... from يُنزِّل ... من - download ... to / onto يُنزِّل ... إلى
- upload ... to يرفع ... على

• **downloadable (adj)** قابل للتنزيل
- The files on this website are downloadable.

reliable

• **rely (ied) on / upon (v)** يعتمد على
- Don't make your children rely on you all the time. Let them depend on themselves.

- **reliable (adj)** يعتمد عليه / أهل للثقة
 - Bassem is a reliable man. You can trust him.
- **reliability (n)** الدقة - الموثوقية - الجدارة
 - I'm not sure about the reliability of this information.
- **reliance (n)** الاعتماد / الاتكال
 - There's increasing reliance on computers.

up & down with computer terminology

تُستخدم كل من (up / down) في الكثير من مصطلحات الحاسب الآلي مثل:

- **up** : upload – upgrade –update – (up-to-date)
- **down** : download – take down

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To make a strong password, use numbers, letters and a special
 a. character b. personality c. letter d. post
2. He is not fit. I think that has his eating habits.
 a. to do with b. to be done c. done with d. do with
3. I have to check this piece of information reliable references to make sure it is reliable.
 a. against b. with c. a & b d. to
4. Luxor was just a city. Then, it was to the status of a governorate محافظة in 2009.
 a. degraded b. demoted c. updated d. upgraded
5. The of the report is stinging. حاد The writer seems to be completely against the plan.
 a. tone b. cookies c. behaviour d. banner

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It only yesterday when I first met my wife.
 a. seems b. seems to c. seems like d. a & c
2. Some new clients are supposed to tomorrow.
 a. meet b. be met c. have been met d. a & b
3. "I didn't mean to step on your foot." The speaker wants to express lack of
 a. responsibility b. intention c. duty d. obligation
4. Suppose you see a large dog in a dark street, will you run away?
 a. to b. not to c. what d. no word
5. They supposed a lot of money.
 a. me to have b. I to have c. to have d. b & c

Test on Unit 5

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

نموذج

التقييمات المصرية في نهاية الكتاب

الاختبار الالكتروني

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Once you feel the same pain again, it is a must to your doctor. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)
 a. consult b. construct c. constant d. constrict
2. His to different situations makes him a success. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
 a. adoption b. adaptable c. adaptability d. adjustable
3. are information a website leaves in your computer to recognize you when you use it again. (قنا حمادي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Cooker b. Cookies c. Behaviours d. Tones
4. "Mona downloaded some games on her mobile." The antonym of "downloaded" is (البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. upgraded b. uploaded c. surfed d. logged
5. You must look for scientific information only from sources. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. removable b. reusable c. reliable d. complex
6. I will a new important file from this site.
 a. download b. adapt c. update d. upload
7. They look unhappy, they not to be having a nice time.
 a. are seeming b. are seemed c. seem d. were seem
8. I don't know how you work with that woman. She to be helpful.
 a. seems b. doesn't seem c. seem not d. b & c
9. This room is to be the master bedroom.
 a. seemed b. supposed c. meant d. b & c
10. He to be abroad on business.
 a. supposes b. is supposing c. is supposed d. a & c
11. Where we supposed to wait for the others to catch up with us?
 a. do b. are c. have d. had
12. I suppose to be a good leader.
 a. that b. he c. him d. himself
13. seems to be a mistake in these calculations. Can we check them?
 a. He b. They c. Their d. There

14. My driving licence is supposed next month.
a. to renew
b. to be renewed
c. for renewing
d. to have renewed

15. "A lift is supposed to help us go upstairs." This sentence expresses a / an
a. arrangement
b. common belief
c. obligation
d. purpose

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (شيراخيت ٢٠٢٢)

Advertising has become a very specialized activity in modern times. In the business world of today, supply is usually greater than demand. There is great competition between the different manufacturers of the same kind of product to persuade customers to buy their own particular make. They always have to remind the customer of the name and the quality of their product. They do this by advertising.

The manufacturer advertises in newspapers and on posters. He sometimes pays for songs to be sung about his product on commercial radio programmes. He employs attractive salesgirls to distribute samples of **it**. He organizes competitions with prizes for the winners. He often advertises on the screens of local cinemas. Most important of all, he has advertisements put into the programmes whenever this is possible.

Manufacturers often spend large sums of money on advertisements. We buy a particular product because we think that it is the best. We usually think so because the advertisements say so. Some people never pause to ask themselves if the advertisements are telling the truth.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

16. We mainly buy goods because
a. they are advertised
b. we need them
c. supply is greater than demand
d. we buy a certain make

17. The underlined pronoun '**it**' refers to
a. his advertisement
b. his factory
c. his product
d. his goods

18. The best title to this text is
a. A specialized activity
b. Advertising
c. Competition
d. Manufacturers

19. Which word in the passage is the antonym of "losers"?
a. prizes
b. product
c. customer
d. winners

20. The writer wants to convey to us that not all advertisements are
a. reliable b. available c. applicable d. accessible

21. To give something out means to it.
a. store b. distribute c. keep d. maintain

22. In your opinion, advertisements should cope with
a. culture b. customs and traditions
c. religion d. a, b & c

23. The manufacturers advertising in the newspaper, posters, songs, commercial programs and sometimes film are called
a. bread winners. b. benefactors c. sponsors d. fans

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

A friend in need is a friend indeed. If you haven't learned the meaning of friendship, you really haven't learned anything.

a. الصديق وقت الضيق هو الصديق الحقيقي، وإذا لم تتعلم معنى الصداقة فأنت حقًا لم تتعلم أي شيء.
b. الصديق وقت الضيق هو الصديق الحليق، وإذا لم تتعلم معنى الصداقة فانت حقًا لم تتعلم أي شيء.
c. الصديق وقت الضيق هو الصديق الحقيق، وإذا لم تتعلم معنى الصداقة فانت حقًا لن تتعلم أي شيء.
d. الصديق هو الوقت الضيق ، وإذا لم تتعلم معنى الصداقة فأنت حقًا لم تتعلم أي شيء.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

كل شخص منا لديه هوايته المفضلة التي يحب أن يمارسها بانتظام، فالهوايات تساعدنا على إشباع رغباتنا والتخلص من ضغوط الحياة الصعبة.

a. Each of us have their favourite hobby that they like to practise regularly. Hobbies help us satisfy our desires and get rid of the pressures of the difficult life.
b. Each of us has their favourite hobby that they like to practise regularly. Hobbies help us satisfy our desires and get red of the pressures of the difficult life.
c. Each of us has there favourite hobby that they like to practise regularly. Hobbies help us satisfy our desires and get rid of the pressures of the difficult life.
d. Each of us has their favourite hobby that they like to practise regularly. Hobbies help us satisfy our desires and get rid of the pressures of the difficult life.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :

"How to be smart online"



UNIT

6

Learning from our mistakes

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 36 : 41

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
 Two extracts from an abridged version of A Christmas Carol by Charles Dickens
- **Writing :**
 An essay on your regrets
- **Listening :**
 A radio programme about regrets
- **Speaking :**
 Role-play about recognising mistakes
- **Language :**
 Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)
- **Critical Thinking :**
 Learning from our mistakes

PART ONE | LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 62 : 65 WB pages 36 : 37



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

beg (ged) (v)	يتوسّل - يستجدي - يتسول	fire (d) (v)	يُطلق النار
carol (n)	ترنيمة - أنشودة	mean (adj)	بخيل
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	pile (d) (up) (v)	يُكوّم / يُكدّس - يتكدس
fire (d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	pile (n)	كومة - غرفة
fire (n)	مدفأة - نار	sigh (ed) (v - n)	يتنهد - تنهيدة

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر اهمية

alone (adv)	وحيدًا	invite (d) (v)	يدعو - يعزم
assistant (n)	مُساعد	logical (adj)	منطقي
attention (n)	انتباه - اهتمام	nephew (n)	ابن الأخ أو الأخت
boss (n)	رئيس العمل	pay - paid - paid (v)	يدفع ثمن
disappointed (adj)	مُحبَط - خائب الأمل	poor (adj)	فقير
donation (n)	التبرُّع	race (n)	سباق
employee (n)	موظّف	regret (ted) (v - n)	يندم - الندم
employer (n)	صاحب عمل	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
enormous (adj)	ضخم - هائل	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل - يعالج
faraway (adj)	بعيد	unfriendly (adj)	عَدَائِيّ - فاتر
foggy (adj)	ضبابي - أغبش	upset- upset - upset (adj-v)	منزعج - يزعج
friendly (adj)	ودود	warm (adj)	دافئ
generous (adj)	كريم - سخيّ	waste (d) (v)	يُضيّع/يُهدِر
gift (n)	هدية - منحة - موهبة	water (ed) (v)	يروي/يسقي
including (prep)	بما في ذلك		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
beg(ged) (v) يتوسّل - يستجدي	to ask for يطلب something in a way that shows you need it very much.
carol(n) ترنيمة - أنشودة	a traditional Christmas song

mean(adj)	بخيل	not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
pile(n)	كومة - غرفة	a group of things put on top of each other
sigh (n)	تنهيدة	a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. Adel looked at the enormous of work left to do and sighed. (سوهاج - التلبتا ٢٠٢٣)

a. pan b. pie c. pile d. pole

2. The kids their parents to take them to the carnival on Friday. (الشروق - الأبطال الرسمية للغات ٢٠٢٣)

a. begged b. backed c. looked d. agreed

3. She downloaded the latest album of Christmas

a. feedback b. attention c. carols d. assistants

4. The secretary was as she had leaked some information to the press. (سمالوط ٢٠٢٣)

a. promoted b. fired c. appointed d. awarded

5. Don't ask a person to help you. (سوهاج - دهينة ٢٠٢٣)

a. mean b. main c. sting d. generous

6. Don't let your homework up. (أسيوط - المنح ٢٠٢٣)

a. pile b. pale c. pool d. pill

7. The mother in depth as she was reading her son's message. (سمالوط ٢٠٢٣)

a. slept b. sighed c. sighted d. looked

2 Important vocabulary

8. When his son failed his exam, the father was too (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

a. disappointed b. happy c. glad d. delighted

9. My uncle was too mean but now he has become so (العامرية - طيبة الثانوية ٢٠٢٢)

a. miser b. generous c. miserly d. man

10. Salwa not phoning her mother on her birthday. She could have done it.
امتحان - ناصر القاهرة بين ٢٠٢٢

a. rejects b. regrets c. rejoices d. reflects

11. In squash, you have to beat the person you are playing
امتحان - ناصر القاهرة بين ٢٠٢٢

a. lonely b. private c. alone d. particular

12. His words made us all leave the meeting.

a. generous b. kind c. warm d. unfriendly

13. It is that a child makes mistakes.

a. mean b. logical c. disappointed d. foggy

14. She floods her children with her feelings.

a. disappointed b. sick c. warm d. unfriendly

15. His as a teacher makes him very successful. He has a natural ability to teach children.

a. reunion b. tone c. gift d. regret

16. Using her things without permission really her.

a. ignores b. upsets c. treats d. fires

17. My father took us all to the park, ... my baby sister.

a. including b. inviting c. firing d. extracting

18. It is very dangerous to drive fast on a weather.

a. main b. logical c. disappointed d. foggy

19. Charities depend mainly on from people.

a. attacks b. memories c. donations d. relationship

20. Eating too much food makes me feel

a. generous b. sick c. well d. unfriendly

21. Pay to every word your teacher says.

a. attention b. memory c. donation d. relationship

22. He was a kind gentleman who his servants well.

a. ignored b. upset c. treated d. fired

23. I asked my to make a brief report about the new plan.

a. leader b. assistant c. feedback d. friendship

3 Definitions

24. A is a group of things put on top of each other.

a. touch b. pile c. sigh d. beggary

25. To be means not happy to spend money or give anything to other people.
a. mean b. beggar c. logical d. disappointed

26. A is a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed.
a. site b. sign c. sigh d. sight

27. To is to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much.
a. ignore b. upset c. regret d. beg

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

change	his mind	يغير رايه	have	a bad dream	يري حلماً مزعجاً
do	exercise	يتمرن		dinner	يتناول العشاء
feel	alone	يشعر بالوحدة	keep	... warm	يُبقي ... دافئاً
	healthy	يشعر أنه بصحة جيدة	miss	a train	يفوته القطار
fire	a gun	يطلق النار	need	donations	يحتاج تبرعات
get	burnt	يحترق	pay	attention to	يلتبه - يُلي اهتمام بـ
	lost	يتوه	see	his mistakes	يدرك اخطائه
	angry	يغضب			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
alone	وحيد	lonely, isolated, solitary, deserted, abandoned, friendless, desolate
disappointed	مُحبَط - خائب الأمل	frustrated, saddened, depressed, dissatisfied
logical	منطقي	reasonable, rational
mean	بخيل	stingy, cheap
mean	قاسي	unkind, cruel
generous	كريم	hospitable
foggy	ضبابي - اغبش	misty, cloudy
mistake	خطا	error, fault

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة		Antonym (= Opposite) العكس	
alone	وحيد	loved, wanted	محبوب - مطلوب
disappointed	مُحبَط - خائب الأمل	pleased, satisfied	سعيد - راضي
foggy	ضبابي - أغبش	clear, bright	صافي
friendly	ودود	unfriendly, cruel	غَدّابي - قاسٍ
logical	منطقي	irrational, illogical	غير منطقي
mean	بخيل	generous, hospitable	كريم - سخيّ
mean	قاسي	kind	طيب - عطوف

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

beg	
beg (ged) (v) يتوسّل - يستجدي	- She begged her mother to let her join the school trip.
beggar (n) متسوّل (شحات)	- I think he is a professional beggar, not a poor man.
beggary (n) الفقر المُدقِع (الشديد)	- He lives in absolute beggary.
fire	
fire (d) (v) يُطلق النار - يفصل من العمل	- He fired his gun at the thieves. - He was fired because he was careless.
fire (n) نار - حريق - مدفأة	- The house was on fire. - I sat by the fire and started to read.
fired (adj) مفصول من العمل	- The fired employees have to look for employment.
mean	
meanness (n) البُخل - الشُحّ	- She was shocked by her husband's meanness.
mean (n) بخيل	- She didn't expect her husband to be so mean.
pile	
pile (d) (up) (v) يُكوِّم / يُكدِّس - يتكدس - يتدافع	- We piled the boxes up neatly. - The bell rang and the kids started piling into the classroom.
pile (n) كومة - غرفة	- I found an old photo in a pile of books on the desk.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a deep breath out	زفير شديد	in a way that shows	بطريقة توضح أن
be happy about	يسعد بـ	in an unfriendly tone	نبرة عدائية
be late for	متأخر على	need help with	يحتاج مساعدة في
each other	بعضهم البعض	on top of	فوق
far away	بعيد	spend money on	ينفق مالاً على
feel so alone	يشعر بالوحدة الشديدة	stay in touch	يبقى على اتصال
in a logical order	بترتيب منطقي		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

ask ... for	يطلب ... من	run off	ينطلق
come into (a place)	يدخل	smile at	يبتسم لـ
feel about	يشعر تجاه	speak to/with	يتحدث إلى
invite ... to	يدعو ... إلى	wake up	يستيقظ - يوقظ
pay ... for	يدفع ... ثمنًا لـ	work for	يعمل لحساب / لدى
pay ... to	يدفع ... لـ		

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We all love and respect Hamza as he is He is very helpful.
 a. ugly b. friendly c. silly d. lonely
2. "Having no friends makes him feel alone." The adjective 'alone' in this sentence is the antonym for
 a. loved b. unwanted c. lonely d. misty
3. "It is difficult that such a mean person will donate anything." In this sentence, "mean" gives the antonym of
 a. stingy b. generous c. rich d. wealthy
4. What you say seems logical to me. This means I find it
 a. irrational b. incredible c. reasonable d. illogical
5. "I was disappointed by her reaction." This means her reaction didn't me.
 a. satisfy b. shock c. frustrate d. depress

6. "It's dangerous to drive while it is
a. clear b. sunny c. foggy d. bright

7. I will speak Omar about the matter.
a. from b. to c. of d. off

8. You need to more attention to your teachers at school.
a. pay b. miss c. fall d. had

9. He usually his mistakes when he calms down.
a. makes b. goes c. sees d. does

10. He picked up his keys and ran
a. for b. into c. off d. by

11. Take this mobile a gift from me to you.
a. such b. such as c. as d. like

12. He doesn't like to spend money out of
a. meaningful b. meaningless c. mean d. meanness

13. I don't want money, Sir. I am not a
a. beg b. begged c. beggar d. beggary

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

A Christmas Carol

ترنيمة الميلاد (رواية لـ "تشارلز ديكنز")

SB page (62)

It was the end of December. It was **dark**(1) outside and the streets were **foggy**(2). Scrooge was a very rich **businessman**(3), but he was **mean**(4) and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his **assistant**(5), Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't **pay for**(6) a big **fire**(7) to **keep them warm**(8).

There was only a small fire and it was very **far away**(9). "It's late. Can I **go home**(10), Mr Scrooge?" Bob **begged**(11). "Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the **enormous**(12) **pile**(13) of work left to do and **sighed**(14).

(1) ظلام - مُظلم
(2) ضبابي - أغبش
(3) رجل أعمال
(4) بخيل
(5) مُساعِد
(6) يدفع ثمن
(7) مدفأة
(8) تدفئهم
(9) بعيد
(10) يذهب للمنزل
(11) يقول متوسلاً
(12) ضخم
(13) كومة - غُرفة
(14) يتنهد

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.

"If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob.

"No," said Scrooge.

Suddenly(15) the door opened and Scrooge's **nephew**(16), Fred, **came into**(17) the office. He gave his uncle a **friendly**(18) **smile**(19).

"Bah!" said Scrooge, "Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're **poor**(20). What have you got to **be happy about**(21)?".

"If you are so **rich**(22), why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "**Perhaps**(23) if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, **too**(24)."

"Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an **unfriendly**(25) **tone**(26).

"No," replied his nephew. "I've come to **invite**(27) you to dinner."

"Bah!" said his uncle.

(15) فجأة
(16) ابن الأخ
(17) يدخل
(18) ودود
(19) ابتسامة
(20) فقير
(21) يسعد بـ
(22) غني
(23) ربما
(24) أيضاً
(25) غنائي - هائر
(26) نبرة صوت
(27) يدعو - يعزم

A Christmas Carol :

SB page (64)

After a dream



The next morning, Scrooge **woke up**(1) in his bed. He'd had a **terrible**(2) dream, but now he could see **his mistakes**(3). If he hadn't felt so **alone**(4), he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have **treated**(5) other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone.

But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the **butcher's**(6) shop?"

(1) استيقظ
(2) فظيع
(3) يدرك أخطاءه
(4) وحيد
(5) يعامل
(6) الجزار

"Yes, Mr Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.

"I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house **as a gift from me to**(7) his family. Will you **do this for me**(8) if I pay you?"

"Of course," said the boy and then he **ran off**(9) before Mr Scrooge **changed his mind**(10). Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.

Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could **have dinner**(11) with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to **come inside**(12).

(7) كهدية مني لـ
(8) تفعل ذلك لأجلي
(9) انطلق
(10) بغير رأيه
(11) يتناول العشاء
(12) يدخل

2 Video script

Charles Dickens

SB page (63)

Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels **including**(1) Great Expectations, Oliver Twist, David Copperfield, and Hard Times. His most popular novel is probably A Christmas Carol, which was published in 1843.

In A Christmas Carol, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time. Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that rich people should be kinder and help the poor people who worked for them.

The **main**(2) **character**(3) is Ebenezer Scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including his **employee**(4), Bob Cratchit, who is very poor with a large family and a **sick**(5) child.

However(6), by the end of the story Scrooge has changed and he sees life in a **completely**(7) different way. We are told that Scrooge: Became as good a friend, as good an **employer**(8) and as good a man as the good old city of London had ever seen.

(1) تضم - بما في ذلك
(2) رئيسي
(3) شخصية
(4) موظف
(5) مريض
(6) مع ذلك
(7) تماماً
(8) صاحب عمل

PART IV LANGUAGE

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If إذا / When عندما + مضارع بسيط ، + مضارع بسيط ...

ex. - When / If I feel tired, I take some time to rest.
= I take some time to rest when / if I feel tired.

Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)

Do / Does + subj. + inf. + if / when + مضارع بسيط ... ؟

ex. - When/ If you feel tired, do you take some time to rest?
= Do you take some time to rest when/if you feel tired?

' Wh_ ' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + مضارع بسيط ... ؟

ex. - What do you do if/ when you feel tired?
= If/When you feel tired, what do you do?

Uses الاستخدامات

١ التعبير عن العادات الثابتة أو المواقف التي لها نتيجة منطقية :

ex. - If / When I don't get enough sleep, I feel tired the next day.

٢ التعبير عن الحقائق العـــامة :

ex. - If / When we boil water, it turns into steam.
= If/When water is boiled, it turns into steam.
= If boiled, water turns into steam.

٣ إذا كانت الحقيقة تخص موقف معين أو محددة بوقت معين نستخدم الحالة الأولي وليس الحالة الصفرية:

ex. - If it rains heavily, streets become wet. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفرية)
- If it rains heavily tonight, streets will become wet. (موقف محدد - حالة أولي)
- If we water plants regularly, they grow well. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفرية)
- If we water these plants regularly, they will grow well. (موقف محدد - حالة أولي)

Mini Test 1 ● Apply

● ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I take a rest I feel stressed.
a. unless b. if c. when d. b & c

2. Ice melts if the weather temperature
a. rises b. is risen c. rose d. had risen

3. What if chocolate is left in the sun?
a. had happened b. would happen c. happens d. is happened

2 First conditional الحالة الأولى

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If / Unless + مضارع بسيط + ... will / can / may + inf.

ex. - If he works hard, he'll pass the next exam.
= He'll pass the next exam if he works hard.

Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)

Will / Can / May + subj. + inf. + if + ... مضارع بسيط ?

ex. - Will he pass the next exam if he works hard?
= If he works hard, will he pass the next exam?

' Wh_ ' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W. + will / can / may + subj. + inf. + if + ... مضارع بسيط ?

ex. - What will happen if he works hard?
= If he works hard, what will happen?

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ تعبر الحالة الشرطية الأولي عن مواقف قابلة للحدوث في المستقبل:

ex. - If I have enough money, I will buy a car. (I believe I'll have enough money).

٢ يمكن أن تحل (can - may - might - must - should) محل (will) فى جملة جواب الشرط فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى - لاحظ المثال التالى :

ex. - If I feel hungry at work, I will have a snack. (متأكد sure)
- If I feel hungry at work, I may have a snack. (من المحتمل probably)
- If I feel hungry at work, I might have a snack. (من الممكن possibly)
- If I feel hungry at work, I must have a snack. (ضرورة necessity)
- If you can't do the job, you should apologise. (نصيحة advice) او اقتراح (suggestion)

٣ لا نستخدم المستقبل بعد (if) مباشرة لكن نستخدم المضارع البسيط:

ex. - If I (will follow - follow) a diet, I will get fit.
- What will you buy if you (have – will have) a million dollars? If I feel hungry at work, I can have a snack. (ability / possibility قدرة / إمكانية)

UNIT 6

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If my glasses, it will be difficult for me to drive.
 a. breaks b. break c. are broken d. b & c
2. My mother sad if I pass the exam.
 a. is b. will be c. won't be d. doesn't be
3. it easy if he knows that I have dropped his mobile?
 a. Will he take b. Does he take
 c. What will he take d. What does he take
4. What will happen if our car out of petrol on the desert road?
 a. run b. runs c. is run d. will run

ملاحظات تساعدك على حل سؤال الاختيار من متعدد

١ استخدم المضارع البسيط بعد (if) إذا كانت جملة جواب الشرط تتكون من أحدي الصيغ التالية :

1. Inf. / Don't + inf. / Never + inf. (جملة أمر أو نهى)

ex. - Don't eat too much fat if you (want – wanted – had wanted) to lose weight

- If one of your friends (has – had – had had) a problem, help him/her.

2. Let's + inf.

ex. - Let's take a rest and have a drink if you (are – were – had been) tired.

3. had better ('d better) + inf.

ex. - You'd better work hard if you (hope – hoped – had hoped) to succeed.

4. would rather ('d rather) + inf.

ex. - I'd rather stay at home if the weather (is – was – had been) windy.

٢ استخدم (will + inf.) في جملة جواب الشرط إذا كان فعل الشرط أحد الصيغ التالية :

1. If + subj. (would like / would love /would prefer.....)

ex. - If you would like to attend the party, I (will go – would go – would have gone) with you.

2. If + subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing (مضارع مستمر)

ex. - She (won't go – wouldn't go – wouldn't have gone) out if she is revising for her exams.

3. If + subj. + have / has + p.p. (مضارع تام)

ex. - If he has left home, you (won't be – wouldn't be – wouldn't have been) able to meet him.

٢ لاحظ الفرق بين (if / in case) :

تعني (if) أن الحدث سيقع إذا توفر شرط معين، فإذا لم يتوفر الشرط لن يحدث شيئاً

ex. - I'll stay at home if it rains. (But I won't stay at home if it doesn't rain)

تستخدم (in case) بمعني (في حالة) لتدل على أننا سنقوم بشيء ما تحسباً لحدوث شيء معين.

ex. - I'll stay at home in case it rains. (I'll stay at home because it may rain)

Mini Test 3 ○ Apply

) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't go out if you exhausted.
 a. will feel b. feel c. felt d. are felt
2. If you need help at any time, ... me.
 a. has called b. would call c. will call d. call
3. Let's go for a walk if you bored.
 a. were b. have c. are d. b & c
4. If you a headache, you'd better take a rest.
 a. have b. will have c. had d. had had
5. I'd rather take a taxi if the weather hot.
 a. is b. was c. had been d. will be
6. I a ticket if you would prefer to travel by plane.
 a. books b. booked c. would book d. will book

3 Second conditional الحالة الثانية

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If / Unless + ماضي بسيط (تصريف ثان) + would / could / might + inf.

→ ex. - If he trained hard, he'd win the match.
= He'd win the match if he trained hard.

Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)

Would / Could / Might + subj. + inf. + if + ماضي بسيط ?

→ ex. - Would he win the match if he trained hard?
= If he trained hard, would he win the match?

' Wh_ ' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W. + would / could / might + subj. + inf. + if + ماضي بسيط ?

→ ex. - What would he do if he trained hard?
= If he trained hard, what would he do?

UNIT 6

Mini Test 4 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you went out in that rainy weather, you get wet.
 a. will b. won't c. would d. wouldn't
2. She'd lose weight if she a diet.
 a. follow b. followed c. would follow d. will follow
3. What'if the car hit this rock?
 a. happen b. happens c. will happen d. would happen
4. What if the car hits this rock?
 a. happened b. happening c. will happen d. would happen

Important Notes ملحظات هامة

١ تعبر الحالة الثانية عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر والمستقبل:

ex. - If he were taller, he'd be good at basketball.

٢ إعطاء النصيحة بالصيغة (If I were) :

ex. - If I were you, I would see a doctor. You look very ill.

- للحظ إمكانية استخدام (were) مع المفرد في حالة التخيل والنصيحة في الحالة الثانية:

ex. - Nada is ill today. If she were / was healthy, she would help you.

ملحظات تساعدك على حل سؤال الاختيار من متعدد

١ الأفعال (cut – put – hit – shut – read....) لا تتغير عند تصريفها وتعتبر في الماضي البسيط إذا لم يضاف لها (s) مع (he – she – it) :

ex. - If he shut the door to the farm, the animals (won't – wouldn't) go out.

٢ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had + noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار (would + inf.) :

ex. - If Abdu had a camera, I (will borrow– would borrow– would have borrowed) it from him.

٣ إذا كان فعل الشرط (had to + inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار (would + inf.) :

ex. - If we had to work at the weekend, we (will get– would get– would have got) a reward.

٤ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have+ noun) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار ماضي بسيط :

ex. - If Sama (win – won – had won) the competition, she would have a prize.

٥ إذا كان جواب الشرط (would have to+ inf.) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية ونختار ماضي بسيط :

ex. - If Omar (spends – spent – had spent) all his money, he would have to borrow.

٦ من الممكن استخدام التصريف الثالث للفعل كصفة

ex. - If the company had motivated employees موظفين متحمسين, it would make more profits

- If I had written work, I would do it before going to bed.

Mini Test 5 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If she were fit, she would take part in the race. This means she fit.
 a. is b. isn't c. was d. would be
2. If I a bird, I'd live in a nest.
 a. were b. was c. a & b d. wasn't
3. I you if I had enough time.
 a. would have called b. will call
 c. called d. would call
4. If i had to see a doctor, that Dr Alaa.
 a. would be b. would have been
 c. will be d. is
5. The police officer you if your car boot had stolen goods.
 a. would arrest b. would have arrested
 c. will arrest d. arrests

4 Third conditional — الحالة الثالثة

Statement — الجملة الخبرية

If + had + p.p.... + would / could / might + have + p.p.

ex. - If he had won the competition, he'd have got the prize.
= He'd have got the prize if he had won the competition.

Yes / No Q. — السؤال بـ (هل)

Would + subj. + have + p.p. + if + had + p.p. ? ... ماضى تام

ex. - Would he have got the prize if he had won the competition?

' Wh_ ' Q. — السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W. + would + subj. + have + p.p. + if + had + p.p. ? ... ماضى تام

ex. - What would he have got if he had won the competition?
= If he had won the competition, what would he have got?

- تستخدم الحالة الثالثة فى حالة تخيل عكس ما حدث فى الماضى :

ex. - I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I would have stayed at home.

UNIT 6

Mini Test 6 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I a nice time if I had been to Alexandria.
 a. will have b. would have c. would have had d. have
2. If that milk boiled, there would have been no bacteria in it.
 a. had b. had been c. would be d. would have
3. If I enough time to go home, I would have lunch outdoors.
 a. had b. didn't have c. had had d. hadn't had
4. "If Amr had come first, he would have got a car as a present." This means Amr the car.
 a. got b. had got c. won't get d. didn't get

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

1 If = as long as طالما = providing (that) بشرط ان = provided (that) بشرط ان + جملة

ex. - If Malak does exercise regularly, she will keep fit.
- As long as Malak does exercise regularly, she will keep fit.

2 If + جملة = with / by / in case of + noun / (inf. + ing)

ex. - If he works hard, he will achieve his goals in life.
= In case of working hard, he will achieve his goals in life.

3 Unless + جملة = Without / But for لولا / بدون + (inf. +ing) / noun

ex. - Unless he earns enough money, he will have to sell his car.
= Without earning enough money, he will have to sell his car.

4 Unless + جملة ماضي بسيط = If it weren't for + (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - Unless he had enough time, he wouldn't help me.
= If it weren't for having enough time, he wouldn't help me.

5 Unless + جملة ماضي تام = If it hadn't been for + (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - Unless he had arrived early at the station, he would have missed the train.
= If it hadn't been for arriving early at the station, he would have missed the train.

6 If + جملة مضارع / ماضي بسيط = Should + subj. + inf.

- If he has a lot of money, he will help poor children.

= Should he have a lot of money, he will help poor children.

7 If + جملة ماضي بسيط = Were + subj. + (to +inf.)..... / Were + subj.+

- If you phoned me, I would come. = Were you to phone me, I would come.
- If I were taller, I would join a basketball team.

= Were I taller, I would join a basketball team.

8 If + subj. + had + اسم = Had + subj. + اسم

- If I had a car, I would drive you home.

= Had I a car, I would drive you home.

9 If + subj. + had + p. p. = Had + subj. + p. p.

- If he had finished the report, he would have left the office.

= Had he finished the report, he would have left the office.

Mini Test 7 Apply

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. she works hard, she can achieve her goal.
 a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without
2. hard work, she can achieve her goal.
 a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without
3. she works hard, she won't achieve her goal.
 a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without
4. working hard, she won't achieve her goal.
 a. Unless b. As long as c. With d. Without

General Exercise On Language Apply

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you freeze water, it solid. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. becomes b. will become c. would become d. become

2. Hassan has worked hard for the test. I'll be surprised if he
(شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

a. doesn't pass b. isn't passing c. hadn't passed d. won't pass

3. If they had a strong will, they the match. (بنها ٢٠٢٣)

a. will win b. would win c. won d. would have won

4. If you pour oil on water, it (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. will float b. would float c. float d. floats

5. If he abroad, he would have a lot of money. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

a. travels b. had travelled c. travelled d. has travelled

6. If ice, it melts. (بنها ٢٠٢٣)

a. heat b. is heated c. heated d. was heated

7. I wish I that food the other day; I got very sick from it. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

a. had eaten b. didn't eat c. hadn't eaten d. won't eat

8. having free time, let's have coffee together. (سمالوط ٢٠٢٣)

a. Without b. In case of c. If d. Unless

9. If the company proposed a good salary, ... the job? (إدفو ٢٠٢٣)

a. would you accept b. will you accept
c. would have you accepted d. do you accept

10. If he, he would have to attend the party. (شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٣)

a. had been invited b. had invited
c. invited d. was invited

11. We at home if it hadn't rained.

a. would stay b. would have stayed
c. wouldn't have stayed d. wouldn't stay

12. I wouldn't have been late if the train early. (أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)

a. had arrived b. arrived c. hadn't arrived d. didn't arrive

13. I wish I so much money on clothes last month. Now, I am broke.

a. hadn't spent b. won't spend c. didn't spend d. haven't spent

14. If Ahmed had read that book, he what happened at the end.
(شرق الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)

a. would have known b. knows
c. would know d. will know

15. I wish they us tomorrow. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

a. visit b. will visit c. would visit d. to visit

16. he been careful, he wouldn't have had that terrible accident. (المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٣)

a. If b. Unless c. But for d. Had

17. he run, he would have caught the train. (كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)

a. If b. Had c. Should d. Were

18. he a car, he'd give me a lift. (البحيرة - التحرير ٢٠٢٣)

a. Were b. Had c. Should d. If

19. working hard, you won't achieve your dreams. (إهناسيا ٢٠٢٣)

a. If b. Unless c. Without d. As long as

20. If the money I had enough, I'd have rented a better flat. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

a. been b. was c. had d. had been

21. If the coach had talented players, he the final match. (دوش عيسى ٢٠٢٣)

a. wouldn't have won b. would have won

c. would win d. will win

22. Lamia wishes that she with her parents. (دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

a. hadn't argued b. wouldn't argue

c. haven't argued d. doesn't argue

PART TWO | LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 66 & 67 WB pages 38 & 39



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bring ... back (phr. v)	يُذكّر - يُعيد ذكري	hang out with (phr. v)	يُعاشر- يألف - يُرافق
fall out (phr. v)	يتشاجر - يتسافط	keep in touch with	يبقي على اتصال بـ
get into (phr. v)	يندمج - يألف - يتورط في	lose touch (with)	تنقطع علاقته (بـ)
get on with (phr. v)	يُحسن التعامل مع		

2 Most Important Vocabulary المفردات الأكثر اهمية

apparently (adv)	من الواضح - ظاهرياً	opposite (adv - prep.)	في مواجهة
caption (n)	تعقيب/ تعليق	organise (d) (v)	يُنظّم
close (adj)	مُقرّب	own (ed) (v)	يمتلك
feedback (n)	انطباع / مردود	pocket (n)	جيب
friendship (n)	صداقة	polite (adj)	مؤدّب
guess (ed) (v)	يُخمّن	pretty (adj)	جميل
ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل	prompt (n)	عامل مُحفّز - باعث
leader (n)	قائد	relationship (n)	علاقة
mall (n)	مركز تجاري (مول)	reunion (n)	جمع الشمل
memory (n)	ذكري - ذاكرة	sadly (adv)	من المُحزن - بحزن
necklace (n)	قلادة - عُقد		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
bring back (phr. v) يُذكّر - يُعيد ذكري	to make you remember
fall out (phr. v) يتشاجر	- to stop being friendly - to have a quarrel مشاجرة
get into (phr. v) يندمج - يألف - يستسيغ	- to start enjoying - to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it
get on with (phr. v) يُحسن التعامل مع	to be friendly with

hang out with (phr. v) يُعاشِر- يألف - يُرافق	to spend time with
keep in touch with يبقي على اتصال بـ	to continue to communicate with
lose touch تنقطع علاقته بـ	to stop communicating

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key vocabulary

1. "He wants to hang out with someone who is always cheerful." The expression "hang out with" means (الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. start enjoying b. spend time with
 c. be friendly with d. argue about
2. The two sisters out over who was to wash the dishes. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
 a. hung b. felt c. got d. fell
3. Astronauts are trained well to get the outer space severe conditions. (بنا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. on b. off c. into d. with
4. Nadeen with the new roommates; all of them love her. (الشروق - الأبطال الرسمية للغات ٢٠٢٣)
 a. quarreled b. got on c. fell out d. lost touch
5. I used to hang with my old friends when I was at college. (أسيوط - الجنوب ٢٠٢٣)
 a. on b. out c. in d. at
6. A true friend is hard to find! Do not touch with your good friends. (الوسطي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. keep b. get c. lose d. stay
7. Whenever I go past my primary school, it lovely memories. (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
 a. hangs out b. falls out c. brings back d. takes down
8. I hope I will always with my close classmates.
 a. fall out b. lose touch c. keep in touch d. a & c

9. I hope I will never with my close classmates.
 a. fall out b. lose touch c. keep in touch d. a & b
10. My father warned me not to trouble.
 a. fall out with b. get into c. hang out with d. get off

2 Important vocabulary

11. This YouTuber usually my comments. He never reads them.
 a. ignores b. upsets c. treats d. fires
12. Winning the gold medal is a happy I will never forget.
 a. attention b. memory c. donation d. relationship
13., everything went well. That's clear to everyone.
 a. Apparently b. Alone c. Sadly d. Completely
14. My mother cares very much about family
 a. reunion b. tone c. distraction d. regret
15. The housing problem is the interest of the government this year.
 a. main b. lonely c. disappointed d. foggy
16. We are not friends. We have an employer-employee
 a. attention b. memory c. donation d. relationship
17. Our is more important to me than business. I can't do without يستغني عن you.
 a. leader b. assistant c. feedback d. friendship
18., she refused our help. We knew she needed it badly.
 a. Only b. Alone c. Sadly d. Lonely
19. His strong character and decisiveness الحزم make him a good
 a. leader b. assistant c. feedback d. friendship
20. We have received very positive from our customers about our new product.
 a. leader b. assistant c. feedback d. friendship

3 Definitions

21. To means to make someone remember something.
 a. lose touch b. keep in touch with
 c. bring back d. get into
22. To is to stop being friendly or to have a quarrel.
 a. hang out with b. get on with c. get into d. fall out

23. To is to start enjoying or to begin to enjoy something or be interested in it.
a. lose touch
b. keep in touch with
c. bring back
d. get into

24. To is to be friendly with.
a. hang out with
b. get on with
c. get into
d. fall out

25. To is to spend time with someone.
a. hang out with
b. get on with
c. get into
d. fall out

26. To is to continue to communicate with someone.
a. lose touch
b. keep in touch with
c. bring back
d. get into

27. To is to stop communicating.
a. lose touch
b. keep in touch with
c. bring back
d. get into

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

feel	ignored	يشعر بالتجاهُل	have	a bad relationship with	يكون علي علاقة سيئة بـ
	uncomfortable	يشعر بعدم الارتياح	keep	attention on	يُركّز انتباهه علي
	sorry	يشعر بالأسف/ بالحزن	share	sad moments with	يحزن لأجل/مع
get	worse	يزداد سوء	take	interest in	يهتم بـ
give	... a smile	يبتسم لـ ...		a taxi	يستقل تاكسي
go	past	يمر بـ/ يجتاز			
have	a cold	يعاني من نزلة برد			

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
apparently	ظاهرياً	seemingly
apparently	من الواضح	clearly, obviously
close	قريب جداً - مُقرّب	near, nearby, intimate
ignore	يتجاهل	disregard, pay no attention to
relationship	علاقة	relation, connection, tie, link

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word الكلمة		Antonym (= Opposite) العكس	
close	قريب جداً - مُقرّب	distant, far, faraway	بعيد
honest	امين	dishonest	غير امين
ignore	يتجاهل	pay attention to, be concerned with	يهتم بـ

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

according to	حسب / طبقاً لـ	go back in time	يتذكر ما مضي - يعود بالزمن
as a gift from me to	كهدية مني لـ	go on a picnic	يذهب في نزهة
as usual	كالمعتاد	in contact with	علي اتصال بـ
as well	ايضاً	in the middle of	في منتصف
bad for	ضار بـ	upload … to a website	يرفع ... علي موقع
be friendly with	ودود مع	well-written	مكتوب جيدا
get in touch with	يتواصل مع		

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

argue with	يتجادل مع	learn from	يتعلم من
care about	يهتم لأمر	move away	يبتعد
communicate with	يتواصل مع	pick up	يتناول - يلتقط
continue to	يستمر في	thank … for	يشكر ... علي
forget to	ينسي ان		

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

get on with ≠ fall out with

- **get on with + شخص (phr. v)** يُحسن التعامل مع - يكون علي علاقة جيدة بـ
 - I have two close friends whom I get on with.
- **get on with + شئ (phr. v)** يستمر في القيام بـ
 - Stop talking and get on with your task, Salma.
- **get on + (phr. v)** يأقلم
 - After two weeks, Sama started to get on at her new school.
- **fall out with + شخص = to have a quarrel with (phr. v)** يشاجر مع
 - Don't fall out with people or you will have no friends.
- **fall out (phr. v)** يتساقط - يسقط
 - A lot of girls suffer from their hair falling out.

hang out with ≠ spend no time with

• **hang out + (with)** شخص — يقضي وقت بالخروج (مع شخص / في مكان)

- Can you tell me who you have been hanging out with?
- I don't know where Karim hangs out.

(hang) أما إذا كان الفعل (hung) هذا المعنى تصريفه الثاني والثالث (hang) لاحظ أن للفعل
يتصرف الفعل بشكل عادي ملتصقة وتصرف بإضافة (ed)

• **spend no time + (with)** شخص — لا يقضي وقت مع

- My father is so busy that he nearly spends no time with us at home.

keep in touch (with) ≠ lose touch (with)

• **keep in (close) touch + (with)** شخص — يبقى على تواصل مع

- Video calls help me keep in touch with my brother in Saudi Arabia.
- My mother keeps in close contact with us all.

• **lose touch + (with)** شخص — يفقد التواصل مع

- He travelled abroad long years ago and I lost touch with him.

get into ≠ stop being interested in

• **get into (phr. v)** — يبدأ في الاستمتاع بـ - يألف - ينخرط في

- A student who is not sociable finds it difficult to get into new friendships.

• **get into / in + مكان (phr. v)** بدخل - **get in** — يدخل (بـ / بدون مكان)

- The door is locked, so I can't get into / in our flat.
- The door is locked, so I can't get in. (Not: get into)

• **stop being interested in** — يفقد الاهتمام بـ

- Rami stopped being interested in football.

bring back

• **bring ... back (phr. v)** — يذكّر - يعيد ذكري

- Seeing any of my old friends brings back a lot of childhood memories.
= Seeing any of my old friends brings a lot of childhood memories back.

• **bring ... back (phr. v)** — يعيد - يستعيد - يعيد استخدام أو استعمال

- My father has decided to bring back our old house.
- The city council has decided to bring back (reintroduce) the old electric trams.

UNIT 6

General Exercise On Vocabulary study

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I felt, so I left the party.
 a. connected b. contacted c. ignored d. included
2. "He is apparently kind." This means I am he is really kind.
 a. sure b. certain c. not sure d. against
3. "He didn't pay attention to me." This means he me.
 a. ignored b. welcomed c. hanged out d. got into
4. "I have a close friend." This means this friend is
 a. distant b. intimate c. far d. faraway
5. After leaving school, try hard to in contact with your schoolmates.
 a. make b. keep c. pay d. take
6. I forgot the door. This means I didn't close it.
 a. to close b. closing c. close d. closes
7. Mrs Amira thanked us our hard work.
 a. for b. into c. off d. with
8. According experts, gold prices will rise again.
 a. of b. to c. from d. into
9. A sociable person others even if he or she doesn't like them.
 a. gets on b. gets on with c. falls out d. falls out with
10. When you are away, I hope we will
 a. keep in touch with b. keep in touch
 c. lose touch with d. lose touch
11. When you are away, I hope I won't you.
 a. keep in touch with b. keep in touch
 c. lose touch with d. lose touch
12. The red light is on. This means I can't get
 a. to b. into c. in d. b& c
13. What surprises me is that Amir, the quiet and shy خجول young man, ha recently politics.
 a. spent no time with b. stopped being interested in
 c. got into d. fallen out with

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

How are your friendships?

WB page (39)



Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, **in the middle of**(1) a conversation, when you're talking, they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people **feel ignored**(2) and upset. And the problem may be **getting worse**(3) because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now **own**(4) a phone.

Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while **having a conversation**(5) makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being **polite**(6) and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can **damage**(7) even good **friendships**(8).

However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to **pick up**(9) your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should **keep your attention on**(10) the person you are talking to.

And if a friend ignores you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

So, if you want to be a kind and **honest**(11) friend, keep your phone in your **pocket**(12) and your eyes on your friendship.

(1) في منتصف
(2) يشعر بالتجاهل
(3) يزداد سوء
(4) يمتلك
(5) يتحاور
(6) مؤدب
(7) يدمّر - يُفسد
(8) صداقات
(9) يتناول - يلتقط
(10) تظل منتبهاً إلى
(11) أمين
(12) جيب

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 66)

Presenter:

In today's show, we're **going back in time**(1) and looking at some of our **regrets**(2). Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will **bring back**(3) **memories**(4) for many of us. This is what he says …

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school! I also used to **phone**(5) my grandparents and my cousins. But then I **got into**(6) using social media more.

I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun and we all **got on with**(7) each other. Sometimes I'd **hang out with**(8) them online for hours chatting.

I guess(9) **I lost touch with**(10) my cousins and my grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them. I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

But when my friends started **falling out with**(11) each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have **ignored**(12) my family. I wish I'd **kept in touch with**(13) my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

Sadly(14), this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to **take an interest in**(15) the people who really care about us.
Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.

(1) تتذكر ما مضى
(2) الندم
(3) تعيد
(4) ذكريات
(5) تتصل
(6) بالف
(7) تُحسن التعامل مع
(8) يقضي وقتاً طويلاً مع
(9) تُخمّن
(10) بنقطع الإتصال مع
(11) يتشاجر مع
(12) يتجاهل
(13) يبقى على تواصل مع
(14) من المحزن
(15) تُظهر اهتماماً بـ

Prep School Memories

WB page (38)

(1) لا أتذكر أحداً يُسمّى علا
(2) في مواجهة
(3) كل من
(4) قائد
(5) يتجادل مع
(6) يرتدي
(7) قلادة - عِقد
(8) يتحدث إلى
(9) يبتعد
(10) يبقى على اتصال
(11) يُنظّم
(12) جمع الشّمل

Hoda : Hey Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school.



Lamia : Really? Let's see. But, **I don't remember an Ola**(1) in our class.

Hoda : Yes, you do. She used to sit **opposite**(2) you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you **both**(3) wanted to be the **leaders**(4).

Lamia : Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have **argued with**(5) her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda : Look. Here she is in the photo.

Lamia : Ahh, wow!

Hoda : ... and look at us! Oh, no way! Just look at your hair!

Lamia : Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda : Oh, no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories. That was the dress I was **wearing**(6) when I lost my favourite **necklace**(7). I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia : But the necklace was very pretty and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have **spoken to**(8) you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda : That's true! I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

Lamia : And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they **moved away**(9) to go to high school and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda : Yes, we had some great times together and if we had **stayed in touch**(10), we would have been able to **organise**(11) a school **reunion**(12). I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Lamia : That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Hoda : Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

Judy: *58 page (67)*

Huda was my best friend. We'd **always**(1) hang out together at school. We made each other **laugh**(2) a lot and we were very **close**(3).

Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as **well**(4). We'd listen to music, look at magazines and chat for hours.

One weekend, we went shopping at the **mall**(5). We had a great time as **usual**(6), but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.

Apparently(7), it was a really good phone and Huda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

(1) اعتاد ان
(2) يضحك
(3) مُقرَّب
(4) ايضاً
(5) مركز تجاري (مول)
(6) كالمعتاد
(7) من الواضح - ظاهرياً

PART IV LANGUAGE

Expressing Regret التعبير عن الندم

هناك طرق عديدة للتعبير عن الندم منها :

1 Subj. + Should / Shouldn't + have + p.p.

You should have studied hard.

كان من المفترض أن تذاكر بجد (لكن ذلك لم يحدث).

- Karim shouldn't have wasted his time.

كان من المفترض ألّا يُضيّع كريم وقته. (لكنه فعل).

2 If + جملة ماضى تام + ... would have + p.p.

If he had trained hard, he would have won the match.

لو أنه تدرب كان سيفوز. (لكنه لم يتدرب وبالتالى لم يفوز)

3 ... wish + (that) + جملة ماضى تام

I wish (that) he had driven at a low speed.

أتمنى لو أنه قاد بسرعة منخفضة. (لكنه لم يفعل)

I wish (that) he hadn't driven at a high speed.

أتمنى لو أنه لم يقود بسرعة عالية. (لكنه فعل)

عند التعبير عن شىء غير متحقق فى المضارع نستخدم جملة ماضى بسيط بعد (wish) :

ex. - I wish I lived in Alexandria. It is very hot here in Aswan.

Mini Test Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He's sorry he hurt your feelings. He really to you like that.
 a. should talk b. shouldn't talk
 c. should have talked d. shouldn't have talked
2. I work as a sales assistant. I wish I the chance to study medicine at university when I was a student.
 a. have b. had c. had had d. could have
3. I wasted my time last year. If I it, I would have got the full mark.
 a. had wasted b. hadn't wasted c. wasted d. didn't waste
4. I ate too much and now I feel ill. I wish that I that much.
 a. had eaten b. hadn't eaten c. ate d. didn't eat

General Exercise On Language Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. If her father alive, he would be pleased with her work.
 a. is b. was been c. were d. had been
2. He won't catch the train if he soon.
 a. didn't pack b. will not pack
 c. hadn't packed d. doesn't pack

3. If eggs, they solidify.
 a. heating b. are heated c. heated d. heats
4. If water freezes, it into ice.
 a. change b. will change c. would change d. changes
5. If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I to the library.
 a. go b. will go c. have gone d. would go
6. If I younger, I'd work in the New Delta Project.
 a. were b. am c. have been d. had been
7. If Hisham with us, he would have a good time.
 a. would come b. had come c. would have come d. came
8. Would you have lent him the money if you how badly he needed it ?
 a. had known b. knew c. would know d. have known
9. If the book were cheap, I buy it.
 a. will b. would c. can d. may
10. If you had gone to the Cairo Exhibition معرض, you it.
 a. would enjoy b. would have enjoyed
 c. will have enjoyed d. will enjoy
11. If I were rich, I a yacht.
 a. can buy b. would buy c. had bought d. will buy
12. If we had started earlier, we the deadline.
 a. had met b. would have met
 c. have been met d. would meet
13. If you don't stop listening to that loud music, your headache worse.
 a. got b. will get c. would get d. gets
14. If the train down, I wouldn't have been late.
 a. didn't break b. doesn't break
 c. hadn't broken d. won't break
15. very happy if you achieved your goals?
 a. You would be b. Would you have been
 c. You will be d. Would you be
16. The sea will be polluted we stop dumping oil and rubbish into it.
 a. as long as b. if c. so that d. unless

17. What if he had left the meeting?
a. will happen b. would happen
c. has happened d. would have happened

18. If he had remembered to set the alarm clock, Hany woken up late.
a. would have b. wouldn't have c. have been d. would be

2 Special cases

19. he understand the story if he read the summary?
a. Will b. Did c. Would d. Can

20. She couldn't have gone out during the storm if she careful.
a. was b. had been c. were d. is

21. Pilots won't be able to fly a plane unless they
a. will train b. had trained c. are trained d. were trained

22. If I only one job to do, I would have enough free time for hobbies.
a. have b. had had c. didn't have d. had

23. Unless he had followed my advice, he all his money.
a. would have lost b. would have a loss
c. wouldn't lose d. wouldn't have lost

24. today, he would get there by Thursday.
a. Would he leave b. Were he to leave
c. If he leaves d. Was he leaving

25. It is good to visit beautiful places you don't damage them.
a. so that b. in order that c. provided that d. unless

26. Take these tools with you your car breaks down.
a. without b. if c. in case of d. in case

27. doing this job irritates you, you needn't get angry. Just tell me.
a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless

28. my help, he will pay back all his debts.
a. Without b. If c. In case of d. Unless

29. If you a famous footballer, what would you do?
a. are b. had been c. were d. will be

30. he had enough money, he would have bought a shirt.
a. If b. Had c. Unless d. Provided

31. his bravery, she wouldn't have been saved.
a. Provided b. On condition that
c. In case d. But for

32. he come, tell him I'm out.
a. If b. Should c. Were d. Unless

33. If we plant trees, then we cleaner air.
a. have b. will have c. had d. would have

34. If you me, he should look for another job.
a. question b. talk c. ask d. wonder

35. written work, he wouldn't have time to go out.
a. Had he had b. Have he c. Were he to d. Had he

36. him today, she would know what has happened.
a. If she meets b. Had she met
c. Were she to meet d. Will she meet

37. Plants can grow without soil they get food from water.
a. as much as b. as far as c. as long as d. as many as

38. The Red Sea resorts will be popular they remain unpolluted.
a. if not b. provided c. so as d. unless

3 Check your understanding

39. "Abdulrahman can achieve great success because he is intelligent."
This means
a. if he is intelligent, he achieves great success
b. if he weren't intelligent, he wouldn't achieve great success
c. if he were intelligent, he would not achieve great success
d. if he had been intelligent, he would have achieved great success

40. "If he were tall, he would play basketball." What does this mean?
a. He is tall but he can't play basketball.
b. He is tall, so he can play basketball.
c. He wouldn't play basketball because he wasn't tall.
d. He won't play basketball because he isn't tall.

41. "Without your help, I might be in trouble." The speaker means that

a. if I help him, he will be in trouble
b. unless I helped him, he would be in trouble
c. unless I help him, he will be in trouble
d. if I helped him, he would be in trouble

42. "We didn't make a loss because of your decision." This means

a. if it hadn't been for your decision, we would have made a loss
b. if it weren't for your decision, we would make a loss
c. but for your decision, we would not have made a loss
d. but for your decision, we would make a loss

43. "If you work hard, you will be successful." I want to say that

a. you work hard, so you will be successful
b. you won't be successful as you don't work hard
c. should you work hard, you will be successful
d. you won't be successful even if you work hard

44. "If I feel sick, I'll take some medicine." This means

a. I'll take some medicine in case of feeling sick
b. I take some medicine when I feel sick
c. I'll take some medicine because I might feel sick
d. I'll take some medicine because I feel sick

45. "In case I feel sick, I'll take some medicine." This means

a. I'll take some medicine only if I feel sick
b. I'll take some medicine when I feel sick
c. I'll take some medicine because I might feel sick
d. I'll take some medicine because I feel sick

46. "Had I enough money, I would help you." This means

a. I had enough money, so I helped you
b. I don't have enough money, so I can't help you
c. I didn't have enough money, so I couldn't help you
d. I won't help you although I have enough money

PART THREE | Skills & Advanced Notes



تنويه لإتقان المهارات استخدم كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

PART I LANGUAGE HINTS

used to - would

١ للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة نستخدم:

→ ... used to + inf. = ... would + inf.

ex. - When I had enough time, I used to go to work on foot. (✓)
- When I had enough time, I would go to work on foot. (✓)

٢ تُستخدم هذه الصيغ للتعبير عن عادات الماضي في مدي زمني كبير وليس خلال مدة قصيرة. فالعادة لا تُسمّي هكذا إلا اذا تكررت لفترة طويلة نسبياً:

ex. - He used to do exercise every day last month. (✗)
- He used to do exercise every day when he was young. (✓)
- He did exercise every day last month. (✓)

٣ تُستخدم (used to) فقط وليس (would) عند التعبير عن عادات الماضي مع الأفعال التقريرية مثل:

be, like, love, hate, want, need, prefer, own, sound, agree, disagree, know, understand, feel, remember, forget, seem, suppose, contain, ... etc.

ex. - When I was young, I would love to watch cartoons. (✗)
- When I was young, I used to love watching cartoons. (✓)

٤ تُستخدم (used to) فقط وليس (would) عند التعبير عن العادات السلوكية البارزة والهامة في الماضي:

ex. - When he was a young man, he would smoke. (✗)
- When he was a young man, he used to smoke. (✓)

a / an / the + people's names

١ يمكن استخدام (the) قبل اسم العائلة في صيغة الجمع للإشارة إلي العائلة بالكامل:

ex. - Abdulrahman invited Ayman to his wedding. (الدعوة لأيمن فقط)
- Abdulrahman invited the Aymans to his wedding. (الدعوة لأسرة أيمن كلها)

٢ يمكن استخدام (the) قبل اسم شخص لتمييز شخص عن أخرين يحملون نفس الإسم:

ex. - Don't give the invitation to this Linda. The Linda I mean is the woman in the white blouse over there.

٣ يمكن استخدام (a / an) قبل اسم شخص غير معروف بالنسبة للمتحدث:

ex. - There's a Khalid waiting for you outside.

(لا يعرف المتحدث أي شيء عن خالد هذا)

ex. - There wasn't an Ola in our class last year.

(لا يتذكر المتحدث أنه كان هناك طالبة تُسمَّي غلا)

In addition to - Besides - As well as - Also - as well - too

١ تُستخدم روابط العطف التالية بمعني (بالإضافة إلي ذلك) ويأتي بعدها جملة:

→ **In addition, / Besides (that) / +** جملة

ex. - She is a secretary. In addition, she runs a bookshop.

- She cooked lunch. Besides (that), she did the housework.

٢ تأتي روابط العطف التالية بمعني (بالإضافة إلي) ويأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير أو (inf.+ing):

→ **In addition to / Besides / As well as + noun / pronoun** ضمير **/ (inf. + ing)**

ex. - In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.

- As well as going to the market we went to the zoo.
- Besides me, two more friends will visit you.
- Besides cooking lunch, she cleaned the house.

٣ للحظ استخدام (also / as well / too) بمعني (أيضا) في الجمل المثبتة :

ex. - She visited her aunt. She also visited her grandma.

= She visited her aunt. She visited her grandma, too.

= She visited her aunt. She visited her grandma as well.

٤ للحظ استخدام (either) بمعني (أيضا) في الجمل المنفية :

ex. - I didn't do my homework. I didn't take a rest either.

but - However - although - though - even if - despite - in spite of

١ تُستخدَم الروابط التالية لربط جملتين متناقضتين وتأتي في الوسط فقط :

→ **but** لكن **/ however** مع ذلك **+** جملة

ex. - He has a lot of money but he is not happy.

- He has a lot of money, however he is not happy.

٢ يمكن أن تربط (but) صفتين أو ظرفين متناقضين :

ex. - He works quickly but accurately.

- She is intelligent but lazy.

- He is small but strong.

UNIT 6

٣ الروابط التالية يأتى بعدها جملة وتأتى فى البداية او الوسط :

→ **although / though** برغم ان **/ even though / even if +** جملة

ex. - Although / Though she works hard, she has some free time to enjoy herself.

- She has some free time to enjoy herself although / though she works hard.

٤ الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير او (inf. + ing) وتأتي في البداية او الوسط :

→ **Despite / In spite of** برغم من **/ noun / pronoun** ضمير **/ (inf. + ing)**

ex. - Despite having a lot of money, he is not happy.

= He is not happy despite having a lot of money.

Exercise On Language Hints

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Hossam had an injury in his left leg, he finished the match.
 a. So b. When c. However d. Although
2. his poor behaviour, Amir is a really sweet boy.
 a. While b. Despite c. Although d. But
3. having plenty of room, the flat is quiet.
 a. But b. Despite c. In addition d. In addition to
4. There's no balcony, ... there's a view.
 a. as b. however c. in spite of d. though
5. I have told you before. Omar you want to meet isn't here.
 a. A b. An c. The d. Some
6. Yes, I remember that there was Omnia among the applicants.
 a. a b. an c. the d. no article
7. have travelled to Alexandria.
 a. The Ahmeds b. Ahmeds c. Ahmed d. An Ahmed
8. Sama lunch every day before she got married.
 a. prepare b. had prepared c. used to prepare d. prepares
9. Sama lunch every day last week.
 a. prepared b. had prepared c. used to prepare d. prepares
10. I prefer green, now I prefer pink.
 a. didn't b. would c. used to d. b & c

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

✪ **Read the following, then choose the correct answer a , b , c or d:**

Man's life has seen a lot of changes during the last hundred years, particularly in what is connected with his consuming habits. Sixty years ago, before that start of the consumer societies of today's world, people did not throw away so many of the things they used. They used and reused bottles, jars, boxes, paper bags, etc. much more carefully than we do today.

Nowadays, we are returning to the same good idea which we now call "recycling". We can again think about what we throw out. Why do we throw away so much food packaging, so many plastic supermarket bags, old newspapers, old books, bottles and cans? What is all this rubbish doing to our environment and to the world we live in? Can't we use some of it again? The answer is: Yes, we can.

New industries are starting to reuse some of our rubbish. For example, the island of Taiwan now buys waste paper from the USA, and recycles it to make newspapers, and for use in offices and homes. Japan takes scrap metal from the USA and makes some new parts with it. Most European and American cities now have "recycling centres" for people's old bottles and newspapers.

All this recycling is not only good for the environment, but it is good business, too. For instance, a recycled aluminium container is 20% cheaper to make than a new one. For both the environment and the economy, recycling makes very good sense.

✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Recycling our rubbish means
 a. throwing it away b. keeping it
 c. using it again d. burning it
2. The underlined pronoun "it" in the second paragraph refers
 a. environment b. rubbish c. the USA d. metal
3. What "change" does the writer refer to in the first paragraph?
 a. People throw many things all the time.
 b. People became more wasteful than before.
 c. People began to recycle old things again.
 d. People refuse consuming habits.

4. Without recycling, people will
 a. suffer from environmental problems
 b. solve all environmental problems
 c. buy more newspapers
 d. increase their good habits
5. We can infer from the passage that the USA scrap metal to Japan.
 a. borrows b. exports c. imports d. recycles
6. Our grandparents were than we are today.
 a. less careful b. more careless
 c. more economical d. less wise
7. According to the writer, which of the following is NOT correct?
 a. Recycling benefits only developing countries.
 b. Recycling benefits the environment.
 c. Recycling benefits business.
 d. Recycling benefits people.
8. We can infer from the passage that a new aluminum container is than a recycled one.
 a. more expensive b. less expensive
 c. cheaper d. heavier

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

Write an essay of about 180 words under the title:

'If' in my life

Perhaps it seems strange to write under such a title. However it is an easy topic to write about. In this essay, I'm going to use this title in a three-tense sense: a past tense, a present sense and a future one. I'll summarise my life and dreams under this title.

Physically, بدنيًا I was overweight in primary school. If I hadn't been born with a natural love of food, I wouldn't have been overweight. I would have had a carved body. No silly schoolmates would have made fun of my appearance.

One day, my PE teacher had a personal talk with me. He told me that I had the ability to get rid of the extra weight. All I needed was strong will إرادة to control my love of food and to follow a strict صارم fitness programme. If it hadn't been for his advice, I would have put on more weight. I wouldn't have got in shape. Now, I am fit and I have the carved body I used to dream of.

I am a secondary school student. I am in secondary two. If I weren't a student, I would have enough time to do my hobbies. I would be able to play football as much as I can. However, that wouldn't be good at all. If I weren't a student, this means I would have no educational dreams and no promising future.

Next year, I will be in secondary three. I will do my best to get the highest marks possible. If I get 99.5 %, I will join the faculty of medicine. Perhaps I will be a successful surgeon. I will travel abroad to improve my skills as a surgeon. I will follow on the footsteps of Professor Magdy Yacoub.

3 Translation الترجمة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. It has always been said that failure is instructive. The person who is really intelligent learns much more from his failures than from his successes.

a. يُقال دائماً أن الفشل مفيد. الشخص الذكي حقاً يتعلم من إخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.

b. يُقال دائماً أن الفشل أمر. الشخص الذكي حقاً يتعلم من إخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.

c. يُقال دائماً أن الفشل مستفيد. الشخص الذكي حقاً يتعلم من إخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.

d. يُقال دائماً أن الفشل مفيد. الشخص الذكي حقاً يتعلم من إخفاقاته أكثر بكثير من نجاحاته.

2. We are in an urgent need of a revolution against our bad behaviour. We should really refuse any strange conduct and try to modify it.

a. نحن في حاجة ماسة لثورة ضد سلوكنا السيئ. يجب علينا حقًا رفض أي توصيل غريب ومحاولة تعديله.

b. نحن في حاجة ماسة لثورة ضد سلوكنا السيئ. يجب علينا حقًا عدم رفض أي سلوك غريب ومحاولة تعديله.

c. نحن في حاجة ماسة للثورة ضد سلوكنا السيئ. يجب علينا حقًا رفض أي سلوك غريب ومحاولة تعديله.

d. نحن في حاجة ماسة للثورة لسلوكنا السيئ. يجب علينا حقًا رفض أي سلوك غريب ومحاولة تعديله.

3. We are the products of our past, but we don't have to be prisoners of it. Always find yourself a new start and with it there will be a new hope.

a. نحن نتاج ماضينا، لكن لا يجب أن نكون أسرى له. اعثر على نفسك دائماً على بداية جديدة ومعها سيكون هناك أمل جديد.

b. نحن ننتج ماضينا، لكن لا يجب أن نكون أسرى له. اعثر على نفسك دائماً على بداية جديدة ومعها سيكون هناك أمل جديد.

c. نحن نتاج ماضينا، لكن يجب أن نكون أسرى له. اعثر لنفسك دائماً على بداية جديدة ومعها سيكون هناك أمل جديد.

d. نحن نتاج ماضينا، لكن لا يجب أن نكون أسرى له. اعثر لنفسك دائماً على بداية جديدة ومعها سيكون هناك أمل جديد.

UNIT 6

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. لست أدري لماذا يخشى الناس البدايات في كل شيء يفعلونه. قد يكون ذلك لأن البدايات دائماً تكون صعبة وتحتاج إلى المغامرة والثقة بالنفس.

a. I don't know why people fear beginnings in everything they do. This is because beginnings are always difficult and require adventure and self-confidence.

b. I don't know why people fear beginnings in everything they do. This may be because beginnings are always difficult and require adventure and self-confidence.

c. I don't know why people fear beginnings in everything they make. This may be because beginnings are always difficult and require adventure and self-confidence.

d. I don't know why people fear beginnings in everything they do. This may be because beginnings are always difficult and require adventure and self-evidence.

٢. إنه لمن الطبيعي بل والمفيد أحياناً أن يرتكب الإنسان بعض الأخطاء، فتلك الأخطاء هي أفضل مُعلّم له، والدروس التي نتعلمها من أخطائنا لا تُنسى على الإطلاق.

a. It is normal and sometimes even useful for a person to make some mistakes, as those mistakes are the best teacher for them. The lessons we learn from our mistakes are never forgotten.

b. It is normal and sometimes even useful for a person to do some mistakes, as those mistakes are the best teacher for them. The lessons we learn from our mistakes are never forgotten.

c. It is normal and sometimes even useful for a person to make some mistakes, as those mistakes are the best teacher for them. The lessons we learn from our mistakes are rarely forgotten.

d. It is normal and sometimes even useful for a person to make some mistakes, as those mistakes are the best teacher for them. The lessons we teach from our mistakes are never forgotten.

٣. الحياة هي أكبر مدرسة نتعلم فيها بشكل عملي، فكل موقف نمر به يترك فينا أثراً لا يُمحى لأنه يصبح جزء من خبراتنا الحياتية التي تفيدنا بشكل أو بآخر.

a. Life is the largest school in which we learn practically. Every situation we go through leaves an indelible mark on us because it becomes part of our life experiences that we benefit in one way or another.

b. Life is the largest school in which we learn practically. Every situation we go through leaves an indelible mark on us because it becomes part of our living experiences that benefit us in one way or another.

c. Life is the largest school in which we learn practically. Every situation we go through leaves an indelible mark on us because it becomes part of our life experiences that benefit us in one way or another.

d. Life is the largest school which we learn practically. Every situation we go through leaves an indelible mark on us because it becomes part of our life experiences that benefit us in one way or another.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

Key Vocabulary for Advanced level المفردات الرئيسية للفائقين

mean

- **mean – meant – meant = represent (v)** يعني - يُعطي معني
 - What does this word mean?
- **mean – meant - meant = intend (v)** يقصد - يتعمّد - ينوي
 - He didn't mean to hurt you.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **mean to + inf.** يقصد - يتعمّد
 - I am sure she didn't mean to break the vase.
- **mean + شخص / شئ + to + inf.** يقصد أن + شخص / شي ...
 - I haven't meant the vase to break. لم اقصد أن تنكسر الزهرية.
 - I didn't mean Sara to hear what I told you.

لم اقصد أن تستمع سارة لما قلته لك.

- **mean for + شخص + to + inf.** يقصد أن ...
 - Did you really mean for Salah to get hurt? هل كنت حقًا تقصد أن يُصاب صلاح؟
- **mean no + harm / offence / disrespect** لا يقصد اضرر / الإساءة / الإهانة ...
 - My friend is sure I have meant no harm. It all happened by mistake.
- **mean – meant – meant = require (v)** يتطلب - يستلزم
 - You want to keep fit. This means doing regular exercise.
- **mean (to) (adj) قاسي علي ≠ kind طيب / عطوف**
 - Stop shouting at her. That's a mean thing to do.
- **mean (with) (adj) بخيل مع = stingy / cheap**
 - We don't ask him for help because he is mean with both his money and effort. جهد
- **meaningful (adj) هام - ذو معني او مغزي ≠ meaningless لا معني له / غير مفهوم**
 - The numbers and symbols on this paper are meaningful only to scientists.

للمزيد عن الفعل (mean) يمكن الرجوع لشرح الوحدة الخامسة

fire

• **fire (n)** مدفأة / موقد
- We all sat around the fire.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- by the fire بجوار المدفأة -in front of the fire أمام المدفأة

• **fire (n)** نار - حريق
- The mall caught fire and it was completely destroyed.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

• **be on fire = burning** مُشتعل
- The house was on fire. = The house was burning.

• **... catch fire** تشتعل فيه النيران
- The house caught fire.

• **a fire breaks out** تشتعل النيران
- The fire broke out at midnight.

• **a fire goes out** تنطفئ النيران
- There was no more wood and the fire went out.

• **start a fire** يبدأ الحريق
- The fire started with a cigarette end.

• **set fire to ... = set ... on fire** يُشعل النيران في
- The criminal set fire to the house and ran away.
- The criminal set the house on fire and ran away.

• **make a fire** يُشعل نار
- The weather was cold, so we made a fire to keep us warm.

• **put out a fire = extinguish a fire** يطفئ النار
- The heavy rain put out the fire in the wood.

• **fire (n)** إطلاق نار (كلمة لا تُعد)
- The soldiers opened fire on the enemy troops. قوات العدو

• **fire (at / on / into) (v)** يطلق النار (علي)
- The soldiers fired at the enemy troops. قوات العدو

• **fire (from) = sack / dismiss (v)** يفصل من العمل
- He was fired from the office because he was not honest.

beg

• **beg(ged) (to / for) (v)** يتوسّل - يستجدي
- The boy begged to go out with his friends.
- I begged my manager to give me another chance.
- I felt sorry when the old man begged for help.

• **beg(ged) (v)** يتسوّل (يشحت)
- It breaks my heart to see a little child begging money from people in the streets.
- The old woman was begging for the price of medicine.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- I beg your pardon. اسالك المعذرة (أرجو أن تسامحني)
- I beg (of) you.= please من فضلك
- beg to differ اسمح لي أن اختلف معك
- **beggar (n)** فتسوّل (شحات)
 - Some beggars pretend to be disabled. مُعاق
- **beggar(ed) (v)** يُفقِر
 - His big family have beggared him.
- **beggary (n)** الفقر المدقع - الغوَز
 - In most African countries, a lot of people suffer from beggary.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Supporting a football team is something fun. I don't think it is worth over.
 a. falling out b. falling out with c. getting on d. getting on with
2. The old temple has been to life through careful restoration الترميم.
 a. got into b. brought back c. hanged out d. fallen out
3. **A:** I think it is a great plan.
 B: I to differ. Practically, it is useless.
 a. beg b. big c. pile d. sigh
4. After brushing her hair, she usually it on top of her head.
 a. hangs out b. fires c. ignores d. piles
5. What puzzles me a lot is how young people those tight trousers.
 a. get into b. hang out c. fall out with d. get on

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If Edison hadn't discovered electricity, we in darkness now.
 a. will live b. would live
 c. would have lived d. may have lived
2. He could have drowned a passing ship rescued him.
 a. so b. if c. but d. unless
3. to stay up late for long, he would have tomorrow off.
 a. Had he had b. He has c. Were he to d. Had he
4. **A:** What if Fatma come next Saturday? **B:** It would be a disaster.
 a. had not b. did not c. do not d. will not
5. If Rodayna a doctor, she wouldn't have helped me yesterday.
 a. were b. weren't c. had been d. hadn't be

Test on Unit 6

تنويه

التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار الكتروني

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The poor lady the doctor to see her sick child and he immediately agreed. (أسيوط - أبنوب ٢٠٢٣)
 a. ordered b. refused c. begged d. yelled
2. I've just been from my job, and I don't know what to do? (دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)
 a. kidnapped b. fired c. stolen d. killed
3. It's not to share a box of chocolates. (القاهرة - المعصرة ٢٠٢٢)
 a. mean b. nasty c. careless d. wise
4. She has always been mean with money. The synonym of 'mean' is (الفيوم - يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. generous b. stingy c. negative d. aggressive
5. I found the letter in a of documents on his desk. (أبشواي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. peel b. pile c. pill d. bull
6. I took a week's leave and the pending work has piled (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
 a. in b. with c. up d. of
7. He has touch with some old friends. He no longer communicates with them.
 a. kept b. stayed in c. lost d. a & b
8. If metals, they expand.
 a. heathing b. will heat c. heated d. are heated
9. If he hadn't driven so fast, he that accident.
 a. wouldn't have b. didn't have
 c. wouldn't have had d. hadn't had
10. Would Ahmed be angry if I his bicycle without asking?
 a. take b. will take c. took d. have taken
11. He won't do any work you pay him first.
 a. without b. unless c. so d. in order to
12. I would have attended the meeting if I time.
 a. had had b. would have had
 c. have had d. had
13. Sama is intelligent lazy.
 a. or b. although c. because d. but

14. I wish I my time last year.

a. wasted
b. didn't waste
c. had wasted
d. hadn't wasted

15. I'd rather stay at home if it

a. rains
b. rained
c. had rained
d. would rain

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

As long as we live, we continue to learn. And the education we receive helps us to keep on learning. We are taught reading, writing, and arithmetic so that we can gain further knowledge and learn how to find out things for ourselves. What is learned can vary widely. It may be manners, beliefs, attitudes, or it could be words and figures. It might be the techniques of running a machine, or a skill in playing a musical instrument.

Those who teach can also vary. Teaching may be done by teachers in school, but it may also be done by parents, older brothers and sisters or friends. Everyone has their own sources of education such as newspapers, television, books, films and museums.

Modern industry and agriculture depend on hundreds of skills. These skills cannot be taught without schools. Every factory worker or farmer must at least know how to read and write and how to do simple arithmetic. People like engineers, doctors and teachers need a high degree of training.

The cost of teaching and training is very high. Education in our time is becoming more and more expensive. In some countries in the world, parents have to pay a lot of money to send their children to good schools. The price of books, especially at the university level is very high. Many parents cannot send their children to schools because of the expenses.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

16. According to the passage, ... aims to continue learning.

a. as long as we are discouraged
b. sources of education
c. the education we receive
d. the cost of education

17. Every factory worker or farmer shouldn't be

a. illiterate
b. qualified
c. skilful
d. educated

18. "We can gain further knowledge" in this sentence, the word **further** most likely means

a. extra
b. to a greater distance
c. not nearer
d. closer

19. As mentioned in the passage, many parents cannot send their children to school

a. due to low cost
b. despite high expenses
c. due to high cost
d. despite low expenses

20. According to the passage, education is
a. an end b. a means c. meaningless d. useless

21. "**Depend on**" means
a. rely on b. get on c. work on d. hand on

22. The price of university books is very
a. expensive b. cheap c. simple d. inexpensive

23. Teachers and need a high degree of training.
a. farmers b. factory workers
c. mechanics d. engineers

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:
What we perceive as an error or failure is actually a gift. Eventually, we find that the lessons learned from those discouraging experiences prove to be of great worth.

a. ما نعتبره خطأ أو فشلاً هو في الواقع مِحنة، ففي النهاية يثبت لنا أن الدروس المستفادة من تلك التجارب المحبطة ذات قيمة كبيرة.
b. ما نعتبره خطأ أو فشلاً هو في الواقع مِنحة، ففي النهاية يثبت لنا أن الدروس المستفادة من تلك التجارب المحبطة ذات قيمة كبيرة.
c. ما نعتبره خطأ أو فشلاً هو في الواقع مِنحة، ففي الواقع يثبت لنا أن الدروس المستفادة من تلك التجارب المحبطة ذات قيمة كبيرة.
d. ما نراه خطأ أو فشلاً هو في النهاية مِنحة، ففي الواقع يثبت لنا أن الدروس المستفادة من تلك التجارب المحبطة ذات قيمة كبيرة.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:
لا تقف كثيراً عند أخطائك، فما حدث لا يمكن تغييره لأن عقارب الساعة لا تعود إلى الوراء، فقط اقلب الصفحة وابدأ من جديد.

a. Don't think much of your mistakes. What happened can't be changed because the clock hands don't turn back. Just turn the page over and start again.
b. Don't think for a long time about your mistakes. What happened can't be charged because the clock hands don't turn back. Just turn the page over and start again.
c. Don't think for a long time about your mistakes. What happened can't be changed because the clock hands don't turn back. Just turn the page over and start again.
d. Don't think for a long time about your mistakes. What happened can't be changed because the clock hands don't turn round. Just turn the page back and start again.

26. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :
"Mistakes that have changed my life"

Revision 2 Based On Units 4, 5 & 6

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 42 : 45

PART I VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

accounts (n)	حسابات
achievement (n)	إنجاز
action (n)	الحدث
address (n)	عنوان
admire (d) (v)	يُعجب بـ
agree (d) (v)	يوافق
agreement (n)	اتفاق - موافقة
ambassador (n)	سفير
audio (adj)	مسموع - سمعي
behaviour (n)	سلوك
biography (n)	السيرة الذاتية
career (n)	الحياة المهنية
celebrity (n)	شخصية مشهورة
clear (adj)	صافي - واضح
digital (adj)	رقمي
disappointed (adj)	مُحبَط
discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف
ebooks (n)	الكتب الإلكترونية
fact file (n)	ملف الحقائق
feelings (n)	مشاعر
footprint (n)	البصمة - المسار - أثر قدم
forgive – forgave - forgiven (v)	يسامح
forum (n)	مُلتَقى
further (adj - adv)	أبعد - أكثر
goodwill (n)	النية الحسنة
guess (ed) (v)	يُخمّن - يظن
human (adj - n)	بشري - انسان
hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
joke (d) (v - n)	يمزح - مزحة (نكتة)
let - let (v)	يسمح - يُمكّن
little (adj - adv)	صغير - قليل - قليلاً
photos (n)	صور فوتوغرافية
post (ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر
private (adj)	خاص - شخصي
profile (n)	الملف الشخصي - الحالة
response (n)	استجابة - رد
role (n)	دور
role model (n)	قُدوة
ruin (ed) (v)	يُدمّر
scientists (n)	العلماء
screen (n)	شاشة
search (ed) (v - n)	يبحث - بحث
security (n)	أمن
smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكي
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
speech (n)	خطبة
speed up (phr.v)	يُسرّع
storytellers (n)	القصاصين
suppose (d) (v)	يفترض
tap (ped) (v)	ينقر - يلمس
through (prep)	من خلال
upload (ed) (v)	يرفع على الإنترنت
wet (adj)	مبلل

REVISION 2

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Texts

New ways to enjoy stories

(SB page 72)



New technology often changes **the way we do things**[1]. In the past, people could only **tell stories**[2] by talking to **each other**[3], but this changed when stories could be **written down**[4] and read. Modern technology means we can read **e-books**[5] and listen to **audio**[6] books, but there are always new ways to enjoy great stories.

Chat stories are short stories that you can read on your **smartphone**[7]. They look like messages between the characters in the story. And when you finish reading one part of the conversation, you **tap**[8] the bottom of your **screen**[9] to show the next message.

Reading a chat story **feels like**[10] you're reading someone's messages. Some chat stories also **include**[11] photos, audio and videos, so you can see what a character **looks like**[12] and the **expressions**[13] on their face. And some chat stories **let**[14] you **make choices**[15] about what happens next.

But some **storytellers**[16] want us to **go further**[17]. They invite us to **imagine**[18] how our phones could show the world around us like we were in a film or a video game. **Through**[19] our phones, we could also meet the characters from our stories. They think that we will learn to enjoy stories in a new way because we will be **at the centre of the action**[20]. However, we must remember to make the stories fun and interesting because technology can become **boring**[21] when we forget to include human **feelings**[22].

(1) طريقة قيامنا بالأشياء
(2) يحكي قصص
(3) بعضهم البعض
(4) يُدوِّن / يُسجِّل
(5) الكتب الإلكترونية
(6) مسموع - سمعي
(7) هاتف ذكي
(8) ينقر - يلمس
(9) شاشة
(10) يبدو وكأنه
(11) يتضمَّن
(12) يُشبه
(13) تعبيرات - ملامح
(14) يسمح - يُمكِّن
(15) يختار
(16) القصاصين
(17) يتعمق أكثر
(18) يتخيل
(19) من خلال
(20) في بؤرة الأحداث
(21) ممل
(22) مشاعر

Digital footprints

(SB page 74)

Scientists(1) have **discovered**(2) **human**(3) **footprints**(4) in Australia that are 20,000 years old. There are footprints of a family with a small child, and five men who ran as fast as **Olympic**(5) **athletes**(6). Footprints can tell us a lot about what people did, and they can last for a long time.



The **phrase**(7) **'digital footprint'**(8) describes all the information that we **leave behind**(9) when we use the internet. It includes things like our **social media**(10) **profiles**(11), **posts**(12) and the **photos**(13) we **upload**(14), **as well as**(15) the groups that we've joined and posts from other people that we've **shared**(16).

Our **search history**(17) is also part of our digital footprint. Emails can **remain**(18) online for years, and the **comments**(19) that we make on videos can be seen by anyone.

Taha El-Sayed is an **expert**(20) in internet **security**(21). He **advises**(22) people to do an **internet search**(23) for their own names to see what other people can find. Then we're **supposed**(24) to **remove**(25) anything that we don't like, and we're **encouraged**(26) to close any social media **accounts**(27) that we don't use anymore.

He says that we have to be **careful with**(28) our **behaviour**(29) and try to be **positive**(30) online. When asked about advice for **young people**(31), he said, "Think about how other people could **react**(32) to your photos, videos or comments. Control who can see your posts and keep photos and information **private**(33) in social media."

He also **warned**(34) young people not to share **addresses**(35), phone numbers or the name of their school with anyone online. He said, "Most young people don't mean to give away too much information, but they often forget about security when they meet new friends or join a group online."

(1) العلماء
(2) يكتشف
(3) بشري
(4) آثار أقدام
(5) أوليمبي
(6) الرياضيون
(7) عبارة
(8) البصمة الرقمية - المسار الرقمي
(9) يخلف أثراً
(10) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
(11) الملف الشخصي
(12) منشورات
(13) صور فوتوغرافية
(14) يرفع على الإنترنت
(15) بالإضافة إلى
(16) يشارك
(17) سجل البحث
(18) يبقى
(19) تعليقات
(20) خبير
(21) أمن
(22) ينصح
(23) بحث على الإنترنت
(24) يُفترض
(25) يزيل
(26) يُشجع
(27) حسابات
(28) حريص على
(29) سلوك
(30) إيجابي
(31) الشباب
(32) يتفاعل - يستجيب
(33) خاص - شخصي
(34) يحذّر
(35) عناوين

2 Listening Texts

Losing a friend

(SB page 73)

Yasser : So, Hany posted a funny picture that he had taken last summer and we were all **laughing at**(1) it. Gamal was in it. He had fallen into a swimming pool with his clothes on. He looked very surprised, so I was **making** a few **jokes**(2) about it with Fady.

But when Gamal saw the jokes, he was angry. He said he'd only fallen into the pool to stop Hany's **little**(3) cousin, Amir, falling in. He had asked Hany to take a picture but it was **wet**(4) and he fell over. Gamal stopped him falling in, but then he fell instead.

Gamal wasn't hurt but he wasn't happy, so he asked Hany not to show anyone the picture. Hany had **agreed**(5), but then he posted a lot of pictures from last summer and I **guess**(6) he'd forgotten about that one. So, now I think Gamal isn't my friend anymore.

(1) يضحك على
(2) يمزح
(3) صغير
(4) مبلل
(5) يوافق
(6) يخمن - يظن



Monthly assessments

1. October test تقييمات شهرية - اختبار اكتوبر

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The security asked the visitors to follow the security rules properly. The opposites of "follow" is
 a. obey b. rescue c. break d. disappear
2. It's not easy to be employable these days unless you your skills.
 a. decrease b. prove c. remove d. improve
3. "I found that question very difficult." "Difficult" can be replaced with
 a. confusing b. confused c. clear d. heavy
4. He was angry to wait an hour in the street and his friend didn't come.
 a. on b. in c. for d. at
5. Tennis is less popular than football all over the world. The synonym of the word "popular" here is
 a. common b. special c. private d. personal
6. Scientists are asked to solutions to the problems the society faces.
 a. do b. perform c. miss d. suggest
7. Tamer is Adham. They got the same marks at their English exam last week.
 a. cleverer than b. as clever as c. so clever as d. the cleverest
8. They walk a long distance last night because they couldn't find any taxis.
 a. must b. had to c. needed d. should have
9. The less you pay attention to your teacher, ...you make mistakes.
 a. the less b. the most c. the least d. the more
10. You to deliver your research today. The teacher said that he is available all the week.
 a. don't have b. needn't c. must d. have
11. This is persuasive person I have ever seen.
 a. the most b. less c. the more d. least
12. You look tired. You have some rest and drink something hot.
 a. have to b. must c. ought d. should
13. Sama is the fastest girl in her team. This means that
 a. No girl is slower than Sama b. Any girl is faster than Sama
 c. No girl is as fast as Sama d. Any girl is slowest than Sama

14. to get him out of prison?
a. What have do they to do
b. What do have they to do
c. What have they do to do
d. What do they have to do

15. Of the two novels, which is to read tonight?
a. most interesting
b. more interesting
c. less interesting
d. least interesting

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Do you often use shampoo or put ketchup on your food? Have you ever visited a sauna? If you think these words are originally English, you'd better think again. In fact, each of these words comes from a different language!

Shampoo, for example, is actually a word from the Hindi language in India. This word originally meant "massage." In hair shops in India, barbers massage your head while washing your hair. Over time, British people in India used this word to mean a liquid that cleans hair.

Almost everyone knows what ketchup is. People all over the world like to pour this tomato sauce on French fries or sandwiches. This word is originally Chinese (from ketchup, a fish sauce). In the 1600s, British and Dutch sailors brought this fish sauce to Europe. Over time, people changed the sauce by adding tomato flavour to it, but the name basically stayed the same.

Sauna, a popular type of **public** steam room and shower facility, comes from the Finnish language. During one of the European Olympics, athletes from Britain and Germany saw Finnish athletes use saunas after training. Later, the general public all over Europe started using this style of bathing, too. Now, we still use this word to describe all kinds of steam rooms.

English is full of many wonderful borrowed words from many languages. Perhaps English should change its name to Eng-hin-chi-fin-fre-ger-ital-span-ish!

✪ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. The main idea of the passage is
a. English language vocabulary
b. English borrowed words
c. Modern English technology
d. English is a world language

17. The antonym of the underlined word "**public**" is
a. special
b. common
c. unusual
d. usual

18. Which of the following words comes from Hindi?
a. shampoo
b. ketchup
c. sauna
d. massage

19. What does "ital" probably mean in "Eng-hin-chi-fin-fre-ger-ital-span-ish?"
a. The name of a country
b. The name of a language
c. The name of a group of people
d. The English speakers in a country

20. is a word that comes from other languages.
a. Sky b. English c. Water d. Sauna

21. Every day, we borrow words from the English in our daily use to
a. express the meaning b. be good educators
c. to learn English d. to compare languages

22. Languages borrow words from other languages because
a. English is a poor language b. English is a strong language
c. the nature of communication d. the nature of environment

23. is the most popular foreign languages used all over the world.
a. Arabic b. English c. Hindi d. Chinese

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

It is crystal clear that the world is encountering a disastrous food crisis. This makes it inevitable to look for out-of-box ideas to increase food production.

a. من الواضح مثل الكريستال أن العالم يواجه أزمة غذائية كارثية. هذا يجعل من الحتمي البحث عن أفكار خارج الصندوق لزيادة إنتاج الغذاء.

b. من الواضح تماماً أن العالم يواجه أزمة غذائية كارثية. هذا يجعل من الحتمي البحث عن أفكار خارج الصندوق لزيادة إنتاج الغذاء.

c. من الواضح تماماً أن العالم يواجه أزمة غذائية كارثية. هذا يجعل من الحتمي البحث عن الصندوق الخارجي للأفكار لزيادة إنتاج الغذاء.

d. من الواضح تماماً أن العالم يواجه أزمة غذائية كارثية. هذا يجعل من حقي البحث عن أفكار خارج الصندوق لزيادة إنتاج الغذاء.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تخطو مصر خطوات ثابتة نحو تحقيق نهضة شاملة في كل المجالات، خاصة الصناعة والزراعة والبنية التحتية والتعليم والصحة.

a. Egypt is making steady steps towards achieving a comprehensive renaissance in all fields, especially industry, agriculture, infrastructure, education and health.

b. Egypt is taking steady steps towards achieving a comprehensive renaissance in all fields, especially industry, agriculture, infrastructure, education and health.

c. Egypt is taking study steps towards achieving a comprehensive renaissance in all fields, especially industry, agriculture, infrastructure, education and health.

d. Egypt is taking steady steps towards achieving a comprehensive renaissance in every fields, especially industry, agriculture, infrastructure, education and health.

26. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

The immune system

Monthly assessments

2. November test تقييمات شهرية - اختبار نوفمبر

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The captain asked me to keep training. This means I training.
 a. depend on b. count on c. consist on d. carry on
2. I like films of the horror variety. The word "variety" can be replaced by
 a. sort b. medal c. application d. channel
3. The teacher asked the students to write a summary of the novel. The word "summary" can be replaced by
 a. title b. moral c. outline d. introduction
4. Focus your study and don't pay attention to anything else.
 a. on b. for c. by d. at
5. Countries are always interested in their innovators in all fields. The word "innovators" here can be replaced by
 a. customers b. criminals c. youth d. creators
6. Cutting down rainforests the environment.
 a. keeps b. damages c. introduces d. gives
7. My cousin asked me him my new laptop, but I refused because I needed it badly.
 a. to lend b. lending c. to lending d. lend
8. Mayar has decided to paint her car after the accident. She it.
 a. is going to paint b. paints
 c. will paint d. is painting
9. Sorry, I forgot to bring my homework with me. I put it in my bag before coming here.
 a. shouldn't b. can c. should have d. couldn't have
10. The mobile is ringing. I it.
 a. am answering b. answer
 c. am going to answer d. will answer
11. Parents always advise their children friends with bad people.
 a. to make b. not to make c. not to making d. to making
12. At seven o'clock tomorrow morning, I to Luxor. My bus leaves at 6 a.m.
 a. will travel b. will have travelled
 c. am going to travel d. will be travelling
13. I must buy a nice present for my little sister. I promised her one.
 a. to buying b. not to buying c. not to buy d. to buy

14. Laila seventeen next Monday.
a. will be b. is going to be c. is d. will being

15. I was invited a wedding party, but I couldn't come.
a. to attend b. attending c. to attending d. attend

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Coronavirus disease (Covid 19) is an infectious disease caused by a new virus.

The disease causes respiratory تنفسى illness (like the flu) with symptoms اعراض such as a cough, fever, and in more severe cases الحالات الخطيرة difficult breathing.

Coronavirus disease spreads primarily through contact with an infected person when they cough or sneeze. It also spreads when a person touches a surface or an object that has the virus on it, then touches their eyes, nose, or mouth. You can protect yourself by washing your hands frequently, avoiding touching your face, and avoiding **close** contact (1 meter or 3 feet) with people who are unwell.

An old idea for fighting infections is being revived تنتعش as people wait for drugs and vaccines امصال to overcome the novel of coronavirus. If it works, the blood plasma of people who have recovered from covid-19 would be used to protect health-care workers and help sick people get well. The possible therapy علاج is based on a medical concept called "passive immunity" المناعة السلبية. People who recovered from an infection develop antibodies that circulate in the blood and can stop the repetition of the disease. **Infusions** عمليات نقل of plasma may increase people's disease-fighting response to the virus, giving their immune systems an important support.

The approach has been used against polio, measles, and flu. The recovered people could have in their blood something that could be very useful. The history in this has been used in 120 years in medicine, and it's well-known.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16. The best title for this passage is
a. Coronavirus old history b. Malaria against coronavirus
c. China produced the disease d. A new dangerous disease

17. The underlined word "**infusions**" means operations.
a. transport b. transplant c. transmit d. transfer

18. The therapy of "passive immunity" is a /an way to treat diseases.
a. old b. new c. negative d. infectious

TEST 2

19. Which of the following can summarise the passage?
a. Scientists know drugs to treat coronavirus.
b. Ancient Egyptians had treated coronavirus.
c. Passive immunity wouldn't help with corona.
d. It is a dangerous disease, but it can be treated.

20. One of the common symptoms of coronavirus is
a. cough b. touch c. measles d. polio

21. Infusions of plasma may support people's systems to fight coronavirus.
a. digestive b. respiratory c. immune d. nerve

22. The word "close" in the text can be antonymous with
a. near b. next c. remote d. nearby

23. Polio, measles and flu are
a. diseases b. subjects c. objects d. hobbies

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

It has been proven that nothing remains impossible in science. In the near future, we will have different kinds of medicine for treating all diseases.

a. لقد ثبت أنه لا يوجد شيء مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج بعض الأمراض.

b. لقد ثبت أنه يوجد شيء مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج جميع الأمراض.

c. لقد ثبت أنه لا يوجد شيء غير مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج جميع الأمراض.

d. لقد ثبت أنه لا يوجد شيء مستحيل في العلم. في المستقبل القريب، سيكون لدينا أنواع مختلفة من الأدوية لعلاج جميع الأمراض.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

كل يُخطئ، لكن معظمنا لا يعرف كيف يستفيد من أخطائه. إن ارتكاب الأخطاء لا يؤدي بالضرورة ب نتائج سيئة، فالتعلم من الخطأ مهارة علينا جميعاً اكتسابها. (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

a. Everybody makes mistakes, but most of we don't see how to earn from their mistakes. Making mistakes does necessarily lead to good results. Admitting from mistakes is skillful we all have to realise.

b. Everyone makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to benefit from their mistakes. Making mistakes does not necessarily lead to bac results. Learning from mistakes is a skill we all have to acquire.

c. Everyone makes mistakes, but most of us don't understand how to gain from their mistake. Doing mistakes does not necessarily lead to bad results. Learning from mistakes is skillful we all have to win.

d. All makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to profit from our mistakes. Mistakes do not lead to bad results. Teaching from mistakes is a skill we all have to acquire.

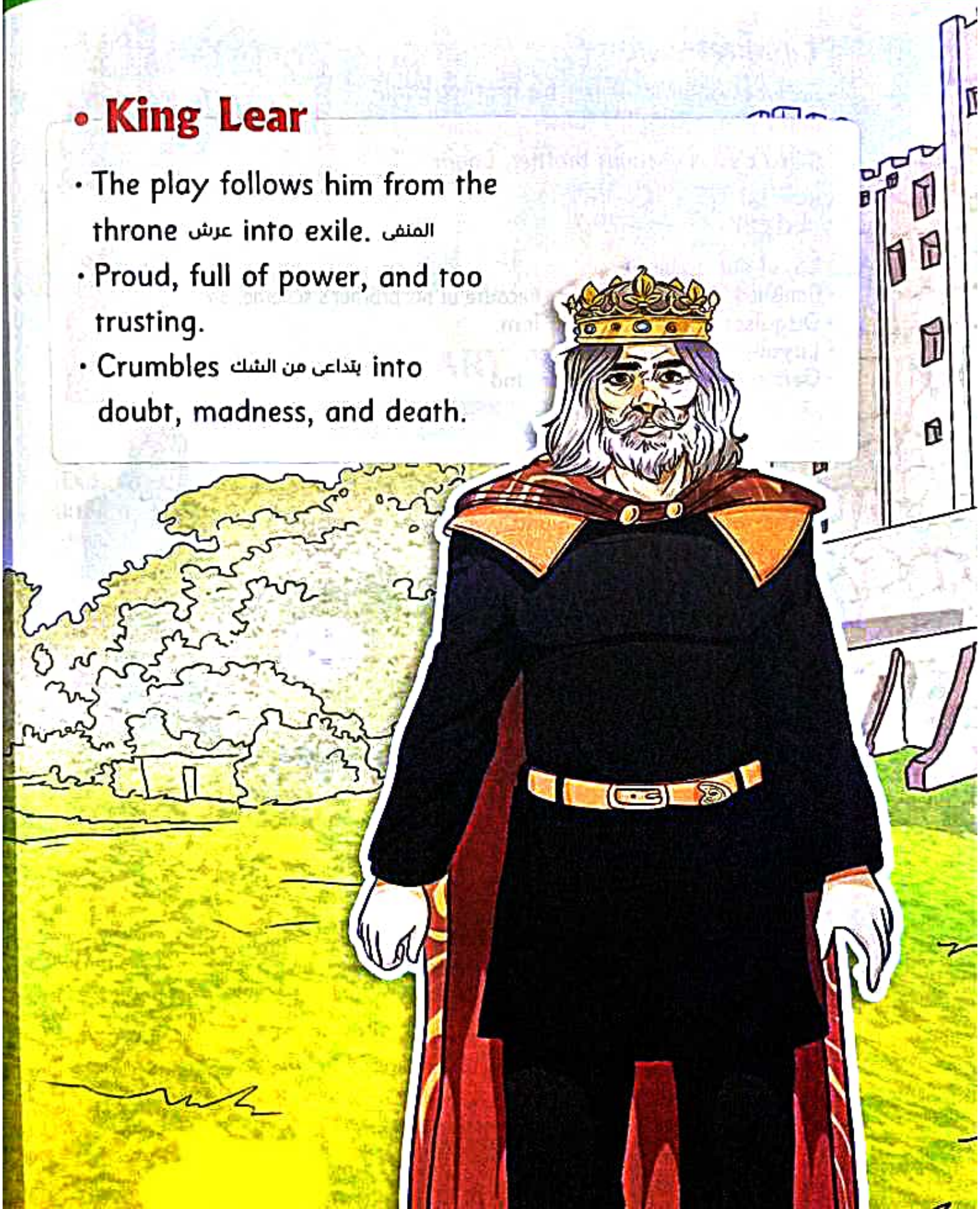
26. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Hard work is the key to success.

King Lear

• King Lear

- The play follows him from the throne عرش into exile. المنفى
- Proud, full of power, and too trusting.
- Crumbles يتداعى من الشك into doubt, madness, and death.



Characters in the play

شخصيات المسرحية



• Edmund

- Schemes against يتآمر ضد his brother Edgar and betrays يخون his father.
- Killed by his virtuous brother, Edgar.



• Edgar

- Loyal but naive. ساذج
- Banished تم نفيه by his father because of his brother's scheme. مؤامرة
- Disguises himself as Poor Tom.
- Loyally cares for his father.
- Gets revenge on ينتقم من Edmund.



• Earl of Gloucester

- Older nobleman; loyal to King Lear.
- Father of Edgar and Edmund.
- Deceived and betrayed by Edmund.



• Cordelia

- King Lear's good daughter
- Marries the King of France.
- Loyal to her father until the end.



• Goneril

- A true villain شريرة
- Erodes her father's loyalty and position.
- Married to the Duke of Albany.
- Has an affair with Edmund.
- Poisons تضع السم her sister and stabs تطعن نفسها herself.



• Regan

- A true villain like her sister.
- Kills a servant who tries to save Gloucester.
- Poisoned by her sister.

ACT 1

Scene I



I KEY VOCABULARY & DEFINITIONS

Vocabulary

Duke	الدوق (لقب إنجليزى)	choice	اختيار
kingdom	مملكة	riches	ثروة
duty	واجب	third	ثلث / الثالث
title	لقب / عنوان	beauty	جمال
foolish	أحمق / سخيف / مغفل	sword	سيف
forests	غابات	divide into	يقسم على
describe	يصف	cruel	قاسى
power	سلطة / قوة	your majesty	جلالتك
honestly	بأمانة	shout	يصيح
stranger	شخص غريب	speech	حديث

Words and their definitions

- **character** : A person that an actor plays. شخصية (فى فيلم أو مسرحية ... إلخ)
- **play (noun)** : A piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre. مسرحية
- **scene** : A small part of a play which happens in one place. مشهد (فى مسرحية)
- **act (noun)** : A larger part of a play. فصل (فى مسرحية)
- **sword** : A weapon with a long, sharp metal blade. سيف
- **beauty** : Something that looks nice and attractive. جمال
- **title** : An official name of a job. لقب

riches	: A lot of money or things.	ثروة - أموال طائلة
kingdom	: A country that has a king or a queen.	مملكة
foolish	: Not sensible or clever.	احمق / غبى
divide (into)	: To separate something into two or more parts.	يُقسم
duty	: Something you do because it is right or part of your job.	واجب

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

pleased to meet someone	مسرور لمقابلة شخصاً ما	keep the title of	يحافظ على لقب
ask someone to marry you	يطلب الزواج من ...	divide something into two	يقسم شئ لجزئين
make someone happy	يجعل (شخصًا) سعيدًا	give an answer to a question	يعطى إجابة لسؤال
give your country away	تضيع بلدك / دولتك	put my feelings in words	أعبر عن مشاعرى بالكلمات
do a terrible thing	تقوم بفعل شنيع	say goodbye to	يودع

II TEXT & ANALYSIS

Act I Scene i

[In King Lear's Palace.]

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER : Ah, the Duke of Kent! Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT : I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER : I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND : I'm pleased to meet you, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND : Listen! The King is coming.

[King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

KING LEAR : Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia, I will also give an answer to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia.

First, look at this map of my kingdom, I have divided it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most ? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL : Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty and riches.

CORDELIA : [*To herself.]* I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR : *[Pointing to the map.]* Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say ?

REGAN : Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

CORDELIA : *[To herself.]* What can I say ? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father.

KING LEAR : Thank you Regan. I will give a third of our beautiful kingdom to you and your children, *[To Cordelia.]* Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters ?

CORDELIA : I can say nothing, father.

KING LEAR : Nothing ? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.

CORDELIA : I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.

KING LEAR : But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too.

CORDELIA : You have always been a good father and it is my duty to love you, too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too ? If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.

KING LEAR : Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?

CORDELIA : Father, I am young but I am honest.

KING LEAR : Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me. I don't know you.

KENT : But your majesty ...

KING LEAR : Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me when I was old.



Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy! While we wait for them, listen to what I say : Goneril and her husband Albany, and Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have all the power and riches that come with being a king.
All I want is to keep the title of King, but they will have everything else.

KENT : Your majesty, what do you mean ? I must speak honestly when my King is being foolish. Your youngest daughter does not shout about her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't give your country away like this.

KING LEAR : Say nothing more to me, Kent!

KENT : I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.

KING LEAR : Then you must go away too ! Leave!

KENT : Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better.

KING LEAR : Oh, you are a cruel man!
[He puts his hand on his sword]

(DUKE OF) CORNWALL : Your majesty, please stop!

KENT : I'll say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.

KING LEAR : Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed. Go!

KENT : Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King.

[To Cordelia] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country.

[Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]

GLOUCESTER : Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.

KING LEAR : Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have if you marry my daughter Cordelia ?

(DUKE OF) BURGUNDY : Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.

KING LEAR : I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.

BURGUNDY : I don't understand.

KING LEAR : You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice.

BURGUNDY : I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.

KING LEAR : Then leave her, sir.

CORDELIA : Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.

KING LEAR : *[To the King of France.]* So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.

(KING OF) FRANCE : But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.

CORDELIA : *[To King Lear.]* Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.

KING LEAR : I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!

FRANCE : My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.
[To the King.] Your daughter will be queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.

KING LEAR : She is yours, King of France;
I'll never see her face again. *[To Cordelia.]*
Leave now, without my love.
Come with me, Burgundy.
[King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester]



Exercises
from Act I Scene I

1. Answer the following questions :

1. What do you think of the three daughters' answers? Who do you think is the most faithful daughter ?
2. If you were in the King's position, how would you behave with your daughters ?
3. In your point of view, which one of the king's daughters said the truth ? Why ?
4. If you were asked the King's question, what would your answer be ? Why ?
5. "Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too" Do you think Cordelia was sensible to defy her father's desire ? Why / Why not ?
6. What did King Lear decide to do with his kingdom ?
7. How does Kent appear loyal and faithful to the king ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Edgar is than his brother, Edmund.
 a. two years older b. a year older
 c. two years younger d. a year younger
2. is King Lear's youngest daughter.
 a. Goneril b. Regan c. Judet d. Cordelia
3. Cordelia's response made the King describe her as a/an daughter.
 a. cruel b. impressive c. kind d. optimistic
4. was a greedy man.
 a. The King of France b. Edgar
 c. The Duke of Burgundy d. Edmund
5. proved to love Cordelia more than money and land.
 a. The king of France b. Edgar
 c. The Duke of Burgundy d. Edmund

ACT 1

Scene I continued & scene II



I KEY VOCABULARY & DEFINITIONS

Vocabulary

deserve	يستحق	forgive	يسامح
planning	تخطيط	immediately	فورًا / فى الحال
old age	الشيخوخة	respect	يحترم/احترام
decision	قرار	loyalty	ولاء / إخلاص
palace	قصر	income	دخل / إيراد
anger	غضب	serious	خطير/ جاد
succeed	ينجح	truth	حقيقة
inheritance	إرث	discuss	يناقش
lie	يكذب	adult	بالغ
deceive	يخدع	exit	يخرج
trust	يثق/ثقة	enter	يدخل
beat	يهزم		

Words and their definitions

- **adult** : A fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions. بالغ سن الرشد
- **deceive** : To make someone believes something that is not true. يخدع
- **deserve** : It is right for someone to have something because of the way they have behaved or because what they are. يستحق

- **inheritance** : The money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died. إرث / ميراث
- **income** : Money received, especially on a regular basis, for work or through investments. دخل / إيراد
- **loyalty** : A strong feeling of support or allegiance. وفاء / ولاء
- **trust** : To believe in the reliability, truth, or ability of someone. يثق بـ

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

my heart is broken	تحطم قلبي	keep our money from us	يمنع عنا المال
become a little mad	يصاب بالجنون قليلًا	in the correct way	بالطريقة الصحيحة
send ... away	يبعد / يطرد	test his loyalty	يختبر ولاءه
take good care of	يعتني جيدًا بـ		

II TEXT & ANALYSIS

Act I Scene i , continued

[In King Lear's Palace.]

FRANCE : Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye to your sisters.

CORDELIA : Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.

GONERIL : Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

REGAN : Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve.

CORDELIA : I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember : everyone discovers the truth in the end. Goodbye!

FRANCE : Come with me, my dear Cordelia.

[The King of France and Cordelia leave.]

GONERIL : Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.

REGAN : I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

GONERIL : Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him send her away.

REGAN : He is becoming a little mad in his old age.

GONERIL : Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health and old age will bring.

REGAN : He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.

GONERIL : Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us.

REGAN : You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

GONERIL : We must do something, and quickly.

Act I Scene ii

[At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.]



EDMUND : My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my inheritance just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son ? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar, I will have your land.
Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter succeeds, then Edmund the younger son will beat the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER : Ah Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the palace tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

What are you doing Edmund?

EDMUND : Nothing, father.

GLOUCESTER : Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it ?

EDMUND : Nothing, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Then, why did you hide it in your pocket ? Let me see it.

EDMUND : Please forgive me, father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet; but I don't think you should read it.

GLOUCESTER : Let me see that!

EDMUND : OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty to my family.

GLOUCESTER : *[Reads the letter.]*

When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it. Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our father were dead, you could enjoy half his income, and be loved by your brother Edgar."

Did my son Edgar write this letter ? When did you receive this ? Who brought it ?

EDMUND : It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.

GLOUCESTER : Are you sure the writing is your brother's ?

EDMUND : Yes, it is his handwriting, father.

GLOUCESTER : Has he ever talked to you about this before ?



EDMUND : No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.

GLOUCESTER : Oh, what a cruel son! Go and find him, Edmund. Where is he ?

EDMUND : I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant, then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.

GLOUCESTER : Do you really think so ?

EDMUND : Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.

GLOUCESTER : My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.

EDMUND : I'll go and find him immediately.

GLOUCESTER : Find him, Edmund, and be careful.

(to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.

[Gloucester exits. Edgar enters.]

EDMUND : Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you ? When did you last see our father ?

EDGAR : I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.

EDMUND : And did you talk to him?

EDGAR : Yes, we spent two hours together.

EDMUND : Did you say anything unkind to him ? He's very angry with you at the moment. Please don't go near him until he's less angry.

EDGAR : Really? Then somebody has lied about me.

EDMUND : That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now. I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.

EDGAR : My sword ? But why ?

EDMUND : That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!

[Edgar exits]

EDMUND : My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.

[Edmund exits.]



Exercises
from Act I Scene II

1. Answer the following questions :

1. If you were a father and you had two sons, would you give your land to one of yours sons only ? Why / Why not ?
2. Greed results in many problems. Give an example from the novel to show this.
3. If you were Gloucester, how would you deal with Edmund's letter?
4. Gloucester and the King were similar to each other. How do you think so ?
5. "But I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty to my family." What can you infer from this sentence ? Why ?
6. Goneril and Regan appeared immoral towards their father even before leaving the palace. Explain.
7. What made Edmund plot against his brother ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. should get his father's when he dies.
 a. The King of France b. Edgar
 c. The Duke of Burgundy d. Edmund
2. Edgar was innocent as
 a. he didn't write the letter b. he wrote the letter
 c. he didn't help the soldiers d. he hated his family
3. To trick his father, Edmund
 a. pretended to hide the letter behind him
 b. didn't show the letter sent by his brother
 c. sent a letter to his brother, Edgar
 d. hid the letter he sent to his brother
4. Edmund managed to deceive his brother and his father owing to putting their in him.
 a. weakness b. trust c. happiness d. cruelty
5. Before leaving the palace, the King sent away.
 a. Gloucester b. Edmund c. Edgar d. Kent

ACT 1

Scene III & scene IV



I KEY VOCABULARY & DEFINITIONS

Vocabulary

disguise	يتنكر	hold his head	يمسك برأسه (من الألم)
servant	خادم	give away	يتخلص من / يستغنى عن
behave	يتصرف	encourage	يشجع
behaviour	سلوك	wise	حكيم / عاقل
rude	وقح	surprised	مندهش
Fool	مهرج / مُضحك الملك (فى القصر)	attendant	نادل / خادم (فى مكان عام)
		mad	مجنون
prepare	يجهز / يعد	cart	عربة تجرها الخيول
guilty	مذنب	attack	يهاجم / هجوم
get angry about	يغضب بشأن		

Words and their definitions

- **guilty** : Feeling ashamed because you have done something you know that is wrong or you haven't done something you should have done. مذنب
- **servant** : A person who works in another person's house, and cooks, cleans, etc. for them. خادم
- **disguise** : To change your appearance so that people cannot recognize you. يتنكر
- **attendant** : A person whose job is to serve or help people in a public place. نادل / خادم

ACT 1

- **behave** : To do things in a particular way. بتصرف / بسلك
- **behaviour** : The way that someone behaves, especially towards other people. سلوك / تصرف
- **attack** : To use violence to try to hurt or kill someone. بهاجم
- **wise** : To be able to make sensible decisions and give good advice because of the experience and knowledge that you have. حكيم

1 Some phrases : بعض العبارات اللغوية

the cart is pulling a horse	الامور ليست فى وضعها الصحيح	have a taste of her own medicine	تجنى ثمار ما زرعت
disguise yourself	تنكر (فى الشكل)	attack (someone)	يهاجم (شخص)
behave badly	يتصرف بشكل سئ	encourage (someone) to do (something)	يشجع شخص (ما على (شىء ما
get angry about	يغضب بشأن	work hard for	يعمل بجد من اجل
be guilty of (something)	يذنب بشأن ...	make a problem	يتسبب فى مشكلة
		solve a problem	يحل مشكلة

II TEXT & ANALYSIS

Act I Scene iii

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald.]

GONERIL : Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant ?

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

GONERIL : I must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave badly, and my father gets angry about everything. When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

OSWALD : He's coming, madam; I can hear him.

GONERIL : Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

GONERIL : I'll write to my sister immediately and tell her my plans.

[She exits.]

Act I Scene iv

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.]

KENT : I've disguised myself in different clothes, and I have changed how I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.



[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.]

KING LEAR : Get my dinner ready.

[A servant exits.]

[To Kent] Who are you ?

KENT : I am a poor but honest man.

KING LEAR : What do you want ?

KENT : I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR : Do you know me ?

KENT : No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.

KING LEAR : What can you do ?

KENT : I can give good and honest advice.

KING LEAR : Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters.]

You, where's my daughter ?

OSWALD : I'm sorry, sir

[He exits.]

KING LEAR : What did the man say? Call him back.

SOLDIER : He said that your daughter wasn't well.

KING LEAR : Why didn't he come back when I called him ?

SOLDIER : Your majesty, he was very rude. I don't know what the problem is; but the servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.

KING LEAR : I've noticed that too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two days.

SOLDIER : He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.

KING LEAR : Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.

[The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.]

Oh, you come here! Who am I ?



OSWALD : My lady's father.

KING LEAR : My lady's father ? How rude !

[King Lear hits him.]

OSWALD : Don't hit me, my lord.

KENT : *[Hitting him.]* Don't be rude to the King or I'll hit you, too!

KING LEAR : Thank you. You are a good man.

[Goneril enters.]

KING LEAR : What's the matter, Goneril ? Why are you holding your head ?

FOOL : You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.

GONERIL : Father, are you encouraging your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.

FOOL : Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse.

KING LEAR : Does anyone here know who I am ? Tell me !

GONERIL : You're old and you should be wise. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.

KING LEAR : *[angry]* What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.

[Albany enters and he is very surprised.]

[To the soldiers.] Prepare my horses.

ALBANY : Please, sir, wait.

KING LEAR : *[To himself.]* Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish ?

ALBANY : Your majesty, I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not guilty.

KING LEAR : That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have a taste of her own medicine.

[King Lear exits.]

ALBANY : What has happened, Goneril ?

GONERIL : Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man.

[King Lear enters again]

KING LEAR : Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!

ALBANY : What is the matter, sir ?

KING LEAR : I'll tell you. *[To Goneril.]* I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!

[King Lear exits with Kent, and Attendants.]

GONERIL : Did you hear that, my husband ?

ALBANY : You know how much I love you, Goneril, but

GONERIL : Do not say more.

[To the Fool.] You, go.

[The Fool exits.]

GONERIL : Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age ? They might attack us.

ALBANY : I think you are worrying too much.

GONERIL : It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.

ALBANY : Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.

[They exit.]

Exercises
from Act I Scene III & Scene IV

1. Answer the following questions :

1. "The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!" What does this tell us about how Goneril sees her father ?
2. Kent was a model for the honest loyal man. To what extent do you agree with this sentence ?
3. Do you think the King cannot see the clear truth or he doesn't want to see it ? Why ?
4. "Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse." What does the speaker mean ?
5. "Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia ?" What can be inferred from these words ?
6. Why did Goneril order fifty of the King's soldiers to go ?
7. Did the Duke of Albany agree to what his wife did ? How do you know?

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Goneril's servant is called
 a. Kent b. Edmund c. Edgar d. Oswald
2. Goneril said if her father wouldn't like living with her, he could live with..... .
 a. Regan b. Oswald c. Gloucester d. Cordelia
3. Kent offered to help the King by
 a. carrying his bag b. serving his food
 c. giving him some advice d. fighting for him
4. When the King went to the palace, Oswald and the other servants were very to him.
 a. kind b. rude c. polite d. cheerful
5. Goneril described the King as
 a. a mad old man b. a wise honest father
 c. a powerful leader d. a sensible king

ACT 2

Scene I & scene II



I KEY VOCABULARY & DEFINITIONS

Vocabulary

castle	قلعة	reward	يكافئ / مكافأة
guard	يحرس / حارس	profit	يربح
follow	يتبع	persuade	يقنع
pretend	يتظاهر	beggar	متسول
blood	دماء	faithful	مخلص
inherit	يرث	knight	فارس
ports	موانى	disbelief	جحود - عدم تصديق

Words and their definitions

- **reward** : Money for someone who finds or helps someone important. مكافاه
- **beggar** : Someone who asks other people for food or money. متسول
- **guard** : Someone who protects a place or a person. حارس
- **profit** : To make benefit from something. يربح
- **pretend** : To act in a way that is not true. يتظاهر-تظاهر
- **plot against** : To make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person. يتامر ضد
- **disbelief** : The feeling that something cannot really be happening. عدم تصديق - جحود
- **faithful** : To be loyal, continue to support someone. وفى / مخلص
- **persuade** : To get someone to do something or agree with you. يقنع
- **port** : A place where ships enter and leave a town or country. ميناء

ACT 2

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الظهر	get here	يصل هنا
change his mind	يغير رأيه	call out	يصرخ / ينادى
plot against	يتآمر على	(be) in a fight	يتعارك / يتشاجر
run away	يهرب	in the stocks	فى الغلق (آلة لتقييد اللصوص)

II TEXT & ANALYSIS

Act II Scene i

[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND : *[To himself.]* So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a guard ready to arrest my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.

[Edgar enters.]

Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first,we must pretend to fight. Pick up your sword. Quickly, before our father gets here. Now, run from here, brother.

[Calls out.] Help me!

[To his brother again.] Goodbye, Edgar.

[Edgar exits.]

[To himself.] If there's some blood on me, people will think I've been in a fight. *[He cuts his arm.]*

Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help!

[Gloucester enters with servants.]

EDMUND : Look, at my arm, father, I'm injured.

GLOUCESTER : What happened? Where's Edgar ?

EDMUND : He ran that way. When I refused his plan ...

GLOUCESTER : You there, follow him!

[Some servants exit.]

What plan, Edmund ?

EDMUND : His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you. Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that I was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.

GLOUCESTER : He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find him. Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. I will tell him that there's a reward for any man who finds Edgar. And anyone who hides him will be arrested, too.

EDMUND : Father, I tried to persuade Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted to continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it.

"Do you think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. I'll say that it was all your idea. They know that you will profit most if father dies, not me."

GLOUCESTER : This is terrible! It is a stab in the back. I'll stop people from leaving England's ports; Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, my loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You will inherit all my land.

[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]

CORNWALL : Gloucester, how are you, my friend ? Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news.

REGAN : If it is true, it is terrible news !

GLOUCESTER : Oh Regan, my heart is broken!

REGAN : Did your son really try to kill you ? Your son Edgar ?

GLOUCESTER : Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.

REGAN : I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

EDMUND : That's correct, madam, he spent some time with them.

REGAN : Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

CORNWALL : Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.

EDMUND : It was my duty, sir.

GLOUCESTER : Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

CORNWALL : Is anyone following Edgar ?

GLOUCESTER : Yes, I've sent some guards.

CORNWALL : The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me. I need men like you that I can trust.

EDMUND : I'd be happy to help you, sir.

GLOUCESTER : I thank you, Cornwall

[They exit.]

Act II Scene ii



[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

EDGAR : I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was not caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So, I must disguise myself as a beggar. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.

[He changes his clothes.]

I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call myself Poor Tom.

[Edgar exits.]

[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]

KENT : Good morning, my Lord.

KING LEAR : *[Looks in disbelief at Kent in the stocks.]* What has happened ? Who did this to you ?

KENT : It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

KING LEAR : But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible! Where's my daughter ?

[King Lear exits.]

KENT : Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now ?

FOOL : He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay, and let the wise men run away.

[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]

KING LEAR : Why don't they want to speak to me ? You say they are sick? They are tired ? That's no answer.

GLOUCESTER : I'm sorry, your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't change his mind.

KING LEAR : What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!

[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]

Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now !

[Gloucester exits.]

KING LEAR : Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart! *[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter.]*

REGAN : Father, I'm pleased to see you.

KING LEAR : My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.

REGAN : I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

KING LEAR : I'm very angry with her!

REGAN : Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.

Exercises
from Act II Scene I & Scene II

1. Answer the following questions :

1. Edmund was all wicked. To what extent do you agree with this ?
2. One should be careful with all the people around them even the closest people. How can this sentence be applied to the play "King Lear" ?
3. Edmund and Goneril were similar to each other in some points. Explain.
4. "It is a stab in the back." What does this sentence mean to Edmund ? Why ?
5. If you were Edgar, how would you solve this problem ?
6. How did Edgar live after running away from his father's palace ?
7. Why has the King got fewer soldiers ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To make his evil plan succeed, Edmund and pretended to have a fight with his brother.
 a. cut his arm b. killed a servant
 c. cut his brother d. broke the furniture
2. Edmund lied to his father and pretended that
 a. he wanted to kill Edgar b. Edgar tried to kill him
 c. the servants helped Edgar d. there wasn't a fight there
3. Regan thought that the king's soldiers
 a. are cruel to the royal family
 b. disobey her orders all the time
 c. encouraged Edgar to plot against his father
 d. tried to kill the King and her sister
4. Goneril warned Regan
 a. not to make the King angry b. not to welcome her father
 c. to be careful with her father d. to be careful with the soldiers
5. Cornwall asked to work for him.
 a. Edgar b. Oswald c. Edmund d. Kent

ACTS 2&3

Scene III & scene II



I KEY VOCABULARY & DEFINITIONS

Vocabulary

blow / blew / blown	تهب الرياح	shelter	ملجا - يأوى
go mad	يصاب بالجنون	double	يضاعف - ضعف
spy (n/v)	يتجسس / جاسوس	patient	صبور
joke	نكتة	patience	صبر
disagreement	خلاف	storm	عاصفة
ring (n)	خاتم / حلقة	bear / bore / borne	يتحمل
cave	كهف	lock	يغلق

Words and their definitions

- **joke** : Something that you tell other people to make them laugh. نكتة
- **shelter** : A place that will protect you from bad weather. ملجا - يأوى
- **cave** : A large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground. كهف
- **spy (n)** : A person who tries to get secret information about a country, organization, or person, especially somebody who is employed by a government or the police. يتجسس / جاسوس
- **disagreement** : A situation where people disagree about something and often argue. خلاف
- **storm** : Very bad weather with strong winds and rain, and often thunder and lightning. عاصفة

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

turn your back on me	يدير ظهره لي	It's a wet night	إنها ليلة ممطرة
lock me out of	يمنعني من الدخول	set eyes on	يراقب/يثبت عينيه على
I'd rather + inf.	انا افضل ...	apologise to someone	يعتذر لشخص ما
keep you warm	يجعلك دافئًا	apologise for ...	يعتذر عن (شيء)
there isn't room for	لا يوجد مساحة / فراغ لـ ...		

II TEXT & ANALYSIS

Act II Scene iii

[In the countryside.]

KING LEAR : Regan, I will not stay with your sister Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed. Remember, I am old.

REGAN : Please, father! Go back and stay with my sister.

KING LEAR : Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She has been cruel and rude to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!

REGAN : You'll want the same to happen to me soon.

KING LEAR : No, Regan, I'll never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never turn your back on me. And you'd not lock me out of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.

REGAN : Father, why are you unhappy?

CORNWALL : Listen! Who's coming ?

REGAN : It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.

[Goneril enters with Oswald].

KING LEAR : Who put my servant in the stocks ? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this. *[To Goneril.]* You shouldn't want to look at me. Oh Regan, why are you holding her hand ?

GONERIL : Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father ? What have I done wrong ?

KING LEAR : Oh, how unhappy you've made me. You're too cruel! Why won't you apologise to me ? And why is my servant in the stocks ?

CORNWALL : I put him there, sir, because he didn't behave well.

KING LEAR : You? Was it you ?

REGAN : Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month. Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.

KING LEAR : Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave ? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.
[To himself.] Return with Goneril? I would prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man. *[Points at Oswald.]*

GONERIL : It's your choice, father.

KING LEAR : Please, daughter, don't make me mad. I won't set eyes on you again, my child; goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done. I'll be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.

REGAN : That is not possible. My home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister. Are fifty soldiers not enough for you ?

GONERIL : My servants could help you.

REGAN : Yes, why not, father ? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers. I won't have rooms for any more.

KING LEAR : But Regan, I gave you everything ...

REGAN : And you gave it to me at the right time !

KING LEAR : I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing - to keep a hundred soldiers. Are you really asking me to come with just twenty-five, Regan ?

REGAN : Don't talk to me any more about this.

KING LEAR : *[To Goneril.]* Then I'll go back with you. Your fifty soldiers is double her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.

GONERIL : Listen, father. You do not need twenty five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.

REGAN : Why do you even need one soldier ?

KING LEAR : Why do I need them ? Even the poorest beggars have things that they don't need. If you only give people what they need to live, then they are little more than animals. You are a lady. If you just want to stay warm, you don't need those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need patience! Oh, give me patience, or I will go mad!

[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]

CORNWALL : We should go inside; there's a big storm coming.

REGAN : This house is small; there isn't room for Lear and his soldiers.

GONERIL : Where is the Duke of Gloucester ?



CORNWALL : He followed Lear.
[Gloucester enters.]
Here he is.
GLOUCESTER : The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.
CORNWALL : Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.
GONERIL : Yes, don't try to stop him.
GLOUCESTER : But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing. There is nowhere to shelter for many kilometres.
REGAN : That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers with him, and who knows what they'll persuade him to do.
CORNWALL : Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the storm.
[They exit.]

Act III Scene i

[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]
KENT : Who's there, in this terrible weather ? Where's the King ?



SOLDIER : He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even a hat.
KENT : But who's with him ?
SOLDIER : Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his jokes.
KENT : Sir, I trust you. I have got something to tell you. There's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems. I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King.
[They exit.]

Exercises
from Act II Scene III & Act III Scene I

1. Answer the following questions :

1. The King has become a helpless and powerless man. To what extent do you think so ? Why ?
2. Who do you think is responsible for what has happened to the King ? Why ?
3. The play "King Lear" has some morals. Mention one of them.
4. It would be a great shock when you see that your closest people are ungrateful to you. Explain.
5. The King took a taste of his own medicine. Illustrate.
6. Who put the King's servant in the stocks ? Why ?
7. How did Regan appear crueller to her father than Goneril ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Regan refused to
 a. fight with her sister. b. let her father stay with her.
 c. punish the King's soldiers. d. help her sister against her father.
2. It was who punished the King's servant.
 a. Regan b. Cordelia c. Goneril d. Cornwall
3. Regan, Goneril and Cornwall got inside because and left the King outdoors.
 a. there was a bad storm b. they wanted to have lunch
 c. it was very hot outdoors d. there were some guests inside
4. stayed with the King all the time.
 a. Goneril b. The Fool c. Edgar d. Cornwall
5. Despite the strong storm, the King's daughters
 a. left their father outside and locked the door
 b. stood with him outside the palace
 c. helped him to get inside the place
 d. refused to leave him alone outdoors

ACT 3

Scene II & scene III and scene IV



I KEY VOCABULARY & DEFINITIONS

Vocabulary

stomach	معدة	hungry stomachs	بطون جائعة
hard-hearted	قاسى القلب	blanket	بطانية
forgive	يسامح / يعفو عن	mice	فئران
straw	قش	keep away from	يبتعد عن / يبعد عن
footprints	اثار الأقدام	hut	كوخ (عشة)
philosopher	فيلسوف / حكيم	lightning	البرق
apart from	باستثناء	rise	يرتفع / تشرق الشمس
army	جيش	torch	كشاف
homeless	مشرد / بلا ماوى	keep warm	يدفىء

Words and their definitions

- **sigh (n)** : A deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed. يتنهد
- **pile** : A group of things put on top of each other. كومة - ركام
- **philosopher** : A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life. فيلسوف
- **beg** : To ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much. يتوسل
- **lightning** : Bright light that comes from the sky in a storm. البرق
- **torch** : A light you can carry to help you to see. كشاف ضوئى

- **hut** : A small building usually with one room. كوخ
- **straw** : Dry yellow wheat used to feed animals. قش
- **forgive** : To stop feeling angry with someone who does something wrong, annoy or upset you; to stop feeling angry with yourself. يسامح

1 Verbal Collocations & Expressions متلازمات لفظية وتعبيرات

get rewarded for	يتم مكافاته على ...	come out of ...	يخرج من ...
win the trust	يفوز بثقة ...	accept the man's offer	يقبل عرض شخص
walk in someone's shoes	يسير على خطى / نهج شخص		

II TEXT & ANALYSIS

Act III Scene ii

[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR : Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL : Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!

KING LEAR : I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to me, like my daughters ?

[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR : Who's there ?

FOOL : Ah, here's someone who is both a wise man and a fool.

KENT : Oh no, why are you here ? Even bears want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's hut near here. It will shelter you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hard hearted daughters.

KING LEAR : When I asked for you, they did not let me in their house, so I'll force them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad!
[To the Fool.] How are you, my boy ? I'm cold. Where's the straw?

It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent].

Act III Scene iii

[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund.]



GLOUCESTER : Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him.

EDMUND : That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER : Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement between the two Dukes, and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight ...
[To himself.] No, it's too dangerous to talk about it to him.
[To Edmund.] I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND : *[To himself.]* I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded for this, and I'll win the trust that my father loses. The younger man rises as the old man falls!

[He exits.]

Act III Scene iv

[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]

KENT : Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR : Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it any more!

KENT : Please, go inside.

KING LEAR : *[To the Fool.]* You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor homeless people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes, and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened.]

FOOL : Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT : Who's in there ?

FOOL : A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT : Who are you ? Come out here.

[Edgar enters disguised as a madman called Poor Tom.]

EDGAR : Keep away from me!

KING LEAR : Are you mad like me ? Have you given everything to your two daughters?

EDGAR : Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR : Have his daughters done this to him ?

[To Edgar.] Don't you have anything?

FOOL : No, he only has a blanket.

KING LEAR : Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you ?

EDGAR : I was a servant, who was very proud.

KING LEAR : It would be better if you were dead than go around with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL : Look, here comes a walking fire.

[Gloucester enters carrying a torch.]

KING LEAR : Who's this ?

GLOUCESTER : What's your name ?

EDGAR : My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice to eat.

GLOUCESTER : Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from this mad man ? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they hate their fathers ?

EDGAR : Poor Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER : Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cruel daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leave you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take you home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.

KENT : My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.

KING LEAR : First, let me talk to this philosopher. What are you researching ?

EDGAR : I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.

KENT : *[To Gloucester.]* Ask him again, my lord. He's beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.

[Gloucester holds his torch it in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]

GLOUCESTER : I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen – the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please, your majesty, come with me.



EDGAR : Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER : Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.

KENT : This way, your majesty.

KING LEAR : *[Pointing to Edgar.]* I am going with him!

KENT : My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.

GLOUCESTER : OK, Sir, come on; come with us.

KING LEAR : Let's go then, my good philosopher.

[They exit.]

Exercises

from Act III Scene II, Scene III & Scene IV

1. Answer the following questions :

1. Despite showing loyalty to his father, Gloucester didn't totally trust Edmund. Explain.
2. Gloucester sometimes showed some wisdom and loyalty. Do you agree ? Why / Why not ?
3. Edmund is a symbol of dishonesty in many situations. Give two examples.
4. A friend in need is a friend indeed. How can this be applied to King Lear ?
5. If you were one of the loyal people who were around the King, what would you do to make it easy for the King ?
6. "Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes." How far is this true ?
7. What did the cruel daughters ask Gloucester to do ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Gloucester with King Lear.
 a. criticized b. apologized c. sympathized d. recognized
2. Edmund showed his father's secrets to Cornwall in order to
 a. get his brother arrested b. live in his palace
 c. punish his father d. win his trust
3. Kent, the Fool and went in a hut to shelter from the violent storm.
 a. the King b. Edmund c. Oswald d. Cornwall
4. enters the hut disguised as a madman calling himself Poor Tom.
 a. Kent b. Edgar c. Gloucester d. Oswald
5. Gloucester told the King that tried to kill him although he loved him more than anyone else.
 a. Kent b. the Fool c. Edgar d. Edmund

Answers of Advanced level

Unit (1)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. lies
2. d. cell
3. a. immune
4. c. infected
5. b. viral

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. needn't have gone
2. d. must
3. b. have to
4. d. won't have to
5. d. needn't have

Unit (2)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. reason
2. c. popularity
3. d. occasion
4. b. amounted to
5. c. tradition

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. him
2. c. A few more
3. c. good
4. b. closer
5. b. I am

Unit (3)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. varieties
2. c. original plan
3. a. stuff
4. b. cropped
5. c. produce

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. are going to step
2. a. will become
3. c. won't be persuaded
4. c. will be doing
5. d. won't accept

Unit (4)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. appealed
2. c. communicate
3. c. cited
4. b. get
5. b. communicate

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. should
2. c. should
3. a. couldn't have passed
4. d. a & c
5. b. should arrive

Unit (5)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. character
2. a. to do with
3. c. a & b
4. d. upgraded
5. a. tone

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. a & c
2. b. be met
3. b. intention
4. d. no word
5. a. me to have

Unit (6)

Advanced Exercise On Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. falling out
2. b. brought back
3. a. beg
4. d. piles
5. a. get into

Advanced Exercise On Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. would live
2. c. but
3. d. Had he
4. b. did not
5. b. weren't

تصريح وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ١٠٤ - ١٣ - ٢ - ٥٨

EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

New Hello!

By A Group Of Supervisors

Skills

داخل الملحق المهارات اللغوية



QUESTION BANK

بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية طبقًا لنواتج التعلم

للصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

2nd Sec.

2024

FIRST TERM

عام - أزهرى

CONTENTS



PART 1 Follow your progress in vocabulary page 3

PART 2 A week is enough page 8

PART 3 Skills page 87

PART ONE | Follow your progress in vocabulary

تابع مستواك فى اتقان المفردات اللغوية باستخدام code QR للتدريب الالكترونى المستمر

Unit 1

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	يتصرف/يسلك - تصرُّف/سلوك	infect(ed) (v)	
.....	القيام بشيء - تصرُّف	infection(n)	
.....	يستجيب - يتصرف بناء على	infectious(adj)	
.....	استجابة - رد فعل	operate(d) (v)	
.....	يدع / يترك - يسمح	operation(n)	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	يُعزز - يوطد - يدعم	immune(adj)	
.....	تعزيز - توطيد - دعم	organ(n)	
.....	خلية	viral(adj)	
.....	الجهاز المناعى	virus(n)	

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	سماح - علاوة	perform(ed) (v)	
.....	الإنعاش القلبى الرئوى	performance (n)	
.....	يُرشد - مُرشد	resilience(n)	
.....	إرشاد	severe(adj)	
.....		technique(n)	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	نظام غذائى	lung	
.....	المخ	mistake	
.....	سعادة - سرور	cough	
.....	خطير - حاد	champion	

Unit 2

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	كمية	prepare(d) (v)	
.....	يحتفل بـ - يُحيي مناسبة	rare (adj)	
.....	يأكل خارج المنزل	salty (adj)	
.....	غالي الثمن	serve(d) (v)	
.....	يلتقي	spicy (adj)	
.....	مُناسبة - يُسبب	strong(adj)	

PART 1

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	فضول	roasted	
.....	الحلو (بعد الوجبة)	traditional	
.....	عيد - مهرجان	strong	
.....	عيد الشكر	extract	
.....	منتشر - شائع	herring	

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	يسقى من نفس الكأس	difficult	
.....	شخص أجنبي	general	
.....	جذاب	lamb	
.....	متحير	optional	
.....	معقد - مركب	chopsticks	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	صعب	personally(adv)	
.....	اختيار - بديل	remember(ed) (v)	
.....	الماضي	repeat(ed) (v)	
.....	شخصي	simple(adj)	

Unit 3

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	مؤسسة - منظمة	invest (ed) (v)	
.....	(علم) الزراعة	million(n)	
.....	مليار	percent (adj - adv)	
.....	محصول غذائي	produce(d) (v)	
.....	كوكب الأرض - تراب	produce(n)	
.....	ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	production(n)	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	ريفي	original	
.....	جدال - نقاش	population	
.....	بكفاءة	continent	
.....	دليل	main	
.....	يعيد استخدام	essay	

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	مُبتكِر - مُخترِع	source(n)	
.....	مُستدام	sustainable(adj)	
.....	حيوانات المزارع	variety(n)	
.....	بسبب	seriously	
.....	مواد كيميائية	create	
.....	أخرى	guest	
.....	[illegible]	speculate	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	الطحالب	summarise (d) (v)	
.....	عملاق	summary(n)	
.....	أرض زراعية	topic(n)	
.....	الزراعة المائية (بدون تربة)	urban(adj)	
	الغشب البحرى	vegetarian(n)	

Unit 4

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	اختصار	innovator(n)	
.....	اختصار بالحروف الأولى	linguist(n)	
.....	نصيحة	misunderstand	
.....	تطبيق	face-to-face	
.....	ترتيب	positively	
.....	مؤلف	expressions	
.....	عيوب	facial	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	مُدوَّنة (على الإنترنت) - يُدوِّن	message(d) (n - v)	
.....	مُدوِّن	messaging(n)	
.....	يؤدي معني - يتواصل	procedure(n)	
.....	التواصل - الاتصال	prefix(n)	
.....	خلاصة - خاتمة	suffix(n)	
.....	نتائج	selfie(n)	

PART 1

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	بلصح	necessarily(adv)	
.....	رمز تعبيري	negative(adj)	
.....	رسمي	positive(adj)	
.....	نجهم - عبوس	request(ed) (n - v)	
.....	يفنس - بنجهم (بكشّر)	tone(n)	
.....	بومى	suitable	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	عنوان رئيسي	sub-heading(n)	
.....	مقدمة	thesaurus(n)	
.....	صحيح - مناسب	blogger (n)	
.....	يسهل التعرف عليه	comment (ed) (v)	
.....	بحث استطلاعى	debate (n)	
.....	يسئ استخدام	frequently (adv)	

Unit 5

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	يتخيف - يتأفلم	reliable(adj)	
.....	إعلان	unreliable(adj)	
.....	لافتة إعلانية	search results	
.....	إعلان مُموّل	subscribe(d) (v)	
.....	إعلان مُوَجّه	take down	
.....	يستشير	tone(n)	
.....	ملفات تعريف الارتباط		

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	منصة - رصيف	employee	
.....	عرض تقديمى	entertain	
.....	مبرمجين	register	
.....	يشتت - يصرف انتباه	likes	
.....	مشاعر	victim	
.....	يستثير التفكير	highlight	

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	يُنزّل (من الإنترنت) - يحمّل	up-to-date(adj)	
.....	التنزيل	update(d) (v-n)	
.....	يتابع - يتبع - يُنفذ	upgrade(d) (v)	
.....	مُتابع	upload(ed) (v-n)	
.....	منشور - ينشر على مواقع التواصل	view (n)	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	فدمن	sensible(adj)	
.....	سلوك - تصرُّف	symbol(n)	
.....	الملف الشخصى	year of birth	

Unit 6

Model A

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	يلوشل - يستجدي - يتسول	mean(adj)	
.....	تربيمة - أنشودة	pile(d) (up) (v)	
.....	عيد الميلاد	pile(n)	
.....	يفصل من العمل	sigh(ed) (v - n)	
.....	مدفاه - نار	tone (n)	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	تذكّر - يُعيد ذكري	hang out with (phr. v)	
.....	يشاجر - يتساقط	keep in touch with	
.....	يندمج - يألف	lose touch	
.....	يتورط فى	get on with	

Model B

Lessons 1 & 2

.....	صاحب العمل	attention	
.....	كريم - سخى	donation	
.....	بما فى ذلك	employee	
.....	بعيد	logical	
.....	مساعد	regret	

Lessons 3 & 4

.....	قلادة - عُقد	apparently	
.....	يخمن	friendship	
.....	يتجاهل	leader	
.....	علاقة	reunion	
.....	مؤدب	organise	

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط

DAYS 1&2 General Revision on Units

مراجعة عامة على وحدات المنهج



1. General Revision on Vocabulary (each two units) followed by Exercise for Practice.

 مراجعة علي المفردات اللغوية (كل وحدتين علي حدة) متبوعة بتمرين للتدريب

2. General Revision on Structures (each two units) followed by Exercise for practice.

 مراجعة علي القواعد اللغوية (كل وحدتين علي حدة) متبوعة بتمرين للتدريب



DAY 3 1. Reading Comprehension

تدرب على حل قطع الفهم من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة



2. Translation

تدرب على حل نماذج الترجمة من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة



3. Writing (Related written essay models)

نماذج محلولة للمقالات المرتبطة بموضوعات القراءة

DAYS 4, 5, 6&7



1. 20 Model Exams from different governorates.

 ١. عشرون اختبارًا من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة.

2. Al Azhar & Inclusive students Exams.

 ٢. اختبارات الأزهر الشريف وطلاب الدمج.

DAYS 1&2 General Revision on Units

General Revision on Vocabulary & Structures of each two units

1 General Revision On Vocabulary Units 1&2

Unit 1

act(ed) (v)	يؤدي / يتصرف	guide(d) (v-n)	يرشد- مرشد
action (n)	أداء - حدث	immune system(n)	الجهاز المناعي
allow (ed) (v)	يدع / يترك - يسمح	immune(adj)	ذو مناعة - ذو حصانة
allowance (n)	سماح - علاوة	infect(ed) (v)	يعدي - يلتهب
boost (ed) (v - n)	يعزز/ يوطد / يدعم - تعزيز / دعم	infection(n)	عدوي - مرض مُعدِي
		operate(d) (v)	يُشغل - يُجري جراحة
cell(n)	خلية	operation(n)	تشغيل - عملية جراحية
COVID- 19 (Coronavirus Disease 2019)	فيروس كورونا المستجد	organ(n)	عضو (بالجسم)
		perform(ed) (v)	يقوم بـ - يؤدي
		performance (n)	أداء - عرض
CPR (Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation)	الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	react(ed) (v)	يستجيب - يتصرف
		severe(adj)	شديد - حاد - مزمن
guidance(n)	إرشاد	technique(n)	أسلوب / تقنية
		virus(n)	فيروس

Unit 2

amount(n)	كمية	personal(adj)	شخصي
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ - يُحيي مناسبة	prepare(d) (v)	يُعِدّ / يجهّز
celebrity(n)	شخص مشهور - الشهرة	prepared(adj)	مُعَدّ - مستعد - جاهز
difficult(adj)	صعب	remember(ed) (v)	يتذكر
difficulty(n)	صعوبة - مأزق	repeat(ed) (v)	يكرر - يعيد
eat out	يأكل خارج المنزل	serve(d) (v)	يخدم - يقدم طعام أو شراب
get together	يلتقي - يتجمع	simple(adj)	بسيط
occasion(ed) (n - v)	مُناسَبة - يُسبب	Thanksgiving(n)	عيد الشكر
option(n)	اختيار - بديل	tradition(n)	تقليد - عادة موروثة
past(n - adj)	الماضي	traditional(adj)	تقليدي

General Exercises On Vocabulary (Units 1&2)

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Taking protective measures will help reduce the
 a. technique b. immune system c. infection d. cell

PART 2

2. A / An can make lots of people very ill.
a. organ b. virus c. muscle d. brain

3. She has cut her finger and now it is She tries to stop it by covering the cut.
a. infecting b. reacting c. boosting d. bleeding

4. The skin is the body's largest
a. organ b. virus c. muscle d. brain

5. The advertisement will really the number of toys the shops sell.
a. infect b. react c. boost d. bleed

6. You can see a/an of an onion using a simple microscope.
a. technique b. immune system c. chest d. cell

7. A lot of people have been with COVID – 19.
a. infected b. reacted c. boosted d. bled

8. A good diet can help to support the
a. technique b. immune system c. chest d. cell

9. We hope the patient will to the new medicine.
a. infect b. react c. boost d. bleed

10. Don't repeat yourself. Try using a new to solve the problem.
a. technique b. membrane c. organ d. cell

11. A person who is obese has to reduce the of food they eat.
a. occasion b. amount c. chopsticks d. extract

12. Talk to little children using a language they can understand.
a. simple b. curious c. personal d. complicated

13. The Aymans his promotion in a five-star hotel.
a. served b. ate out c. celebrated d. prepared

14. Celebrating Sham El-Nessim outdoors is a / an I will never miss.
a. occasion b. amount c. chopsticks d. extract

15. I need help with this lesson because I find it
a. simple b. traditional c. personal d. complicated

16. I must myself to what will happen to avoid being shocked.
a. serve b. eat out c. celebrate d. prepare

17. I've read a / an of this novel. It is really worth reading.
a. occasion b. quantity c. chopsticks d. extract

18. Colouring eggs on Sham El-Nassim day is something It dates back to the time of the Pharaohs.
a. simple b. traditional c. personal d. complicated

19. They great seafood here in this restaurant.
a. serve b. eat out c. celebrate d. prepare

20. The Chinese find it easy to eat using
a. oysters b. amount c. chopsticks d. seafood

2 General Revision On Structures Units 1&2

1 must & have to

Uses of "must"

- تُستخدم (must + inf.) فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل فى الحالات التالية:

1 التعبير عن القوانين والقواعد العامة :

ex. - Drivers must wear seatbelts.

2 التعبير عن الالتزام الداخلى النابع من رغبة شخصية إذا كان الفاعل (I – We) :

ex. - I must work hard for the exams. (رغبتى الشخصية فى النجاح هى التى تفرض علىّ ذلك)
- I must buy a present for my mother tomorrow. (أمى لم تفرض علىّ شراء هدية لها)
- We must buy souvenirs for our friends here. (أصدقائنا لم يطلبوا هدايا)

3 إعطاء نصيحة قوية (الشخص مُقرّب أومن طبيب لمريض مثلا) :

ex. - You must stop smoking.
- You must wash your hands before you eat.

4 توجيه الدعوة بقوة (دعوة حارّة لشخص مُقرّب) :

ex. - Sama, you must come to my birthday party tonight.
- You must come and see us at the weekend.

Uses of "mustn't"

- تُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل فى الحالات التالية:

التعبير عن المنع أو التحريم أو عدم السماح (طبقًا للقوانين والقواعد والأعراف) :

ex. - You must not park outside the entrance.
- You must not make loud noise after 9 o'clock.
- You mustn't park here. It's forbidden.
- You mustn't smoke in hospitals.

Uses of "have to / has to"

1 التعبير عن الالتزام المفروض من الخارج (أى يوجد اجبار) مثل الإلتزام بالقوانين والقواعد فى مواقف محددة فى زمنى المضارع والمستقبل :

ex. - I have to pay the bill الفاتورة or the internet service will be disconnected.
- My children have to study ancient history at school next year.

2 تُستخدم (will have to + inf.) للتعبير عن شئ من المهم القيام به فى المستقبل :

ex. - The flight is at six in the morning, so we'll have to get up very early.

3 تُستخدم (had to + inf.) كصيغة الماضى من (have to / must) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بصفة عامة فى الماضى :

ex. - Aya had to cook the family dinner yesterday. (إثبات مبنى للمعلوم)
- Aya didn't have to cook the family dinner yesterday. (نفى)
- Did Aya have to cook the family dinner yesterday? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What did Aya have to do yesterday? (سؤال بـ «أداة استفهام»)
- The family dinner had to be cooked (by Aya) yesterday. (مبنى للمجهول)

PART 2

mustn't & don't / doesn't + have to + inf.

١ تعبر (mustn't) عن الإلزام الا يجب - غير مسموح - ممنوع)

- Students mustn't make noise in the exam room.

٢ تعبر (don't / doesn't have / need to) عن شيء ليس من الضروري القيام به لكن يستطيع الفاعل القيام به إن أراد:

- Students don't need to get up early on Friday as it is a holiday.

didn't need to & needn't have + p.p.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't + need / have to + inf.) , (needn't have + p.p.) :

١ تعبر (didn't + need / have to + inf.) عن شيء كان الفاعل يعلم أنه ليس ضرورياً لذلك لم يقم به :

ex. - It was raining, so I didn't need to water the flowers.
(It wasn't necessary, so I didn't do that.)

٢ تعبر (needn't have + p.p.) عن شيء لم يكن الفاعل يعلم انه ليس ضرورياً ولذلك تم القيام به :

ex. - Ali needn't have bought meat. We have enough in the freezer.
(Ali didn't know that we have enough meat, so he bought more unnecessarily.)

2 Comparative and Superlative Forms صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل

	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
Use الإستخدام	تقارن صفة المقارنة بين طرفين: - Arabic is easier than English. - A lion is more dangerous than a fox. - Chicken is less expensive than meat.	تميّز صفة التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة أكثر من طرفين: - French is the easiest subject. - The lion is the most dangerous animal. - The rabbit is the least dangerous animal.
Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - fast - faster - old - older يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) : - large - larger - close - closer يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير اذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة: - big - bigger - thin - thinner - hot - hotter - fit - fitter	يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلي الصفة القصيرة : - fast - the fastest - old - the oldest يُضاف (the ...+ st) فقط إلي الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) : - large - the largest - close - the closest يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير اذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلي الصفة القصيرة: - big - the biggest - thin - the thinnest - hot - the hottest - fit - the fittest
Adjectives ending in (y) الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y)	تتحول (y) المسبوقة بحرف ساكن إلي (ier) : - easy - easier - happy - happier - lazy - lazier - healthy - healthier	تتحول (y) المسبوقة بحرف ساكن إلي (the ...+ iest) : - easy - the easiest - happy - the happiest - lazy - the laziest - healthy - the healthiest

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة	تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلي صيغة المقارنة كالتالي: - more أكثر/less أقل + adj. صفة - more/less beautiful - أكثر/أقل جمالاً	تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلي صيغة التفضيل كالتالي: - the most الأكثر/the least الأقل + adj. صفة - the most/the least beautiful - الأكثر/الأقل جمالاً

3 Expressing equality/inequality صيغ التعبير عن التساوي/عدم التساوي

١ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوي:

→ **as + adj.** الصفة **+ as**

ex. - Aya is as old as Nada. They are both 17.
- Drinking fresh juice is nearly as useful as eating fresh fruit.

٢ في حالة النفي تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:

→ **not + as/so + adj.** الصفة **+ as**

ex. - I am not as old as Omar. = - I am not so old as Omar.

٣ لاحظ أن :

→ **as + adj.** الصفة **+ as = the same +** الاسم من الصفة **+ as**

ex. - Ahmed is as old as Hussein. = - Ahmed is the same age as Hussein.

لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (as + اسم + the same) من الصفات الآتية:

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
big / small	size حجم	long	length طول مسافة او مدة
deep	depth عمق	old / young	age عمر
expensive / cheap	price سعر	strong	strength قوة
far / near	distance مسافة	wide	width عرض/اتساع
high / tall	height ارتفاع/علو/طول		

ex. - The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.
= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

General Exercises On Structures (Units 1&2)

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The heart pump a lot of blood through your body.
 a. has to b. need to c. doesn't have to d. mustn't
2. You eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them.
 a. must b. have to c. mustn't d. don't have to
3. Wrap the bandage around the injured person's arm. You make it very tight, but make sure it can't come off.
 a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. a & c
4. You..... pay to go in the museum. It is free to enter.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. needn't d. b & c
5. If anything is in the injured person's arm, you pull it out because it could hurt them more.
 a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. mustn't

PART 2

6. Leila work hard if she wants to pass her exams.
a. must b. has to c. had to d. needn't have

7. You take a bandage or cloth and press it down on the area which is bleeding.
a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. a & c

8. You forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold!
a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. b & c

9. You put on gloves before helping someone who's bleeding.
a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. mustn't

10. You buy a ticket before you get on the train.
a. should b. shouldn't c. have to d. don't have to

11. Tomorrow, I will be We can meet then.
a. busy b. busier c. less busier d. less busy

12. The you work, the more you will achieve.
a. hard b. harder c. hardly d. less hard

13. Let's leave. This's film I have ever watched here in this cinema.
a. a bad b. a worse c. the worst d. best

14. Alexandria is the second city in Egypt.
a. largest b. the largest c. larger d. least large

15. My car is expensive, but your car is expensive.
a. the most b. more c. even more d. b & c

16. Most students have gone home, but are still waiting in front of the school.
a. all b. none c. some d. any

17. They don't allow here.
a. smoking b. smoke c. to smoke d. a & c

18. My tablet is good, but my sister's is
a. good b. better c. best d. more good

19. Sama is the same as Abdulrahman.
a. old b. older c. oldest d. age

20. Nasser is my friend.
a. close b. closest c. a & b d. the closest

3 General Revision On Vocabulary Units 3&4

Unit 3

agriculture (n)	(علم) الزراعة	production (n)	إنتاج
algae (n)	الطحالب	produce (d) (v)	ينتج
crop (n)	محصول غذائي	produce (n)	منتج زراعي
earth (n)	كوكب الأرض - تراب	seaweed (n)	العشب البحري
farming (n)	الزراعة	source (n)	مصدر
farmland (n)	أرض زراعية	sustainable (adj)	مستدام / دائم- صديق للبيئة
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية	urban (adj)	حضري - مدني
innovation (n)	ابتكار / اختراع - عملية الابتكار	variety (n)	تشكيلة - التنوع - نوع / صنف
livestock (n)	حيوانات المزارع	vegetarian (n)	نباتي (لا يأكل اللحوم بأنواعها)

Unit 4

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	introduction (n)	مقدمة
acronym (n)	احتصار بالأحرف الأولى	linguist (n)	خبير لغة - عالم لغة
blog (ged) (n - v)	مُدوّنة (على الإنترنت) - يُدوّن	message (d) (n - v)	رسالة - يراسل - يتبادل الرسائل
communicate (d) (v)	يؤدي معنى - يتواصل	messaging (n)	التراسل - المراسلة
communication (n)	التواصل - الاتصال	misunderstand - misunderstood (v)	يُسئ فهم
conclusion (n)	خلاصة - خاتمة	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة - حتماً
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيري	prefix (n)	مقطع بادئ
findings (n)	نتائج	procedure (n)	إجراءات - نُهج
formal (adj)	رسمي	selfie (n)	صورة شخصية
frown (n)	تجهم - عبوس	suffix (n)	مقطع تالي
frown (ed) (v)	يعبس - يتجهم (يكشر)	tone (n)	نغمة الصوت - النبرة
innovator (n)	مُبتكر - مُخترع		

General Exercises On Vocabulary (Units 3&4)

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Around 30% of Egyptians work in farming and
 a. algae b. agriculture c. source d. variety
2. It is not to use petrol in cars, as one day, we will have no more oil.
 a. clear b. various c. sustainable d. extraordinary
3. My uncle keeps on his farm, such as sheep and goats.
 a. proposal b. chemicals c. innovation d. livestock
4. The weather has been very good for the cotton this year.
 a. crop b. evidence c. education d. rainfall
5. Food went up after the company bought new equipment for its factory.
 a. hydroponics b. vegetarian c. production d. algae
6. Technological means that we can now make seawater safe to drink.
 a. livestock b. innovation c. information d. seaweed
7. The of crops grown on that farm is huge.
 a. algae b. celebration c. source d. variety
8. The Nile is the main of freshwater for drinking and agriculture.
 a. source b. produce c. organisation d. rainforest
9. Being a/an:... he eats no meat at all.
 a. agriculturalist b. vegetarian c. farmer d. nocturnal
10. To be healthy, your diet should fresh fruit and vegetables.
 a. invest b. include c. involve d. b & c
11. We usually use English when we send text messages to friends.
 a. formal b. informal c. official d. unofficial
12. He is a real He can improve or create new devices.
 a. blogger b. linguist c. abbreviation d. innovator
13. A photo that I take to myself is called a / an
 a. selfie b. acronym c. message d. emoji
14. Donating money does not mean that someone is rich. It usually means they are generous.
 a. positively b. negatively c. necessarily d. loudly

PART 2

15. A person who does not like you is more likely to you.
a. recommend b. support c. understand d. misunderstand
16. Mm! Don't expect her to agree after she has
a. followed b. frowned c. concluded d. communicated
17. "OU" is a / an of 'Open University'.
a. blogger b. linguist c. abbreviation d. innovator
18. His sharp frightens her.
a. tone b. suffix c. selfie d. thesaurus
19. A well-known has created the material for this course.
a. blogger b. linguist c. abbreviation d. innovator
20. A smiling icon is a / an which expresses happiness or satisfaction.
a. selfie b. acronym c. message d. emoji

4 General Revision On Structures Units 3&4

1 Uses of "will + inf." استخدامات "will + inf."

1. Future facts الحقائق المستقبلية	ex. - Nada will become four years old next Monday.
2. Prediction without evidence التنبؤ دون دليل	وفى هذه الحالة يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوى على افعال مثل : be sure, think, believe, expect, hope, wonder يتساءل , be afraid يخشى , doubt يشك ex. - I think the match will be very exciting. - I doubt I'll go out tonight. ومن الممكن أن يُستخدم مع (will) بعض الظروف مثل : perhaps, possibly, probably, surely, certainly, definitely ex. - Perhaps I'll see him at the party. - I'll probably stay in Cairo for a week.
3. Quick decisions القرارات السريعة	ex. - That's the phone – I'll answer it.
4. Offers العروض	ex. - I'll go shopping with you if you like.
5. Request الطلب	ex. - Will you help me with my homework?
6. Warning التحذير	ex. - Take the medicine regularly or your health will get worse.
7. Promises الوعود	ex. - I will buy you a new mobile when you pass your final exam.
8. First conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى	ex. - If I have enough money, I will travel around the world.

2 The future continuous (will / may + be + inf. + ing)

Form	The Future Continuous Tense زمن المستقبل المستمر
Affirmation & Negation الإثبات والنفي	→ Subj. + will / won't + be + inf. + ing ex. - Reem will be doing the housework all morning tomorrow. ex. - At five next Friday, I will be visiting one of my old friends.
تستخدم (may) بدلًا من (will) للتنبؤ بأحداث قد تكون مستمرة فى المستقبل فى حالة عدم التأكد :	
→ subj. + may be + inf. + ing ex. - When Rodayna is 20, she may be studying medicine at university.	

3 Uses of (be + going to + inf.) الاستخدامات

1. Personal plans and intentions الخطط الشخصية والنوايا 2. Prediction based on evidence or present reality الشئ القائم على دليل أو واقع حالي	plan, have a plan, intend يدبر , have intentions لديه النية ex. - My brother intends to live in Aswan. He is going to buy a flat there. و المقصود بالدليل هنا انه يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بحدوث الشيء في المستقبل: ex. - My aunt is pregnant حامل. She is going to have a baby.
3. Prepared decisions القرارات المسبقة 4. Actions that are about to happen احداث على وشك الوقوع	decided, have decided / made a decision / made up his mind اتخذ القرار ex. - I have decided to change my car. I'm going to buy a modern one. وفي هذه الحالة يمكن أن نستخدم بعض العبارات الخاصة بالتنبيه أو لفت الانتباه مثل: Watch out! = Look out! انتبه / Be careful! = Take care! احترس ex. - Look out! You are going to drop the plates.

4 Uses of (be + inf. + ing) الاستخدامات

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية (أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها في وقت محدد في المستقبل لاحظ انه لابد من وجود تعبير زمني يدل على المستقبل حتى يعبر المضارع المستمر عن المستقبل)

١ تدل التعبيرات الآتية على وجود ترتيبات :

arranged, made arrangements, prepared, ...

ex. - Everything is arranged. We are leaving to Cairo at five tomorrow.
- My brother is getting married next month.

٢ الإجتماعات واللقاءات الرسمية وكذلك المناسبات الاجتماعية (مثل حفلات أعياد الميلاد والزفاف والزيارات والمقابلات ...) تستلزم ترتيبات لذلك فهي غالبًا تكون في صيغة المضارع المستمر) بشرط تحديد وقت الحدوث :

ex. - Sama is celebrating her birthday party next Monday.
- My sister is getting married tomorrow.

٣ يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث على وشك أن تبدأ خاصة مع أفعال مثل:

(come, leave, go ...)

- Sorry, I can't wait. I am leaving for the airport.

٤ غالبًا لا تستخدم أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية وفعل (be) في الأزمنة المستمرة :

ex. - I am going to see the coral reefs الشعاب المرجانية in the Red Sea next month during my stay there. (Not: am seeing)

5 The Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Uses	Subject الفاعل + F.C. التصريف الأول / (inf. + s , es , ies) ...
Events on a timetable أشياء تحدث حسب جدول مواعيد مثل مواعيد وسائل المواصلات - البرامج - الأفلام ... إلخ	ex. - The course starts in October. - The main evening news is at 9 o'clock. - My plane leaves at 7.30 in the morning.

PART 2

Part 1: Reporting orders, requests and advice تحويل جمل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة إلى الكلام غير المباشر

١ تتكون جملة الأمر / النهي في الكلام غير المباشر من :

مُبَلِّغ + → فعل إبلاغ + → مخاطب + → to / not to + → باقي الجملة + ... المصدر. Inf

Father / Noha	asked / warned	Yara / Azza	to / not to	help her mother. / leave children alone.

٢ يُستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب بعد المُبَلِّغ (المتكلم)، مثل :

told أخبر/ قال - asked طلب - ordered أمر - commanded أمر - reminded ذكّر - warned حذّر - taught علّم - wanted أراد - invited دعي - instructed أمر - encouraged شجع - advised نصح - threatened هدد - expected توقع + obj. المخاطب.....

Part 2: should have – could have

1 should - should have

should / shouldn't + inf. يجب أن / ينبغي أن

١ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة :

→ should / shouldn't + inf. يجب / ينبغي أن / ألا

ex. - You look very tired. You should take some rest. You shouldn't work more today.
- You shouldn't eat so much fast food. It's not good for you.

٢ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) لطلب النصيحة:

ex. - What should I see while I'm in Aswan ?
- Should Fady tell his boss about the lost file ?

٣ وتُستخدم (should + inf.) لتقديم اقتراحات (suggestion) أو عمل توصيات (recommendation) :

ex. - You should try the fish in this restaurant. It is great.
- You should get a map of Cairo before you go there.

٤ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + inf.) للتعبير عن الرأي الشخصي :

ex. - Sama should study engineering. She is very clever at maths.

٥ تستخدم (should have+ p.p.) في لوم أو انتقاد شخص على عدم فعل شيء كان من المفروض أن يفعله :

ex. - Karim should have cleaned his room. (لكن لم يقم كريم بذلك)
- Ahmed should have paid the bill. (لكن لم يدفع أحمد الفاتورة)

٦ تستخدم (shouldn't have+ p.p.) في لوم أو انتقاد شخص على فعل شيء كان من المفروض ألا يفعله :

ex. - You shouldn't have got up so late. (لكنك استيقظت متأخراً بالفعل)
- The Emergency Exit doors shouldn't have been locked. (لكن مخرج الطوارئ كان مغلقاً)

2 could - could have

١ تُستخدم (could) للتعبير عن قدرة عامة فى الماضى (مثل السباحة وقيادة السيارة والتحدث بلغة معينة ... الخ):

... could / couldn't + inf.

ex. - She could read at the age of five.
- I couldn't swim until the age of twelve.

٢ غالباً لا تُستخدَم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شىء محدد فى موقف معين فى الماضى (past achievement).
لكن تُستخدم الصيغ التالية :

... was / were able to + inf. كان قادرًا على

ex. - We were able to arrive home through traffic jam.

... managed to + inf. تمكن أن

ex. - I managed to repair my car.

... succeeded in + (inf. + ing) نجح فى أن

ex. - I succeeded in sending that email after many attempts. محاولات

٣ لكن تُستخدَم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء محدد فى موقف معين فى الماضى (past achievement)
مع أفعال الحواس والإدراك مثل :

... could + smell, taste, see, hear, touch, think, believe, remember, understand ... etc.

ex. - I knew they were at home. I could hear their voices inside.
- She spoke to me before, but I couldn't remember her name.
- The food was terrible. I could taste nothing but salt.

٤ عند التعبير عن عدم القدرة أو عدم الإستطاعة فى الماضى نستخدم:

couldn't + inf. = wasn't / weren't + able to + inf.

ex. - I couldn't understand what he said. = I wasn't able to understand what he said.

٥ يمكن أن تعبر (could have + P.P) عن استنتاج ضعيف فى الماضى :

...could + have + p.p. = may / might + have + p.p.

ex. - He didn't visit us for a long time. He could have been busy.
- He didn't visit us for a long time. He might have been busy.

٦ لكن للحظ أن (couldn't have + p.p.) تعبر عن استنتاج قوى منفى فى الماضى :

...couldn't + have + p.p. = ...can't + have + p.p. ...

ex. - Mr Ayman's passport is still in the office, so he couldn't (can't) have travelled abroad.
من غير الممكن أن يكون قد سافر وجواز سفره لا يزال فى المكتب.

٧ وتُستخدم (could have + P.P.) للتعبير عن حدث بديل (alternative possibility) :
أى حدث كان الفاعل يستطيع القيام به فى الماضى لكنه لم يفعل :

ex. - I could have bought an iPhone instead of the Samsung.
- فى المثال السابق: كنت أستطيع شراء أيفون لكنني لم افعل واشتريت سامسونج بالفعل.

٨ وتُستخدم (could have + P.P.) عند تخيل حدث أو موقف كان من الممكن حدوثه فى الماضى لكنه لم يحدث :

ex. - Moataz was driving at a mad speed. He could have killed us.
- كان يمكن أن يقتلنا بسبب السرعة لكن لم يحدث شىء والمتحدث فقط يتخيل شىء كان من الممكن حدوثه فى الماضى.

PART 2

General Exercises On Structures (Units 3&4)

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I think he fish for dinner.
 a. will have b. having c. are going to have d. will have had
2. Someone's at the door. I who they are.
 a. seeing b. am going to see c. will see d. will have seen
3. After I this book, I'll have read all Mahfouz's novels.
 a. finish b. will finish c. will have finished d. will be finishing
4. This autumn, I a karate training course.
 a. join b. will be joined c. going to join d. am joining
5. We fish for dinner. It's been planned.
 a. will have b. having c. are going to have d. will have had
6. At one o'clock tomorrow, I..... lunch with my friends.
 a. will have eaten b. will be eating c. going to eat d. eat
7. When I finish my course, I in a hospital.
 a. will probably work b. am probably working
 c. am probably going to work d. will probably have worked
8. There are a lot of people on the bus. It difficult to find a seat.
 a. is going to be b. will be c. will have been d. is being
9. I the office until I had checked that all the doors were locked.
 a. won't leave b. wouldn't leave c. hadn't left d. wasn't left
10. It's 38 degrees and it's only 9 a.m. It very hot today.
 a. was b. is going to be c. is being d. will be being
11. Ahmed have been unkind to his sister, Rodayna. He knew she would be upset.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
12. Hossam was working with me all day, so you have seen him at the park.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
13. Omar have helped Ali, but he didn't because they aren't friends anymore.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
14. Why hasn't he called? You said he would call when he got to the hotel and he have arrived by now.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
15. Thank you. It's a fantastic gift, but you have spent so much money on me.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
16. I have gone to bed earlier last night. I'm really tired today.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
17. I have practised playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret it.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
18. You have shouted at your sister. You knew it would make her unhappy and it was the wrong thing to do.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
19. You have caught the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't
20. You have seen Manal in the park this morning. She has been with me at my house all day.
 a. could b. couldn't c. should d. shouldn't

5 General Revision On Vocabulary Units 5&6

Unit 5

adapt (ed) (v)	بتكيف - يتأقلم	search results	نتائج البحث
advert = add = advertisement (n)	إعلان	sensible (adj)	حكيم - عقلاني
banner advert (n)	إعلان على لافتة	subscribe (d) (v)	يُسجِّل (في موقع) - يشترك
behaviour (n)	سلوك - تصرُّف	symbol (n)	رمز
consult (ed) (v)	يستشير - يتداول	take down	يُزيل (منشورا) - يُنزِّل - يُدوِّن
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	tone (n)	أسلوب - وَقْع - توجُّه
download (ed) (v -n)	يُنزِّل (من الإنترنت) - يُحمِّل - التنزيل	unreliable (adj)	غير موثوق به
follow (ed) (v)	يتابع - يتبع - يُنفِّذ	update (d) (v - n)	يُحدِّث - تحديث
follower (n)	مُتابِع - تابع	upgrade (d) (v)	يُحسِّن - يضيف مزايا جديدة
post (ed) (n - v)	منشور - ينشر على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي	upload (ed) (v - n)	يرفع (على الإنترنت) - الرفع
profile (n)	الملف الشخصي	up-to-date (adj)	مُحدَّث
reliable (adj)	موثوق به	view (n)	مشاهدة - رؤية

Unit 6

beg (ged) (v)	يتوسَّل - يستجدي - يتسول	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ
bring ... back (phr.v)	يُذكِّر - يُعيد ذكرى	lose touch	تنقطع علاقته بـ
fall out (phr.v)	يتشاجر - يتساقط	mean (adj)	بخيل
get into (phr.v)	يندمج - يألف - يستسيغ	pile(d) (up) (v)	يُكوِّم / يُكدِّس - يتكدس
get on with (phr.v)	يُحسِن التعامل مع	pile(n)	كومة - غرفة
hang out with (phr.v)	يُعاشِر - يألف - يُرافق	sigh(ed) (v - n)	يتنهد - تنهيدة

General Exercises On Vocabulary (Units 5&6)

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Click here to be a of the person or group.
 a. post b. view c. follower d. tone
2. Click here to a message or photo and share it.
 a. subscribe b. post c. addict d. chat
3. This shows you how many the video has had.
 a. unlikes b. views c. likes d. b & c
4. If you to the page, you will become a follower.
 a. subscribe b. post c. addict d. chat
5. My laptop has a problem. I need to a technician about it.
 a. follow b. consult c. upgrade d. take down
6. I will a new important file to this site.
 a. download b. upload c. update d. adapt
7. Please my photo. I don't like sharing my photos online.
 a. follow b. consult c. upgrade d. take down

PART 2

8. This version of the application is out of date. You need to it.
 a. download b. upload c. update d. adapt
9. The free service on this website is not good enough. I will to premium.
 a. follow b. consult c. upgrade d. take down
10. I am not sure if I will be able to to living abroad.
 a. download b. upload c. update d. adapt
11. Does that photo a lot to you?
 a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
12. The race starts when you the gun.
 a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
13. I'm sure Taha didn't to upset you.
 a. attend b. mean c. intend d. b & c
14. He doesn't work, so his boss will him.
 a. fire b. sack c. a & b d. shoot
15. He was so that he wouldn't spend money on anything.
 a. mean b. main c. generous d. a & c
16. Mr Mohammed has of work to do. He doesn't have any free time.
 a. feedback b. piles c. tones d. gifts
17. He didn't say anything, but I knew dad was disappointed when I heard him
 a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
18. Anna will her mum to make her a chocolate cake for her birthday because it is her favourite.
 a. fire b. mean c. sigh d. beg
19. Hassan and I are no longer friends. I have with him.
 a. fallen out b. hung out c. got into d. kept in
20. I didn't see him all day yesterday. He with his friends all day.
 a. fell out b. hung out c. got into d. kept in

6 General Revision On Structures Units 5&6

1 Seem

١ الفعل (seem) هو أحد الأفعال التقريرية التي يتبعها صفة وليس ظرف :

ex. - She seems happily. (✗) - She seems happy. (✓)

- ... seem/seems/ seemed + to + inf.

٢ تُستخدم (seem to) بمعني (يبدو أن) لوصف الحالة التي يبدو عليها الأشخاص أو الأشياء :

ex. - Sama seems to have too much work to do. (إثبات)
- Sama doesn't seem to have any free time. (نفي)
- Sama seems not to have any free time. (نفي)

- ... seem/seems/ seemed + to + have + p.p.

٣ تُستخدم هذه الصيغة لوصف حالة كانت مستمرة فى الماضي :

ex. - Rodayna doesn't have any money. She seems to have spent all the money on her.

→ It seems / seemed + (that / like) + جملة ... يبدو أن

لاحظ أنه يمكن حذف (that / like) :

ex. - It seemed (that) she didn't like the food.
ex. - It seems (like) he's going to sell his old car.

→ It seems / seemed + (as if) + جملة ... يبدو كما لو أن

ex. - It seems (as if) he needs help.

2 mean - meant - meant

- ... be meant to + inf. من المفترض أن

١ تُستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن الضرورة (necessity) أو الإلزام (obligation) :

ex. - You are meant to start work at seven.

٢ تُستخدم للتعبير عن المسئولية (responsibility) أو الواجب (duty) :

ex. - You were meant to keep the children out of trouble.

٣ تُستخدم بمعني (suitable) :

ex. - I don't think she's meant to be a teacher.
= I don't think she's suitable for the job of a teacher.

٤ كما تُستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض من شيء ما (purpose) :

ex. - This map was meant to show the places in this large city.
- School is meant to be educational.

٥ تُستخدَم هذه الصيغة التامة لتدل علي شيء من المفترض أنه تم بالفعل في الماضي (be meant to + have + p.p) :

ex. - Before the guests arrived, you were meant to have prepared everything.

3 (be) supposed to من المفترض أن / يُفترَض أن

Simple present form الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع

تتكون الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع من :

Obj. المفعول + am is are + supposed to + inf. ... المصدر

- I	am	supposed to	be there at 10.
- Aya	is	supposed to	arrive soon.
- The students	are	supposed to	study hard for the exam.

وتُستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في المضارع في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن اعتقاد شائع (common belief) بخصوص شخص / شيء معين :

ex. - This school is supposed to have the best staff.
= Many people think that this school has the best staff.

PART 2

١ التعبير عن التوقع (expectation) أو الترتيب (arrangement) في المضارع أو المستقبل:

ex. Manager: How many clients am I supposed to meet tomorrow?
Secretary: You are supposed to meet four clients, Sir.

٢ التعبير عن المسئولية (responsibility) أو الالتزام (obligation) أو الواجب (duty) في المضارع أو المستقبل:

ex. - You are supposed to be quiet in a library.
- Leen is supposed to look after her baby sister when her mother goes out tomorrow.

٣ التعبير عن النية (intention) أو الغرض (purpose) من شيء / شخص ما:

ex. - A TV channel logo is supposed to help viewers recognise it.
- A mobile is supposed to be used for making and receiving calls.
= A mobile is meant to be used for making and receiving calls.
= A mobile is intended to be used for making and receiving calls.

Simple past form الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي

تتكون الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي من :

Obj. المفعول	+ was were	+ supposed to	+ inf. ... المصدر
- Ahmed	was	supposed to	arrive home at nine.
- The tourists	were	supposed to	visit the pyramids.

وتستخدم الصيغة البسيطة في الماضي في الحالات التالية:

١ التعبير عن نية أو غرض لم يتحقق:

- You were supposed to come first, but we were shocked by your low marks.

٢ التعبير عن ترتيب أو توقع لم يتحقق في الماضي، وغالباً يصاحبها توضيح لذلك:

- I regret missing my plane. I was supposed to fly to London yesterday.

Perfect form الصيغة التامة

تتكون الصيغة التامة من :

Obj. المفعول	+ be	+ supposed to	+ have	+ p.p. ...
- Sama	was	supposed to	have written the essay.	
- The gardeners	were	supposed to	have watered the plants.	

وتستخدم هذه الصيغة فقط في الماضي عندما يكون الافتراض نفسه في الماضي ويخص أحداث سابقة عليه (يشبه استخدام الماضي التام):

ex. - When I saw Ahmed in the club, he was supposed to have taken his training.

4 Zero conditional — الحالة الصفرية

Uses الاستخدامات

١



If إذا / When عندما + مضارع بسيط , + مضارع بسيط ...

ex. - When / If I feel tired, I take some time to rest.
= I take some time to rest when / if I feel tired.

٢ التعبير عن العادات الثابتة أو المواقف التي لها نتيجة منطقية :

ex. - If / When I don't get enough sleep, I feel tired the next day.

٣ التعبير عن الحقائق العـــامة :

ex. - If / When we boil water, it turns into steam.
= If/When water is boiled, it turns into steam.
= If boiled, water turns into steam.

5 First conditional — الحالة الأولى

Uses الاستخدامات

١



If / Unless + مضارع بسيط + ... will / can / may + inf.

ex. - If he works hard, he'll pass the next exam.
= He'll pass the next exam if he works hard.

٢ تعبر الحالة الشرطية الأولي عن مواقف قابلة للحدوث في المستقبل:

ex. - If I have enough money, I will buy a car. (I believe I'll have enough money).

٣ يمكن أن تحل (can - may - might - must - should) محل (will) فى جملة جواب الشرط فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى - لاحظ المثال التالى :

ex. - If I feel hungry at work, I will have a snack. (sure متأكد)
- If I feel hungry at work, I can have a snack. (ability / possibility قدرة / إمكانية)

6 Second conditional — الحالة الثانية

Uses الاستخدامات

١



If / Unless + ماضي بسيط (تصريف ثان) + would / could / might + inf.

ex. - If he trained hard, he'd win the match.
= He'd win the match if he trained hard.

٢ تعبر الحالة الثانية عن مواقف تخيلية أو غير محتملة الحدوث في الوقت الحاضر والمستقبل:

ex. - If he were taller, he'd be good at basketball.

٣ إعطاء النصيحة بالصيغة (If I were) :

ex. - If I were you, I would see a doctor. You look very ill.

- لاحظ إمكانية استخدام (were) مع المفرد في حالة التخيل والنصيحة في الحالة الثانية:

ex. - Nada is ill today. If she were / was healthy, she would help you.

PART 2

7 Third conditional — الحالة الثالثة

Uses الاستخدامات

١ If + had + p.p.... + would / could / might + have + p.p.

Statement الجملة الخبرية → ex. - If he had won the competition, he'd have got the prize.
= He'd have got the prize if he had won the competition.

٢ تستخدم الحالة الثالثة فى حالة تخيل عكس ما حدث فى الماضى :

ex. - I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I would have stayed at home.

General Exercises On Structures (Units 5&6)

*** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Nada is supposed dinner.
 a. to cook b. to cooking c. to be cooked d. cooking
2. Dinner is supposed by Nada.
 a. to cook b. to cooking c. to be cooked d. cooking
3. I seem the first student to arrive at school today.
 a. being b. to being c. be d. to be
4. It to snow last week.
 a. didn't suppose b. wasn't supposed c. isn't supposed d. doesn't suppose
5. I it would snow last week.
 a. didn't suppose b. wasn't supposed c. isn't supposed d. don't suppose
6. Leen meant you but she unluckily forgot.
 a. to call b. to have called c. to be called d. calls
7. Amr seems a good day.
 a. have b. having c. to be having d. has
8. The train is meant at 9 o'clock.
 a. leaves b. leaving c. to be left d. to leave
9. My teacher to be happy with my work.
 a. meant b. supposed c. a & b d. seemed
10. My mother to be angry with me.
 a. seem b. seems c. is seeming d. is seemed
11. If I hadn't learnt English, I international friends.
 a. would have b. wouldn't have c. would have had d. wouldn't have had
12. He wouldn't have felt so alone if he about people.
 a. cares b. cared c. had cared d. hadn't cared
13. If we didn't take our map with us, we lost.
 a. might get b. might have got c. should get d. should have got
14. If you don't water plants, they
 a. die b. don't die c. died d. would die
15. He will be late if he the early train.
 a. miss b. misses c. missed d. had missed

DAY 3

1. Reading Comprehension

مهارة القراءة : تدرب على حل قطع الفهم من امتحانات المحافظات المختلفة

1 Read the text and choose the correct answer :

It has become common to see people of different ages without shelter. Shelter means warmth, comfort and security. This phenomenon is not a modern one, but it is deeply-rooted in societies all over the world. When you walk in the street, you can notice people lying on the sidewalks whether they beg or sleep. Beggary has become a common practice and an easy way of making money. We shouldn't encourage those beggars as most of **them** consider beggary a means of living using certain phrases to affect any passerby to get him to hand them a coin or a note.

In the street, we can come across homeless people who stay all their lives not caring about any conditions. They take everything easy. There are some people who lost their minds and we call them **mentally retarded**. Those people don't lead a comfortable and easy life. They may face numerous problems such as bullying, violence and diseases. It's our duty to care for them as they are suffering badly.

The issue of homelessness is not local, but it is global. This problem is due to many reasons such as family problems which compelled a lot of them to escape and settle in the street. Homelessness and poverty are closely related. Poor people must choose between important things as buying food or paying for medical care versus paying the rent. It's a thorny issue which needs great effort to find a solution to and other similar issues.

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The main idea of the passage is
 a. the issue of poverty
 b. the issue of homelessness
 c. unemployment
 d. a & b
2. are the causes of being homeless.
 a. The economic conditions
 b. The social conditions
 c. The environmental conditions
 d. Both the economic and social conditions
3. The underlined phrase "**mentally retarded**" refers to
 a. careless people
 b. bad people
 c. people who have mental disorders
 d. kind people
4. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to
 a. beggars
 b. homeless people
 c. blind people
 d. deaf people
5. The issue of homelessness has become one of the most problems.
 a. easy
 b. profitable
 c. complicated
 d. adventurous
6. According to the passage, it is to see people sleeping in the streets.
 a. rare
 b. unusual
 c. scare
 d. common
7. Do you think beggary is a social illness that must be eliminated ?
 a. I think so because it has a bad effect on social stability.
 b. I think we should encourage beggars as they are helpless.
 c. I think it is a good thing to beg in the street.
 d. I think people who ask for money need it badly.

PART 2

8. The writer sees that people living in the streets badly. (المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٣)
a. suffer b. ignore c. appreciate d. investigate

2 Read the text and choose the correct answer :

The Chinese invented paper and they were also the first to use paper banknotes for money. Before paper notes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders have used metal coins. These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on pieces of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the money with someone they trusted. Instead, they carried a piece of paper which said how much money they had. The trader could use this paper note to promise anyone that they could pay for the goods that they wanted to buy.

People in Europe only started to use paper banknotes in the seventeenth century. In England, the King needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with **them** and gave handwritten notes saying how much money they had left. The notes said, "I promise to pay the **bearer** the sum of ..." and you can still see the same words on English notes today. Bank workers continued to handwrite notes until 1853, when the first notes were printed. The paper used for banknotes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make the notes stronger than normal paper, most banknotes only last for about two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic notes for the first time. Today, many countries use plastic notes, which are stronger than paper notes, last longer and are harder to copy.

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Why did Chinese traders first use notes instead of coins ?
a. Because the coins were too heavy to carry b. Because coins had holes in them
c. Because traders could not trust everyone d. Because they preferred paper.

2. Why did banks in England first want people to leave their money with them ?
a. The King needed money to fight a war. b. People preferred notes to coins.
c. People wanted their money to be safe. d. Banks opened for the first time.

3. Why were notes handwritten until 1853 ?
a. It was cheaper this way. b. It was faster this way.
c. There was not any technology to print them before this time.
d. It was hard to copy the handwriting.

4. What is the main idea of the text ?
a. Why we use money. b. Why we use banks.
c. The history of paper banknotes. d. The history of trade.

5. What does the underlined word **them** refer to ?
a. the King's men b. the men in France
c. the people who had the money d. the banks

6. What does the word **bearer** mean ?
a. someone who works in a bank. b. a Chinese trader.
c. someone who carries something. d. someone who works for the King.

7. Where were paper banknotes first used ?
a. In China. b. In Europe. c. In England. d. In Australia.

8. When were paper banknotes first used ? (كفر الشيخ - غرب كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٣)
a. In the seventh century b. In the seventeenth century
c. In 1988 d. In 1983

2. Translation

مهارة الترجمة : تدرب على حل قطع الترجمة من امتحانات المحافظات المختلفة

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Most of the working women in Egypt shoulder many responsibilities, dividing their time between their work and bringing up their children.

a. غالبية السيدات العاملات فى مصر تأخذن مسئوليات عديدة موحدة ما بين عملهن وتعليم أطفالهم.

b. كثيرًا من السيدات العاملات فى مصر تحملن مسئوليات عديدة فأوقاتهم منقسمة ما بين عملهم وتربية أطفالهن.

c. معظم السيدات العاملات فى مصر تتحملن مسئوليات عديدة فيقسمن وقتهن ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن.

d. عددًا من العاملات فى مصر قد تتحملن مسئوليات فأوقاتهم محددة ما بين عملهن وتربية أطفالهن.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تعتبر الشائعات أحد العوامل التى تؤدى لعدم استقرار المجتمع، وخاصة إذا كانت تؤذى جميع أفراد المجتمع.

a. Rumours are one of the main elements that lead to the society's stability, especially if they hurt all the society's members.

b. Roars are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, particularly if they hurt all the society's organs.

c. Roars are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, secretly if they hurt all the social members.

d. Rumours are one of the main elements that lead to the society's instability, especially if they hurt all the society's members.

2 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

The best way to fight viruses is to boost our immune system. We can do this by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves.

a. أفضل طريقة لمحاربة الفيروسات هى تعزيز جهاز المناعة لدينا. يمكننا القيم بذلك عن طريق تناول الكثير من الفاكهة والخضراوات، وخصوصًا الخضروات ذات الخضراء.

b. أفضل طريقة لمحاربة الفيروسات هى تعزيز جهاز المناعة لدينا. يمكننا القيام بذلك عن طريق تناول الكثير من الفاكهة والخضراوات، وخصوصًا الخضراوات ذات الأوراق الخضراء.

c. أفضل طريقة لمحاربة الفيروسات هى تعزيز جهاز المناعة لدينا، يمكننا القيام بذلك عن طريق عدم تناول الكثير من الفاكهة والخضراوات، وخصوصًا الخضراوات ذات الأوراق الخضراء.

d. أفضل طريقة لانتشار الفيروسات هى تعزيز جهاز المناعة لدينا، يمكننا القيام بذلك عن طريق تناول الكثير من الفاكهة والخضراوات، وخصوصًا الخضراوات ذات الأوراق الخضراء.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لا تشغل نفسك بانتقاد الآخرين بدون موضوعية، كن إيجابيًا، اعمل بجد، وتقبل الآخرين فلا أحد بدون عيوب.

a. Don't concern yourself with criticizing others without objectivity. Be positive, work hard and accept others. No one is without flaws.

b. Don't concern yourself with supporting others without objectivity. Be positive, work hard and accept others. No one is without flaws.

c. Don't concern yourself with supporting others without objectivity. Be positive, work hard and accept others. No one is without flaws.

d. Don't concern yourself with criticizing others with creativity. Be positive. Work hard and accept others. No one is without flaws.

PART 2

3 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Camouflage is a method of hiding which allows an object to remain unnoticed, by blending with its environment.

a. التمويه اختفاء للطريقة تسمح لشئ أن يبقى غير ملحوظ بأن يندمج مع بيئته.

b. التمويه طريقة للاختفاء تسمح لشئ أن يبقى غير ملحوظ بأن يندمج مع بيئته.

c. التمويه طريق خفى يسمح لشئ أن يبقى غير ملحوظ بأن يندمج مع بيئته.

d. التمويه بطريقة الاختفاء يسمح لشئ أن يبقى غير ملحوظ بأن يندمج مع بيئته.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

ينبغى أن يتغير مفهوم التعليم من الحفظ والتلقين إلى التفكير النقدى والإبداع.

a. The concert of education should from memorization and indoctrination to critical thinking and creativity.

b. The concept of education should change from memorization and indoctrination to critical thinking and creativity.

c. The concept of education should change from remembrance and indoctrination to critical thinking and creativity.

d. The concept of education should change from memorization and indoctrination to critic thinking.

(المنيا - العدوة ٢٣ ج)

4 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:.

The basic types of food in each country are closely related to its traditions. Kushari and fava beans are two of the local Egyptian dishes that tourists like to try eating.

a. ترتبط الأنواع الأساسية للطعام فى كل بلد ارتباطًا وثيقًا بتقاليدها، فالكشرى والفول المدمس هما اثنين من الأطباق المصرية المحلية التى يحب السياح تناولها.

b. ترتبط الأنواع الأساسية للطعام فى كل بلد ارتباطًا وثيقًا بتقاليدها، فالكشرى والفول المدمس هما اثنين من الأطباق المصرية العالمية التى يحب السياح تناولها.

c. ترتبط الأنواع الأساسية للطعام فى كل بلد ارتباطًا وثيقًا بتقاليدها، فالكشرى والفول المدمس هما اثنين من من الأطباق المصرية المحلية التى لا يحب السياح تناولها.

d. ترتبط الأنواع الأساسية للطعام فى كل مدينة ارتباطًا وليقًا بتقاليدها، فالكشرى والفود المدمس هما اثنين من الأطباق المصرية المحلية التى يحب السياح تناولها.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

تشجع الحكومة المشروعات الصغيرة وخاصة مشاريع الشباب لذلك توفر لهم قروض بفوائد صغيرة وتوفر لهم الكثير من التسهيلات البنكية.

a. The government encourages small projects, especially youth projects, but it provides them with loans with small interest rates and provides them with a lot of bank facilities.

b. The government encourages small projects, especially youth projects, so it provides them with loans with small interest rates and provides them with a lot of bank facilities.

c. The government encourages small projects, especially youth projects, so it provides them with loans with big interest rates and provides them with a lot of bank facilities.

d. The government encourages small projects, especially youth ideas, so it provides them with loans with small interest rates and provides them with a lot of bank facilities.

(القليوبيه - الضاحر الجديدة ٢٣ ج)

3. Writing Related Essay Models

أهم مقالات المرتبطة بالمنهج

1 Keeping your heart healthy / How one can stay healthy

Keeping your heart healthy is an essential part of leading a healthy lifestyle. There are several things one can do to maintain a healthy heart, including exercising regularly, eating a well-balanced diet, and avoiding habits that put unnecessary strain on the heart, such as smoking or excessive alcohol consumption. Exercise can help keep the heart muscle strong and lower the risk of heart disease, while a diet full of fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and lean proteins can help regulate blood pressure and reduce the risk of heart attack and stroke.

Furthermore, maintaining a healthy weight and managing stress levels are also important factors when it comes to keeping your heart healthy. Obesity can increase the risk of heart disease and other health complications, so adopting healthy habits about food and exercise can help keep your weight in check. Additionally, stress can put unnecessary strain on the heart, so finding ways to manage stress and prioritize self-care is important for both physical and mental health. By taking these steps to maintain a healthy heart, you can lead a longer and more fulfilling life with less risk of heart disease and other health complications.

2 The immune system

The immune system is the body's defense against infectious organisms and other invaders. It is a complex network of cells, tissues, and organs that work together to protect the body from harmful substances. The immune system can distinguish between healthy tissue and unwanted substances, such as bacteria and viruses. If it detects an unwanted substance, it will mount an immune response to protect the body from invaders.

The immune system consists of white blood cells, the spleen, bone marrow, the lymphatic system, the thymus, and the tonsils, adenoids, and appendix. White blood cells circulate in the blood and lymphatic vessels. The lymphatic system carries a substance called lymph instead of blood. Lymph is a fluid that carries immune-related cells to areas that need them.

The immune system does not always get it right. Sometimes it is unable to fight effectively because a person has a health condition or needs certain medications that affect how the system works. In autoimmune diseases and allergies, the immune system mistakenly perceives healthy tissue as unhealthy and launches an unnecessary attack, leading to uncomfortable and sometimes dangerous symptoms.

3 How to behave in an emergency

Emergencies can be scary, but knowing how to behave in one can be the difference between life and death. Firstly, it is important to remain calm and assess the situation. If possible, call for help by dialing the emergency phone number or alerting someone nearby. If someone is injured, attempt to provide first aid if you are trained to do so, or wait for medical assistance. It is also important to evacuate the area if necessary and follow the instructions of emergency personnel.

Moreover, it is crucial to remain patient and follow instructions during an emergency. Listen carefully to what emergency personnel are telling you and follow their directions. Avoid causing any hindrances

or becoming a hindrance to the rescue team. If you are in a public place, try to help others around you and remind them to follow protocol. Lastly, in case of natural disasters such as earthquakes, avalanches, or hurricanes, follow standard emergency protocol as recommended in your area and remain patient and level-headed as you wait for help to arrive. By behaving responsibly and calmly in an emergency, you can ensure your safety, as well as that of others.

4 How to perform CPR

Performing CPR is a life-saving technique that is used to keep a person alive until medical help arrives. CPR stands for Cardiopulmonary resuscitation and is performed when a person has stopped breathing or their heart has stopped beating. The first thing to do when performing CPR is to check the person's airway to make sure that it is clear. You can do this by tilting their head back and lifting their chin to open their airway.

After checking for airway obstruction, start performing chest compressions. This is done by placing the heel of your hand on the center of the person's chest and then pushing down firmly and quickly. The compressions should be done at a rate of 100-120 compressions per minute. After 30 compressions, give two rescue breaths by tilting the person's head back and sealing your mouth over their mouth to give them a breathe.

Keep performing compressions and giving rescue breaths until medical help arrives or the person starts breathing on their own. CPR can be emotionally and physically exhausting, so it is important to take turns with another person if possible.

5 The future of food

The future of food is an important topic as the world population continues to grow and climate change affects our planet. With these challenges in mind, the food we eat will undergo major changes in the future. Here are some possible changes that could happen :

- More plant-based diets. As people become more aware of the environmental impact of meat production, there may be a shift towards plant-based diets.
- Customized diets. Advances in technology could allow for customized diets based on individual needs and preferences.
- Outlandish vegetables. As people become more adventurous with their food choices, we may see more unusual vegetables on our plates.
- Robot chefs. Advances in robotics could lead to the development of robot chefs that can prepare meals quickly and efficiently.
- Guilt-free gorging. Advances in food science could lead to the development of guilt-free foods that are healthy and delicious.

These are just a few possible changes that could happen in the future of food. It's important to keep an open mind and be willing to try new things as we navigate these changes.

6 The future of forests

The future of forests is a topic of great concern for many environmentalists and scientists around the world. Forests play a vital role in maintaining the balance of the ecosystem and mitigating climate change. However, the rapid pace of deforestation, caused mainly by human activities like logging, agriculture, and mining, has put the future of forests in jeopardy. If we don't take immediate action to protect our forests, it may lead to disastrous consequences for our planet.

To secure the future of forests, every individual needs to contribute their bit in saving them. Governments around the world should enact stringent laws that prevent deforestation and promote afforestation. We should also reduce paper usage, recycle, and opt for digital media, which will reduce the demand for paper. We can also support organizations that work towards saving forests and their inhabitants. To conclude, saving forests is the need of the hour, and it's our responsibility to protect them for the benefit of future generations.

7 The future of farming

Farming is an important part of our food system and provides many benefits such as food security and economic growth. However, farming is facing many challenges such as climate change, soil degradation, and water scarcity. Here are some possible changes that could happen in the future of farming :

- Increased use of technology. Advances in technology could allow for better monitoring and management of crops.
- Vertical farming. As urbanization continues to grow, there may be a shift towards vertical farming to produce food in urban areas.
- Sustainable farming practices. As people become more aware of the environmental impact of farming, there may be a shift towards more sustainable farming practices.
- Collaboration between stakeholders. Collaboration between farmers, governments, and local communities could lead to better farming practices.

These are just a few possible changes that could happen in the future of farming. It's important to keep an open mind and be willing to try new things as we navigate these changes.

8 How to solve the overpopulation problem in Egypt

Overpopulation in Egypt is a serious issue that affects the country's development in many ways. Limited resources such as food, water, and shelter are being stretched thin due to the high population growth rate. Therefore, the government can initiate educational programs in schools to teach students about birth control options, proper care for children, and family planning techniques. Additionally, the government can introduce incentives for families who limit the number of children they have. For example, the government could offer tuition-free education for families with two or fewer children. Finally, the government can create job opportunities to encourage more women to work outside of the home. When women participate in the workforce, they will have fewer children, and this will help reduce the population growth rate in Egypt. In conclusion, solving the overpopulation problem in Egypt will require the government to implement policies that encourage family planning amongst its citizens.

9 Sustainable ways of growing food

Sustainable ways of growing food refer to the process of producing food that ensures the present needs are met without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs. Sustainable agriculture practices are environmentally friendly, socially responsible, and economically viable. A sustainable approach to food production considers soil health, water management, use of alternative energy sources, and reduction in the use of synthetic fertilizers and pesticides. For instance, crop rotation soil structure and water-holding capacity. Additionally, farmers may use renewable energy sources such as solar or wind energy in place of fossil fuels, which reduces carbon emissions and helps mitigate climate change.

PART 2

Sustainable farming practices have several benefits, including healthy soil, increased crop yields, and reduced water usage. Sustainable agriculture also supports biodiversity through crop rotation, avoiding the use of monoculture farming, and reducing food waste. Sustainable agriculture also ensures that farmers earn a fair price for their produce by avoiding middlemen and instead selling their products directly to consumers. As consumers, it is important to learn about sustainable agriculture practices and support farmers who practice sustainable growing methods. Through this, we can all contribute to reducing environmental degradation and helping to ensure a sustainable future for generations to come.

10 Smartphones use and its effect today

Smartphones have become essential tools for communication and entertainment in today's society. People use smartphones for various purposes, such as browsing the internet, checking emails, sending messages, and making phone calls. They also use smartphones for entertainment, such as playing games, listening to music, and watching videos. However, this widespread use of smartphones has both positive and negative effects on people.

On the positive side, smartphones increase connectivity and communication. People can communicate with friends, family and colleagues from anywhere, at any time. Smartphones also allow access to a vast array of information anytime, which can be helpful in many ways. On the other hand, excessive smartphone use may lead to negative effects such as addiction, anxiety, and sleep disorders. Moreover, prolonged use of smartphones can affect physical health and posture. In sum, while smartphones have many benefits, their proper use and moderation are essential to minimize negative effects.

11 Social media pros and cons

Social media has become an integral part of our daily lives and has had a significant impact on society. Here are some possible pros and cons of social media :

Pros :

- Increased connectivity. Social media has made it easier for people to stay connected with each other.
- Increased access to information. Social media has made it easier for people to access information on the go.

Cons :

- Increased screen time. Social media has led to increased screen time, which can have negative effects on mental health.
- Cyberbullying. Social media has made it easier for people to bully others online.
- Privacy concerns. Social media has raised concerns about privacy and data security.

These are just a few possible pros and cons of social media. It's important to be aware of these effects and use social media in a responsible and healthy way.

DAYS 4,5,6&7 20 Model Exams from different governorates

عشرون اختبارًا من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

1 Cairo Governorate إدارة الزيتون التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. How could Shimaa First Aids ?
 a. perform b. deform c. inform d. reform
2. No one to take this medicine since they are very well.
 a. has b. don't have c. have d. doesn't have
3. It's nice to together this evening, are you free ?
 a. have b. do c. get d. make
4. Vegetable curry is meal on the menu.
 a. spicy b. the spiciest c. spiciest d. spicier
5. Farmers keep for meat production.
 a. variety b. innovation c. lipstick d. livestock
6. In today's show. Mehetab will to her friend Bassant.
 a. 've talked b. be talking c. talks d. talking
7. She felt for making her sister angry so she apologized.
 a. guilty b. fond c. proud d. capable
8. I didn't know you were in my city, you me !
 a. should phone b. have phoned c. would phone d. should have phoned
9. means to move files from a computer to the internet.
 a. Update b. Up-to-date c. Download d. Upload
10. It is to rain this evening.
 a. supposing b. supposed c. supposes d. suppose
11. You deeply to show you are disappointed.
 a. beg b. pig c. sigh d. pile
12. The teacher told his students their books.
 a. open b. to open c. opens d. opening
13. If he read the story well, he enjoy it very much.
 a. 'll b. 'd c. 'd have d. can
14. I think he win the cup this afternoon.
 a. would b. will c. is going to d. going
15. I wish I all my money yesterday in vain.
 a. spent b. had spent c. didn't spend d. hadn't spent

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Many experts believe there are too many people in the world. Unless there are big changes in the way people think about the number of children they should have. The world's population will double in 25 years. There will be more 20 cities with population greater than 20 million.

Some people who don't understand what "Over population" means point to countries such as Australia and say "There is plenty of room there" Although most of Australia is unpopulated, and much of it is thinly populated, there are reasons for this. Firstly, much

PART 2

of the land is desert and **waterless**. Secondly, even the land isn't desert isn't suitable for anything, not even growing grass. Another major problem we shall have to face as the world's population grows, is a shortage of energy.

We are using up coal and oil. When they have been used up, we shall have to find something to take their place. It is true that we can make electricity from the heat of the sun and moving water, but we don't yet have the technology to do this in a big way. Perhaps, the biggest problem we shall have when the world's population doubles will be pollution. The air we breathe is already badly polluted.

16. It is expected that the world's population will in 25 years.
a. lessen b. decline c. double d. decrease

17. Australia is relatively a/an continent.
a. unpopulated b. populated c. populous d. peopled

18. The word "**waterless**" in the second paragraph means
a. wet b. damp c. fertile d. arid

19. The sun heat can be used to produce
a. energy b. grass c. wheat d. crops

20. In order to prevent the world's population from being doubled, there must be a change in
a. the methods of agriculture b. sources of energy they should have
c. people's thought about the number of children
d. the eduction of children

21. When coal and oil have been used up, we shall
a. search for other sources of energy b. use computers instead
c. wait for scientists to solve the problem d. try to do without them

22. city / cities will have a population of over 20 million.
a. Two b. Twenty c. Twenty five d. One

23. According to the passage a great area of Australia is considered populated.
a. highly b. densely c. rarely d. extensively

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

The youth are interested in different means of communication to enable them to do various tasks quickly.

a. الشباب مهتم بوسائل الاتصال المختلفة كى لا تمكنهم من فعل مهام عديدة بسرعة.
b. الشباب مهتم بوسائل الاتصال المختلفة كى تمكنهم من فعل مهام عديدة بسرعة.
c. الحكماء مهتمون بوسائل الاتصال المختلفة كى تمكنهم من فعل مهام عديدة بسرعة.
d. الحكماء مهتمون بوسائل الإعلام المختلفة كى تمكنهم من فعل مهام عديدة بسرعة.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

أن تمتلك الصحة أفضل من أن تمتلك الثروة. إن الصحة لا تقدر بثمن أليس كذلك ؟

a. To have health is better than to have wealth. Health is priceless, isn't it ?
b. To have health is better than to have wealth. Wealth is priceless, isn't it ?
c. To have health is better than to have wealth. Health is a jewel, is it ?
d. To have wealth is better than to have health. Wealth is priceless, is it ?

26. Write an e-mail of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :

"Advising your friend, Nour how to use social media well"

.....
.....
.....
.....

2 Giza Governorate إدارة بولاق الدكرور التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We are all indebted to the great of technology who made our life more comfortable.
 a. poets b. editors c. explorers d. innovators
2. This knife doesn't cut very well. Have you got a one?
 a. sharp b. sharperner c. sharpest d. as sharp as
3. If I had time, I visit you.
 a. will b. can c. would have d. would
4. Healthy food can help your system to prevent diseases.
 a. digestive b. respiratory c. immune d. nerve
5. He gets high marks though he isn't clever. He to be a cheat.
 a. was supposed b. means c. supposes d. seems
6. I'm not sure, but I think people on another planet one day.
 a. will live b. are living c. live d. will have lived
7. I share my father's that people should work hard for living.
 a. belief b. relief c. live d. believe
8. After the accident, he had a/an pain in his knee.
 a. simple b. severe c. easy d. additional
9. Where was Yasser ? I don't know, but he in the garden.
 a. must have been b. could have been c. could be d. should have been
10. I usually my father before doing something big.
 a. consult b. detect c. predict d. hire
11. The Cairo/Tanta train platform 5 at 10 p.m.
 a. will leave b. leaves c. is leaving d. is going to leave
12. The match to start at 6, but it was delayed due to rain.
 a. supposed b. was supposed c. was seemed d. meant
13. We need more information before we can take action.
 a. doubtful b. distant c. disorganised d. reliable
14. Who for advice if you have a problem?
 a. do you ask b. would you have asked
 c. would you ask d. have you asked
15. You have called him a fool because this upsets him.
 a. can't b. should c. shouldn't d. couldn't

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Some doctors think that you should drink a glass of water each morning. You should drink this water first thing, before doing anything else. The temperature of the water should be similar to body temperature; neither too hot nor too cold. Why should you drink this water? Water helps your body in many ways. It helps clean out your kidneys. It prepares your stomach for digestion. Water can also help your intestines work better. After drinking water, the intestines can more easily take out nutrients from our food. Water also helps us go to the bathroom more easily. Scientists suggest that people take in 1,600 milliliters of water each day. But don't drink all of that water in one sitting. If you do, your kidneys will have to work much harder to eliminate it. It's better to drink some in the

PART 2

morning and some in the afternoon. Some people think it's better to drink between meals and not during meals. They think water dilutes the juices produced in our stomachs. This can interfere with normal digestion. Are you drinking enough water every day? Check the colour of your urine. If it is light yellow, you are probably drinking enough. If your urine is very dark yellow, you probably need to drink more water. A little more water each day could make you much healthier !

16. What could be the best title for this passage?
a. "Drink Water, Not Soft Drinks" b. "Drink During Meals"
c. "Drink Between Meals" d. "Drink Enough Water"

17. Why is it helpful to drink water in the morning?
a. Your kidneys will work harder. b. Your intestines will work well.
c. Your juices will be diluted. d. Your urine will be pale yellow.

18. Which of the following is NOT a reason to drink water?
a. So your intestines will work well. b. To get more nutrients.
c. To clean out your kidneys. d. To dilute your stomach juices.

19. Why is it better to drink between meals?
a. So you eat enough food. b. So you don't dilute stomach juices.
c. So your urine will not smell bad. d. So you don't overwork your kidneys.

20. What does urine colour indicate?
a. That you need to eat more food. b. That you need to drink more water.
c. That you need to have enough sleep. d. That you need to drink more juice.

21. Why shouldn't you drink 1,600 milliliters in one sitting?
a. It will harm your lungs. b. It will harm your kidneys.
c. It will make you thirsty. d. It will make you hungry.

22. The water you drink should be
a. too cold b. too hot
c. as good as your body temperature d. not too cold as your body temperature

23. The underlined word 'it' refers to
a. your body b. your urine
c. your health d. your drinking water

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

People who are willing to take the risk, no matter the cost, will successfully achieve their goals. If you just dream about something without doing anything, you will fail.

a الناس المستعدون للمخاطرة بصرف النظر عن التكلفة سوف يحققون أهدافهم بنجاح وأما إن كنت تحلم فقط بتحقيق شيء وعمل أي شيء فسوف تفشل.

b الناس المستعدون للمخاطرة بصرف النظر عن التكلفة سوف يحققون أهدافهم بنجاح وأما إن كنت ترغب فقط بتحقيق شيء دون عمل أي شيء فسوف تفشل.

c الناس المستعدون للمخاطرة بصرف النظر عن التكلفة سوف يحققون أهدافهم بنجاح وأما إن كنت تحلم فقط بتحقيق شيء دون عمل أي شيء فسوف تفشل.

d الناس المستعدون للمخاطرة بالإضافة للتكلفة سوف يحققون أهدافهم بنجاح وأما إن كنت تحلم فقط بتحقيق شيء دون عمل أي شيء فسوف تفشل.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

السياحة هي وسيلة لإعطاء معلومات عن الماضي والحاضر لبلدي حيث تتلاقى الحضارات وتتبادل الثقافات.

a. Tourism is a means of giving information about the past and the future of my country where civilizations meet and the cultures exchange.

b. Terrorism is a means of giving information about the past and the present of my country where civilizations meet and cultures exchange.

c. Tourism is a means of giving information about the past and the present of my country where civilizations converge and the cultures exchange.

d. Tourism is a mean of giving information about the past and the present of my country where civilizations prospers and cultures exchange.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"How we can help to protect and improve the environment"

.....

.....

.....

.....

3 Alexandria Governorate إدارة وسط التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I did not buy this ring. It was an from my parents.
 a. income b. introductory c. inheritance d. intention
2. Could you me a favour and pass along the sugar?
 a. make b. take c. give d. do
3. The skin is the body's largest
 a. organ b. cell c. system d. muscle
4. My younger brother always tells the truth. He never tells
 a. lying b. lies c. lays d. laws
5. Emojis are that present feelings.
 a. synonyms b. abbreviations c. acronyms d. symbols
6. If he had studied well, he failed.
 a. would be b. would have c. wouldn't have d. will have
7. If you want to avoid your friends turning their back you, keep eye contact while you chat.
 a. in b. on c. at d. with
8. Our geography teacher never smiles and has a permanent
 a. tone b. laugh c. frown d. emoji
9. Samy feels cold now and wishes he left his coat at home.
 a. hasn't b. didn't c. won't d. hadn't
10. You to go to the supermarket. There is enough food in the refrigerator.
 a. needn't b. doesn't have c. don't need d. mustn't
11. You seen Doaa today, because she is in France at the moment.
 a. shouldn't have b. could have c. couldn't have d. should have
12. Today is warmer than yesterday. Yesterday, ... today.
 a. wasn't as warm as b. wasn't warm as c. wasn't warmer as d. is not warm as
13. Just think. This time next week we on the beach in Matrouh.
 a. will lie b. are going to lie c. will be lying d. lie
14. Make sure you have plenty of to sit comfortably.
 a. room b. a room c. rooms d. the room
15. This e-mail says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to us.
 a. deceive b. receive c. perceive d. conceive

PART 2

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Every time you're online, you are **bombarded** by pictures, articles, and links trying to tell their story. Unfortunately, not all of these stories are true. Sometimes they want you to click on another advertisement at their own site, other times they want to upset people for political reasons, and the result is ... fake news. Read these tips, and don't get fooled! Look at the website where the story comes from. Does it look real? Is the text well written? Are there a variety of other stories or is it just one story? Fake news websites often don't have many real stories about other topics. If you aren't sure, click on the 'About' page and look for a clear description of the organization.

Many fake news stories use images that are photoshopped or taken from an unrelated site. Sometimes, if you just look closely at an image, you can see if it has been changed. Or use a tool like Google Reverse Image search. It will show you if the same image has been used in other contexts.

Look to see if the story you are reading is on other news sites that you know and trust. If you do find it on many other sites, then it probably isn't fake. There are other techniques that fake news uses. These include using ALL CAPS and lots of ads that pop up when you click on a link. Also, think about how the story makes you feel. If the news story makes you angry, it's probably designed to make you angry. If you find a news story that you know is fake, the most important advice is: don't share it!

16. The best title for the text is
 a. Experts show dangers of fake news
 b. Experts share top tips for resisting fake news
 c. How to create fake news: a guide
 d. Tips on how to read the news online

17. Which reason is NOT given for online fake news story ?
 a. To convince people of political view.
 b. To make people angry or sad.
 c. To plant a virus in your computer.
 d. To click on an advertisement.

18. Which of these may mean that a news site should not be trusted ?
 a. The site's "about" page doesn't clearly describe the organization.
 b. The text is well written.
 c. The site has a variety of other stories.
 d. The site has real stories about other topics.

19. The underlined word "**it**" in the second paragraph refers to
 a. the story b. the website c. the picture d. the text

20. Which of the following best summarizes the first paragraph?
 a. More ways that fake news uses.
 b. Fake news uses changed photos.
 c. Reasons for making fake news.
 d. Fake websites.

21. What should you do with fake news?
 a. Report it to the police.
 b. Make a note of it for a reference.
 c. Tell your close friends about it.
 d. Not show it to other people online.

22. What is the purpose of the article?
 a. To complain b. To inform c. To entertain d. To blame

23. The word "**bombarded**" in this text means
 a. defended b. prevented c. bothered d. covered

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Doing sports is something we can't do without. It relieves the stress and helps us keep fit and healthy.

a إن ممارسة الرياضة شيء لا يمكننا القيام به. فهى تخفف التوتر وتساعدنا فى الحفاظ على لياقتنا وصحتنا.

b إن ممارسة الرياضة شيء لا يمكننا الاستغناء عنه. فهى تخفف التوتر وتساعدنا فى الحفاظ على لياقتنا وصحتنا.

c إن ممارسة الرياضة شيء يمكننا الاستغناء عنه. فهى تخفف التوتر وتساعدنا فى الحفاظ على لياقتنا وصحتنا.

d إن ممارسة الرياضة شيء لا يمكننا الاستغناء عنه. فهى تخفف التوتر وتساعدنا فى الحفاظ على سمعتنا وصحتنا.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

من المهم جدا أن يكون لكل إنسان أصدقاء جيدين أما رفقاء السوء فيدمرون حياتنا ويجعلونا نكتسب عادات سيئة.

a. It is very important for every person to do good friends, but bad companions destroy our lives and make us acquire bad habits.

b. It is very important for every prison to have good friends, but bad companions destroy our lives and make us acquire bad habits.

c. It is very important for every person to have good friends, so bad companions destroy our lives and make us acquire bad habits.

d. It is very important for everyone to have good friends, but bad companions destroy our lives and make us acquire bad habits.

26. Write an e-mail of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on :

"The importance of friendship in our life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 Qalyoubia Governorate إدارة بنها التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Although he is very rich, he is and people don't like him.
 a. means b. meant c. mean d. meaning
2. If ice, it melts.
 a. heats b. is heated c. heated d. was heated
3. I wish I to London next summer.
 a. could travel b. had travelled c. travelled d. was travelling
4. It seems , I can hear the rain drops on my window.
 a. rains b. rain c. have rained d. to be raining
5. I was asked to fill the form my personal data.
 a. with b. in c. on d. over
6. The criminal was seen in the crime
 a. scene b. seen c. scenery d. landscape
7. He been ill, I met him in the gym yesterday.
 a. could have b. couldn't have c. must have d. couldn't
8. If they had a strong will, they the match.
 a. will win b. would win c. won d. would have won
9. You exceed speed limit, or you'll be fined.
 a. haven't b. mustn't c. don't need d. won't have
10. It was freezing in the park; he brought his coat with him.
 a. mustn't have b. shouldn't have c. couldn't have d. should have
11. Teachers of English should improve the language skills. The antonym of "skill" is
 a. proficiency b. craft c. inability d. ability

PART 2

12. Eating fruit and vegetables boosts our immune system. The synonym of "boost" is
a. support b. hinder c. decrease d. damage

13. She added more salt to the soup, they couldn't eat it.
a. must have b. needn't have c. doesn't have d. should have

14. Many festivals around the world are every year. People enjoy them.
a. ignored b. done c. excluded d. celebrated

15. This question has only four, you can choose the best one.
a. options b. opposites c. operations d. opportunities

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

People may be divided into two types: winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great influence on us as we grow, we are born helpless and dependent on our environment. Winners are able to change their situation and become independent by being responsible for their own lies. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking, they listen to others, evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds. Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They have enthusiasm for life. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves but they can **postpone** it if duty calls. Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers : disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations. Losers hang onto them, and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored.

They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again. When a student fails at mathematics test and then says, "Oh, well, I've never been good at math," it becomes his excuse for not trying to change this idea, and remains a loser.

Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change their world themselves. Now, you can decide what people will call you in the future a loser or a winner.

16. What makes us winners or losers from our early life ?
a. our teachers b. our environment c. failure d. our friends

17. Which one of the following doesn't describe winners ?
a. They are independent. b. They don't blame others for their mistakes.
c. They only follow in others footsteps. d. They overcome their bad experiences.

18. What do winners do if they fail at times ?
a. Keep their self-confidence. b. Lose hope and go out of the race.
c. Never try again as it is one chance. d. Ask others to help them.

19. What happens when losers find excuses and don't try to change ?
a. Other people help them. b. They find luck and become winners.
c. They say that it's fate. d. They remain losers.

20. Which one of the following doesn't describe losers ?
a. They are afraid to try new things. b. They are never good at maths.
c. They repeat their mistakes again. d. They wait for something good to happen.

21. What does the underlined word "**postpone**" mean ?
a. stop b. email c. put off d. post

22. What do winners have for life ?
a. Enthusiasm b. Anxiety c. Boredom d. Sadness

23. What do losers usually feel ?
a. Happy b. Anxious c. Interested d. Satisfied

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Newspapers are considered a record of the current events. However, the role of a newspaper is more than being only a document of events. They have become a mark of civilization.

a. تعتبر الصحف سجلاً للأحداث الجارية، ومع ذلك فإن دور الصحف أكثر من مجرد وثيقة للأحداث، فلقد أصبحت علامة على الحضارة.
b. تعتبر الصحف رقمًا قياسيًا للأحداث الجارية، ومع ذلك فإن دور الصحف أكثر من مجرد وثيقة للأحداث، فلقد أصبحت علامة على الحضارة.
c. تعتبر الصحف سجلاً للأحداث الجارية، ومع ذلك فإن دور الصحف أكثر من مجرد شهادة للأحداث، فلقد أصبحت علامة على الحضارة.
d. تعتبر الصحف سجلاً للأحداث الجارية، ومع ذلك فإن دور الصحف أكثر من مجرد وثيقة للأحداث، فلقد أصبحت معوقة للحضارة.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

بفضل التكنولوجيا الحديثة تم اختراع علاجات جديدة لم يمكن علاجها من قبل، مما أدى إلى ارتفاع متوسط أعمار الناس خاصة في الدول المتقدمة، ويعتبر هذا من إيجابيات التكنولوجيا في حياتنا.

a. Thanks for technology; many cures were invented for diseases which were incurable before. This has resulted to the increase in life expectancy for people in developed countries.
b. Thanks to technology; many cures were invented for diseases which were incurable before. This has resulted to the increase in life expectancy for people in developed countries.
c. Thanks to technology; many cures were explored for diseases which were incurable before. This has resulted to the increase in life expectancy for people in developed countries.
d. Thanks to technology; many cures invented for diseases which were curable before. This has resulted to the increase in life expectancy for people in developed countries.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"The importance of the healthy diet"

.....
.....
.....
.....

5 Sharkia Governorate إدارة بلبيس التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The audience was clearly delighted with the of the actors.
a. perform b. performance c. performer d. performative
2. People get in answering a questionnaire when they have too a many options.
a. confused b. complicated c. interested d. attached
3. Why don't we have an breakfast for a change ? The weather is very nice.
a. indoor b. indoors c. outdoor d. outdoors
4. The computer company is doing an extensive on their new software.
a. survey b. inspection c. search d. estimation
5. tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at.
a. Uploads b. Downloads c. Antiviruses d. Cookies
6. Rose is of the twins.
a. taller b. the taller c. the tallest d. more tall

PART 2

7. Did your brother attend the welcome party at the university yesterday ?
 a. had to b. have to c. has to d. must
8. The Egyptian student to study day and night to get the full marks.
 a. is seemed b. is supposed c. supposed d. means
9. Jack will go to the market when he his homework.
 a. will finish b. finishes c. finish d. finished
10. I can't meet you tonight as I for the exam.
 a. going to revise b. will revise c. revise d. am revising
11. The teacher warned the students to do their homework.
 a. to forget b. not to forget c. forgetting d. that they forget
12. The train is a of transport.
 a. mean b. meaning c. means d. meant
13. The car seems to by a clever mechanic. The car was really in a poor condition.
 a. have repaired b. have been repaired c. have been repairing d. repair
14. If we use a computer for a long time, we usually a headache.
 a. will have b. would have c. have d. has
15. We have donated some money to the poor. It was the right thing to do.
 a. shouldn't b. couldn't c. might d. ought to

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

This year I decided to do something to regain my reputation as a kind uncle. My nephew, Ziad, had never forgiven me for the dictionary I had bought him as a birthday present last year. His parents had no reason to be grateful to me either as, the year before. I had presented him with a pot of paste and some funny pictures. Instead of sticking **them** into a book, Ziad had covered every wall in the house with them. Hence, this year, I decided to let him choose for himself.

We went into a big toyshop but Ziad was highly critical of everything he saw. In vain did I show him toy after toy; he was not to be tempted. Then I saw his eyes light up: he had discovered something he really did approve of : a large tin drum. I was quite pleased too until I thought what Ziad's mother would say when she saw it. Nobody would get any sleep for weeks! I led Ziad away quickly, saying that the drum was too expensive.

Ziad asked for permission to go off on his own and I took that chance to sit down and rest my aching feet. Fifteen minutes passed but there was still no sign of Ziad. I began to get worried and began to look for him. I asked a young lady if she had seen a little boy in a grey suit. She pointed out that there were so many little boys in grey suits in the store. I was just beginning to despair, when I saw a strange figure dressed in **peculiar** purple clothes. The figure was wearing a false beard and had a cave-man's axe in one hand, and a space gun in the other. It was, of course, Ziad who informed me at once that he was the first cave-man to fly into space.

16. The main idea of this passage is how to be a uncle.
 a. hateful b. loving c. miserable d. serious
17. The writer hesitated to buy Ziad the tin drum because it would his parents.
 a. please b. recognise c. annoy d. blame
18. The underlined word "**peculiar**" is an antonym for
 a. strange b. odd c. mysterious d. familiar

19. The writer bought Ziad a pot of paste to
a. cover the walls with pictures
b. stick the pictures on a book
c. stick the pictures on the cupboard
d. stick tickets on his books

20. The writer thought that of the choices Ziad had made would please his parents.
a. the first
b. the second
c. the third
d. nothing

21. The lady in the shop couldn't tell the writer where Ziad was because
a. he had taken off his grey suit
b. he left the shop
c. many boys wore clothes similar to his
d. she did not see him

22. The writer could hardly know Ziad because
a. he was disguised
b. it was dark
c. he carried a space gun
d. he seemed much older

23. The underlined word "**them**" refers to
a. Ziad's parents
b. the walls
c. the pictures
d. Ziad's parents and uncle

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

If we give our desert due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems. Desert reclamation increases the cultivated land and creates new jobs for our youth.

a. إذا أعطينا صحرانا العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى وحل العدد من مشاكلنا: استصلاح الصحراء يزيد من الأراضى المنزوعة، ويخلق فرص عمل جديدة لشبابنا.

b. إذا أعطينا صحرانا العناية الموجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى وحل العديد من مشاكلنا: استصلاح الصحراء يزيد من الأراضى المنزوعة، ويخلق فرص عمل جديدة لشبابنا.

c. إذا أعطينا صحرانا العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى وحل العدد من مشاكلنا: استصلاح الصحراء يذبع من الأراضى المزروعة، ويخلق فرص عمل جديدة لشبابنا.

d. إذا أعطينا صحرانا العناية الواجبة، يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومى وحل العديد من مشاكلنا: استصلاح الصحراء يزيد من الأراضى المزروعة، ويخلق فرص عمل جديدة لشبابنا.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لا شك أن المرأة المصرية هى العمود الفقرى والدعامة الأساسية للأسرة. فهى تضحى بكل ما لديها من أجل راحة وسعادة ونجاح كل فرد من الأسرة.

a. There's no doubt that the Egyptian women is the backbone and mainstay of the family as she sacrifices everything she has for the comfortable, happiness and success of every member in the family.

b. There's no doubt that the Egyptian woman is the backbone and mainstay of the family as she sacrifices everything she has for the comfort, happiness and success of every member in the family.

c. There's no doubt that the Egyptian woman is the backstone and mainstay of the family as she sacrifices everything she has for the comfort, happiness and success of every remember in the family.

d. There's no doubt that the Egyptians woman is the backbone and mainstay of the family as she sacrifices everything she has for the comfortable, happiness and success of every member in the family.

6. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"Technology affects our life positively and negatively"

.....

.....

.....

.....

PART 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It took me about ten minutes to the video from the YouTube.
 a. upload b. download c. mix d. symbolize
2. walking is useful, I will practise it.
 a. If b. In case of c. Without d. Unless
3. If there is a/an, call 123 and they will tell you what to do.
 a. emergency b. allowance c. guidance d. hygiene
4. My car is expensive than yours.
 a. much b. much more c. more much d. a much more
5. Mr Ahmed didn't buy his house. It was a/an from his parents.
 a. heritage b. loyalty c. inheritance d. pension
6. Athletes get a special heart examination.
 a. mustn't b. needn't c. shouldn't d. must
7. Mohammed Salah has become the most player in Liverpool.
 a. plural b. popular c. populated d. polluted
8. My mother us not to walk in that dark street again.
 a. suggested b. warned c. said d. advise
9. I seem the first student to arrive at school today.
 a. to be b. being c. be d. to being
10. Egypt Air postpone the flight to Paris last week due to the bad weather conditions.
 a. has to b. had to c. doesn't have to d. didn't have to
11. is a way to grow plants in special water without using any soil.
 a. Phonetics b. Hydroelectricity c. Hydroponics d. Hydrogenation
12. Ali sixteen years old next month.
 a. is going to be b. will be c. is being d. would be
13. A good diet can help to support your
 a. cell b. immune system c. weakness d. healthy
14. Families and relatives often get on happy occasions like birth and marriage.
 a. gather b. together c. altogether d. connection
15. You seen Dina today, because she's in Germany at the moment.
 a. couldn't have b. must have c. may have d. might have

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

In this tour, we will see some of Egypt's most famous sites. Travelling up the Nile, you will see ancient temples and meet friendly local people. We will visit Cairo, the Pyramids of Giza, Aswan and Luxor. You don't need to book hotels because we will arrange all your accommodation. We will also go camping for a night in the desert, so you need to bring a sleeping bag. **It** can be cold at night !

You don't have to bring much money because all your food and transport is included in the price. However, you might want to buy some souvenirs from the bazaars that we will visit. You will need to bring cool clothes and good shoes (walking around ancient temples can be difficult). You must also have a passport. Please also check our website for **up-to-date** information. We know that you'll return with some amazing memories and a happy face !

Egypt is the birthplace of civilization. Egypt is a deep-rooted country. It is famous for **eco-tourism** and the green environment. So we should be eco-tourists and help the environment. The Nile is the longest river in the world so we will enjoy a lot of wonderful landscape and eye-catching places.

16. Who is this text written for ?
 a. It is written for tourists who want to visit Egypt.
 b. It is written for tourists who want to visit London.
 c. It is written for tourists who want to visit River Nile.
 d. It is written for tourists who want to visit hotels.

17. Why don't people need to take much money with them on this trip ?
 a. Tourists mustn't buy any souvenirs from the bazaars that we will visit.
 b. Because people are very poor.
 c. Because the service is free.
 d. Because food and transport is included in the price.

18. According to the passage, this trip is most suitable for
 a. very old people
 b. very young children
 c. young people
 d. babies

19. The best title for this passage can be
 a. The history of Egypt
 b. A trip to Egypt
 c. Tourism in Egypt
 d. The Nile in Egypt

20. What does the underlined word "**It**" refer to ?
 a. The desert
 b. A hotel
 c. A sleeping bag
 d. All the accommodation

21. What do you think "**up-to-date**" means ?
 a. the newest b. very important c. very interesting d. very useful

22. I think that the writer of the text is
 a. telling lies b. telling a story c. telling facts d. telling a novel

23. What does "**eco**" means in It is famous for **eco-tourism** ?
 a. Related to the environment
 b. Related to civilization
 c. Related to pollution
 d. Related to accommodation

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Sports reinforce important values in society, like honest competition and teamwork. "There is no I in Team" is a good sports saying.

a لساند الرياضة قيم مهمة في المجتمع مثل المنافسة الأمينة والعمل الفردي. فهناك مقولة رياضية جيدة تقول «لا يوجد أنا في فريق».
b لدعم الرياضة أشياء سهلة في المجتمع مثل المنافسة الشريفة والعمل الاجتماعي. فهناك مقولة رياضية جيدة تقول «لا يوجد أنا والفريق».
c لرسخ الرياضة قيم مهمة في المجتمع مثل المنافسة الامنة والعمل الروحي. فهناك مقولة رياضية جيدة تقول «لا يوجد أنا في فريق».
d لدعم الرياضة قيم مهمة في المجتمع مثل المنافسة الشريفة والعمل الجماعي. فهناك مقولة رياضية جيدة تقول «لا يوجد أنا في فريق».

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد يسرت التجارة الإلكترونية على الكثيرين من الناس عملية البيع والشراء إلكترونيًا. وهذا بدوره يوفر الوقت والجهد فضلاً عن خلق مناخ تنافسي يصب في صالح المستهلك أولاً.

a. E-commerce has made it easier for many people to sell and trade electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive climate that benefits the producer first.

b. E-learning has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a complete climate that benefits the consumer first.

c. E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive environment that benefits the consumer first.

d. E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electrically. This, in turn, safe time and effort in addition to creating a competitive environment that fits the consumer first.

26. Write an essay about (180) words on the following topic :

"How to avoid the problem of food shortage"

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Gharbia Governorate إدارة بسيون التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The decision the company board yesterday was conclusive.
 a. did b. made c. gave d. decided
2. The boy of the twins is my best friend.
 a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. fasting
3. Students should leave themselves enough time to for the exam.
 a. repair b. present c. prepare d. prescribe
4. Some regard emojis and abbreviations as language innovations.
 a. linguists b. languages c. linguistics d. bilinguals
5. He could have called me. This means he
 a. couldn't b. shouldn't c. haven't d. didn't
6. To get reliable information online, it is recommended to more than one website.
 a. avoid b. consult c. update d. start
7. He always left his books in a neat
 a. pile b. fire c. tone d. work
8. If she had a written assignment, she it now.
 a. will do b. won't do c. would do d. would have done
9. I am short of money, if only I all my money on unnecessary items.
 a. had spent b. spent c. didn't spend d. hadn't spent
10. "My father **should** come now; it is 2:30 p.m. He is used to arriving home at this time." This underlined word expresses
 a. advice b. expectation c. blame d. suggestion
11. The planned project more than just a train station.
 a. seems to b. meaning c. is meant to be d. is supposed
12. development is a prerequisite for our beloved Egypt in all sectors.
 a. Chemical b. Contemporary c. Sustainable d. Spacious
13. In next week's 8 programme, we our regular famous scientist.
 a. will have had b. have c. will have d. will be having
14. She to the club by bus. It was a short walk, so she went on foot.
 a. didn't have to go b. had to go c. has to go d. needn't have gone
15. If a child decides to up a new sport, send them to a doctor to check their heart first
 a. set b. stand c. do d. take

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Because our families and friends have a great influence on us as we grow up, we are born helpless and dependent on our environment. However, people may be divided into two types : winners and losers.

Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking, listen to others, evaluate what they say, and then make up their minds. Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves but they can postpone it if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers : disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers hang on to **them**, and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again. Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but never try to change.

To sum up, always **exert** great efforts, be positive and optimistic, but don't be negative or pessimistic. Then, accept and be proud of what you achieve.

16. A suitable title of the passage can be
 a. Family's influence
 b. Depending on the environment
 c. How to win
 d. Winners and losers

17. The best summary for the second paragraph is
 a. winners' efforts
 b. winners' entertainment
 c. winners' qualities
 d. winners' experiences

18. The underlined word "**them**" refers to
 a. bad situations
 b. winners
 c. progresses
 d. relationships

19. The underlined word "**exert**" can be replaced by
 a. do
 b. invent
 c. make
 d. give

20. The clause "Winners are able to change their situations" refers to winners'
 a. encouragement
 b. flexibility
 c. optimism
 d. dependence

21. The writer losers for their failure.
 a. sympathizes with
 b. blames
 c. regrets
 d. excuses

22. Winners
 a. can delay entertainment if necessary
 b. are defeated by bad experiences
 c. enjoy and leave duties behind
 d. aren't optimistic

23. Losers are people who
 a. overcome their bad experiences
 b. learn to take responsibility
 c. try to change
 d. blame others for their mistakes

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

One has various duties towards one's family, neighbourhood, society, and most importantly towards the homeland. Our responsibility towards our state is indispensable to maintain its dignity and bright future.

a. على الإنسان واجبات مختلفة تجاه أسرته وحيه ومجتمعه والأهم تجاه الوطن. فالواجبات تجاه حكومتنا مهمة جدا للحفاظ على كرامتها ومستقبلها المشرق.

b الواحد يملك واجبات مختلفة تجاه أسرته وحيه ومجتمعه والأهم تجاه الوطن. فالواجبات تجاه الدولة لا غنى عنها للحفاظ على كرامتها ومستقبلها المشرق.

c على الإنسان واجبات مختلفة تجاه أسرته وحيه ومجتمعه والأهم تجاه الوطن. فالواجبات تجاه دولتنا مهمة جدًا للحفاظ على أمنها ومستقبلها المشرق.

d على الإنسان واجبات مختلفة تجاه أسرته وحيه ومجتمعه والأهم تجاه الوطن. فمسؤوليتنا تجاه بلدنا ضرورية للغاية للحفاظ على كرامتها ومستقبلها المشرق.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد آن الأوان لكى تدرك البشرية بأسرها أهمية إحلال السلام والتعاون والمحبة فيما بينها. فبدونهم لن يستطيع الناس مواجهة المشكلات والأوبئة التى يمكن أن تنتشر فى العالم بأسره.

a. It is high time for humanity realizes the importance of peace, cooperation, and love between them. Without them, people won't be able to face the problems and epidemics that may prevail in the whole world.

b. It is high time for humanity that realized the importance of peace, cooperation, and love among them. Without them, people won't be able to face the problems and epidemics that may spread to the entire world.

c. It is high time for humanity to realize the importance of peace, cooperation, and love between them. Without them, people won't be able to face the problems and epidemics that may spread to the entire world.

d. It is high time for humanity to realize the importance of peace, cooperation, and love among them. Without it, people won't be able to face the problems and epidemics that may prevail in the whole world.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"Some people think that reaching goals is an easy job. What is your point of view ?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

8 Dakahlia Governorate إدارة شربين التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الأنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation is a/an used on a person who is not breathing or responding to you.
 a. operation b. instructions c. technique d. activity
2. Why did he get up at 5 o'clock ? He got up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.
 a. didn't have to b. needn't have c. won't have d. wouldn't have
3. Different festivals are in various nations with different meals and folk songs.
 a. happened b. done c. celebrated d. performed
4. I to bed earlier last night. I am really tired today.
 a. should go b. shouldn't go c. should have gone d. shouldn't have gone
5. Respecting other people's is essential, so we should be tolerant with other people.
 a. believes b. beliefs c. believing d. believable
6. When you're travelling, the luggage you have the better.
 a. much b. less c. most d. more heavy
7. It is thought that people who smoke are less healthy and more to become ill when they are older.
 a. like b. liking c. likely d. liked

8. Why did you cross the street without looking ? You killed.
a. could be b. couldn't be c. could have been d. couldn't have been

9. Thanks to technological, we can now purify seawater so that it is safe to drink.
a. machine b. inventor c. innovation d. situation

10. This bag is so heavy. I it for you.
a. will carry b. am carrying c. will have carried d. will be carried

11. If you want to use social media safely, you need to be more
a. sensing b. sensible c. sensation d. sensitive

12. Nadeen do her homework. She isn't going to the cinema with us.
a. is seeming to b. meaning to c. is supposed to d. seemingly to

13. The teacher asked us to notes of what he said to help us revise for the exam.
a. carry b. take c. play d. draw

14. They would have gone out if they so tired last night.
a. weren't b. hadn't been c. haven't been d. aren't

15. I thanked my mother for the meal she had cooked for us.
a. taste b. tasteful c. tasting d. tasty

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Resources are things that we use. Natural resources come from Earth. Many of our natural resources are limited. This means that they will not last forever. Some resources are renewable. This means the resource can be replaced or grown. You can plant a new tree when you cut one down. Other resources are not renewable. This means that they cannot be replaced or grown. You can dig coal out of the ground. Once the coal is used, it is gone. Many of Earth's natural resources are limited, but people can help conserve those resources. When you try to conserve a natural resource, you use less of it, so it does not get used up so fast.

People can conserve fuel, like gasoline, is by riding a bicycle or walking. This works well when the distance is short. We needn't drive everywhere. Water is a very important natural resource. We all need it to live. We can conserve water by making sure that our pipes and faucets do not leak. We can also conserve water by making smart choices. One choice is to use the dishwasher and washing machine only when they are full. Another choice is to turn off the water when you brush your teeth. We can all make a difference !

16. Resources are things that we
a. need b. get c. use d. are available

17. Renewable resources
a. may run out b. can be replaced c. can't be replaced d. may not last

18. We need water to
a. save energy b. renew resources c. live d. move

19. To save water, use the dishwasher when it is
a. connected b. clean c. repaired d. full

20. We ride bicycles so that we can
a. play games b. save water c. save energy d. make smart choices

21. The problem about most of our natural resources is that they will one day.
a. move b. change c. last forever d. run out

22. The best title for this article could be
a. Saving the Planet b. Wasting Energy c. Saving Resources d. Using Gas

23. Individuals make a difference in saving energy.
a. can b. can't c. won't d. has to

PART 2

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Egypt has constantly been a leading country in various fields throughout history. Egypt played this role in hosting the International Climate Change Conference.

a. كانت مصر دائمًا دولة قيادة فى كثير من المجالات قبل التاريخ. ولقد لعبت مصر هذا الشوط باستضافتها للمؤتمر الدولى لتغير المناخ.

b. كانت مصر مستمرًا دولة قيادية فى مختلف المجالات على مر التاريخ. ولقد لعبت مصر بهذا الدور بعملها للمؤتمر الدولى لتغير المناخ.

c. كانت مصر دائمًا دولة قيادية فى مختلف المجالات على مر التاريخ. ولقد قامت مصر بهذا الدور باستضافتها للمؤتمر الدولى لتغير المناخ.

d. كانت مصر دائمًا دولة قيادة فى مختلف المجالات على مر التاريخ. ولقد أقامت مصر بهذا الدور باستضافتها للمؤتمر القومى لتغير المناخ.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لا تشارك معلوماتك الشخصية على مواقع الإنترنت غير الموثوقة. فقد يستخدمها المجرمون فى ابتزازك وتهديدك.

a. You should never share your personal information on the unreliable websites. The criminals might use it to threaten and blackmail you.

b. You should use your personal information on the unreliable websites. The criminals must use it to threaten and blackmail you.

c. You will never share your personal information on the unreliable websites. The criminals have to use it to threaten and blackmail you.

d. You should never share your personnel information on the mistaken websites. The criminals might make it to threaten and blackmail you.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"The pros and cons of online shopping"

.....

.....

.....

.....

9 Beheira Governorate إدارة المحمودية التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Without wearing a face mask, it's easy to get a/an of COVID-19.
 a. protection b. infection c. injection d. reflection
2. The sign says, "No Parking". That means you leave your car here.
 a. have to b. don't have to c. can not d. needn't
3. Our family members are used to together on Friday evenings.
 a. setting b. making c. doing d. getting
4. You should take 2 aspirins and go to bed. I'm sure you will feel better in the morning.
 a. most b. more c. a lot d. so
5. The of Egypt is growing by nearly two percent a year.
 a. population b. people c. number d. persons
6. I to London next Friday. I have already booked the ticket.
 a. travel b. am traveling c. will travel d. am going to travel
7. I should have listened to his explanation carefully. As a result, I what he meant.
 a. recognized b. understood c. misunderstood d. realized
8. He was traveling all day yesterday. So you have seen him at work.
 a. shouldn't b. could c. ought to d. couldn't

9. The question was too difficult to answer in 2 minutes. We needed some time to think.
a. extra b. addition c. another d. much

10. Why are you here now, Ahmed ? You are to be at the airport meeting your sister.
a. seemed b. believe c. meant d. suppose

11. I have a close with all my cousins. We are very good friends.
a. membership b. relationship c. hardship d. championship

12. If I had enough time, I you.
a. help b. will help c. would help d. would have helped

13. of important topics were discussed during the meeting.
a. A number b. The number c. An amount d. A quantity

14. You go with us if you don't feel like it.
a. needn't b. don't need c. mustn't d. haven't got

15. The less you eat, the you feel.
a. healthy b. healthier c. healthiest d. health

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

There's no doubt that the developments in the medical field have helped a lot of people live longer and happier lives. In the past, a lot of people suffered and even died because of diseases that are now easy to be treated thanks to the revolution in the medical field. One hundred years ago, diabetes always killed. A victim of diabetes would often have a damaged body organ called the pancreas, but doctors didn't understand why. In 1921, a young doctor called Frederic Banting had a theory that the pancreas **released** a substance that controlled the sugar in the blood. Professor John Macleod at University of Toronto, Canada, gave him a laboratory, ten dogs, and a medical student called Charles Best as a research assistant. Banting and Best showed that an extract from the pancreas which they named "insulin", could control blood sugar in dogs. Biochemist Bertram Collip joined them. He made the insulin pure so it could be tested on humans. The discovery of insulin was **a landmark**. Diabetic patients no longer died from the disease. Banting and Macleod received the Nobel Prize in Medicine in 1923, but they shared their prize money with Best and Collip.

16. The best title for this passage is
a. Unknown scientists b. The discovery of insulin
c. Diabetes d. Nobel Prize

17. Medicine
a. will stop one day b. won't develop any more
c. is developed every day d. can't be developed

18. What role do you think Bertram Collip played ?
a. He discovered Insulin. b. He provided the laboratory.
c. He was a research assistant. d. He made pure insulin for human.

19. The underlined word "**a landmark**" can be replaced by a/an
a. disadvantage b. advantage c. turning point d. weakness point

20. According to the passage, diabetes affects the badly.
a. lungs b. pancreas c. heart d. stomach

21. Who was the first to realize that the pancreas releases insulin ?
a. John Macleod b. Fredrick Banting c. Charles Best d. Bretram Collip

22. The synonym of the underlined word "**release**" is
a. damage b. produce c. avoid d. stop

23. Who got the Nobel Prize money ?
a. One scientists b. Two scientists c. Three scientists d. Four scientists

PART 2

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Nobody is perfect and it is natural to make mistakes, so we should meet others' mistakes with forgiveness.

a. لا يوجد شخص كامل ومن الطبيعى أن نخطئ لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الاخرين بالثأر.
b. لا يوجد شخص مثالى ومن غير الطبيعى أن نخطئ لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الاخرين بالانتقام.
c. لا يوجد شخص مثالى ومن الطبيعى أن نخطئ لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الاخرين بالعفو.
d. لا يوجد شخص كامل ومن الطبيعى أن نخطئ لذلك يجب أن نقابل أخطاء الاخرين بالتجاهل.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

يجب علينا جميعًا أن نفخر بالمصريين الذين حققوا إنجازات فى جميع المجالات فهم يمثلون القدوة للأجيال القادمة.

a. We all should be proud of the Egyptians who made achievements in all fields. They are the role models for the next generations.
b. All we should be proud of the Egyptians who lost achievements in all fields. They were the role models for the next generations.
c. All of us should be proud of the Egyptians who made achievements in all fields. They are the role medals for the next generations.
d. We all should be proud of the Egyptians who made achievements in all fields. They are the rule models for the next generations.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"Managing Time"

.....
.....
.....
.....

10 Kafr El Shiekh Governorate إدارة غرب كفر الشيخ التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ahmed is less than Ali.
 a. stronger b. strong c. strongest d. the stronger
2. It is that the weather will get hotter in most countries due to climate change.
 a. think b. thought c. thinking d. thinks
3. This is his second successful film.
 a. more b. most c. the most d. the least
4. is a type of plant that grows in the sea and which can be used as food.
 a. Sea food b. Sea weed c. Corals d. Whales
5. I can't visit my cousins in June as I for a charity.
 a. will work b. will have worked c. work d. will be working
6. When someone your heart, they hurt your feeling and make you unhappy.
 a. brakes b. breaks c. sends d. gives
7. CPR is a famous
 a. abbreviation b. acronym c. word d. punctuation
8. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you me.
 a. should phone b. could phone
 c. would have phoned d. ought to have phoned
9. It to snow last week.
 a. seemed b. is meant c. wasn't supposed d. didn't suppose

10. If you to the page, you will become a follower.
a. follow b. post c. subscribe d. views

11. Facebook regularly asks me to my personal data.
a. update b. outdate c. upgrade d. degrade

12. They are happy, they be having a nice time.
a. are meaning to b. supposed to c. seem to d. won't

13. I wish I that food yesterday, I got very sick from it.
a. had eaten b. didn't eat c. hadn't eaten d. won't eat

14. If Mona the competition, she would have a prize.
a. win b. wins c. won d. had won

15. To keep fit, try to take a sport.
a. up b. down c. off d. out

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

The Chinese invented paper and they were also the first to use paper banknotes for money. Before paper notes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders had used metal coins. These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on pieces of material. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the money with someone they trusted. Instead, they carried a piece of paper which said how much money they had. The trader could use this paper note to promise anyone that they could pay for the goods that they wanted to buy.

People in Europe only started to use paper banknotes in the seventeenth century. In England, the King needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with **them** and gave handwritten notes saying how much money they had left. The notes said, "I promise to pay the **bearer** the sum of .." and you can still see the same words on English notes today. Bank workers continued to hand write notes until 1853, when the first notes were printed. The paper used for banknotes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make the notes stronger than normal paper, most banknotes only last for about two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic notes in 1983. However, the first plastic notes in England were not very successful because the ink came off the notes onto people's hands ! Five years later, in 1988, Australia successfully used plastic notes for the first time. Today, many countries use plastic notes, which are stronger than paper notes, last longer and are harder to copy.

16. Why did Chinese traders first use notes instead of coins ?
a. Because the coins were too heavy to carry.
b. Because coins had holes in them.
c. Because traders could not trust everyone.
d. Because they preferred paper.

17. Why did banks in England first want people to leave their money with them ?
a. The King needed money to fight a war.
b. People preferred notes to coins.
c. People wanted their money to be safe.
d. Banks opened for the first time.

18. Why were notes handwritten until 1853 ?
a. It was cheaper this way. b. It was faster this way.
c. There was not any technology to print them before this time.
d. It was hard to copy the handwriting.

PART 2

19. What is the main idea of the text ?
a. Why we use money. b. Why we use banks.
c. The history of paper banknotes. d. The history of trade.

20. What does the underlined word **them** refer to ?
a. the King's men b. the men in France
c. the people who had the money d. the banks

21. What does the word **bearer** mean ?
a. someone who works in a bank b. a Chinese trader
c. someone who carries something d. someone who works for the King

22. Where were paper banknotes first used ?
a. In China b. In Europe c. In England d. In Australia

23. When were paper banknotes first used ?
a. In the seventh century b. In the seventeenth century
c. In 1988 d. In 1983

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Establishing a new capital in Egypt has become a grave necessity to solve some of the recent problems.

a. إن إنشاء عاصمة جديدة فى مصر أصبح ضرورة ملحة لحل مشكلة ازدحام المرور.
b. لقد أصبح إنشاء عاصمة جديدة فى مصر ضرورة ملحة لحل بعض المشاكل الحالية.
c. لقد أصبح إنشاء عاصمة جديدة فى مصر ليس ضرورة ملحة لحل بعض المشاكل الحالية.
d. إن إنشاء عاصمة جديدة فى مصر أصبح ضرورة ملحة لحل مشكلة الازدحام السكانى.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

مشكلة نقص المياه أحد أهم المشاكل التى تواجه بلدنا فى الفترة الحالية.

a. Water lack is one of the most important problems that forces our country these days.
b. Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our continent these days.
c. Water lack is one of the most important problems that supports our country these days.
d. Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our country these days.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"Managing Time"

11 Damietta Governorate إدارة الزرقاء التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Our neighbourhood restaurant to serve delicious dishes.
a. is seemed b. supposed c. is meant d. is supposing

2. There is a massive between the living conditions the poor and the rich lead.
a. gap b. dig c. block d. link

3. This question is too hard to grasp. Can't you make it
a. simply b. simpler c. more simpler d. as simple

4. "Confused" to "Puzzled" is as "Traditional" to "..... " .
a. Modern b. Up-to-date c. Contemporary d. Customary

5. he been treated well, he wouldn't have suffered for long.
a. If b. Unless c. Had d. Were

6. With all the attempts he did to her, she couldn't breathe again and ended in death.
a. reconstruct b. resuscitate c. resign d. resend

7. He lies at night worrying about his job.
a. awake b. week c. awash d. award

8. Environmental groups want a total on the dumping of nuclear waste.
a. cultivation b. prohibition c. proportion d. promotion

9. On hearing about diseases, every now and then, terror spreads everywhere.
a. communicable b. communication c. communicative d. communicated

10. Lamia wishes that she with her parents. She really upset them.
a. hadn't argued b. wouldn't argue c. haven't argued d. doesn't argue

11. Hardly when it became a bestseller.
a. the novel published b. did the novel come out
c. was the novel publishing d. did the novel publish

12. Our grandmother us to keep our new phones away from water.
a. avoided b. admitted c. suggested d. warned

13. I had to take a taxi as I had no for me in the bus.
a. room b. chair c. stool d. time

14. Once you feel the same pain again, it is a must to your doctor.
a. consult b. construct c. constant d. constrict

15. It was shameful of you to turn your back your friend and ignore him.
a. on b. to c. for d. towards

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

The Nile crocodile is an African crocodile and the second largest extant reptile in the world, after the saltwater crocodile. It lives in different types of aquatic environments such as lakes, rivers and marshlands.

Although it is capable of living in saline environments, this species is rarely found in saltwater, but occasionally inhabits deltas. The Nile crocodile is an opportunistic **predator** and a very aggressive species of crocodile that is capable of taking almost any animal within its range. Nile crocodiles are generalists, taking a variety of prey. **Their** diet consists mostly of different species of fish, reptiles, birds and mammals. It has an extremely powerful bite that is unique amongst all animals and sharp conical teeth that sink into flesh allowing for a grip that is almost impossible to loosen.

Adult Nile crocodiles have a dark bronze colouration above, with faded blackfish spots and stripes across the back and a dingy off-yellow on the belly, although mud can often hide the crocodile's actual colour. Their flanks are yellowish-green in colour and have dark patches. Nile crocodiles have green eyes. As it matures, Nile crocodiles become darker.

Nile crocodiles are very social crocodiles. They share basking spots and large food sources such as schools of fish and big carcasses. They also lay eggs to reproduce, which are guarded by the female. They are one of the most dangerous species of crocodile and are responsible for hundreds of deaths of humans every year.

16. What is known about Nile crocodiles ?
a. They never live in deltas. b. They only live in deltas.
c. They no longer live in deltas. d. They sometimes live in deltas.

17. Why do Nile crocodiles share schools of fish ?
a. Because they are aggressive. b. Because they are deadly.
c. Because they are social. d. Because they are conical.

PART 2

18. When do Nile crocodiles become darker in colour ?
a. When they eat. b. When they mature.
c. When they are hungry. d. When they are angry.

19. Where do you rarely see a Nile crocodile ?
a. In lakes b. In rivers c. In deltas d. In saltwater

20. What does the underlined word "**their**" refer to ?
a. Foods b. Nile crocodiles c. Prey d. Reptiles

21. What is meant by the underlined word "**predator**" ?
a. An animal that eats plants. b. An animal that lives in space.
c. An animal that lives on land d. An animal that eats other animals.

22. hides the real colour of Nile crocodiles.
a. Water b. Mud c. Sand d. Spine

23. The teeth of Nile crocodiles sink into allowing for a grip that is almost impossible to loosen.
a. flesh b. flash c. flask d. fuss

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Religions and civilizations dialogue opens the door to close the gap between western and eastern culture. Thus, it is our duty to start before it is too late.

a. يفتح كلام الديانات والحضارات الباب لإنهاء الفجوة بين الثقافة الغربية والشرقية. لذا وجب علينا أن نبدأ قبل أن نتأخر.
b. يفتح حوار الديانات والحضارات الباب لإنهاء الفضاء بين الثقافة الشمالية والغربية، لذلك من واجبنا أن نبدأ قبل أن يفوت الأوان.
c. يغلق حوار الديانات والحضارات الباب لإنهاء الفجوة بين الثقافة الشرقية والغربية، لذلك من واجبنا أن نبدأ قبل أن يفوت الأوان.
d. يفتح حوار الديانات والحضارات الباب لإنهاء الفجوة بين الثقافة الغربية والشرقية ولذا من واجبنا أن نبدأ قبل فوات الأوان.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد وهب الله مصر كنزًا من الموارد الطبيعية لو أحسن استغلالها لأصبحنا من أغنى الدول، وقد تم بالفعل اتخاذ خطوات جادة في هذا المجال.

a. Allah have granted Egypt a lot of natural resources that unless they are well used, we will become one of the riches countries. Serious steps have already been taken in this field.
b. Allah has granted Egypt a lot of natural resources that if they were well used, we will become one of the richest countries. Serious steps have already been taken in this concept.
c. Allah has granted Egypt a few natural resources who if they are well used, we will become one of richest countries. Serious steps have already been taken in this area.
d. Allah has granted Egypt a lot of natural resources that if they are well used, we will become one of the richest countries. Serious steps have already been taken in this field.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"The problems of our current age"

.....
.....
.....
.....

12 Port Said Governorate إدارة شمال بورسعيد التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An is a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre.
a. play b. scene c. act d. character

2. You park here as there is a "No parking" sign.
a. have to b. don't have to c. needn't d. mustn't

3. We always go to this restaurant because the food is very there.
a. taste b. tasty c. tasteful d. tasteless

4. Many people believe that Nasi Goreng is one of meals in Indonesia.
a. spiciest b. the spiciest c. spicier than d. as spicier

5. We our 25th wedding anniversary in Paris.
a. ignored b. fed c. celebrated d. charged

6. You must look for scientific information only from sources.
a. removable b. reusable c. reliable d. complex

7. King Lear thinks that Goneril will have a taste of her own if her child is cruel to her.
a. riches b. loyalty c. inheritance d. medicine

8. We have pleasant of the trip, we took a lot of photos.
a. phrases b. memories c. mistakes d. errors

9. He wouldn't have helped me unless I him.
a. had phoned b. hadn't phoned c. phoned d. would phone

10. My teacher be happy with my work.
a. seems to b. seems c. seemed d. is seeming

11. Our class working in the laboratory all the afternoon.
a. will b. won't c. will be d. going to

12. He applied a new job yesterday.
a. in b. to c. with d. for

13. The room is very hot. I the window.
a. going to open b. will open c. opens d. would open

14. My parents advised me exercise daily.
a. to do b. do to c. did d. doing

15. I feel sick. I eaten so much ice cream.
a. mustn't have b. can't have c. shouldn't have d. needn't have

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Everyone likes to stay fit and healthy, but not everyone succeeds in doing that. Staying healthy is important to ensure a happy life. There are two main **tips** that people have to follow in order to stay healthy. One of the most helpful ways to stay healthy is to have healthy food and eat it in an appropriate time.

Healthy eating is the cornerstone in preventing our health from many conditions, such as diabetes, heart diseases, cancer and blood pressure. Junk foods should be avoided, instead of having these fast and unhealthy foods, the diet should contain leafy vegetables, fresh vegetables, fruits, milk and fish. One's diet has a key impact on their overall health.

Healthy food gives an individual strength and even improves their appearance. Healthy food is good for both an individual's body and skin. Exercising is a physical activity that enhances physical fitness and health. For instance, running and cycling are the important exercises that the human should do to ensure keeping the body healthy and fit. Therefore, find some time about 30 minutes per day to do exercises. Being healthy is not hard to control, be active and be healthy.

16. The main idea of the passage is ".....".
a. How to exercise. b. How to eat healthy food.
c. How to lead a healthy life. d. How to be active.

PART 2

17. The underlined word "**tips**" in the passage means ".....".
a. advice b. chance c. game d. opportunity

18. It's important to eat healthy food in a/an time
a. bad b. suitable c. usual d. unusual

19. According to the passage, ... are the most important exercises for us.
a. swimming and running b. running and cycling
c. swimming and cycling d. playing football and cycling

20. is enough time to do exercises.
a. Half an hour b. Quarter of an hour c. One hour d. Two hours

21. Healthy eating prevents many such as diabetes.
a. vegetable b. exercises c. fast food d. diseases

22. Healthy food makes us
a. stress b. weak c. bad d. strong

23. A good diet should contain
a. fruits and vegetables b. sweets
c. junk food and vegetables d. pizza

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Productivity is one of the most necessary qualities good citizens should have. It enables them to share effectively in development projects as well as in most fields of work.

a. تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التى يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون فهى تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية فى مشروعات التنمية وكذلك فى معظم مجالات العمل.

b. تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم المؤهلات التى يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون فهى تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية فى خطط التنمية وكذلك فى معظم مجالات العمل.

c. تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التى يجب أن يتمتع بها أى مواطن فهى تمكنه من المشاركة بفاعلية فى مشروعات الاستثمار وكذلك فى معظم مجالات العمل.

d. تعتبر جودة الإنتاج من أهم السمات التى يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطن المصرى فهى تمكنه من المشاركة بفاعلية فى مشروعات التنمية وكذلك فى معظم مجالات العمل.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

يعتبر التعلم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتساب المعرفة بمساعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت ولذلك توفر الدولة كل الوسائل لمساعدة هؤلاء الطلاب.

a. Homeschooling is considered one of the ways through which students can learn and gain knowledge with the help of online learners; therefore, the government provides all the means to help those students.

b. Homeschooling is considered one of the ways through which students can learn and gain knowledge with the help of online learners; therefore, the government gains all the means to help those students.

c. Home activities are considered one of the ways through which students can learn and gain knowledge with the help of online teachers; therefore, the government provides all the means to help those students.

d. Homeschooling is considered one of the ways through which students can learn and gain knowledge with the help of online teachers; therefore, the government provides all the means to help those students.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"The pros and cons of social media"

.....

.....

.....

.....

13 Suez Governorate إدارة شمال السويس التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Let's together this weekend. It would be nice to see you.
 a. make b. do c. have d. get
2. I wish I taken that selfie. I look terrible.
 a. have not b. had not c. won't have d. has not
3. Ali travelled by train, even though he thought he by car. He thought it would be safe.
 a. had to travel b. couldn't have travelled
 c. could have travelled d. has to travel
4. Our house at the moment.
 a. is painting b. is been painted c. is being painting d. is being painted
5. I studied a lot for the exam. I
 a. don't fail b. am not failing c. am not going to fail d. won't be failing
6. To get there on time, I leave home by 8:30. I wasn't allowed to come late.
 a. don't have b. mustn't c. needn't d. had to
7. "..... on the grass as it is wet." said the gardener.
 a. Not to walk b. To walk c. Walk d. Don't walk
8. I think my brother this mobile phone most.
 a. will like b. has liked c. going to like d. is liked
9. If you post that picture of Amir, he angry for sure.
 a. will get b. got c. would get d. would have
10. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or food such as fish and nuts ?
 a. small b. salty c. salt d. spicy
11. I asked my if I could have some time off to go to the dentist.
 a. employer b. applicant c. employee d. interviewer
12. We can dictionary when we are not sure about how to spell a word.
 a. scan b. update c. skin d. consult
13. Your system works better if you eat healthy food.
 a. immune b. athletic c. injured d. emergency
14. The doctors are worried because the man has a illness.
 a. severe b. spicy c. wise d. past
15. My plane at 7:00 in the morning.
 a. leave b. leaving c. is leaving d. leaves

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

While technology is taking control steadily over individual lives, the reading habit is fast vanishing into thin air. TV and the silver screen are filling the minds of the modern youth, taking the majority of their free time. We have to think seriously about how the growing generations will find time to read. Video and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among youth. **They** do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population would be better educated. Reading a story is an active partnership between a writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is totally passive. The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television. Their difficulty is not reading with the words - it is interpreting them.

PART 2

They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. Only by reading daily, a child will become a strong and independent reader. Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without their television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

16. The best title for the passage is ".....".
 a. The importance of reading
 b. Children's preferences
 c. The benefits of technology
 d. Technology pros

17. There is a fruitful partnership between a writer and a reader when
 a. a video is watched
 b. a book is sold
 c. an article is published
 d. a short story is read

18. What is the reason behind the decline in reading habit among youth ?
 a. Lack of free time.
 b. TV and video.
 c. Doing sports.
 d. Not going to school.

19. The synonym of the word "**independent**" is
 a. self-centered b. self-determining c. active d. intelligent

20. According to the writer's view, TV is means of entertainment.
 a. not an effective b. not a cheap c. an effective d. an encouraging

21. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to
 a. the youth b. reading skills c. children d. video and television

22. Reading helps people to be
 a. well-paid b. good writers c. well-educated d. good actors

23. Children, who read slowly, ...
 a. like TV b. are disabled c. like reading d. speak fast

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Good citizens are those who dedicate their time and their money to the welfare of their families and the protection of their communities.

a. المواطنون الصالحون هم الذين يكرسون وقتهم وأموالهم لرفاهية أسرهم وحماية مجتمعاتهم.
b. المواطنون الصالحون هم الذين يهدرون وقتهم وأموالهم لرفاهية أسرهم وحماية مجتمعاتهم.
c. المواطنون الصالحون هم الذين يكرسون وقتهم وأموالهم لتعاسة أسرهم وحماية مجتمعاتهم.
d. المواطنون الصالحون هم الذين يستمتعون بوقتهم وأموالهم لسعادة أسرهم وحماية أوطانهم.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

ليس من المستحيل أن يحقق الإنسان طموحاته إذا كان لديه صبر وإرادة قوية. أنها صفات مهمة لتحقيق النجاح.

a. It's not impossible for a person to achieve his ambitions if he has patience and a strong will. These are important qualities to achieve success.
b. It's not impossible for a person to practice his ambitions if he has patience and a strong will. These are important qualities to achieve success.
c. It's not impossible for a person to lose his ambitions if he has patience and a strong will. These are important qualities to achieve success.
d. It's not impossible for a person to fail his ambitions if he has patience and a strong will. These are important qualities to achieve success.

26.Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"Many people think that money is the main cause of happiness"

.....
.....
.....
.....

14 Fayoum Governorate إدارة يوسف الصديق التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Doctors say that we should avoid foods which a lot of fat.
 a. consist b. include c. enclose d. contain
2. I'll give you a lift, so you walk to the station.
 a. must b. had to c. don't have to d. mustn't
3. Scientists should find sustainable to the problem of food shortage.
 a. infections b. solutions c. productions d. starvations
4. are small pieces of information which tell websites what we were looking at.
 a. Hackers b. Downloads c. Antiviruses d. Cookies
5. Be careful; it is easy to get with COVID-19.
 a. infection b. infectious c. injection d. infected
6. I missed the first lecture; I up late last night.
 a. should have stayed b. could have stayed
 c. shouldn't have stayed d. needn't stay
7. Schools to follow rules of safety.
 a. supposed b. are meant c. are seemed d. must
8. She has always been mean with money. The synonym of 'mean' is
 a. generous b. stingy c. negative d. aggressive
9. Mrs Azza is tall, but Mrs Fareeda is
 a. more tall b. more taller c. less tall d. less taller
10. Must we finish this exercise today? No, you
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. haven't got d. doesn't need to
11. If she the report carefully, she would have a clear idea about the matter.
 a. read b. reads c. had read d. has read
12. The process of making or growing things to be sold in large quantities mean
 a. reduction b. function c. production d. consumption
13. He hung out with his friends. This means that he with them.
 a. made trouble b. spent time
 c. lost contact d. stopped being friendly
14. She is flying to Italy next Monday. Her flight off at 7.
 a. took b. taking c. take d. takes
15. A CPR is a famous
 a. word b. abbreviation c. acronym d. punctuation

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

The human body is like a machine that is moving and working all the time. All machines need fuel to give them energy. The fuel for the human body is food and most of the energy comes from two substances in our food, they are carbohydrates and fats. Carbohydrates are found in food like potatoes, bread, rice, wheat, corn, and sugar. Fats come from food like cheese, butter, oil and meat.

Energy in food is measured in calories. For example, an apple has about 40 calories, an egg has about 80, a fresh date has 15, and a tomato has around 12. Carbohydrates and fats have a lot of calories. For instance, a tin of soft drink, which contains a lot of sugar, has 145, a piece of bread has 165, and only one spoonful of cooking oil has 120 calories. You need about 40 calories a day for each kilo that you weigh. So, if you weigh 60 kilos,

PART 2

you will need about 2400 calories per day. If a person eats more calories than he /she needs, his/ her body stores the extra calories as fat. A person who gets all the calories he/ she needs in his/ her meals but in addition drinks only one tin of soft drink a day may gain five kilos per year.

Unfortunately, food which contains carbohydrates is usually cheaper than other food and it is often convenient and attractive. All 'junk food' contains lots of carbohydrates and fats. If your diet contains a lot of junk food, you will probably get fat.

16. What is the best title for the passage ?
 a. Fats and their energy
 b. How to become healthy
 c. How to get energy
 d. Fats and carbohydrates

17. How many calories do tins of soft drink have ?
 a. A small number of b. A few
 c. No
 d. Many

18. We find carbohydrates in
 a. bread, potatoes and rice
 b. cheese, butter, oil and meat
 c. oranges and mangoes
 d. vegetables and fruits

19. All 'junk food' contains lots of carbohydrates and fats. If our diet contains a lot of junk food, we will probably get fat. This means that junk food is
 a. healthy
 b. poisonous
 c. unhealthy
 d. necessary

20. What do cheese, butter and oil contain ?
 a. Fats
 b. Carbohydrates
 c. Salts
 d. Vitamins

21. Where does energy for the human body come from ?
 a. Junk food
 b. Carbohydrates and fats
 c. Protein and foods
 d. Soft drinks

22. How many calories does the person who weighs 40 kilos need a day ?
 a. 2000 calories
 b. 165 calories
 c. 1600 calories
 d. 2400 calories

23. Which statement is true ?
 a. Food which contains carbohydrates doesn't make us fat.
 b. Food which contains carbohydrates has fewer calories.
 c. Food which contains carbohydrates isn't expensive and is most liked
 d. Food which contains carbohydrates is the only food useful for the body.

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Sports play a vital role in forming one's character. They teach him how to be independent and self-confident.

a. تلعب الرياضة دورًا حيويًا فى تشكيل شخصية الفرد فهى تعلمه الاستقلالية والثقة بالنفس.
b. تلعب الرياضة دورًا حيويًا فى تشكيل شخصية الفرد فهى تجعله مستقلاً وواثق بالنفس.
c. تلعب الرياضة دورًا حيويًا فى تغيير شخصية الفرد فهى تعلمه المهنية والثقة بالنفس.
d. تلعب الرياضة دورًا مهنيًا فى تشكيل شخصية الفرد فهى تعلمه التحرر والثقة بالنفس.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

السياحة هى وسيلة لإعطاء معلومات عن الماضى والحاضر لبلدى حيث تتلاقى الحضارات وتتبادل الثقافات.

a. Tourism is a means of giving information about the past and the future of my country where civilizations meet and cultures exchange.
b. Terrorism is a means of giving information about the past and the present of my country where civilizations meet and cultures exchange.
c. Tourism is a means of giving information about the past and the present of my country where civilizations converge and cultures exchange.
d. Tourism is a mean of giving information about the past and the present of my country where civilizations prospers and cultures exchange.

i. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"The role of youth in building up our society"

.....

.....

.....

.....

15 Beni Suef Governorate إدارة بنا التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He was isolated in a separate room as he was with Coronavirus.
 a. infection b. infect c. infectious d. infected
2. Some people like to have the signature of when they meet them.
 a. celebration b. celebrities c. celebrate d. celebrated
3. Growing plants in water or in sand, rather than in soil is known as
 a. hydroelectric b. hydrochloric c. hydroponics d. hydrogen
4. His loss to the game doesn't mean he didn't train well. His opponent was just lucky.
 a. necessarily b. negatively c. necessity d. necessary
5. information to the internet needs a skill I have never had.
 a. Upgrading b. Unlocking c. Uploading d. Downloading
6. The teacher suddenly spoke up to the student's attention to important points.
 a. peel b. pay c. draw d. vary
7. I a face mask in such a dusty weather, I have caught a virus.
 a. should have been worn b. should have wear
 c. should wear d. should have worn
8. "If I had had an invitation, I'd have attended the party." This means I to the party
 a. was invited but I didn't go b. wasn't invited but I went
 c. wasn't invited so I didn't go d. was invited so I went
9. Astronauts are trained well to get the outer space severe conditions.
 a. on b. off c. into d. with
10. The majority of mothers think that babies at regular times.
 a. must feed b. have to feed c. have to be fed d. need to feed
11. Egypt's discovery in the last three years is the gas wells in the Mediterranean Sea.
 a. more important b. much more important
 c. the most important d. most important
12. Egypt has an ambitious plan. The number of tourists the few next years.
 a. doubled b. is doubling
 c. is going to be doubled d. will be double
13. The man in front of the shop window, is its owner.
 a. who sitting b. who sit c. is sitting d. sitting
14. As the exams are getting nearer, the teacher asked the students harder.
 a. not to work b. to work c. to working d. working
15. If the company proposed a good salary to get the job ?
 a. would you accept b. will you accept
 c. would have you accepted d. do you accept

PART 2

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

"A friend in need is a friend indeed." Has that wise saying been proved to you? Did any of your **close** friends ever stand beside you at the times of sorrow, distress or the times of joy ? That has become a needle in a haystack at those times of struggling and **climbing on the shoulders of others**.

At the very beginning of one's life, a child makes friends with a lot of peers who are maybe a mixture of good or bad. He, due to his young age, can't perfectly judge or decide who to continue keeping or losing friendship with. By the time he becomes older, the number of friends **decreases** to a number that doesn't exceed the number of one hand fingers. It all depends on to what extent they are faithful, selfless and honest to each other.

Friendship that all mankind always search for, as it's mainly a human instinct and man is social by nature, has become a rare value. Friends can help you celebrate good times and provide support in bad ones. They prevent isolation and loneliness and increase your sense of belonging. The so called "friends" on social media, because you only contact with them and limit themselves in comments or emojis to congratulate and condole instead of hastening to stand right next to you unless they have tough conditions, are false friends. My advice is to carefully choose your friends.

16. "**Climbing on the shoulders of others**" This expression describes
 a. true friends b. selfish friends
 c. friends on social media d. brave friends

17. The word "**decrease**" in the second paragraph is an antonym of
 a. expand b. decline c. contract d. shrink

18. Man always needs friends because
 a. he has much free time. b. he needs to laugh at others.
 c. he is greedy by nature. d. this is how he was created.

19. The writer thinks that true friendship has become
 a. common b. widely spread c. uncommon d. hateful

20. What do you think "emojis" are ?
 a. Games for entertainment. b. Computer devices.
 c. Figures and symbols. d. Tools and equipment.

21. "Close" in the first line has the same meaning as
 a. locked b. best c. hateful d. opponent

22. Friendship prevents us from feelings of
 a. loneliness and disconnect. b. relief and relaxing.
 c. fear and horror. d. calmness and excitement.

23. The writer advised us to
 a. text our friends at times of sorrow. b. decrease the number of our friends.
 c. correctly select our friends. d. correctly use social media.

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Countries try hard to preserve the environment. Man's activities have caused disasters as the global warming and the climate change, which threaten our lives.

a. تحاول الدول المحافظة على البيئة. فنشاط الرجل سبب الكوارث مثل الدفء العالمى وتغير المناخ الذى يهدد حياتنا.

b. تحاول الدول جاهدة المحافظة على البيئة. وقد تسبب أنشطة الإنسان الكوارث مثل الاحتباس الحرارى وتغير المناخ الذى يهدد أن نعيش.

c. تحاول الدول جاهدة أن تحافظ على البيئة. وقد تسبب النشاط الإنسانى فى الكوارث مثل الاحتباس الحرارى وتغير المناخ الذى يهدد حياتنا.

d. تحاول الدول بصعوبة المحافظة على البيئة. وقد تسبب النشاط الإنسانى فى الحد من الاحتباس الحرارى وتغير الطقس الذى يهدد حياتنا.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

العمل الجماعى هو قدرة الفرد على العمل مع الآخرين. وهذا يعلمنا قيم هامة كالتعاون التسامح اللذان يساعداننا على تحقيق أهدفنا بسهولة.

a. Group work is the individual's disability to work with others. This teaches us important valuable such as tolerance and co-operation which helping us easily achieve our goals.

b. Group work is the individual's able to work with others. This teaches us important evaluation such as tolerance and co-operative which help us achieve our goals easily.

c. Group work is the individual's ability to work with others. This teaches us important availability of tolerance and co-operation which help us achieve our easily goals.

d. Group work is the individual's ability to work with others. This teaches us important values such as tolerance and co-operation which help us easily achieve our goals.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"Social media"

.....

.....

.....

.....

16 Minia Governorate إدارة المنيا التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There is an enormous of washing-up in the sink, so I will help my mother.
 a. pile b. hole c. pill d. file
2. My father a new car next week. He told us about his intention.
 a. is buying b. will buy c. is going to buy d. buys
3. If he with us, he could have a good time.
 a. had come b. came c. has come d. comes
4. One of the most important tasks for a farmer is to livestock.
 a. rise b. forget c. keep d. kill
5. You forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold there.
 a. don't have to b. mustn't c. need to d. must
6. I think she is still ill. She looks even than last week.
 a. worst b. more c. most d. worse
7. Why don't you this video to YouTube so that many people can see it ?
 a. download b. downloading c. upgrade d. upload
8. He doesn't value his position anymore and often takes terrible risks.
 a. seemed b. supposed to c. seem to d. meant to
9. The criminal tried to himself, so the police wouldn't recognize him.
 a. encourage b. disguise c. behave d. forget
10. Don't phone me at 10 o'clock because I then.
 a. will sleep b. slept c. am going to sleep d. will be sleeping
11. You hurry. You still have a lot of time to catch your flight.
 a. don't need to b. must c. needn't to d. don't have
12. is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.
 a. Toast b. Tonne c. Tone d. Toner
13. The teacher us not to make noise.
 a. said b. warned c. suggested d. recommended

PART 2

14. According to law, no one is from legal punishment.
a. immune b. allowed c. permitted d. make

15. I feel terribly sick today. I fast food yesterday. It was a wrong decision.
a. should have eaten b. couldn't have eaten
c. could have eaten d. shouldn't have eaten

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Many people have jobs that are not very interesting, but a lot of people have to work at night, and this is very difficult. When everybody else is getting ready to go out, they have to go to work, and this puts a lot of psychological stress on them. It is also not very healthy because the human body is designed to be **active** in the day and to rest in the dark. If this cycle is changed, it can have a bad effect on a person's health. So, why do people do night shift? Nowadays a lot of jobs have to offer a 24-hour service, like hotels, delivery companies, some supermarkets open all night and all day, call centres and hospitals. It is true that some people only need a few hours of sleeping at night but the majority need eight hours.

Humans are most active in the middle of the day, and the time when they are least able to concentrate and be efficient is between 2 am and 4 am.

This is the worst time to drive, or to do anything that needs concentration. The body finds it very difficult to adapt to the opposite cycle. Things are not likely to get better in the future because more and more business are working 24-hour cycles to keep in step with our 24-hour society.

16. The main idea of this passage is about
a. working late isn't useful. b. helping people change their way of life.
c. describing the importance of friendship. d. how working at night can be harmful.

17. The writer thinks that you need when you want to do anything.
a. abbreviation b. concentration c. stress d. investigation

18. According to the passage, we can infer that
a. it's difficult to change your sleeping needs.
b. people need to sleep only between 2 am and 4 am.
c. people sleep better in the early morning.
d. everybody needs the same amount of sleep.

19. We can summarize the last paragraph that in the future
a. fewer people will work during the day.
b. many people will stop working during the day.
c. some jobs will always be done at night.
d. nobody will work at night.

20. The best title of the passage is
a. Sleeping at night isn't important. b. Society is changing but our bodies are not.
c. We don't need to work at night. d. A worker that sleeps more, works more !

21. The underlined word "**active**" can be replaced with
a. inactive b. different c. upset d. energetic

22. The writer thinks that the majority of people need hours to sleep.
a. 2 b. 8 c. 16 d. 24

23. People who have to work night shifts struggle with
a. the quality of sleep b. more sleeping time c. psychological stress d. emotional stress

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Sport should be a major part of the school day. Sport is important because it helps to teach different skills to students like leadership, patience, teamwork, and social skills.

a كان يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا رئيسيًا من اليوم الدراسي؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والصبر وجهد الفريق والمهارات الاجتماعية.

b يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا رئيسيًا من اليوم الدراسي؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والصبر والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الاجتماعية.

c يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا مرعبًا من اليوم الدراسي؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والمثابرة والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الاجتماعية.

d يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا رئيسيًا من اليوم الدراسي؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مواهب مختلفة للطلاب مثل التقييد والصبر والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الاجتماعية.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

تقوم الحكومة بتنفيذ العديد من المشروعات القومية العملاقة فى كل أنحاء البلاد، وتهدف هذه المشروعات إلى توفير فرص عمل للمواطنين وزيادة الناتج المحلى والقضاء على البطالة.

a. The government carries out a lot of small national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, double the national production and eliminate unemployment.

b. The government carries out a lot of giant national projects all over the world. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase the national production and eliminate unemployment.

c. The government carries out a lot of big national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for foreigners, increase the national production and eliminate employment.

d. The government carries out a lot of giant national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase the national production and eliminate unemployment.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"The pros and cons of using the internet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

17 Assiut Governorate إدارة أبنوب التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The Ministry of Education has set up a special for online learning and communication between the teachers and the students.
 a. pavement b. building c. platform d. faculty
2. I'm busy now; I will phone you again later. The word "later" is an antonym of the word
 a. regularly b. immediately c. gradually d. latter
3. The poet read several from his new poem in his television interview.
 a. marks b. volumes c. extracts d. scripts
4. A is a written set of questions you give to a large number of people to collect information.
 a. license b. degree c. permission d. questionnaire
5. The poor lady the doctor to see her sick child and he immediately agreed.
 a. ordered b. refused c. begged d. yelled
6. Did you know "CUL8er" is the for "See you later" ?
 a. acronym b. selfie c. emoji d. abbreviation

PART 2

7. You go shopping with us, you can stay at home if you want.
 a. mustn't b. must c. don't have to d. have to
8. person should have a role in the progress of their country.
 a. Neither b. Every c. Either d. Both
9. Of the two shirts, this is the
 a. cheap b. cheapest c. cheaper d. more cheap
10. I've got a job in Luxor, so I for the next two years.
 a. work b. was working c. will have worked d. will be working
11. My brother to Cambridge University, but he decided to study in Egypt.
 a. shouldn't have gone b. could have gone c. could go d. couldn't have gone
12. Libraries to be a place for reading.
 a. seem b. supposed c. are meant d. were meant
13. Some teachers let their students a quiz before starting the lesson.
 a. to do b. do c. does d. doing
14. If Mona someone the way to the museum, she wouldn't have got lost.
 a. ask b. asked c. had asked d. would ask
15. I used to hang with my old friends when I was at college.
 a. on b. out c. in d. at

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

The winter months in North America are December, January, February and March. Winter is the best season of the year. During the winter months, temperatures are usually colder and there are fewer hours of daylight. Cold winter temperatures are caused by the tilting of the earth. When Earth's Northern Hemisphere is tilted away from the sun, there are fewer hours of daylight and the temperature is cold. When the Northern Hemisphere tilts towards the sun, there is more daylight and the temperature are warmer. The tilting of the Earth as it spins causes the seasons to change.

Animals have special ways of preparing themselves for winter. Some animals like, birds and butterflies travel long distance or migrate to warmer temperature during the winter. Other animals go to sleep, or hibernate, during the winter. Bears, gophers, snakes and bats hibernate. Squirrels and raccoons don't migrate or hibernate. Instead, they gather extra food during the fall months and store it away so they have plenty to eat during the winter.

In some areas, winter is a time when snow falls and gathers on the ground. People that live in these places can enjoy special winter activities like skiing, sledding and snowboarding. They can also build snowmen and snow castles. When the water in lakes and ponds freeze, people can ice skate or play ice hockey. Some people even cut a hole in the ice and go ice fishing.

16. Which sentence is an opinion ?
 a. The winter months are December, January, February and March.
 b. Winter is the best season of the year.
 c. There is more daylight during the summer months.
 d. The tilting of the earth causes the seasons to change.
17. During the winter months, the Northern Hemisphere is
 a. tilted away from the sun. b. tilted towards the sun.
 c. tilted away from the moon. d. tilted towards the Earth.
18. All the following animals hibernate during the winter months EXCEPT
 a. bats b. gophers c. bears d. butterflies

19. The underlined pronoun "**they**" in the passage refers to
a. birds and butterflies
b. bears and gophers
c. squirrels and raccoons
d. snakes and bats

20. An item from the passage that means **travel long distance** is
a. hibernate
b. migrate
c. gather
d. go

21. According to the passage, winter is the best time for
a. temperate zone activities.
b. icy zone activities.
c. tropical zone activities.
d. dry land zone activities.

22. The passage is mainly about
a. winter in North America
b. animals hibernation
c. birds migration
d. activities in winter

23. This type of text writing is
a. narrative
b. science fiction
c. factual
d. literary criticism

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Food shortage is one of the most important problems that the world is expected to face in the next few years. That's why scientists are working on innovative ways to overcome it.

a مشكلة المجاعة فى العالم من المشكلات الهامة التى تواجه العالم ويقف العلماء أمامها عاجزون عن إيجاد طرق مبتكرة للتغلب عليها.

b نقص الغذاء أحد أهم المشكلات التى من المتوقع أن يواجهها العالم فى السنوات القليلة القادمة لهذا يعمل العلماء على إيجاد طرق مبتكرة للتغلب عليها.

c نقص الموارد الغذائية من المشكلات التى تواجه العالم اليوم وفى السنوات القادمة ولذلك يحاول العلماء التغلب عليه بعدة طرق تقليدية.

d هناك نقص شديد فى الغذاء سوف يواجهه العالم فى المستقبل القريب ولا يستطيع العلماء إيجاد حلول له بأى من الطرق الجديدة.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

أصبح تحدث أكثر من لغة أجنبية وتعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر من أهم المؤهلات التى يحتاج إليها سوق العمل، وزادت أهمية ذلك مع لجوء الشركات للعمل على الإنترنت.

a. Speaking English language and computer are important to get job at work places. This importance increased because the companies using of computers.

b. You should speak more than one language to get a good job as all companies depend on computer and using internet in their work today.

c. Speaking more than one foreign language and learning computer skills have become two of the most important qualifications which job markets need. This importance has increased with the resort of companies to the internet.

d. No doubt learning languages and computers help to find good job in work places. Nowadays, a lot of companies stop using computer and internet.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"Your life so far. What are your wishes and regrets ?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

PART 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It was fascinating to see the goal again in slow motion.
 a. win b. wins c. winner d. winning
2. We must look for more solutions that involve producing a wider variety of food.
 a. unavailable b. sustainable c. traditional d. insupportable
3. In next week's radio programme, we to a famous scientist.
 a. talk b. talking c. will be talking d. have talked
4. All King Lear wanted was to keep the of king.
 a. title b. address c. inheritance d. promotion
5. I send the report to the General Manager; he needed it urgently.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. had to d. didn't have to
6. are used to express emotions in electronic messages.
 a. Emojis b. Abbreviations c. Keys d. Symbols
7. I'm so sorry; if I free time, I'd have met you yesterday.
 a. had been b. would have c. hadn't had d. had had
8. She felt for making her sister angry, so she apologized to her.
 a. proud b. guilty c. fond d. capable
9. They are happy; they be having a nice time.
 a. seem to b. are meaning to c. supposed to d. won't
10. On receiving his e-mail this morning, I reply soon or he 'll start to worry.
 a. don't need to b. don't have to c. need to d. mustn't
11. This is his second successful film.
 a. more b. most c. the most d. the least
12. is the process of growing plants without using any soil.
 a. Hydrophobia b. Hydroponics c. Hydrostatic d. Hydroelectric
13. " He could have gone there on his own if he had wanted." This is a
 a. permission b. duty c. past possibility d. future possibility
14. Where we supposed to wait for the others to catch up with us ?
 a. do b. are c. have d. had
15. I like hot food; now I can't stand it.
 a. didn't b. would c. used to d. b & c

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

When you learn English, you should remember that languages are always changing. New words and phrases will appear and sometimes old words start to have new meanings. If you want to be really effective at learning a language, it is important to know about these new words. A list published online every year. For example, unfriend is a new verb that is used when you stop being friends with someone on social media. The phrase fake news was added to dictionaries in 2019 after many false stories started to appear on social media. The phrase social distancing was first used in 2020 during the health emergency, and it means keeping away from other people. The German word uber has recently been used in informal English to mean 'very successful', adding to the many other foreign words used in English, such as café (from French) and the small motorbike called a moped (from Swedish). You might wish that English followed the example of the Portuguese language to make spelling easier. Portugal and Brazil both speak the same language, but the Portuguese recently changed the spelling

of many words to follow the same rules that they use in Brazil because they are much easier. At the moment, however, if you learn English in many parts of the world, you usually have to learn the British English spellings, which can be more difficult than American English spellings.

16. The best title of this text is
 a. The effective changes at learning languages.
 b. The effective usage of learning languages.
 c. The effective learning of changing languages.
 d. The effective languages at learning changes.

17. It is important to changes to the English Language.
 a. be aware of b. take control of c. be tempered by d. bring back

18. You can use the verb "**unfriend**" when you want to stop friends on social media.
 a. losing touch with b. keeping in touch with
 c. subscribing to d. uploading

19. The German word "**uber**" is an example of
 a. an informal use of an old word b. a new informal word in English
 c. a foreign word used by successful people d. a very common word in English

20. They changed the spelling of Portuguese because they wanted it to be
 a. like English b. the same as the American spelling
 c. more traditional d. easier

21. Phrases such as fake news and social distancing were added to dictionaries recently to
 a. reflect new situations b. reject new situations
 c. respect new situations d. replace new situations

22. The rules of a language should be
 a. changed all the time b. the same as ever
 c. changed according to demands d. abbreviated all the time

23. English uses words from other languages to
 a. correct its vocabulary b. enrich its vocabulary
 c. invest its vocabulary d. avoid its vocabulary

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Tolerance is one of the greatest human values ever. Through tolerance, we can accept our differences and forgive each others' mistakes.

a. إن التسامح أعظم القيم الإنسانية على الإطلاق، فبالتسامح يمكننا أن نتقبل اختلافاتنا وأن نغفر أخطاء بعضنا البعض.
b. إن التسامح من أعظم القيم الإنسانية على الإطلاق، فبالتسامح يمكننا أن نرسخ اختلافاتنا وأن نغفر أخطاء بعضنا البعض.
c. إن التسامح من أعظم القيم الإنسانية على الإطلاق، فبالتسامح يمكننا أن نتقبل اختلافاتنا وأن نغفر أخطاء بعضنا البعض.
d. إن التسامح من أعظم القيم الإنسانية على الإطلاق، فبالتسامح يمكننا أن نتقبل اختلافاتنا وأن نعطى أخطاء بعضنا البعض.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد بأثره العالم بأسره بالحرب الروسية الأوكرانية خاصة فى الجانب الاقتصادى فأسعار المواد الغذائية والوقود وغيرها من السلع ارتفعت بشكل جنونى.

a. The whole world affected by the Russian Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other goods went crazy.
b. The whole world has affected by the Russian Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other goods went crazy.
c. The whole world was affected by the Russian Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The price of foodstuff, fuel and other good went crazy.
d. The whole world was affected by the Russian Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other goods went crazy.

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"How our country can face food shortage in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

PART 2

19 Qena Governorate إدارة نجع حمادى التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Experts always try to ensure that tourism is
 a. nonrenewable b. recyclable c. temporary d. sustainable
2. What have you done? You so much sugar to my tea. Now, I can't drink it.
 a. didn't have to add b. needn't add c. needn't have added d. don't have to add
3. People in UK often eat roast lamb Sunday lunch.
 a. for b. on c. in d. with
4. Yesterday was cold but today is
 a. much more cold b. even more colder c. such a cold d. even colder
5. Our company's new marketing ideas are
 a. innovative b. fruitless c. illogical d. innovating
6. You can trust him. He is a person.
 a. selfish b. reliable c. terrible d. disabled
7. Being a/an, he eats no meat at all.
 a. farmer b. runner c. innovator d. vegetarian
8. FIFA is the for "Federation of International Football Association".
 a. abbreviation b. emoji c. acronym d. thesaurus
9. Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Alex ? You with your uncle.
 a. could stay b. managed to stay c. should stay d. could have stayed
10. You are meant in bed. Why are you still awake ?
 a. for sleeping b. to be sleeping c. being slept d. to be slept
11. If the money I had enough, I would have bought a new car.
 a. been b. had had c. had been d. had left
12. Egypt is full of, but we don't make the best use of them.
 a. riches b. injuries c. marches d. earthquakes
13. are information a website leaves in your computer to recognize you when you use it again.
 a. Cooker b. Cookies c. Behaviour d. Tone
14. The coach suggested that Sami in charge of the team.
 a. be b. is c. will be d. being
15. Some people have a fake on social media to deceive others.
 a. symbol b. versions c. profile d. ideas

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs.

Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree. Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the

whole of the plant can be used: the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects.

In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one herb that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases as it is used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for the hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer. If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colours and smells. There are jars full of tree barks, roots, powders, oils and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains **his** symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

16. Natural remedies are attracting attention because they
 a. are used in Egypt.
 b. have side effects.
 c. are exported from Egypt.
 d. can treat a lot of diseases.

17. The main idea of the passage is
 a. the herbal medicine benefits.
 b. the chemical medicine disadvantages.
 c. the Faculty of Medicine.
 d. the trees can cure.

18. Which sentence is NOT correct about Natural herbs ?
 a. They're used for treating illnesses since primitive times.
 b. They were used in the paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs.
 c. They can be fried on fire to be served.
 d. Some drugs are still based on natural herbs.

19. The antonym of the underlined word "advantage" is
 a. demerit b. advancement c. disagreement d. agreement

20. The pronoun "**his**" in the last paragraph refers to the
 a. herbalist b. shop c. customer d. prescription

21. is a physical condition that shows you may have a particular disease.
 a. Prescription b. Property c. Symptom d. Remedy

22. The bark of the is used to make aspirin.
 a. bush tree b. shadow plant c. palm tree d. willow tree

23. Herbal medicine is more effective than chemical medicine because
 a. it's cheaper and cleaner.
 b. it's easily found and easily taken in.
 c. it cures and protects from side effects.
 d. many local people benefit from selling it.

24. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

Climate change is a serious problem that threatens life on earth. So, Egypt hosted the International Climate Change Conference in the green city of Sharm El Sheikh.

a. تغير المناخ مشكلة جادة تهدد الحياة على الأرض، لذلك استضافت مصر المؤتمر الدولى لتغير المناخ فى مدينة شرم الشيخ الخضراء.
b. تغير المناخ مشكلة خطيرة تهدد الحياة على الأرض، لذلك استضافت مصر المؤتمر الدولى لتغير المناخ فى مدينة شرم الشيخ الخضراء.
c. تغير المناخ كان مشكلة خطيرة تهدد الحياة على الأرض، لذلك استضافت مصر المؤتمر الدولى لتغير المناخ فى مدينة شرم الشيخ الخضراء.
d. تغير المناخ مشكلة خطيرة تهدد الحياة على الأرض، لذلك استضافت مصر المؤتمر القومى لتغير المناخ فى مدينة شرم الشيخ الخضراء.

25. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد تأثر العالم بأسره بالحرب الروسية الأوكرانية خاصة فى الجانب الاقتصادى، فأسعار المواد الغذائية والوقود وغيرها من السلع ارتفعت بشكل جنونى.

a. The whole world affected by the Russian - Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other goods went crazy.
b. The whole world has affected by the Russian - Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other goods went crazy.
c. The whole world was affected by the Russian - Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other goods went crazy.

d. The whole world affected by the Russian - Ukrainian war, especially in the economic aspect. The prices of foodstuffs, fuel and other good went crazy.

PART 2

26. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"The pros and cons of modern technology in our modern world"

.....

.....

.....

.....

20 Aswan Governorate إدارة كوم أمبو التعليمية - توجيه اللغة الأنجليزية

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Vegetables with green leaves our immune system.
 a. boast b. boots c. boost d. poets
2. Domestic cats can see well but owls can do ten times
 a. better b. the better c. best d. the best
3. Since your visa is still valid, you get a new one to travel abroad.
 a. mustn't b. needn't c. must d. have to
4. A is a man of very high rank in a country or the ruler of a small independent one.
 a. duck b. dock c. duchy d. duke
5. I can't meet you tomorrow because I on my graduation project all day.
 a. have been working b. will have worked c. will be working d. had been working
6. I have downloaded that program which brought a virus to my laptop.
 a. shouldn't b. will c. should d. won't
7. The museum is full of precious treasures. They have no other copies.
 a. roar b. rare c. serious d. tasty
8. The athlete to be healthy until he fainted in the second round.
 a. meant b. supposed c. known d. seemed
9. I wish I so much money on clothes last month. Now I am broke.
 a. hadn't spent b. won't spend c. didn't spend d. haven't spent
10. A/An refers to stored files on people's computers with information about web pages previously visited.
 a. algae b. emoji c. cookie d. carol
11. If I had the opportunity to comment, I useful suggestions.
 a. will make b. would make c. would have made d. will have made
12. He was excluded from the team after falling with the coach.
 a. in b. over c. out d. off
13. The flashes of in the sky made the storm scary.
 a. thunder b. lightning c. spy d. shelter
14. My father warned me careless on the road.
 a. to be b. not be being c. to being d. not to be
15. The services deal with urgent cases such as accidents, fires, or crimes.
 a. agriculture b. emergency c. advertisement d. fashion

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Imagine that you are a fly. You are just flying around the sky, looking for a place to rest, when you see a nice pink leaf. That looks like a nice place to land. You think to yourself in your fly head. As you rest your feet on the leaf, you notice something strange. This leaf is

airy. You begin to make your move, but you trigger the plant's reaction. Snap ! In one-tenth f a second, you are caught in the Venus flytrap. You will be digested in five to twelve days. /elcome to the world of carnivorous plants !

There are over a quarter of millions plant species. Only 600 or so are carnivorous as they attract, trap, and eat insects. Like other plants, they get nutrients from the sun and soil through photosynthesis. Unlike other plants, they get other nutrients from their prey. Carnivorous plants live in places where the soil lacks nutrients.

Pitcher plants trick their prey into landing on them. They offer nectar, a sweet liquid, to the foolish insects that the plant eats. True to their name, pitcher plants have deep spaces. Their landing surface is slippery. They have inward pointing hairs, making it hard to escape. The fly lands on the pitcher plant to eat that nectar, but slips into a hole filled with digestive fluids and is eaten.

16. Venus flytrap is a species of
a. mean - eating animals
b. meat - eating plants
c. plant - eating animals
d. insect - eating plants

17. Pitchers offer to trick insects.
a. algae
b. soil
c. stone
d. sweet liquid

18. The passage is mainly about
a. carnivorous plants
b. herbivorous animals
c. domestic plants
d. carnivorous animals

19. Pitchers get their nutrients from all the following, except
a. the sun
b. their prey
c. nectar
d. the soil

20. According to the passage, we know that
a. all plants are prey
b. some plants are carnivores
c. all plants are carnivores
d. some plants are victims

21. Photosynthesis is the process through which plants get
a. pollination
b. multiplication
c. nutrition
d. reproduction

22. According to the passage, flies and insects
a. feed on fish
b. are eaten by animals
c. feed on meat
d. are eaten by plants

23. Pitchers grow in soil.
a. fertile
b. dry
c. rich
d. fruitful

4. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d :

We must all shoulder responsibility. It is our duty to promote sustainable development in our country.

a. علينا جميعًا أن نرفض المسئولية فمن واجبنا أن نعمل على تدمير التنمية المستدامة فى بلدنا.
b. علينا جميعًا أن ندفع المسئولية فمن واجبنا أن نعمل على تعتيم التنمية المستدامة فى بلدنا.
c. علينا جميعًا أن ننبذ المسئولية فمن واجبنا أن نعمل على تهميش التنمية المستدامة فى بلدنا.
d. علينا جميعًا أن نتحمل المسئولية فمن واجبنا أن نعمل على تعزيز التنمية المستدامة فى بلدنا.

5. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

لقد ارتفعت أسعار الطاقة إلى السماء والحل الوحيد هو استخدام الطاقة المتجددة النظيفة.

a. Prices of energy have raised sky-high. The only pollution is to use renewable green energy.
b. Prices of energy have risen sky-hight. The only solution is to use renewable green energy.
c. Prices of energy has raised sky-high. The only solution is to use renewable green energy.
d. Prices of energy have risen sky-high. The only pollution is to use renewable green energy.

6. Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"Positives and negatives of social media"

.....
.....
.....
.....

For Al Azhar & Inclusive students Exams.

اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف والدمج.

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة البحيرة الأزهرية (القسم الأدبي)

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your system works better if you eat healthily.
 a. immune b. emergency c. athletic d. injured
2. Our geography teacher never smiles and has a permanent
 a. frown b. emoji c. tone d. laugh
3. Our class working in laboratory all this afternoon.
 a. will b. going to c. will be d. won't
4. My mother always has a bad reaction if she honey.
 a. eats b. will have c. have d. had
5. The farmer keeps a lot of such as goats and sheep.
 a. machinery b. livestock c. dust d. crops
6. I downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my laptop.
 a. can't have b. could have c. shouldn't have d. will have
7. You aren't late. You hurry.
 a. had to b. don't have to c. didn't have to d. have to
8. CPR is a famous
 a. abbreviation b. acronym c. word d. punctuation
9. Travelling by plane is expensive than travelling by train.
 a. many more b. much c. much more d. a lot
10. Mr Omar is a man. He always gives us the right advice.
 a. well-known b. wise c. wealthy d. wild

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Adam : People eat very different things for breakfast around the world.
Shady : In my opinion, breakfast is the best meal of the day (1) ?
Adam : The British have the most unhealthy traditional breakfast. They have fried eggs, beans, toast and fried meat.
Shady : Personally, I wouldn't want to eat such a big meal in the morning. (2) ?
Adam : I understand that the French have (3) just a croissant or piece of bread.
Shady : (4) , but of me, I'm happy with my usual breakfast of bread, cheese and an egg !

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There always seems to be new types of food in the supermarket. But what do we know about the food that we eat ? Do we always know where it comes from, and can we trust it to make us strong and healthy ?

Some experts worry that although we are living longer, many people are less healthy than in the past. This might be because we do not always eat healthy food. Food producers all want to sell us their delicious products, but how healthy are they ? Scientists tested food that we can buy in supermarkets and the results might surprise you. We all know that you mustn't drink water from the sea, but did you know that there are some types of soup that are saltier than seawater ? Scientists also found that some fruit juice is worse for you than fizzy drinks, because although it is natural, it contains a lot of sugar. And it is thought that some sports drinks have eight teaspoons of sugar in them !

If you want to buy healthier food, you should check the labels on any food you buy at the supermarket. Personally, I will be cooking my own food from now on. In this way, I will always know the amount of sugar and salt in my meals. That must be a healthier way to eat !

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the problem with some types of soup ?
2. Why is it a good idea to check the labels of food at a supermarket ?
3. Why is it important to eat healthy food ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. According to the text, many people today than people in the past.
 a. are healthier b. live longer
 c. eat nicer food d. use supermarkets more
5. Why do you think food companies put so much salt and sugar in the food which they produce ?
 a. To make it taste good. b. To make it healthier.
 c. To improve the appearance. d. To make it more expensive.

Islamic Selections

4 Choose the best answer to complete the meaning below :

1. Those who will enter through "Arrayyan Gate" ?
 a. perform fasting b. perform prayer c. perform pilgrimage d. make mistakes
2. What is the fifth pillar of Islam ?
 a. Prayer b. Zakat c. Pilgrimage d. fasting
3. Prayer in the Holy Mosque in Blessed Mecca equals prayers.
 a. one thousand b. one hundred thousand
 c. one hundred d. one million

5 Write a paragraph of 100 words on :

"What should you do to stay healthy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

PART 2

6 Translation :

A. Translate into Arabic :

The immune system is made of the cells and organs in our bodies working together to protect us from infections and diseases.

.....

.....

.....

.....

B. Translate into English :

الكل يحظى، لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف يستفيد من أحطائه المختلفة.

.....

.....

.....

.....

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة سوهاج الأزهرية (القسم الأدبى)

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Our friend Basim is in hospital. We visit him.
 a. mustn't b. must c. don't have to d. could
2. It's for the Americans to eat a turkey at thanksgiving.
 a. abnormal b. ancient c. traditional d. old
3. Our country is working hard to increase food to feed all people.
 a. reduction b. production c. introduction d. invention
4. At 1 o'clock tomorrow, we the match at the stadium.
 a. will be watching b. will watch c. watch d. were watching
5. My uncle is a, he is an expert in the English language.
 a. feminist b. scientist c. biologist d. linguist
6. People in the past drive a car without a licence.
 a. can b. might c. could d. must
7. You study day and night to get good marks.
 a. are supposed to b. are supposing to c. seeming d. was seemed
8. You should a lawyer because you don't know much about law.
 a. advise b. recommend c. consult d. suggest
9. You need strong to lift that box !
 a. brain b. heart c. lungs d. muscles
10. I wish I that food yesterday; I got very sick from it.
 a. had eaten b. ate c. hadn't eaten d. won't eat

B. Usage

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Ashraf : (1) ?
Hassan : I'm going to visit my grandparents at the weekend.
Ashraf : (2) ?
Hassan : They live in a small village in the countryside.

Ashraf : Do you think life there is interesting ?
Hassan : (3)
Ashraf : I wish you a nice weekend
Hassan : (4)

3 Read the text, then answer the questions :

Cotton is one of the most important crops in Egypt. In the last century, it was called "The white gold". The Egyptian cotton is known all over the world for its high quality so clothes made of the Egyptian cotton are always sold for a lot of money. Farmers cared a lot for this crop and were always very happy to pick it up. They made up songs to celebrate harvesting. The Egyptian ministry of agriculture also cared a lot for cotton. It used to use planes to spray the crop with pesticides. In 2021, Egypt exported cotton to more than 28 countries for about 265 million dollars. This makes us optimistic about the future of the Egyptian cotton.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What did the Egyptians call cotton ?
2. How many countries imported the Egyptian cotton in 2021 ?
3. Why are the clothes made of the Egyptian cotton sold for a lot of money ?

B. Choose the right answer :

4. The Egyptians made up to celebrate cotton harvesting.
 a. songs b. stories c. tales d. novels
5. The ministry of agriculture used to cotton with planes.
 a. plant b. grow c. collect d. spray

Islamic Selections

4 Choose the correct answer :

1. Al-Qadr Night is better than one thousand
 a. days b. weeks c. months d. years
2. is the fifth pillar of Islam.
 a. Pilgrimage b. Fasting c. Prayer d. Zakat
3. is the fourth pillar of Islam.
 a. Prayer b. Zakat c. Fasting d. Pilgrimage

5 Write a paragraph about (100) words on :

"Healthy food"

.....
.....
.....
.....

6 Translation :

A. Translate into Arabic :

Most countries around the world celebrate the start of the new year with special food.

.....
.....
.....
.....

B. Translate into English :

سوف يحتاج العالم لإيجاد مصادر مستدامة للغذاء لإطعام كل سكانه.

.....

.....

.....

.....

PART 2

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة البحيرة الأزهرية (القسم العلمى)

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer :

1. This book was than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it.
 a. good b. best c. worst d. worse
2. I shouldn't have read the email so quickly because I the message.
 a. misunderstands b. misunderstanding c. misunderstand d. misunderstood
3. I think it rain this afternoon.
 a. will b. going to c. is going d. will be
4. I like to hang with my friends in the park after school.
 a. on b. up c. out d. in
5. I go to a specialized hospital because I had a heart attack.
 a. have to b. must c. had to d. didn't have to
6. Did you know that Indian food is one of the foods in the UK ?
 a. most popular b. better popular c. best popular d. popular
7. We must look for more solutions that involve producing a wider variety of food.
 a. unavailable b. sustainable c. traditional d. insupportable
8. You sit on that wall. It is dangerous.
 a. mustn't b. don't have c. must d. had to
9. We are going to today because my father was promoted
 a. compete b. complete c. celebrate d. construct
10. I wish I that food yesterday; I got very sick from it.
 a. had eaten b. didn't eat c. hadn't eaten d. won't eat

B. Usage

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Salem : (1)
Hazem : Hi Salem. (2) ?
Salem : The meeting with my teacher was useful ! I asked him about my last exam.
Hazem : (3) ?
Salem : He said I should have read the essay question more carefully because I misunderstood it.
Hazem : (4) ?
Salem : I got a low mark. The problem was that I shouldn't have used emojis in my essay.
Hazem : I can't believe that you used emojis in your exam !

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

When you are hanging out with friends, do you listen carefully to them or do you just wait for your turn to speak ? If you really listen, then you are an active listener and a good

friend. If you want to make sure that you continue to get together with your friends and do not fall out with them, here are a few tips.

No one likes to feel like their friends are ignoring them. To avoid your friends turning their backs on you, keep eye contact while you chat. This shows them that you are listening. Don't keep looking at your phone all the time. If your friend is enjoying talking and really getting into telling you about something, encourage them to speak and don't interrupt. Don't be unreliable ! Psychologists advise us to be patient and ask questions to avoid misunderstandings. We should always make an effort to see things from their point of view. Being an active listener will make your friendships stronger, and your friends will always want to keep in touch with you.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What advice do psychologists give to avoid disagreements with friends ?
2. In what way should we try to understand what our friends are saying ?
3. What are the advantages of being an active listener ?

B. Choose the correct answer :

4. is an expression that means : to stop someone from saying something.
 a. Unreliable b. Interrupt c. Encourage d. Drive
5. We should keep when talking to a friend.
 a. eye contact b. mobile phone c. speaking d. sharing

The Novel

4 Choose the best answer :

1. King Lear thinks that Goneril will have a taste of her own if her child is cruel to her.
 a. riches b. loyalty c. inheritance d. medicine
2. What does Kent tell King Lear ?
 a. That he has made a bad decision. b. That he has made a good decision.
 c. That he wants to marry Cordelia. d. That the Kingdom is in danger.
3. What has the King of France sent to England ?
 a. His wife b. An army c. A message d. Gifts

5 Write a paragraph of (100) words on :

"What you can do to boost your immune system"

.....

.....

.....

.....

6 Translation :

A. Translate into Arabic :

Facial expressions are important. A smile on the face reflects confidence, while a frown reflects the opposite.

.....

.....

.....

.....

PART 2

B. Translate into English :

تتمتع مصر عبر كل العصور بالكثير من عوامل الجذب السياحية ومن أهمها الآثار المصرية القديمة

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif منطقة أسيوط (القسم العلمى)

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He told me my mother.
 a. helps b. helped c. help d. to help
2. I can't well here because of smoke.
 a. breath b. breathe c. pros d. birth
3. Is there a between this murder and the robbery ?
 a. link b. lake c. fake d. lane
4. If he early, I would greet him.
 a. came b. comes c. had come d. has come
5. Are you sure you didn't him ? He can't have said that.
 a. undermined b. practise c. undergo d. misunderstand
6. I have decided that I English this afternoon.
 a. am studying b. will study c. am going to study d. study
7. When your headache continues, you should your doctor.
 a. advise b. consult c. reconcile d. conceal
8. is the science of growing plants and keeping animals.
 a. Industry b. Agriculture c. Tourism d. Welding
9. You look very in that suit.
 a. intelligent b. stupid c. smart d. fool
10. Rania is a little than Samia.
 a. taller b. tallest c. tall d. the tall

B. Usage

2 Supply the missing parts of the following dialogue :

Aya : What would you like to be when you grow up ?

Hala : (1)

Aya : A doctor ! (2) ?

Hala : Because I want to help people who are ill.

Aya : Are you going to work in the city or the countryside ?

Hala : (3)

Aya : Why do you prefer the city ?

Hala : (4)

Aya : I hope your dreams will come true.

Hala : Thank you.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Dolphins are sea animals that belong to the whales. A sea animal is the one that lives in the water. Dolphins are found all over the world in the oceans, seas, rivers and lakes. Dolphins are meat eaters : they feed on fish. They often swim together in groups and they have good eyesight. They have good hearing but they don't have a sense of smell. Dolphins come in different sizes. Some are smaller than the usual person, but others can be 30 feet long.

Dolphins are very intelligent and communicate with each other using clicks and whistles. All dolphins are good swimmers and funny swimmers, too. If you go near the seashores, you might see dolphins playing and swimming happily **there**. Some park owners get dolphins in their parks to amuse the visitors.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Where are dolphins found ?
2. How do dolphins communicate with each other ?
3. Do you think that dolphins are plant eaters ? Why ? Why not ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

4. The underlined word "**there**" refers to

a. oceans b. rivers c. lakes d. seashores

5. According to the passage the word "**belong to**" means

a. disagree with b. similar to c. different from d. dangerous

The Novel

4 Choose the best answer to complete the meaning below :

1. King Lear wanted to give the largest part of his land to

a. the King of France b. the daughter who loved him best
c. Edger d. Kent

2. Edmund pretended to fight Edgar

a. to protect his father b. to protect his wife
c. to make Edgar look bad d. to take gun

3. had to leave her family in England.

a. Cordelia b. Lear's wife c. Goneril d. Regan

5 Write a paragraph not less than (80 words) on :

"The role of woman in society"

.....

.....

.....

.....

6 Translation :

A. Translate into Arabic :

Knowledge and innovation are the ways of progress in the future.

.....

.....

.....

.....

PART 2

B. Translate into English :

إن مجدى يعقوب مثال جيد للجراح المصرى الناجح.

.....

.....

.....

.....

5 Fayoum Governorate - Itssa Educational Directorate اختبار طلاب الدمج

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A disease is caused by a or bacteria.
 a. venus b. vase c. very d. virus
2. Some people like to eat out in
 a. markets b. restaurants c. schools d. buses
3. To serve means to people food or drink.
 a. give b. take c. do d. make
4. If someone is not he / she must go to the emergency.
 a. playing b. breathing c. paying d. praying
5. We all should help or injured people.
 a. easy b. hard c. ill d. dangerous
6. Doctors and nurses work in
 a. schools b. markets c. hotels d. hospitals
7. There are a lot of fish the sea.
 a. in b. to c. for d. with
8. Tomorrow, we go to Cairo.
 a. do b. will c. did d. does
9. I can English well.
 a. speaks b. speaking c. speak d. to speak
10. Koshari is than chicken.
 a. cheap b. as cheap c. cheapest d. cheaper
11. Vegetable curry 3 pounds in the restaurant.
 a. costs b. cost c. costing d. to cost
12. August is the month in the summer in Egypt.
 a. hottest b. hotter c. hot d. as hot
13. Fullmedamas is popular than eggah.
 a. much b. few c. more d. fewer
14. Ali has got a car. He bought last week.
 a. it b. its c. it's d. it is
15. You smoke in a hospital.
 a. should b. can c. aren't d. mustn't

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The seasons of the year are autumn, summer, winter and spring. Autumn is nice. It is neither cold nor hot. Winter is cold but we have the warm sun. The flowers are very beautiful in the spring. But spring in Egypt is sometimes windy and dusty. In summer, it is very hot. Many people take their holidays in summer. On holidays, people rest and have fun. Some of them go to the beach to enjoy swimming in the sea.

• **Choose the correct answer :**

1. When are flowers very beautiful ? In the
 a. Winter b. Spring c. Summer d. Autumn
2. How many seasons are there in the year ?
 a. 2 b. 3 c. 4 d. 8
3. How is the weather in the summer in Egypt ?
 a. Cold b. Humid c. Snowy d. Hot
4. What do the people enjoy at the beach in the summer ?
 a. Swimming b. Eating c. Reading d. Playing
5. How is the weather like in the spring ?
 a. Easy b. Hard c. Windy and dusty d. High
6. What do people do on holidays ?
 a. Rest and have fun b. Eat and drink c. Come and go d. Take and run
7. How is the weather like in the autumn ?
 a. rice b. mice c. easy d. nice
8. How is the weather like in the winter ?
 a. warm b. snowy c. cold d. hard

C. Writing

3 Choose the correct translation of the following sentences:

A. Translate into Arabic :

In case of breathing very hard, go quickly to the emergency in hospital.

a. هل فى حالة التنفس بصعوبة شديدة، اتجاه بسرعة إلى الطوارئ بالمستشفى أم مادا ؟
b. فى حالة الأكل بصعوبة شديدة، اتجه بسرعة إلى الطوارئ بالمستشفى.
c. فى حالة التنفس بصعوبة شديدة، اتجه بسرعة إلى الطوارئ بالمستشفى.
d. فى حالة التنفس بصعوبة شديدة، اتجه بسرعة إلى الطوارئ بالمدرسة.

B. Translate into English :

هناك العديد من الأمراض فى الشتاء بسبب البرد.

a. Are there are a lot of disease in the winter because of cold ?
b. There are a lot of diseases in winter because of cold.
c. There are a lot of seasons in the winter because of cold.
d. There are a lot of diseases in the summer because of cold.

4 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d :

a. He can't breathe well. b. We must call the emergency service.
c. This person is injured. d. Then we can tell his family to come.

a. Then we can tell his family to come. We must call the emergency service. This person is injured. He can't breathe well.	b. This person is injured. He can't breathe well. We must call the emergency service. Then we can tell his family to come.
c. He can't breathe well. We must call the emergency service. This person is injured. Then we can tell his family to come.	d. We must call the emergency service. This person is injured. Then we can tell his family to come. He can't breathe well.

General Exercises collected from SB&WB

تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

Practice Exercises 1

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :

1. My mother has a delicious meal of chicken and rice.
 a. prepared b. celebrated c. done d. cook
2. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or food such as fish and nuts ?
 a. salt b. salty c. spicy d. small
3. Where do you have to put your hands when you CPR ?
 a. prepare b. make c. perform d. act
4. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your
 a. muscle b. cell c. surface d. lungs
5. You aren't late. You hurry.
 a. had to b. don't have to c. didn't have to d. have to
6. In next week's programme, we to a famous scientist.
 a. talk b. will be talking c. talking d. have talked
7. There was food at my friend's party, so I eat before I went there.
 a. mustn't b. didn't have to c. had to d. don't have to
8. Did you know that Indian food is one of the food in UK ?
 a. most popular b. poor c. best popular d. popular
9. COVID-19 can spread in crowded places, so we should be careful to avoid
 a. protection b. injection c. infection d. perfection
10. This is the book I have ever read; I learned so much about athletes' hearts.
 a. least valuable b. most valuable c. much valuable d. more valuable
11. What King Lear wanted was to keep the of the King.
 a. inheritance b. promotion c. address d. title
12. Travelling by plane is expensive than travelling by train.
 a. many more b. much c. much more d. a lot
13. We must look for more solutions that involve producing a wider variety of food.
 a. unavailable b. sustainable c. traditional d. insupportable
14. I think my brother this mobile phone most.
 a. going to like b. is liked c. will like d. has liked
15. She felt for getting angry, so she apologised to her sister.
 a. guilty b. fond c. proud d. capable
16. We can't go to the club this evening; we for Amr's birthday party.
 a. will be preparing b. had to prepare c. going to prepare d. won't prepare

2 Choose the correct answers :

Last Saturday was an exciting (1) **occasion/tradition** because we celebrated my grandfather's 80th birthday ! All the family got (2) **out/together**, so there were 30 of us! My grandfather's daughters (my mother and aunts) cooked a special meal and I helped to (3) **celebrate/serve** the food to everyone at the party. In my (4) **conclusion/opinion**, it was the (5) **better/best** meal I've ever eaten! You must see the photos that I took on my phone! I (6) **will/was** show them to you when we meet

3 Translate the following into Arabic :

The immune system is made of the cells and organs in our bodies working together to protect us from infections and diseases. The immune system keeps us healthy because people with strong immune systems get ill less often.

.....

.....

4 Translate the following into English.

الكل يخطئ لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف يستفيد من أخطائه المختلفة. التعلم من الأخطاء مهارة علينا جميعًا اكتسابها.
فمن لا يتعلم من أخطائه لا ينجح أبدًا.

.....

.....

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

What do you have to give to a plant in your home ? Most people would say food, water and light. However, an Englishman did an experiment and he found that you only have to give a plant sunlight for it to grow. In 1960, David Latimer put a plant inside a large glass bottle with a little soil. In 1972, he gave the plant some water, then he closed the bottle. He has not opened the bottle since that time, and years later, the plant is still growing inside the bottle. The plant, which is in David Latimer's house, needs light from a nearby window, but nothing else. He doesn't have to water it or give it food.

The plant produces oxygen, which also puts water into the air. This means that the plant can use the water to survive. The plant's food source is its old leaves, which the water in the bottle helps to recycle. The plant is now more than 50 years old and it will continue growing inside the bottle for many more years.

Scientists are interested in this experiment because they think we will be able to learn important lessons about using plants like this in space. The plants will be a sustainable food source, and they will also help to take pollution from the air of a spaceship.

1. What does David Latimer give to his plant every day ?
 a. some water b. food and water c. old leaves d. nothing
2. When did David Latimer last open the glass bottle ?
 a. 1960 b. 50 years ago c. 1972 d. Last year
3. What does the plant need from outside the bottle ?
 a. Light b. Water c. Oxygen d. Leaves
4. In the future, this plant will
 a. go into space b. become a food source
 c. continue growing d. take pollution from the air

PART 2

5. How was the plant able to live inside the glass bottle ?
.....
6. Why are scientists interested in this plant ?
.....
7. How might plants like this help people in space ?
.....
8. Suggest two other things that can replace traditional food types.
.....

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 180 words on the topic :

1. Write an essay to describe a dish that has a great deal of popularity in Egypt but is not Egyptian. Why do people eat it ?
2. Write a short story about an emergency. What did the people have to do and why ?

.....
.....

Practice Exercises 2

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :

1. CPR is a famous
 a. abbreviation b. acronym c. word d. punctuation
2. Ali what the teacher said and did the wrong homework last night.
 a. misunderstood b. deceived c. ruined d. fell out with
3. They have just the timetable, so we know these train times are correct.
 a. upgraded b. got into c. solved d. updated
4. Mr Omar is a man. He always gives us the right advice.
 a. well-known b. wise c. wealthy d. wild
5. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you me!
 a. could phone b. should have phoned c. should phone d. would have phoned
6. The teacher told the students their books at page 150.
 a. to open b. open c. you open d. opening
7. I send the report to the General Manager, he needed it urgently.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. had to d. didn't have to
8. My brother would have been a doctor if he his exams.
 a. passed b. would pass c. had passed d. pass
9. are used to express emotions in electronic messages.
 a. Abbreviations b. Emojis c. Keys d. Symbols
10. I wish I that food yesterday; I got very sick from it.
 a. had eaten b. didn't eat c. hadn't eaten d. won't eat
11. Don't files from the internet unless you are sure they are safe.
 a. upload b. download c. overload d. load
12. I'm so sorry; if I free time, I'd have met you yesterday.
 a. had had b. had been c. would have d. hadn't had

13. Samir is very busy. He has an enormous of papers on his desk.
a. bell b. bill c. pile d. ball

14. The airline postpone the flight to Rome yesterday because of the bad weather conditions.
a. has to b. had to c. doesn't have to d. didn't have to

15. He me to help him because he was in trouble.
a. begged b. made c. apologised d. insisted

16. They are happy; they be having a nice time.
a. are meaning to b. supposed to c. seem to d. won't

2 Choose the correct answers :

If it (1) **can/was** not for technology, language (2) **have/would** probably be very different today. New inventions (3) **meant/seemed** to get their names from old words, or from the innovator who made them. For example, if you ask for a Biro, someone (4) **to/will give** you a type of pen that gets its name from Laszlo Biro, who invented it. (5) **Do/If** you want to clean the carpet, you might hoover it. And the verb hoover also comes from an innovator, William Hoover. So, if you have your name on an important product, you must (6) **became/become** an innovator!

3 Translate the following into Arabic :

All over the world, a lot of people are interested in using different means of communication. These means enable them to do various tasks as quickly as they can.

.....

.....

4 Translate the following into English.

لقد تأثر سوق العمل والاقتصاد العالمى كثيرًا فى كل أنحاء العالم بجائحة كورونا، حيث تضررت العمالة اليومية وظهرت العديد من الوظائف التى تؤدى من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الإنترنت.

.....

.....

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

Last year, my friend Hesham and I decided to visit an old friend called Adam. We had first met Adam at Cairo University, but we lost touch with him when he moved to Thessaloniki in the north of Greece. I had always wanted to see Athens and so Hesham agreed to spend a few days there before we went to meet our friend. We decided to use an old guidebook of the city that my cousin, Sami, had given to me. It was supposed to be the best guide to the city. It seemed to be very detailed and it had a lot of maps.

At the time, I didn't realise that it had been more than fifteen years since my cousin last visited Athens. If we had known that his book had been written in 2003, we wouldn't have used it ! It told us to avoid a lot of **hazardous** places in the city, so we did. Adam later told us that those areas were fantastic. We should have realised that a lot of changes had been made to the city for the 2004 Olympic Games. Areas that had not been very interesting in 2003 became very interesting after they were improved. If we had known about them, we would have gone to see those areas for ourselves.

PART 2

When we left Adam, he gave us an up-to-date and reliable new guide to Greece, which we used to visit some of the islands. You could also read it online and download maps and updates. It was fantastic ! If I went travelling again, I would definitely use an up-to-date guide.

1. Why didn't Hesham and the writer keep in touch with Adam?
 a. They fell out him
 b. He went to a different school
 c. He lived in a different country
 d. He spoke a different language
2. What did the writer first think of the guidebook his cousin gave him?
 a. It seemed to be good.
 b. He did not trust it.
 c. It was very old.
 d. It was new and reliable.
3. Why did the writer and Hesham not visit some parts of Athens?
 a. Adam ordered them not to go there
 b. The Olympic Games were happening.
 c. The guidebook did not recommend them.
 d. They did not have time.
4. How did they get information to travel around the islands?
 a. from an online guide
 b. from an ebook
 c. from a guide that Adam had
 d. from a man who knew the islands
5. What had changed in Athens since 2003 ?
6. What do you think the word **"hazardous"** in the text mean ?
7. What do you think the writer learnt from his trip to Greece ?
8. What problems do you think online guides might have?

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 180 words on the topic :

1. Write a blog about your life so far. What are your wishes and regrets ?
2. You have received an email from an uncle advising you how to use social media well. Report what your uncle told you to a friend.

Practice Exercises 3

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :

1. Firefighters have to quickly when there is an emergency.
 a. sigh b. divide c. persuade d. react
2. This cave is very dark. Does anyone have a ?
 a. sword b. post c. torch d. frown
3. If you are rude to someone, you should
 a. apologise b. perform c. shelter d. deceive
4. In their game, some of the children to be animals.
 a. rewarded b. did c. pretended d. looked
5. You sit on that wall. It is dangerous.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. must d. had to
6. The students all feel now that the exams have finished.
 a. the happiest b. happier c. more happy d. happiest

7. In the future, I think we electric cars.
a. drive b. be driving c. will be driving d. are driving

8. Ahmed feels ill and wishes he eaten so many sweets.
a. hasn't b. didn't c. won't d. hadn't

9. The teacher asked students to cooperate together to a certain task.
a. form b. reform c. perform d. inform

10. The Athletic Heart Center have the best technology to check athletes' hearts.
a. must b. had to c. doesn't have to d. needn't

11. There will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050, so we will have to increase food by about 70 percent.
a. reduction b. protection c. production d. construction

12. Mohamed Abdelwahab to be very healthy before having a heart attack in 2006.
a. meant b. supposed c. seemed d. known

13. Messaging language isn't suitable in emails
a. informal b. friendly c. formal d. forming

14. I was locked my house; I had left my keys at work.
a. in b. out of c. out d. into

15. We are going to today because my father was promoted!
a. compete b. complete c. celebrate d. construct

16. Shehab travelled by train, even though he by car. He thought it would be safer.
a. had to travel b. has to travel
c. could have travelled d. couldn't have travelled

2 Fill in the gaps with the correct forms of the verbs :

My cousin Haytham lives in the far west of Egypt, and he visited our house for the first time last year. One day, we had a picnic near a canal and he told me he wanted to explore the area. I would have (1) (go) with him, but I was tired. When we saw him swimming in the canal, we (2) (tell) him to get out quickly! If we had known that he (3) (want) to swim, we would have stopped him. The next day, he (4) (get) quite ill. I (5) (wish) I had told him not to swim in the canal. However, he (6) (seem) to understand that he had made a mistake. They do not have big canals in his part of Egypt, so Haytham didn't know that it is not safe to swim in them. Luckily, he is better now!

3 Translate the following into Arabic :

The world is experiencing a lot of epidemics, such as COVID-19. So, we should all follow the rules of cleanliness to avoid being infected with serious diseases.

4 Translate the following into English.

يُعتبر التعليم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتساب المعرفة بمساعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت.
لذلك توفر الدولة كل سبل الدعم لتمكن الطلاب من المشاركة بفاعلية.

PART 2

5 Read the text and answer the questions :

When you learn English, you should remember that languages are always changing. New words and phrases will appear and sometimes old words start to have new meanings. If you want to be really effective at learning a language, it is important to know about these new words. A list is published online every year. For example, unfriend is a new verb that is used when you stop being friends with someone on social media. The phrase fake news was added to dictionaries in 2019 after many false stories started to appear on social media. The phrase social distancing was first used in 2020 during the health emergency and it means keeping away from other people. The German word uber has recently been used in informal English to mean' very successful. Adding to that many other foreign words used in English, such as café (from French) and the small motorbike called a moped (from Swedish).

You might wish that English followed the example of the Portuguese language to make spelling easier. Portugal and Brazil both speak the same language, but the Portuguese recently changed the spelling of many words to follow the same rules that they use in Brazil because they are much easier. However, if you learn English in many parts of the world, you usually have to learn the British English spelling, which can be more difficult than American English spelling.

1. It is important to changes to the English language.
 a. be aware of b. take control of c. be tempted by d. bring back
2. You can use the verb "unfriend" when you want to stop friends on social media.
 a. losing touch with b. keeping in touch with
 c. subscribing to d. uploading
3. The German word uber is an example of
 a. an informal use of an old word b. a new informal word in English
 c. a foreign word used by successful people d. a very common word in English
4. They changed the spelling of Portuguese because they wanted it to be
 a. like English b. the same as the American spelling
 c. more traditional d. easier
5. Why were phrases such as "fake news" and "social distancing" added to dictionaries recently ?
6. What has not changed about the English language, according to the article ?
7. Why do you think English uses words from other languages ?
8. Do you think people should change the rules of a language to make it easier to learn? Why/Why not ?

6 Choose one of the two topics. Write about 180 words on the topic :

1. Write an essay to persuade a friend of yours of how important it is to stay safe and healthy.
2. Write a summary of King Lear or any other play you like.

PART THREE SKILLS

1. Reading Skill

١. مهارة القراءة

تنويه

للمزيد من التدريبات على المهارات اللغوية في كل وحدة PART 3

ما المشكلات التي تواجه الطالب عند التعامل مع قطع القراءة والفهم في الامتحانات؟

التحدى الأول

كلمات في القطعة معناها غير معروف بالنسبة لي، وهذا يؤثر على فهمي لموضوع القراءة وبالتالي هناك احتمال للخطأ في إجابة الأسئلة المتعلقة بها، والأصعب أن تكون المفردات الرئيسية التي يدور حولها الموضوع غير معروفة بالنسبة لي، فماذا أفعل؟

الحـل :

وجود كلمات جديدة عليك في قطعة القراءة أمر طبيعي بل ومقصود، فمن أهداف سؤال القراءة قياس قدرتك على تخمين المعني من النص وكذلك فهم المحتوي العام للموضوع دون الوقوف على كل كلمة، والحل الأمثل للتغلب على هذه المشكلة هو التدريب المستمر على هذا السؤال دون استخدام قاموس وذلك لتنمية مهارة التخمين واستنباط المعني من السياق.

عزيزي الطالب: لا تمل من التدريب على حل قطع الفهم بداعي الصعوبة، فالصعوبة ستقل مع كثرة التدريب ... فقط قم بالحل وتوجه لمعلمك ليصحح لك، وتذكر أنه لا استخدام للقاموس وإلا فالتدريب لا فائدة منه! ويمكنك استخدام القاموس فقط وبعد أن يتم تصحيح الأسئلة لك.

التحدى الثاني

حل قطع القراءة يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً نسبياً وهذا يؤثر على مذاكرتي لباقي أنواع الأسئلة وكذلك المواد الأخرى!

الحـل :

هذا الكلام صحيح فقط بالنسبة لشخص لم يحصل على تدريب كافٍ خاص بهذا السؤال، أما من يتدرب كثيراً فيستطيع الحل في وقت قياسي، وتذكر عزيزي الطالب أنك ستتعرض لهذا السؤال في الامتحان لا محالة، ولابد أن تتدرب عليه جيداً حتى لا يستهلك وقتك داخل لجنة الامتحان!

التحدى الثالث

أحياناً أجد أسئلة ليس لها إجابة في قطعة القراءة.

الحـل :

هذا ليس دقيقاً إلا إذا كان هناك خطأ من واضع الامتحان، لكن هناك أسئلة مرتبطة بقطعة القراءة لكن إجابتها غير موجودة بها، ومن أمثلتها أسئلة الفهم والتطبيق والتحليل والإبداع، وسيتم ذكر أمثلة لهما لاحقًا.

التحدى الرابع

هناك أنواع من الأسئلة الخاصة بقطع الفهم لا أفهمها ولا أجيد التعامل معها!

الحـل :

سيقدم لك كتاب المعاصر في هذا الملف جميع أنماط الأسئلة التي يمكن أن تُستخدم في قطع الفهم والمفردات الخاصة بها وكيفية التعامل معها.

Types of Comprehension Questions أنواع أسئلة قطع الفهم

هناك أنواع كثيرة من الأسئلة على قطع القراءة في الامتحانات أهمها ما يلي:

1 Literal/Factual questions أسئلة الحقائق (الأسئلة المباشرة)

وهي أسئلة تتعلق بمعلومات مذكورة نصاً في قطعة القراءة وهي أسهل أنواع الأسئلة، ومن أمثلتها:

1. Give three examples of …	أعط ثلاثة أمثلة لـ ...
2. List/Mention two ways to / of …	اذكر طريقتين لـ ...
3. What did the hero/heroine do before the …?	ماذا فعل البطل / البطلة قبل...؟
4. What is the main reason for …?	ما هو السبب الرئيسي في...؟
5. Write down one word/expression which shows …	اكتب كلمة واحدة/عبارة تُظهر أن ...

PART 3

→ **Model factual questions :**

I have always been interested in preparing educational material. Joining El-Moasser team in two thousand and fourteen, I worked on changing the traditional concept of the educational book. I have been doing my best to benefit not only my fellow teachers, but their students as well. …

- When did the writer join El-Moasser team?
 a. 2004 b. 2014 c. 2024 d. 2042

2 Reorganization questions أسئلة إعادة التنسيق والترتيب

لتسلد أسئلة إعادة التنظيم هي الأخرى على الفهم الحرفي للنص، حيث يقوم الطالب بتجميع معلومتين أو أكثر من أجزاء مختلفة من النص. وتعد أسئلة إعادة التنظيم مهمة لأنها تُعلّم الطلاب فحص النص ككل، مما يساعدهم على الانتقال من النظر في النص جملة بجملة إلى نظرة أكثر شمولية.

→ **Model reorganization questions :**

I have always been interested in preparing educational material. Joining El-Moasser team in two thousand and fourteen, I worked on changing the traditional concept of the educational book. I have been doing my best to benefit not only my fellow teachers, but their students as well. …

1. How long has the writer worked with El-Moasser team?
 a. about ten years b. about twenty years
 c. about five years d. few years
2. What is the writer? - The writer works as a
 a. fellow b. student c. teacher d. novelist

3 Main-idea/moral/title questions أسئلة الفكرة الرئيسية/الدرس/العنوان

وهذا النوع من الأسئلة يكاد لا يخلو منه أي امتحان في السنوات الأخيرة، وقد يسأل واضع الامتحان عن الفكرة الرئيسية لفقرة معينة في نص القراءة، وهناك صياغات عديدة لهذا النوع من الأسئلة مثل:

1. What is the main/central idea/topic of the first/second/third …. paragraph?
 ما هي الفكرة الرئيسية في الفقرة الأولى / الثانية / الثالثة....؟
2. The sentence that summarises the first/second …. paragraph is ….
 الجملة اللى تلخص الفقرة الأولى / الثانية هى
3. What does the writer want to say in the first/second/third …. paragraph?
 ماذا يريد الكاتب أن يقول في الفقرة الأولى / الثانية / الثالثة....؟

وقد يسأل واضع الامتحان عن الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ككل، وهناك صياغات عديدة مثل:

1. What is the main idea of the passage/text?
 ما هي الفكرة الرئيسية لموضوع القراءة / النص؟
2. What message does the writer want to convey in this passage/text?
 ما هي الرسالة اللي يريد الكاتب توصيلها من خلال هذا الموضوع/النص؟
3. What is this passage about?
 عما تتحدث هذه القطعة؟
4. What is the core/essence of this passage?
 ما هو جوهر هذه القطعة؟
5. The core/essence / thrust of this passage is جوهر / محتوى هذه القطعة هو

وفي النصوص السردية (القصصية) قد يستخدم واضع الامتحان أسئلة مثل:

1. What is the moral of this story/narrative/text?
 ما العبرة من هذه القصة / الرواية / النص؟
2. What lesson does this story/narrative teach us?
 ما الدرس الذي تعلمنا إياه هذه القصة / النص؟

وقد يسأل واضع الامتحان عن أفضل عنوان:

1. What is the best title for the passage? — ما هو أفضل عنوان للقطعة؟
2. What would be a suitable title for the text? — ما هو العنوان المناسب للنص؟

→ Model main-idea question :

> Education is the most important investment in the future of a nation. Imagine the majority of people in a country had good education, how would life be like? There would be solutions to all problems. The rate of crime would go down. The quality of life would go up …

- What is the main idea of the passage/text?
 a. How to get good education
 b. Good education models
 c. How can good education help
 d. How to improve education

→ Model moral question :

> That difficult situation has left a permanent influence on me. I am no longer wasteful. Now, I know well how to be careful with my money. I know what, how much, and when to buy …

- The moral of this situation is ".....".
 a. One should be careful with their money
 b. Never spend any money
 c. Spend what is in your pocket
 d. It is a waste of money buying anything

4 Tone questions — أسئلة خاصة بالطابع العام للنص

وهذا النوع من الأسئلة يسأل عن الطابع العام أو الجو النفسي للنص أو الحالة المزاجية للكاتب، ويمكن أن تكون صياغة السؤال كالتالي:

- What is the tone of the text/writer?
- The writer's tone is

ومن أهم الصفات التي تصف الطابع العام للنص ما يلي:

approving	مُستحسِن	critical	نقدي
angry	غاضب	defensive	مؤيد
appreciative	مُقدِّر	depressing	كئيب
arrogant	متغطرس	disapproving	غير مُحبِّذ
cautionary	تحذيري	disappointed	مُحبَط
celebratory	احتفالي	encouraging	مُشجِّع
confused	مرتبك	enthusiastic	متحمس
comic	كوميدي	formal	رسمي
compassionate	متعاطف	frustrated	مُحبَط
intense	جاد	loving	ودود
ironic	ساخر	objective	موضوعي
joyful	بهيج	tolerant	متسامح
sad	حزين	worried	قلق

PART 3

5 Word-in-context questions أسئلة تتعلق بالكلمة في السياق

يستهدف هذا السؤال تقييم الحصيلة اللغوية للطالب وقدرته على تخمين المعني الدقيق للكلمة من خلال السياق، وينقسم هذا النوع من الأسئلة إلى أنواع عديدة منها:

١. أسئلة تسأل عن المعني أو المُرادف (synonym/meaning) ومن أمثلتها:

- What is the synonym/meaning of the word "....." in the passage?
- The word "....." in the text is synonymous
- The underlined word "....." in the passage can be replaced by

٢. أسئلة تسأل عن الضّاد أو العكس (antonym/opposite) ومن أمثلتها:

- What is the opposite/antonym of the word "....." in the passage?
- The word "....." in the text is antonymous with
- The underlined word "....." in the passage can't be replaced by

ملحوظة هامة : لابد من الدقة في إجابة هذا السؤال لأن الاختيارات قد تحتوي على أكثر من معني أو مضاد للكلمة، ولكن لابد من اختيار المعني أو المضاد حسب استخدام الكلمة في النّص.

➔ Model pronoun-reference questions :

I have always been interested in preparing educational **material**. Joining El-Moasser team in two thousand and fourteen, I worked on changing the traditional concept of the educational book. I have been doing my best to benefit not only my fellow teachers, but their students as well. …

1. The underlined word "**material**" in the text can be replaced by
 a. cloth b. information and ideas
 c. fabric d. matter
2. The verb "join" in the passage is antonymous with
 a. becoming a member b. going on
 c. taking part in d. leaving

6 Pronoun-reference questions أسئلة ما تشير إليه الضمائر

وفي هذا النوع من الأسئلة يسأل واضع الامتحان عمّا يشير إليه الضمائر، ولاحظ أن:

١. ضمائر الفاعل هي:
- I, we, you, he, she, it, they

٢. ضمائر المفعول هي:
- me, us, you, him, her, it, them

٣. ضمائر الملكية هي:
- mine, ours, yours, his, hers, theirs

٤. الضمائر المنعكسة هي:
- myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, itself, themselves

٥. كلمات أخري تُستخدم كضمائر:
- this, that, these, those, here, there …
- some, any, each, all, both, none, one, ones, two …
- many, much, a little, a few, first, second, … latter ….

➔ Model word-in-context questions :

My first interest in life is to find new ideas that can help people. **These** might be solutions to some problems. Last month, I introduced two very important ideas. The first was a suggestion that would help the traffic problems in my town. The **latter** was how to make electricity at home.

1. The underlined word "These" in the text can refers to
 a. people b. ideas c. solutions d. problems
2. The underlined word "latter" in the text can refers to one of the
 a. two very important ideas b. traffic problems in my town
 c. solutions to some problems d. b & c

7 Understanding questions أسئلة تتعلق بالفهم

تختبر هذه الأسئلة قدرة الطالب على تحديد ما يحاول المؤلف التعبير عنه أو توصيله للقارئ، وينطلب ذلك إلقاء نظرة على المعلومات وتحليلها وفهم محتواها، ومن أمثلة هذا النوع من الأسئلة :

- What does the writer mean by ...? ما الذي يعنيه الكاتب بـ ...؟
- When the writer says ..., what is his/her intention? عندما يقول الكاتب ... فما الذي يقصده؟

General tips إرشادات عامة

في ضوء ما سبق، يمكن تلخيص كيفية التعامل مع قطع الفهم في الامتحان في النقاط التالية:

١. في البداية يجب قراءة الأسئلة الواردة على القطعة لتحديد الهدف من القراءة
٢. يجب قراءة القطعة بتركيز لفهم المعنى العام دون التسرع في تحديد اجابات
٣. من الضروري التوقف عند نهاية كل جملة لاستيعاب معناها قبل الانتقال للجملة التالية
٤. لا تتوقف عند كل كلمة صعبة وحاول تخمين معناها من السياق
٥. لابد من قراءة الأسئلة وفهمها جيدا لتحديد الإجابة الصحيحة
٦. دائماً اسأل نفسك: ما هدف واضع الامتحان من هذا السؤال؟ فذلك سيساعدك على قراءة أفكار الأسئلة وإجابتها بالشكل الأمثل.
٧. بعد الانتهاء من إجابة أسئلة القطعة بالكامل، لابد من مراجعة الإجابات من خلال قراءة القطعة مرة أخري

وفيما يلي تقدم لكم نماذج مختارة لقطع الفهم.

General Exercises on Reading Skill

✪ Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (دور أول ٢٠٢٢)

Basel Rashid, who was a famous detective working for businessmen to protect them and solve mysteries related to their work, had finished working on a crime in Aswan and was about to go home on the Spanish Train. When Basel got on the train, he noticed that it was unusually full for the time of year.

Soon after the train had left Aswan, a wealthy businessman, Mr Mourad, asked Basel to protect him because he believed his life was in danger. Although Mourad offered Basel a lot of money to do this, the detective did not believe the man's story and refused to help him.

During the night, the train had to stop because of heavy rain. The next morning, Mourad was found dead; he had been murdered. Had someone got on the train and killed him?

Now Basel believed Mourad's story and, together with a doctor, who was also on the train, they started work to solve the crime. The two men soon discovered that Mourad had a secret identity. He was not a businessman, but a criminal who was hated by many people.

After examining the train and Mourad's body, Basel realised that the man had almost certainly been murdered by one of the 13 people from the same part of the train as Mourad. This meant that there were 13 suspects. One by one, Basel discovered that these 13 people all had a good reason to hate Mourad. Together, they had carefully planned what they were going to do and had all taken part in the murder. This was why the Spanish Train had been so full on that journey.

PART 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sentence that can summarise the fourth paragraph is
 a. Identifying who Mr Mourad really was and his real job.
 b. Protecting the other passengers from the murderers.
 c. Discovering Mourad's secret passport and his work as a spy.
 d. Finding out Mourad was wrong when he asked the detective's help.

2. Basel didn't want to help Mr Mourad
 a. to take part in his murder
 b. as he was the murderer
 c. to kill the other criminals
 d. as he thought he was a liar

3. Basel found out there were 13 suspects because..... .
 a. Murad told him while dying
 b. he checked their identities
 c. he knew they hated Murad
 d. the doctor told him so

4. Although Basel refused to help Mr Mourad, he
 a. was right not to help Mourad
 b. helped the doctor to reach the truth
 c. suspected few of the passengers
 d. regretted helping Mr Mourad

5. The central idea of the story is "....." .
 a. Criminals would help to protect each other.
 b. Crime would be committed by the help of the police.
 c. Criminals always face their fears of the death.
 d. The Spanish train mysterious crime.

6. Mourad thought he was certainly in danger, so
 a. he was suffering from heart problems
 b. he asked Basel for help
 c. the detective warned him not to take the train
 d. The doctor had examined him the day before

7. Basel was in Aswan
 a. because he worked as a policeman there
 b. because he was on a secret mission
 c. to investigate Mourad's murder
 d. to arrest people who killed Mourad

8. According to the passage, one must:.. others when they ask.
 a. help b. ignore c. encourage d. defeat

2. Translation

٢. الترجمة

- إرشادات هامة :

إن إتقان مهارة الترجمة من وإلى الإنجليزية يتطلب مراعاة ما يلي:

١. أن تكون لديك القدرة على القراءة والفهم الصحيح للنص المطلوب ترجمته.
٢. أن تكون لديك قوة ملاحظة تستند على فهم سليم تساعدك على تحديد الاختيار الصحيح.
٣. أن تستطيع تحديد الجملة ذات البناء الصحيح باللغة التي تقوم بالترجمة إليها.
٤. أن يكون لديك قدر مناسب من الثروة اللغوية (المفردات) في المجالات المختلفة.
٥. أن تقوم بحل أكبر عدد ممكن من التدريبات لأنها السبيل الوحيد لإتقان الترجمة.
٦. تذكر أولاً وأخيراً أن الترجمة تهتم بالمضمون والفكرة دون التقيد بالألفاظ.

PART I TRANSLATION FROM ARABIC INTO ENGLISH

سنتناول فيما يلي أهم أساسيات الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية من خلال أربع محاور هي:

Translation into English

1. 'Yes/No' questions — السؤال بـ "هل"
2. 'Wh-' questions — السؤال بأداة استفهام
3. Imperatives — جملة الأمر
4. Statement — الجملة الخبرية

1 'Yes/No' questions السؤال بـ «هل»

١. هذا النوع من الأسئلة يبدأ في اللغة العربية بـ (هل/ أ / أليس/ألا/ألم/أن).

٢. لا توجد أداة استفهام في اللغة الإنجليزية تعني (هل/ أ / أليس/ألا/ألم/أن)، لكن يبدأ هذا النوع من الأسئلة بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الأفعال الناقصة التالية:

Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / Do / Does / Did / Have / Has / Had
Can / Could / Will / Would / Shall / Should / May / Might / Must / Ought / Need ...

٣. يتكون السؤال بـ (هل/ أ / أليس/ألا/ألم/أن) في اللغة الإنجليزية من :

→ فعل مساعد / ناقص + فاعل / مفعول + تكملة السؤال

Examples :

- هل لديك شك أن تطوير التعليم أصبح أمراً ضرورياً في ضوء مستجدات العصر الحالي؟
- Do you have any doubts that the development of education has become necessary in light of the developments of the current era/age?
- أحقق مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للمناخ الذي عُقد في شرم الشيخ أهدافه؟
- Did the United Nations' Climate Conference held in Sharm El-Sheikh achieve its objectives?

٤. إذا بدأ السؤال في اللغة العربية بـ (أليس/ألا/ألم/أن) فإن الفعل المساعد الذي نبدأ به في اللغة الإنجليزية يكون منفياً:

Examples :

- ألست تتفق معي في أن التغير المناخي خطر يهدد جميع دول العالم دون استثناء؟
- Don't you agree with me that climate change is a threat to all countries of the world without exception?

- ألا تريد أن تكون نموذجاً يُحتذي به في النجاح سواء في العمل أو الحياة الأسرية؟

- Don't you want to be a role model for success, whether in work or family life?

- ألم تتعلم من تجاربك السابقة أن العمل الجاد والتخطيط السليم هما أهم مقومات النجاح؟

PART 3

- Haven't you learnt from your previous experiences that hard work and proper planning are the most important ingredients of success?

- ألن تتوقف عن إضاعة وقتك في أشياء غير مفيدة؟

- Won't you stop wasting your time on useless things?

Practice (1) :

- هل لديك هدف شخصي تسعى لتحقيقه من خلال الدراسة ؟

.....

.....

- أتطمح أن يكون لك دوراً قيادياً بارزاً في مجتمعك؟

.....

.....

- ألا تعلم أن التكنولوجيا الحديثة جعلت التعلُّم أسهل كثيراً من ذي قبل؟

.....

.....

- ألم يكن نقص الموارد وقلة الصادرات وزيادة الواردات أسباباً رئيسية لارتفاع الأسعار؟

.....

.....

- ألن تتوقف الدول الصناعية المتقدمة عن تدمير البيئة الطبيعية الذي يهدد مستقبل الحياة على الأرض؟

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

advanced industrial countries	الدول الصناعية المتقدمة	prominent leadership role	دوراً قيادياً بارزاً
destruction	تدمير	learning	التعلُّم
Do you have the ambition to	أتطمح	resources	الموارد
exports	الصادرات	rising prices	ارتفاع الأسعار
imports	الواردات	shortage	نقص
increase	زيادة	than before	من ذي قبل
		threaten	يهدد

2 'Wh-' questions السؤال بأداة استفهام

١. هذا النوع من الأسئلة يبدأ في اللغة العربية بأحد أدوات الاستفهام مثل (ما/ماذا/مَن/كيف ...).

٢. أهم أدوات وتعبيرات الاستفهام في اللغة الإنجليزية هي:

How	كيف/كم	Which	أيّ
How about	ما رأيك في	Who	مَن
What	ما/ماذا	Whom	مَن
What about	ما رأيك في	Whose	لمن
When	متى	Why	لماذا/لما
Where	أين	To what extent	لأي مدى

٣. يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في اللغة الإنجليزية في غالب الأحوال من:

→ [فعل مساعد / ناقص] + [أداة استفهام] + [فاعل / مفعول] + [.....]

Examples :

- ما النتائج السلبية التي أدت إليها الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية؟
- What are the negative results that the Russian-Ukrainian war has led to?
- مَن المسئول عن التغيُّر المناخي الذي يهدد مستقبل الحياة علي كوكب الأرض؟
- Who is responsible for the climate change that threatens the future of life on Earth?
- أي نمط من الحياة تفضل: الحياة البسيطة في الريف أم حياة المدينة؟
- Which lifestyle do you prefer: the simple life in the country or the city life?

Practice (2):

- كيف يمكنك تحقيق التوازن بين الحياة الشخصية والحياة العملية؟

.....

.....

- إلي أي مدي يمكنك أن تتحمل ضغوط العمل والإيقاع السريع للحياة؟

.....

.....

- لم لا تنضم لإحدى الجمعيات الخيرية لتقديم المساعدة لمن يحتاجونها؟

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

balance	التوازن	rhythm/pace	الإيقاع
endure	تتحمل	work life	الحياة العملية
join	تنضم	work pressure	ضغوط العمل
personal life	الحياة الشخصية		

3 Imperatives جملة الأمر

١. تبدأ جملة الأمر الفعلية (افعل) في اللغة الإنجليزية بالفعل في المصدر **(inf.)** او **(Always + inf.)**:

- Work hard to achieve your goals.
- Always work hard to achieve your goals.

٢. تبدأ جملة الأمر المنفي (لا تفعل) في اللغة الإنجليزية بـ **(Don't/Never + inf.)**:

- Don't waste your time.
- Never waste your time.

Examples :

- كن متفائلاً وإيجابياً واعلم انه لا يوجد مستحيل طالما هناك إرادة قوية وتصميم.
- Be optimistic and positive and put in mind that nothing is impossible as long as there is strong will and determination.
- احرص دائماً على مساعدة الاخرين عندما يحتاجون إليك، فقد تحتاج إلى مساعدتهم يوماً ما.
- Always make sure you help others when they need you; you may need their help one day.
- لا تستسلم عندما تخفق في القيام بشيء ما، ولا تأخذ النصيحة مطلقاً من فاشل.
- Don't give up when you fail at someth.ing, and never take advice from a failure.

Practice (3) :

- حاول دائماً أن تكون مستعداً لكل الاحتمالات، ولا تترك شيئاً للصدفة.

.....

.....

- لا تنخدع بالمظهر، ولا تعامل منافسك على أنه غبي أو أقل ذكاء منك.

.....

.....

PART 3

- عامل الناس كما تحب أن يعاملوك، ولا تظن أنك أفضل من الآخرين لأن ذلك هو الغرور.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary			
appearance	بالمظهر	possibilities	الاحتمالات
chance	الصدفة	treat	يعامل
competitor	منافس	vanity	الغرور
Don't be tricked	لا تنخدع		

4 Statement الجملة الخبرية

١. تتكون الجملة الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم من:

→ Subj. فاعل + verb (حب الزمن) + ...

Examples :

- لقد افتتح السيد الرئيس العديد من المشروعات العملاقة خلال الأشهر الأخيرة.

- Mr President has inaugurated several giant projects over the past months.

- وافقت الحكومة المصرية على التقدم بملف لاستضافة دورة الألعاب الأوليمبية ٢٠٣٤.

- The Egyptian government agreed to submit a bid to host the 2034 Olympic Games.

٢. تتكون الجملة الخبرية المبنية للمجهول من:

→ Subj. فاعل + verb (حب الزمن) + p.p + ...

Examples :

- بُني السد العالي ليحمي مصر من الفيضان ويُخزّن المياه لوقت الحاجة إليها. كما أنه يساهم في توليد الكهرباء.

- The High Dam was built to protect Egypt from flooding and to store water for the time it is needed. It also contributes to generating electricity.

- ستُنقل مقار جميع الوزارات إلى العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة التي تتمتع ببنية تحتية تكنولوجية عالية التطور.

- The headquarters of all ministries will be moved to the New Administrative Capital which has a highly developed technological infrastructure.

٣. يُفضّل تحويل جملة المبني للمجهول إلى صيغة المبني للمعلوم إذا كان الفاعل معروف:

Examples :

- نُظم مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للتغير المناخي (كوب ٢٧) بواسطة الحكومة المصرية في شرم الشيخ.

- The Egyptian government organized the United Nations Climate Change Conference (COP27) in Sharm El-Sheikh. ✓

- The United Nations Climate Change Conference (COP27) was organized by the Egyptian government in Sharm El-Sheikh. ✓

Practice (4) :

- أقيمت العديد من مشروعات البنية التحتية العملاقة مثل الغاز الطبيعي ضمن مبادرة حياة كريمة.

.....

.....

- أقامت الحكومة المصرية العديد من مشروعات البنية التحتية العملاقة مثل الغاز الطبيعي ضمن مبادرة حياة كريمة.

.....

.....

- يجب أن يُكرِّم المجتمع بأسره المعلمين على الدور الهام والعبء الثقيل الذي يقع على عاتقهم.

.....

.....

- يجب أن يُكرِّم المعلمون من المجتمع على الدور الهام والعبء الثقيل الذي يقع على عاتقهم.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

burden	عبء	infrastructure	البنية التحتية
Decent Life Initiative	مبادرة حياة كريمة	rest on their shoulders	يقع على عاتقهم
giant	عملاق	the whole society	المجتمع بأسره
honour	يُكرِّم		

Special cases حالات خاصة

١ بناء الجملة

١. تبدأ الجملة الإنجليزية بفاعل إذا كانت مبنية للمعلوم أو مفعول إذا كانت الجملة مبنية للمجهول ثم يأتي الفعل حسب زمن الجملة:

Examples :

- سيُقام احتفال كبير لتكريم العلماء والمفكرين على ما قدموه من إنجازات في جميع المجالات.

- A big celebration will be held to honour scholars and thinkers for their achievements in all fields.

٢. الفاعل في الجملة الإنجليزية يقابله فاعل الجملة العربية أو المبتدأ:

Example :

- العظماء لا يعرفون اليأس ولا يتوقفون طويلاً عند لحظات الفشل، بل يتطلعون دائماً لغدٍ أفضل.

- Great people do not know despair and do not stop at moments of failure for long, but rather always look forward to a better tomorrow.

Practice (5) :

- نهر النيل هو شريان الحياة بالنسبة لنا، ومن يعتدي على حقوقنا في مياه النيل فهو يعتدي على وجودنا في الحياة.

.....

.....

- تحتاج الرياضة المصرية إلى ثورة تصحيح للوصول إلى المستوي العالمي في المنافسات.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

artery	شريان	level	مستوي
correction revolution	ثورة تصحيح	right	حق
existence	وجود	transgress	يعتدي

٢ المفعول المطلق

- يُحذف المفعول المطلق عند الترجمة للإنجليزية:

Examples :

- يعاني الفقراء معاناة كبيرة خاصة في ظل الارتفاع المستمر في أسعار السلع الأساسية.

- The poor suffer a lot, especially in light of the continuous rise in the prices of basic commodities.

- تأثر الاقتصاد العالمي تأثراً واضحاً بالحرب التي تشنها روسيا على أوكرانيا.
- The global economy has been clearly affected by the war waged by Russia against Ukraine.

PART 3

Practice (6) :

- يُحب المصريون وطنهم حباً شديداً، وهم على استعداد ليضحوا بارواحهم من أجله.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

homeland	وطن	soul	روح
sacrifice	يضحي		

٣ كيفية ترجمة الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (مصدر) أو (إن + مصدر/اسم)

- المصدر في اللغة العربية هو اسم الفعل مثل (كتابة) من (يكتب) أو (زيارة) من (يزور).
- الجملة التي تبدأ بمصدر أو (إن + مصدر / اسم) في اللغة العربية تبدأ في اللغة الإنجليزية بـ:

Gerund (inf. + ing) /Noun ...

Examples :

- إن تعلم اللغات الأجنبية ومهارات الحاسب الآلي ولغات البرمجة تجعل من السهل حصولك على وظيفة جيدة.
- Learning foreign languages, computer skills and programming languages makes it easy to get a good job.
- إن العمل الجاد هو السبيل الوحيد لتحقيق النجاح الحقيقي في الحياة.
- Hard work is the only way to achieve true success in life.
- السعادة هي الغاية التي يسعي جميع البشر إلي إدراكها ولن تكون سعيداً إلا إذا كنت ناجحاً.
- Happiness is the goal that all humans seek to realize. You will not be happy unless you are successful.

Practice (7) :

- إن حُب الوطن والحرص على تقدمه في جميع المجالات هو الدليل الأكبر على الانتماء لهذا الوطن.

.....

.....

- التعليم بحاجة ضرورية إلى خطة طويلة الأمد لكي يواكب التقدم العلمي الكبير في الدول المتقدمة.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

concern for	الحرص علي	long-term plan	خطة طويلة الأمد
cope with	يواكب	loyalty	الانتماء
developed countries	الدول المتقدمة	need	حاجة
evidence	دليل	progress	التقدم
field	مجال		

٤ كيفية ترجمة الجملة التي تبدأ بـ: يعمل/يقوم.

- في الغالب يتم اسقاط الفعل (يعمل) أو (يقوم) إذا لم يكن الفعل الأساسي للجملة، ويتم تحويل المصدر المذكور في الجملة العربية لفعل أساسي للجملة الإنجليزية:

Examples :

- تقوم حملات الرعاية الصحية المجانية بفحص ذوي الأمراض المزمنة بالمجان ومتابعة حالتهم الصحية.
- Free health care campaigns examine people with chronic diseases for free and follow up their health conditions.

- تعمل الدولة علي مواجهة ظاهرة التنمر بكل حزم من خلال إصدار القوانين التي تضمن أن يواجه المتنمرين عقوبات رادعة.
- The state faces the phenomenon of bullying firmly by issuing laws that ensure that bullies get deterrent penalties.

Practice (8) :

- يقوم المعلمون باستخدام استراتيجيات التعلم المناسبة حسب الموضوع وحسب أعمار الطلاب وقدراتهم العقلية

- يعمل الوالدين على توفير كل ما يحتاجه الأبناء من سكن آمن وطعام صحي وتعليم مناسب

Translation vocabulary

according to	حسب	mental abilities	قدرات عقلية
learning strategies	استراتيجيات التعلم		

٥ كيفية ترجمة الجملة العربية التي لا تحتوي على فعل

- الجملة العربية التي لا يوجد بها فعل غالباً يكون فعلها مستتراً تقديره (يكون) لذلك نستخدم أحد تصريفات (be) عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية:

be, am, is, are, was, were, been

Examples :

- مصر دولة ذات تاريخ عريق وحضارة عظيمة، لذلك من حقك ان تفخر بكونك مصرياً. (= مصر تكون دولة)
- Egypt is a country with long history and a great civilization, so you have the right to be proud of being Egyptian.

- الشباب أمل الأمة في مستقبل أفضل، لذلك يجب أن نوفر لهم كل ما يحتاجونه. (= الشباب يكونون أمل)
- Youth are the nation's hope for a better future, so we must provide them with everything they need.

Practice (9) :

- الإنسان مسئول عن كل الدمار الذي لحق بالبيئة ومسئول عن إصلاح ما أفسده.

- المرأة نصف المجتمع ومسئولة عن تربية النصف الآخر، فالمرأة الصالحة حجر الأساس في بناء المجتمع.

Translation vocabulary

bringing up	تربية	man	الإنسان
cornerstone	حجر الأساس	reform	إصلاح
damage	تفسد	responsible for	مسئول عن
destruction	الدمار		

٦ كيفية ترجمة ضمائر الغائب (هو/هي/هما/هم/هن) إذا جاءت بعد اسم

- إذا جاءت ضمائر الغائب (هو/هي/هم/هم/هن) فإننا نستخدم أحد تصريفات (be) عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية:

be, am, is, are, was, were, been

Examples :

- الأزمة الاقتصادية العالمية هي النتيجة المباشرة لجائحة كورونا والحرب الروسية الأوكرانية. (هي = تكون)
- The global economic crisis is the direct result of the Corona pandemic and the Russian-Ukrainian war.

- المعلمون هم رواد تقدم الأمم، لذلك يجب أن يكون لهم وضع خاص في مجتمعاتهم. (هم = يكونون)

- Teachers are the pioneers of the progress of nations, so they must have a special status in their societies.

PART 3

Practice (10) :

- كرة القدم هي الرياضة الأكثر شعبية في كل أرجاء العالم ويتابعها مليارات المشجعين.

.....

.....

- التسامح هو أحد القيم الإنسانية العظيمة التي يجب أن تسود بين جميع الشعوب بغض النظر عن العرق أو اللون أو الدين.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

all over the world	في كل أرجاء العالم	prevail	تسود
billion	مليار	race	العرق
fans	المشجعين	regardless of	بغض النظر عن
human values	القيم الإنسانية	tolerance	التسامح
peoples	الشعوب		

٧ أفعال إنجليزية لا تتبعها حروف جر

الأفعال التالية يأتي بعدها حرف جر في اللغة العربية ولا يتبعها حرف جر في اللغة الإنجليزية:

admire	يعجب بـ	include	يشتمل على
affect	يؤثر على	join	يلتحق بـ
arrest	يقبض على	obtain	يحصل على
avoid	يتجنب	owe	يدين بـ
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	pass	ينجح / يجتاز
enjoy	يتمتع بـ	reach	يصل إلى
fear	يخشى أن	recognize	يتعرف على
feel	يشعر بـ	sacrifice	يضحي

Examples :

- يؤثر التدخين على الصحة تأثيراً سلبياً خاصة الرئتين والقلب.

- Smoking negatively affects health, especially the lungs and heart.

- يضحي الوالدين بكل ما يملكون ليضمنوا مستقبلاً جيداً لأطفالهم.

- Parents sacrifice everything they have to ensure a good future for their children.

Practice (11) :

- يحتفل المصريون كل عام بذكرى انتصار أكتوبر المجيد الذي أعاد للأمة أرضها وكرامتها.

.....

.....

- نجحت قوات الشرطة في أن تقبض على مجموعة من الإرهابيين الذي يمثلون تهديداً لأمن المجتمع.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

dignity	كرامة	security of the society	أمن المجتمع
forces	قوات	terrorists	الإرهابيين
glorious	المجيد	threat	تهديد
nation	الأمة	victory	انتصار

٨ كيفية التعامل مع الأزمنة عند الترجمة من الإنجليزية للعربية

١. الجُمل التي تدل على حقائق أو عادات مضارع تُترجم إلى زمن المضارع البسيط:

Examples :

- تمتص النباتات ثاني أكسيد الكربون من الهواء وتُطلق الأكسجين.
- Plants absorb carbon dioxide from the air and release oxygen.
- تمنحنا الشمس الضوء الذي يساعد النباتات على النمو كما أنها تعطينا الحرارة اللازمة لاستمرار الحياة علي كوكب الأرض.
- The sun gives us the light that helps plants grow, and it also gives us the heat needed to sustain life on Earth.

٢. يُترجم الفعل المضارع الذي يدل على حدث قائم حالياً إلى زمن المضارع المستمر:

Examples :

- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لتخفيف آثار الأزمة الاقتصادية العالمية الحالية على المواطنين، خاصة محدودي الدخل.
- The government is doing its best to mitigate the effects of the current global economic crisis on citizens, especially those on low incomes.
- يحاول هذا الفريق من العلماء والباحثين حالياً إيجاد علاجات فعالة لمرض السرطان.
- This team of scientists and researchers is currently trying to find effective treatments for cancer.

٣. يُترجم الفعل الماضي في اللغة العربية إلى زمن الماضي البسيط أو الماضي المستمر:

Examples :

- عانت جميع شعوب العالم من الموجات المتتالية لفيروس كورونا، خاصة في الفترة بين ٢٠٢٠ و٢٠٢٢.
- All peoples of the world suffered from successive waves of Corona virus, especially in the period between 2020 and 2022.
- بينما كانت الدول المتقدمة تبني اقتصاديات قوية ونُظم اجتماعية عادلة، كانت الدول الفقيرة تتصارع على قضايا تافهة.
- While the developed countries were building strong economies and fair social systems, the poor countries were fighting over trivial issues.

٤. في الغالب يُترجم الفعل (كان ... + فعل مضارع) إلى زمن الماضي المستمر:

Examples :

- كان جميع المشجعون يستمتعون بالمباراة عندما انطفأت كل الأنوار فجأة.
- All the fans were enjoying the match when suddenly all the lights went out.
- كان السائحون يقضون أوقاتاً رائعة على شاطئ البحر حيث الشمس الساطعة والهواء النقي.
- The tourists were having a great time on the beach, where the sun was bright and the air was fresh.

٥. يُترجم الفعل الذي يسبقه (سوف / سـ ...) إلي صيغة المستقبل المناسبة:

Examples :

- سوف يؤدي الاعتماد على مصادر الطاقة النظيفة إلى تقليل التلوث البيئي وسيخفف حدة التغير المناخي.
- Dependence on clean energy sources will reduce environmental pollution and it will mitigate climate change.
- يوماً ما ستدرك انه لا أحد يحبك مثل والديك، فهما الوحيدان اللذان يتمنيان أن تصبح أفضل منهما.
- One day, you will realize that no one loves you as much as your parents. They are the only ones who wish you were better than them.

Practice (12) :

- تدور الأرض حول محورها مرة كل ٢٤ ساعة وهذا يؤدي إلي تعاقب الليل والنهار.

.....

.....

PART 3

- تُنفذ الدولة حالياً العديد من مشروعات البنية التحتية العملاقة مثل تجديد شبكات المياه والصرف الصحي ومد خطوط الغاز الطبيعي لكل المدن والقري.

.....

.....

- كانت الأمطار تتساقط بغزارة عندما وصل القطار إلى المحطة في منتصف الليل.

.....

.....

- سوف تمر هذه الأوقات الصعبة، وسيتحسن الوضع الاقتصادي، وسينعم كل المواطنين بالرخاء.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

around its axis	حول محورها	prosperity	الرخاء
implement	ينفذ	renew	يجدد
infrastructure	البنية التحتية	succession	تعاقب
lay	يمد	water and sewage	شبكات المياه والصرف
natural gas pipelines	خطوط الغاز الطبيعي	networks	الصحي

٩ الصفات

١. تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية قبل الموصوف (عكس اللغة العربية):

Example :

الاحتباس الحراري أو التغير المناخي بصفة عامة يُعتبر نتيجة مباشرة لما نطلق عليه التلوث البيئي.

- Global warming or climate change in general is a direct result of what we call environmental pollution.

٢. تأتي الصفة في اللغة الإنجليزية بعد الموصوف إذا كانت تصف أي من الضمائر غير المحددة التالية:

Some-	Any-	Every-	No-
someone	anyone	everyone	no one
somebody	anybody	everybody	nobody
something	anything	everything	nothing
somewhere	anywhere	everywhere	nowhere

Example :

كانت الأمور تسير بشكل طبيعي ولم يكن هناك أي شيء غير عادي.

- Things were going on normally and there was nothing unusual.
- Things were going on normally and there was not anything unusual.

٣. قد تأتي الصفة وبعدها الاسم الموصوف أو بدون الاسم الموصوف بعد بعض الأفعال التقريرية مثل:

be (am, is, are, was, were, been)

get/become يصبح - **sound/seem/look** يبدو - **feel** يشعر - **taste** له مذاق - **smell** له رائحة

Example :

كما هو معتاد في شتاء أسوان، تبدو السماء صافية كما أن الطقس يكون دافئاً معظم الوقت.

- As usual in Aswan's winter, the sky looks clear and the weather is warm most of the time.

٤. في الجملة العربية إذا جاء بعد الاسم صفتان دون أداة ربط فعند الترجمة نبدأ بالصفة الأخيرة:

Example :

- Different charitable organizations help poor families and homeless street children.

تساعد الجمعيات الخيرية المختلفة الأسر الفقيرة وأطفال الشوارع المشردين.

Example :

- A logical and achievable ambition is the most important characteristic of a successful person.

إن الطموح المنطقي والقابل للتحقيق هو أهم ما يميز الإنسان الناجح.

Example :

- The poor are the part of society most affected by inflation and the continuous rise in the prices of goods and services.

= The poor people are the part of society most affected by inflation and the continuous rise in the prices of goods and services.

الفقراء هم الجزء الأكثر تضرراً في المجتمع من التضخم والارتفاع المستمر في أسعار السلع والخدمات.

Practice (13) :

- يجد الشباب المؤهل جيداً من السهل الحصول على وظيفة جيدة في سوق العمل خاصة في القطاع الخاص.

.....

.....

أخبرني والدي أن أطمئن وأن أركز في دراستي وأنه لن يحدث أي شيء خطير.

.....

.....

تبدو السماء ملبدة بالغيوم وأعتقد أنه ستسقط أمطار غزيرة كما هو متوقع.

.....

.....

نجحت القيادة المصرية الحكيمة في وضع مصر على خريطة الاستثمار السياحي العالمي.

.....

.....

إن العمل المنظم والمخطط له هو السبيل الوحيد للنجاح الحقيقي والدائم.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

as expected	كما هو متوقع	organised and planned	العمل المنظم والمخطط له
cloudy	ملبدة بالغيوم	private sector	القطاع الخاص
feel sure	أطمئن	true and permanent success	النجاح الحقيقي والدائم
heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة	well-qualified	المؤهل جيداً
international tourist investment	الاستثمار السياحي العالمي	wise Egyptian leadership	القيادة المصرية الحكيمة
labour market	سوق العمل		

١٠ الظرف

١. ظروف التكرار التالية توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي او بعد (be) والأفعال المساعدة والناقصة:

always, usually, often, sometimes, occasionally, regularly, rarely, scarcely, seldom, hardly, never ...

PART 3

Example :

- نادراً ما يؤجل الإنسان الناجح عمل اليوم إلي الغد، فالتأجيل والتسويف هما عادة من سمات الفاشلين.

- A successful person rarely postpones today's work until tomorrow. Postponement and procrastination are usually characteristics of failures.

٢. ظروف الكيفية (غالباً تنتهي بـ (-ly)) تأتي بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:

Example :

- يؤدي القائد الناجح عمله بدقة ويتخذ قراراته بحكمة ويسمح لمعارضيه أن ينتقدونه بحرية.

- A successful leader does their work accurately, makes their decisions wisely, and allows their opponents to criticize them freely.

٣. ظروف الدرجة تحدد درجة قوة أو ضعف الصفة، وتوضع قبل الصفة مباشرة

a bit	قليلاً	quite	إلي حد ما
a lot	كثيراً/بشدة	rather	إلي حد ما
absolutely	بشكل مُطلق	really	حقاً
completely	تماماً	so	جداً
even	كثيراً	utterly	كلياً
extremely	للغاية	very	جداً

Example :

- إن الحفاظ على التوازن البيئي أمر ضروري للغاية، فعدم وجود هذا التوازن سيؤثر بشدة على وجود الإنسان على سطح الأرض.

- Keeping environmental balance is extremely necessary. The absence of this balance will affect man's existence on earth badly.

Practice (14) :

- لك الحق أن تُعبّر عن رأيك بحرية، لكن تذكر أنّ هذه الحرية غير مُطلقة ويجب ألا تؤذي أحداً.

.....

.....

- يبذل المواطن الصالح دائماً قصارى جهده من أجل أن يكون وطنه في تقدم ورُقيّ وازدهار.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

absolute	مُطلقة	progress	تقدم
advancement	ورُقيّ	prosperity	وازدهار
does their best	يبذل قصارى جهده	than before	من ذي قبل
freedom	الحرية	under medical care	تحت الرعاية الطبية
good citizen	المواطن الصالح		

١١ كيفية التعامل مع الضمائر في الترجمة

١. الضمير المتصل باسم (مثل: قلمي، قلمه، قلمها ...) يُترجم إلى إحدى صفات الملكية التالية:

my, his, her, its, our, your, their, ...'s

Example :

- عندما تكون جزءاً من فريق فلا تقل إنجازي أو إنجازه أو إنجازها، بل هو إنجازنا.

- When you are part of a team, do not say my achievement, his or her achievement, but rather it is our achievement.

٢. ضمير الفاعل المستتر أو المتصل بفعل (مثل: رأيتُ، رأي، رأتْ...) يُترجم ضمير فاعل:

I, he, she, it, you, we, they

وضمير المفعول المستتر أو المتصل بفعل (مثل: أخبرني، أخبره، أخبرها...) يُترجم ضمير مفعول:

me, him, her, it, you, us, them

Example :

دعاني صديقي كما دعاك لحضور حفل زفاف أخته وأخبرني أن أرافقك إلى هناك.

- My friend invited me as he invited you to his sister's wedding and told me to accompany you there.

Practice (15) :

قم بواجبك ودع الآخرين يقومون بواجباتهم، فأنت مسئول عن عملك فقط.

.....

.....

علمني أبي أن أحب الآخرين وأساعدهم وقت الحاجة وأشكرهم إذا أحسنوا وأسامحهم إذا أخطأوا.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

do well	يُحسن	make a mistake	يُخطئ
duty	واجب		

١٢ أنَّ - أنَّ - أنْ

١. لا تُوجد ترجمة لـ (أنَّ) إذا جاءت بعد صيغة يقابلها فعل ناقص مثل (**should – must ...**) في :

Example :

يجب أن نبحث عن حلول لمشكلاتنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية ولابد أن نطور التعليم تطويراً حقيقياً.

- We must look for solutions to our economic and social problems, and we must truly develop education.

علينا أن نستفيد من تجارب الآخرين في الصناعة والتكنولوجيا، ولابد أن نمتلك مصادر القوة.

- We should benefit from the experiences of others in industry and technology, and it is necessary to have the sources of strength.

٢. غالباً تُترجم (أنَّ) في الصيغة (فعل + أنْ + فعل مضارع) إلي:

→ **... verb + to + inf. ...**

Example :

يحاول الإنسان الناجح أن يحقق طموحاته في الحياة بالتخطيط السليم والعمل الجاد واستغلال الوقت أحسن استغلال.

- A successful person tries to achieve their ambition in life by proper planning, hard work, and making the best use of time.

٣. تُترجم (إنْ) الشرطية إلي (**if/whether**) :

Example :

إن تأخذ وقتك وتفكر جيداً فستتخذ القرار السليم.

- If you take your time and think carefully, you will make/take the right decision.

٤. الحرف (إنْ) الخاص بالتوكيد لا يُترجم:

Example :

إن الحياة في معسكرات الشباب تعلمهم التعاون والاعتماد على النفس والتضحية في سبيل الآخرين.

- Life in youth camps teaches them co-operation, independence and sacrifice for the sake of others.

٥. الحرف (أنَّ) الخاص بالتوكيد غالباً يُترجم إلى (**that**) ومن الممكن إسقاطه :

PART 3

Example :

يُسعدني انّ وطني أقوي وأعلي الأوطان، ويحزنني أنه ضعيف أو فقير.

- I am happy that my country is the strongest and the richest of all countries, and it saddens me that it is weak or poor.

Practice (16) :

إن دول الغرب يجب أن تعلم أن لنا ثوابتنا التي لا نقبل المساس بها تحت شعارات الحرية الزائفة.

هل تريد أن تحقق طموحاتك في الحياة؟ إذن فعليك أن تُخطّط وتعمل بجد وتستغل وقتك.

إن تعمل كثيراً تحقق ما تريد، وإن تكتفي بأحلام اليقظة دون عمل فمن المؤكّد أنك ستفشل.

أعجبني أنها لم تتوقف كثيراً عند لحظات الفشل، بل ثابرت حتى حققت ما تريد.

Translation vocabulary

basics	ثوابت	false freedom	الحرية الزائفة
be content with day dreams	تكتفي بأحلام اليقظة	make use of	تستغل
countries of the West	دول الغرب	persevere	يثابر
do not accept violating it/them	لا نقبل المساس بها	slogan	شعار

١٢ لقد

لا توجد ترجمة لكلمة (لقد) وتُترجَم جملتها في زمن الماضي البسيط إذا كان هناك تعبير زمني يدل على الماضي، وتُترجَم جملتها إلى زمن المضارع التام إذا لم يكن هناك تعبير زمني يدل على الماضي:

Example :

لقد زرت العديد من أماكن الجذب السياحي مثل الأهرامات والمتحف المصري العام الماضي.

- I visited several tourist attractions such as the Pyramids and the Egyptian Museum last year.

لقد زرت العديد من أماكن الجذب السياحي مثل الأهرامات والمتحف المصري.

- I have visited several tourist attractions such as the Pyramids and the Egyptian Museum.

Practice (17) :

لقد كانت مصر دائماً أكبر داعم لإقامة دولة مستقلة عاصمتها القدس يعيش فيها الفلسطينيون في سلام وحرية.

لقد أقام المصريون القدماء حضارة عظيمة على ضفاف النيل منذ آلاف السنين.

Translation vocabulary

bank	ضفة	Palestinians	الفلسطينيون
civilization	حضارة	peace	سلام
independent country	دولة مستقلة	setting up	إقامة
Jerusalem	القدس	supporter	داعم

١٤ قد

١. كلمة (قد) لا توجد لها ترجمة، لكن استخدامها قبل الفعل المضارع غالباً يفيد الشك وتُترجم إلي:

→ may/might/could + inf. ...

Example :

قد يُساعد استخدام الطاقة النووية في حل مشكلة نقص الوقود الحفري مثل البترول والفحم والغاز الطبيعي.

- The use of nuclear energy may help solve the problem of shortage of fossil fuels such as oil, coal and natural gas.

٢. كلمة (قد) قبل الفعل الماضي تُفيد التوكيد وتُترجم إلي ماضي بسيط أو ماضي تام:

Example :

كان جدي يفتخر دائماً بأنه قد كان أحد الجنود البواسل الذين عبروا قناة السويس في حرب اكتوبر.

- My grandfather was always proud that he was one of the brave soldiers who crossed/had crossed the Suez Canal in the October War.

٣. التعبير (كان + قد + فعل ماضي) يُترجم إلى ماضي تام غالباً:

Example :

كنت قد حللت المشكلة الخطيرة قبل أن يشعر بها أي فرد من أعضاء الفريق.

- I had solved the serious problem before any member of the team could feel it.

٤. التعبير (سيكون + قد + فعل ماضي) يُترجم إلى مستقبل تام غالباً :

Example :

سأكون قد حللت المشكلة الخطيرة قبل أن يشعر بها أي فرد من أعضاء الفريق.

- I will have solved the serious problem before any member of the team feels it.

Practice (18) :

- قد تستطيع أن تفوز بالميدالية الذهبية، لكن من المؤكد أن المنافسة لن تكون سهلة.

.....

.....

- كان المصريون القدماء قد أقاموا حضارة عظيمة قبل أن تعرف الشعوب الأخرى معني الحضارة.

.....

.....

- ستكون مصر قد حققت تقدماً عظيماً عندما يكون أطفالنا في سن الشباب.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

competition	المنافسة	peoples	الشعوب

١٥ لى / عندى / لدى / امتلك

١. الصيغ الدالة على الملكية مثل (لي، له، لها ...) أو (عندي، عنده، عندها ...) أو (لدي، لديه، لديها ...) أو (أمتلك، يمتلك، تمتلك ...) تُترجم إلي:

→ I / You / We / They + have / have got ...

→ He / She / It + has / has got ...

Examples :

لدينا كعرب حضارة كبيرة علمت العالم كله، وعندنا أيضاً قيم ومبادئ راسخة تحترمها وينبغي أن يحترمها العالم بأسره.

- We, as Arabs, have a great civilization that taught the whole world. We also have got firm values and principles that we respect and the entire world should respect.

PART 3

Practice (19) :

كل طالب لديه هدف تعليمي يسعي لتحقيقه، فما هو هدفك؟

.....

.....

تمتلك مصر ثروة بشرية هائلة يمكن أن تضعها في مصاف الدول المتقدمة بشرط الحصول على تعليم جيد واستغلال علوم وتكنولوجيا العصر الحديث.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

human wealth	ثروة بشرية	provided that	بشرط
make use of	يستغل	put it in the rank of	تضعها في مصاف

١٦ عليّ / عليه / عليها / علينا / عليك / عليكم /لابد/ لا مفر

١. الصيغ الدالة على الضرورة أو الواجب أو الإلزام مثل (عليّ، عليه، عليها، علينا، عليك، عليكم...) أو (لابد، لا مفر ...) تُترجَم إلي :

→ Subj. فاعل + have to, has to, must, should, ought to + inf. ...

Examples :

علينا أن نبذلوا ما بوسعنا حتى نحققوا لأنفسنا ولوطننا التقدم والرخاء في كل مجالات الحياة.

- You should/must do everything you can to achieve progress and prosperity for yourselves and your country in all aspects of life.

لا مفر من العمل الجاد إذا كنا فعلاً نريد أن تحقق أحلامنا بمستقبل أفضل لنا ولأبنائنا.

- We have to/must work hard if we really want to achieve our dreams for a better future for ourselves and our children.

Practice (20) :

فمن لا يتوقف عن انتقاد الآخرين عليه أن يخبرنا بإنجازاته التي لا يُمكن انتقادها!

.....

.....

لابد أن تفكر جيداً قبل القيام بخطوة جديدة في حياتك حتى تتجنب الوقوع في الخطأ.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

criticise	ينتقد	taking a new step	القيام بخطوة جديدة
making mistakes	الوقوع في الخطأ	the person who never stops	مَن لا يتوقف
others	الآخرين		

١٧ من الـ + صفة + أن

١. غالباً ما تُترجم هذه الصيغة إلي:

→ It is + adj. صفة + to + inf. ...

Examples :

من الضروري أن نقضي على التلوث بكل أشكاله حتى نواجه التغير المناخي الذي يهدد وجودنا.

- It is necessary to eliminate all forms of pollution to face climate change that threatens our existence.

إنه لمن العدل أن تأخذ حقك فقط وان تعطي الآخرين حقوقهم.

- It is fair to take only your rights and to give others theirs.

٢. وعندما يكون ضرورياً ذِكر الفاعل في هذه الصيغة تكون هكذا:

→ It is + adj. صفة + for + اسم أو ضمير مفعول + to + inf. ...

Example :

من المهم بالنسبة للمريض أن يُجري الفحوصات اللازمة في أماكن موثوق بها.

- It is important for a patient to perform the necessary examinations in trustworthy places.

Practice (21) :

من السيء أن تجادل شخصاً لا يسمع إلا نفسه.

.....

.....

إنه لمن السهل علي الجميع أن ينتقدون غيرهم، لكن من الصعب علي هؤلاء أن يقدمون البدائل.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

alternatives	بدائل	argue with	تجادل

١٨ يعتبر - يُعتبَر

١. تُترجم هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم (يعتبر) إلي:

→ Subj. فاعل + consider ...

٢. تُترجم هذه الصيغة في المبني للمجهول (يُعتبَر) إلي:

→ Obj. + am, is, are, was, were + considered + ...

ويمكن الاكتفاء بـ (am, is, are, was ,were) فقط كترجمة للفعل(يُعتبَر) في المبني للمجهول:

Examples :

- يعتبر المعلمون تطوير التعليم واجب قومي واستثمار في مستقبل الوطن.

- Teachers consider the development of education a national duty and an investment in the country's future.

- يُعتبر تطوير التعليم واجب قومي واستثمار في مستقبل الوطن.

- The development of education is considered a national duty and an investment in the country's future.

= The development of education is a national duty and an investment in the country's future.

Practice (23) :

- اعتبرنا أن التفكير في الماضي مضيعة للوقت فيما لا طائل منه، لذا فإنه من الأفضل أن نفكر بالمستقبل.

.....

.....

- يُعتبَر التفكير في الماضي مضيعة للوقت فيما لا طائل منه، لذا فإنه من الأفضل أن نفكر بالمستقبل.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	in a useless way	فيما لا طائل منه

١٩ كلما ... كلما

١. تُترجم هذه الصيغة بإحدى طريقتين هما:

→ The + صفة مقارنة + subj. + verb ... + the + صفة مقارنة + subj. + verb ...

OR

→ If + present simple + , + (... + will + inf.) / (present simple)

PART 3

Examples :

- كلما زاد عدد الطلاب كلما زادت حاجتنا إلى المدارس والمدرسين.
- The more students there are, the more schools and teachers we need.
- If students increase in number, we need (will need) more schools and teachers.
- كلما قللت كمية الطعام الذي تتناوله كلما تحسنت صحتك.
- The less food you eat, the healthier you are.
- If you eat less food, your health improves (will improve).

Practice (24) :

- كلما ازدادت الصادرات كلما أصبح الوضع الاقتصادي أفضل.

.....

.....

.....

- كلما تحسنت مهاراتك وقدراتك كلما أصبحت فرصتك في الحصول على وظيفة جيدة أكبر.

.....

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

abilities	قدرات	economy	الوضع الاقتصادي
chance	فرصة	exports	الصادرات

PART II TRANSLATION FROM ENGLISH INTO ARABIC

وفيما يلي سنقدم لكم أهم الملاحظات التي تحتاجونها عند الترجمة من العربية للإنجليزية:

1 be : am, is, are - was, were - been

١. عندما يكون الفعل (be) فعلاً أساسياً فهو يُترجَم إلى (يكون/يوجد):

Example :

- Egypt was, still is, and will always be the land of peace and tolerance.
- لقد كانت مصر ولا زالت وستبقي دائماً أرض السلام والتسامح.

٢. في المضارع غالباً يتم حذف ترجمة الفعل (be) بمعني (يكون/يوجد) من الجملة العربية عند الترجمة:

Example :

- Pollution is one the most dangerous threats to man's existence on earth.
- إن التلوث أحد أخطر التهديدات لوجود الإنسان على الأرض.

٣. أحياناً تتم ترجمة الفعل (be) بضمير غائب مثل (هو، هي، هما، هم، هن):

Example :

- Egypt is the cradle of civilisation. The Egyptians are the people who taught the whole world he meaning of civilization.
- إن مصر هي مهد الحضارات، والمصريون هم الشعب الذي علم العالم معني الحضارة.

٤. أحياناً تتم ترجمة الفعل (be) بمعني اخر في اللغة العربية غير فعل (يكون/يوجد) حسب السياق:

Example :

- Democracy which guarantees responsible freedom is the cornerstone in our world today.
- تُعتبَر الديمقراطية التي تضمن الحرية المسئولة حجر الزاوية في عالمنا اليوم.
- A knife is for cutting while a pen is for writing.
- تستخدم السكين للقطع بينما يُستخدَم القلم للكتابة.

٥. عند استخدام (be) كفعل مساعد لا يوجد لها معني في الترجمة إلا في الماضي المستمر:

Example :

- The government is working on the distance-learning file to improve the quality of the learning process.

- تعمل الحكومة علي ملف التعليم عن بعد لتحسين جودة العملية التعليمية.

- I was checking the report when suddenly the lights went out.

- كنت أراجع التقرير عندما انقطعت الأنوار فجأة.

Practice (1) :

- Education is not an end in itself, but it is a means to an end.

.....

.....

- Your parents grant you true love and hope you are better than they are.

.....

.....

- While you were doing your best to pass your exams, your parents were exerting great efforts to provide you with everything needed.

.....

.....

Translation vocabulary

doing your best	تبذل قصارى جهدك	grant	يمنح
end	غاية	means	وسيلة
exerting great efforts	يبذل جهوداً عظيمة	provide	يوفر

2 only

١. الظرف (**only**) بمعني (فقط) يُستخدم في الانجليزية لتحديد معني ما يأتي بعده سواء جاء بعده اسم أو فعل أو ضمير أو ظرف آخر، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Examples :

- Only Omar visited me yesterday. — عُمَر فقط هو من زارني بالأمس.
- Omar only helped me yesterday. — لم يقم عُمَر بالأمس الا بمساعدتي.
- Omar helped only me yesterday. — عُمَر ساعدني أنا فقط بالأمس.
- Omar helped me only yesterday. — عُمَر ساعدني بالأمس فقط.

٢. تُستخدم كلمة (**only**) كصفة بمعني (الوحيد):

Example :

- Egypt is the only country in the Middle East whose population is more than one hundred million.

- إن مصر هي الدولة الوحيدة في الشرق الأوسط التي يتجاوز عدد سكانها ١٠٠ مليون نسمة.

Practice (2) :

- Only intelligent and hard-working students can get the full marks in such a difficult exam.

.....

.....

- We have only two days before the deadline to make up our minds and make a final decision.

.....

.....

- My mother is the only person in the world who puts my interests before hers.

.....

.....

General Exercises on Translation

PART 3

Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. The FIFA World Cup 2022 in Qatar has been the first to be hosted in the Middle East since the inauguration of the tournament in 1930.

a. لقد كانت بطولة كأس العالم لكرة القدم ٢٠٢٢ في قطر هي الأولى التي تُستضيفها منطقة الشرق الأوسط منذ افتتاح البطولة في عام ١٩٣٠.

b. لقد كانت بطولة كأس العالم لكرة القدم ٢٠٢٢ في قطر هي الأولى التي تستضيفها منطقة الشرق الأوسط منذ إلغاء البطولة في عام ١٩٣٠.

c. كانت بطولة كأس العالم لكرة القدم ٢٠٢٢ في قطر هي الأولى التي تُستضاف فيها منطقة الشرق الأوسط منذ افتتاح البطولة في عام ١٩٣٠.

d. كانت بطولة كأس العالم لكره القدم ٢٠٢٢ في قطر هي الأولى التي تستضيفها منطقة الشرق الأوسط عند تدشين البطولة في عام ١٩٣٠.

2. The climate crisis is about human security, economic security, environmental security, national security, and the very life of the planet.

a. أزمة المناخ تتعلق بالأمن البشري، والأمن الاقتصادي، والأمن البيئي، والأمن القومي، وحياة النبات ذاتها.

b. تتعلق أزمة المناخ بالأمن البشري، والأمن الاقتصادي، والأمن البيئي، والأمن القومي، وحياة الكوكب جذا.

c. تتعلق أزمة المناخ بالأمن البشري، والأمن الاقتصادي، والأمن البيئي، والأمن القومي، وحياة الكوكب ذاتها.

d. تتعلق أزمة المناخ بالأمل البشري، والأمن الاقتصادي، والأمان البيئي، والأمن القومي، وحياة البشر ذاتها.

Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

١. لا شك أن التعليم العام يحتاج إلى الكثير من التطوير، لكن ذلك يتطلب ميزانية ضخمة يصعب توفيرها في ظل الأزمة الاقتصادية التي أثرت على كل دول العالم.

a. There is no doubt that public education needs a lot of development, but this requires a huge budget that is difficult to provide in light of the economic crisis that has affected all the world countries.

b. There is not doubt that public education needs a lot of development, but this requires a huge budget that is difficult to provide in light of the economic crisis that has affected all countries of the world.

c. There is no doubt that public education needs a lot of development, but this requires a tiny budget that is difficult to provide in light of the economic crisis that has affected all the world countries.

d. There is no doubt that public education needs a lot of development, but this requires a huge budget that is difficult to provide in light of the economic crisis that have affected all countries of the world.

١. توفر الدولة مواد تعليمية عالية الجودة من خلال ثلاث قنوات مجانية، لكن لا شيء يغني عن المعلم الذي يتعامل وجهًا لوجه مع الطالب.

a. The state provides high-quality educational minerals through three free channels, but nothing replaces a teacher who deals face-to-face with a student.

b. The state provides high-quality educational materials through three free channels, but nothing replaces a teacher who deals face-to-face with a student.

c. The state provides high-quality educational materials through three free canals, but nothing replaces a teacher who deals face-to-face with a student.

d. The state provides high-quality educational materials though three free channels, but nothing replaces a teacher who deals face-to-face with a student.

3.Writing Skill

٣. مهارة الكتابة

Introduction

أعزاءنا معلمي وطلاب المرحلة الثانوية:

كالعادة يأتيكم كتابكم المُفضل (El-Moasser) بالجديد الموثوق به، والمفيد الذي يوفر وقتكم وجهدكم ويضمن لكم أعلى الدرجات، وفي هذا الجزء نقدم لكم كل ما يخص مهارة الكتابة (Writing) سواء الجزء المقالي (Subjective) والذي يتضمن كتابة مقال (Essay) أو رسالة بريد إلكتروني (Email).

Writing (Subjective)

مهارة الكتابة (مقالي)

Important Tips : إرشادات هامة

عزيزي الطالب: تعلّم فن الكتابة واكتب ... لا تحفظ مقدمات وحواتيم.

- لابد أن تعلم أنه إذا كانت الكلمة (word) هي وحدة بناء الجملة (sentence)، فإن الجملة هي وحدة بناء الفقرة الإنشائية (par-agraph)، والفقرة الإنشائية هي وحدة بناء المقال (essay) بأنواعه أو رسائل البريد الإلكتروني (email)...إلخ.

A group of words ...	make →	a sentence
A group of sentences ...	make →	a paragraph
A group of paragraphs ...	make →	an essay, an email, a letter, a short story, ...etc.

وفيما يلي سنقدم لكم ملفاً كاملاً يجعلكم تحترفون مهارة الكتابة باللغة الإنجليزية، وسيحتوي هذا الملف على:

1. Sentence الجملة
2. Paragraph الفقرة الإنشائية
3. Essay & Types of essays المقال بأنواعه
4. Email: Formal & Informal رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية والودية

1 Sentence : الجملة :

حيث أن الجملة هي وحدة بناء الفقرة الإنشائية والمقال وكل أشكال الكتابة الأخرى، فسنركز هنا على مساعدتك على تجنُّب أهم الأخطاء الشائعة التي يقع فيها الطالب عند كتابة الجُمل:

❶ Avoid using compound & complex sentences

تجنب استخدام الجُمل الطويلة (المركبة)

تجنب استخدام الجمل الطويلة حتى لا تقع في أخطاء، فالجملة البسيطة القصيرة هي أفضل أنواع الجمل وأكثرها تشويقاً وجذباً للقارئ. والجملة البسيطة المبنية للمعلوم تبدأ بفاعل ثم فعل، أما الجملة المبنية للمجهول فهي تبدأ بالمفعول ثم تصريف (be) حسب الزمن ثم التصريف الثالث:

- Pollution affects health badly. (معلوم)
- Health is badly affected by pollution. (مجهول)

(يؤثر التلوث بشدة على الصحة.)

2 Avoid repeating the beginnings of sentences تجنّب تكرار بدايات الجمل

١. تكرر بدايات الجمل معنا يؤدي إلى شعور القارئ أو المستمع بالملل والسطحية. ضع الفقرة التالية كالتالي:

You should work hard. You shouldn't waste your time. You should have a time plan. You should work to a plan. You should do everything possible to achieve your goals in life.

٢. في المثال السابق بدأت جميع الجمل بـ (You should shouldn't) وهذا أمر غير مرغوب فيه، فمن الأفضل تنويع بدايات الجمل باستخدام أساليب أخرى. أعد نفس المثال السابق بدايات متنوعة للجمل وحدد أيهما أفضل:

It is advisable to work hard. You shouldn't waste your time. If I were you, I would have a time plan. You'd better work to a plan. It is important to do everything possible to achieve your goals in life.

3 Singular or Plural verb استخدام الفعل مع المفرد والجمع

١. تأكد أن الفاعل مفرد أو جمع لكي تستخدم الصيغة الصحيحة للفعل:

- One of the tourists are trying to climb the Great Pyramid.
- One of the tourists is trying to climb the Great Pyramid.

٢. لا تنسى إضافة (s, es, ies) لنهاية الفعل إذا كنت تستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط وكان الفاعل مفرد غائب (he, she, it):

- Smoking destroy your lungs.
- Smoking destroys your lungs.

٣. بعد الضمائر التالية نستخدم صيغة الفعل المفرد (is -was - has - does) وتكون الضمائر في صيغة الجمع:

- someone, anyone, everyone, no one
- somebody, anybody, everybody, nobody

- Everybody have to do his best to help the environment.
- Everybody has to do their best to help the environment.

٤. بعد الأسماء التالية نستخدم صيغة الفعل الجمع (are -were - have - do):

people, police, cattle, livestock, clothes, shoes, scissors, pliers, shorts, slippers, trousers ...

- The police was chasing some criminals.
- The police were chasing some criminals.

4 Adjectives & adverbs الصفة والظرف

١. الصفة تأتي قبل الاسم الموصوف (عكس اللغة العربية):

- Climate change has a negative effect on health. (Not: effect negative)

٢. قد تأتي الصفة بدون الاسم الموصوف بعدها بعد بعض الأفعال التشريوية مثل:

be - look يبدو - seem يبدو - appear يبدو - sound يبدو - feel ...

- Egypt is great. = Egypt is a great nation.
- The problem sounds serious.

٣. يأتي ظرف الكيفية قبل الأفعال أو في نهاية الجملة:

- Pollution badly affects health. = Pollution affects health badly.

٤. هناك صفات تنتهي بـ (ly) ويجب الانتباه إلى أنها ليست ظرف، ومن أمثلتها ما يلي :

(friendly ودود - neighbourly ودود - cowardly جبان)

- He is a friendly man.

٥. تأتي ظروف التكرار التالية قبل الأفعال، لكنها تأتي بعد تصريفات الفعل (be) والأفعال الناقصة والمساعدة:

always - often/frequently غالباً - usually عادة - regularly بانتظام - sometimes - occasionally بين الحين والآخر - rarely/scarcely/seldom نادراً - never ...

- Sama always helps others. = Sama is always helpful..

٦. تأتي ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات لتحدد درجة قوتها أو ضعفها:

slightly بدرجة طفيفة - **little/a bit** قليلاً - **even/so/a lot/ much** كثيراً ...

- Today is a bit colder than yesterday.
- This year, gold is much more expensive than last year.

❺ Sentence Punctuation علامات الترقيم الخاصة بالجملة

١. كل جملة خبرية أو أمريه تبدأ بحرف (Capital) وتنتهي بنقطة (full stop):

- We all work hard for a better future.
- Get enough sleep if you want to keep healthy.

٢. كل سؤال يبدأ بحرف (Capital) وينتهي بعلامة استفهام (Question mark):

- How can we solve the problem of heavy traffic?
- Do you have plans for your future?

٣. في أي مكان في الجملة تبدأ أسماء الإنسان والبلاد والأقاليم الجغرافية والمعالم المشهورة وأيام الأسبوع وأسماء الشهور بحروف (Capital)، وكذلك ضمير المتكلم (I):

- On a sunny Friday last January, Ahmed and I travelled to Aswan in Upper Egypt where we visited the High Dam and the Botanical Island.

٤. في الجملة التي تبدأ برابطة نستخدم الفاصلة السفلي (,) بين جزئيها:

- Because education is very important, we have to improve it.
- Once I had reached the station, the train left.

2 Writing paragraphs : كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

تتكون الفقرة الإنشائية من مجموعة من الجمل تدور حول فكرة رئيسية واحدة، وتنقسم هذه الجُمل إلي ثلاث أنواع رئيسية:

Types of sentences in a paragraph

1. Topic sentence الجُملة الرئيسية
2. Supporting Sentences الجُمل الداعمة
3. Concluding Sentence الجُملة الختامية

❶ Topic sentence (=Introduction sentence) الجملة الرئيسية

غالبًا ما تكون الجُملة الرئيسية هي الجُملة الأولى في الفقرة الإنشائية، وهي توضح الفكرة الرئيسية التي تتحدث عنها الفقرة.

❷ Supporting sentences: الجُمل الداعمة

تشرح الجُمل الداعمة المزيد من التفاصيل عن الجُملة الافتتاحية من خلال عرض بعض الحقائق أو الإحصائيات أو الأمثلة المتعلقة بالموضوع، وقد تشمل أيضًا تجربة الكاتب وتحليله الخاص.

❸ Concluding Sentence (= Closing Sentence) الجُملة الختامية

الجُملة الختامية هي نهاية الفقرة الإنشائية، وفيها يعيد الكاتب صياغة جُملة الموضوع أو يلخص النقاط الرئيسية في الفقرة.

Model Paragraph

Topic sentence → Tourism is one of the main activities in Egypt. It is one of the main sources of national income. It provides thousands of job opportunities for people who support families. It also provides some sort of cultural exchange. } **Supporting sentences**

Concluding sentence → Tourism is an important pillar of Egypt's economy.

لاحظ كما في الفقرة الإنشائية السابقة أنه يتم ترك مسافة خمس أحرف (نصف سنتيمتر تقريباً) في بداية السطر الأول فقط في الفقرة الإنشائية، وهي بمثابة إشارة إلى بداية الفقرة.

PART 3

3 Essay Writing : كتابة المقال

Remember

- كتابة جملة صحيحة تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية (paragraph) جيدة.
- المقال يتكون من عدد من الفقرات الإنشائية.
- يتحدث المقال عن أطروحة أو فكرة رئيسية واحدة (Thesis) يتم ذكرها في فقرة المقدمة.
- تنقسم الفقرات الانشائية في المقال إلى ثلاثة أنواع هي:

Main parts of an essay

1. Introduction paragraph فقرة المقدمة
2. Body paragraphs فقرات الموضوع (المتن)
3. Conclusion paragraph الفقرة الختامية

❶ Introduction paragraph فقرة المقدمة

- هي الفقرة الأولي في المقال وتبدأ بجملة افتتاحية لجذب انتباه القارئ تسمي (hook)
- بعد جملة جذب الانتباه يتم ذكر الأطروحة أو الفكرة الرئيسية للمقال (thesis)
- المقدمة عادة لا تكون طويلة (من ٤ – ٦جمل تقريباً)
- الهدف الرئيسي من فقرة المقدمة هو جذب انتباه القارئ وتعريفه بما سيتم مناقشته في المقال لاحقاً.

❷ Body paragraphs : فقرات الموضوع (المتن)

- وهي تتكون من عدد من الفقرات الإنشائية (paragraphs)
- تناقش كل فقرة أحد الأفكار الرئيسية (main ideas) المرتبطة بموضوع المقال
- تتكون كل فقرة إنشائية على حدة من: جملة مقدمة وجمل داعمة وجملة ختامية.

❸ Conclusion paragraph الفقرة الختامية

- هي الفقرة الأخيرة في المقال
- يعيد الكاتب صياغة الفكرة الرئيسية أو الأطروحة (restated thesis) في الفقرة الختامية
- يقوم الكاتب بتلخيص النقاط الرئيسية التي قام بعرضها في المقال (أي أنه يقدم خلاصة المقال).
- تبدأ الفقرة الختامية بتعبيرات مثل:

- In conclusion, …
- To conclude, …
- To sum up, …
- In summary, …
- To put the whole matter in a nutshell, …

Model Essay

How to keep healthy ← Title

Hook → It is said that health is a crown on the heads of healthy people only seen by patients. To keep healthy, you need to take care of three main

Thesis → things: your diet, your exercise and your sleep. The balance between these three behaviours is very necessary. Let's take a look at each of them in a bit more detail.

Introduction Paragraph

Topic sentences of body paragraphs

Good food is extremely important to your health. Make sure you eat the right amounts of food. Your diet must include suitable amounts of protein, carbohydrates, fat and vitamins. Try not to eat too much carbohydrates in order not to gain weight. Fresh fruit and vegetables are very useful. It is advisable to vary the foods you eat but do not eat too much.

Exercise is a key ingredient of a healthy person's lifestyle. It refreshes your blood circle. Doing exercise helps you grow strong muscles and keep fit. It also helps you burn the calories that your body does not need. The more you exercise, the fitter and healthier you are.

What about your sleep? Scientists have proved that humans need to get enough sleep to keep good physical and mental health. The number of hours one needs varies according the stage of life they are at.
A child needs more sleep than a teenager. Old people need the fewest hours of sleep. An ordinary young person needs about eight-hour sleep a day. Sleep refreshes your physical and mental abilities.

Body Paragraphs

Restated Thesis

In conclusion, good health is necessary for happy life. In order to keep good health, you need to have good food, get regular exercise, and get enough sleep. If you haven't started to take care of all three elements, it is due time to start.

Conclusion Paragraph

Types of essays : انواع المقال

في الجزء التالي سنقدم عرضاً مبسطاً لبعض أنواع المقال كنواتج تعلُّم مُستهدفة للدراسة والامتحان وهي:

1. Persuasive (Argumentative) Essay — المقال الإقناعي
2. Opinion/reflective essay — مقال الرأي

1 Persuasive (Argumentative) Essay المقال الإقناعي (الجدلي)

Remember

- المقال الإقناعي هو نوع من المقالات التي يتبنى فيها الكاتب قضية ما ولا يكون محايداً.
- عادة ما يستخدم كاتب المقال الإقناعي الصور البلاغية للتأثير على رأي القارئ.
- يجب تقديم المعلومات المستخدمة في المقال الإقناعي بشكل تدريجي جذاب.
- يجب أن يطرح المقال المعلومات التي تدعم الموضوع، وتنقل رسالة المؤلف، والتي يمكن أن تؤثر في الجمهور المستهدف.

Model persuasive essay

Mobile phones and education

Mobile phones are in the hands of everybody these days. They are no longer used only for calling or texting. They have become an indispensable multi-tool wonder. With this in mind, should students be allowed to use mobile phones in school?

I believe they should not just be permitted to use mobile phones; they should be required to use them. Mobile phones allow students to stay connected with family. Moreover, they are also a wonderful learning resource, and they encourage the responsible use of technology.

First, mobile phones make it possible for students to stay in touch with family and friends. A student can call home if he or she needs anything. Also, mobile phones allow parents to keep an eye on their children before, during, and after school.

Second, mobile phones -especially smartphones- are an amazing learning resource. Students can use applications such as the calculator, the map finder, and the calendar.

Finally, mobile phones encourage the responsible use of technology. Students can learn when and how to use their mobile phones to enhance their learning. They will become more independent in their work and more motivated to learn.

To conclude, we must accept that we live in the age of technology and that mobile phones are an important and very useful part of that age. We miss out if we fail to take advantage of the educational power of the mobile phone. All in all, mobile phones improve communication, provide learning resources, and encourage appropriate use of technology.

2 Opinion (Reflective) Essay مقال الرأى / المقال التاملى

Remember

- يندرج مقال الراي من حيث النوع تحت المقال الإقناعي (Persuasive Essay).
- مقال الرأي هو عمل يعبر فيه الكاتب عن رأيه ويدعم هذا الرأي بالحقائق والأمثلة.
- مقال الرأي لا يحتاج بالضرورة إلى الاعتماد على الحقائق الثابتة؛ بل يمكن الاعتماد على رأي الكاتب بشرط أن يتمكن الكاتب من دعم هذا الرأي بالحجج المعقولة.
- يُخْبِر كتّاب مقال الرأي من استخدام عبارات مثل:

- I think
- I believe ...
- I see ...
- In my opinion, ...
- From my own point of view, ...

Model opinion essay

Space exploration

Do you think that space exploration should be continued? Some people think that we should continue exploring the space, but others think that we should stop doing that. These people have their own reasons for or against.

In my opinion, I think that we should continue exploring space because it gives people many benefits. It will solve humans' population and scarce resources problems. It will also improve our technology. If mankind stops exploring space, our world will only be limited to Earth, and it will be so tiny compared to the universe.

Some people think that space exploration is a waste of resources. They think that even if there is a planet suited for mankind to live, it will be so far away, and it may take hundreds or thousands of years to reach it at the speed of light. Right now, mankind does not have a spaceship going the speed of light.

However, I believe that it will be possible in the near future. Could ancient people imagine that humanity will invent airplanes that fly in the sky? No one really knows what will happen in the future, and everything will be possible.

Space exploration can be very profitable, and it will relieve the Earth's burden. As scientists found out, the universe is full of resources. If we continue exploring space, people will find more resources. Thus, humans can save the natural resources on the Earth for emergency, and exploit vast resources on other planets.

4 Email : رسالة البريد الإلكتروني :

1 Writing informal emails كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الودية (غير الرسمية)

Remember

- رسالة البريد الإلكتروني (email) هي الصيغة العصرية للخطاب التقليدي (letter).
- يُستخدم البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي (informal email) في المراسلات بين الأقارب والأصدقاء.
- يتم كتابة عنوان المُرسَل إليه (recipient) في سطر المُرسَل إليه (To-line)
- يتم كتابة عنوان الراسل في سطر المُرسِل (From-line)
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في سطر الموضوع (Subject line) أو (About-line).
- في بداية موضوع الرسالة، يتم كتابة اسم المُرسَل إليه بعد كلمة (Dear/ Hello/Hi) في البريد غير الرسمي (informal email) مثل:

Dear Sama,
Hello Fatma,
Hi Youssef,

يبدأ الخطاب غير الرسمي بأحد تعبيرات التحية مثل:

How are you? **I hope you are OK!**
I am very happy to send you this email!

- يتم تقسيم الرسالة إلى فقرات إنشائية (paragraphs) مستقلة مثل المقال تماماً.
- يمكن استخدام الاختصارات مثل:

(It's , she'd, we've)

- يمكن إستخدام ضمائر المتكلم (I / We)
- قبل توقيع المُرسِل في نهاية الرسالة تُستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحية الختامية مثل:

Yours **Talk soon** **All the best** **Best regards**

Model informal email

To : ashraffathi@elmoasser.com ← **To line**
From : mohammed@gmail.com ← **From line**
Subject : An invitation to spend a week in Aswan ← **Subject line**

Dear Ashraf,

How are you? I hope you are well. I send you this email to invite you to spend a week with me here in Aswan in the next mid-year holiday.

If you accept my invitation, I am sure you will spend a great time here with us. As you know, it is usually sunny and warm in Aswan in winter. You will change the cold weather of Cairo for the warmth of the south of Egypt.

You can stay with me at my house in New Aswan. You can accompany all your family members with you. I am sure they will like it here.

You will visit the great High Dam. We will spend a day sailing on the Nile and walking around Aswan's Botanical Island. Fancy walking in an island in the middle of the Nile among hundreds of types of rare trees and plants.

Aswan is the land of history. There are several archaeological sites we can visit, especially the temples of Philae, the Nubian Museum and the Nile Museum.

You will also enjoy the special meals, especially the fresh Nile fish. Aswan is also famous for its rare spices and medical herbs.

Everything here is quiet, healthy and special. You will forget all about your worries and the stress of the never-ending pressure of work. I really hope you will accept my invitation. I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,
Mohammed

Body of the email

Closing Salutation

2 Writing formal emails كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية

PART 3

Remember

- يُستخدم البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي (formal email) في مجالات العمل والتعليم والمراسلات بين الجهات الرسمية.
- يتم كتابة عنوان المُرسَل إليه في سطر المُرسَل إليه (To-line)
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في سطر الموضوع (Subject line) أو (About-line).
- يتم كتابة اسم المُرسَل إليه مسبوقاً باللقب الخاص به مثل (Mr, Mrs, Ms ...) بعد كلمة (Dear) في البريد الرسمي:

Dear Mr Mohammed,

عند عدم معرفة اسم المُرسَل إليه في الخطاب الرسمي، يتم مخاطبته بإحدى الطرق التالية:

Dear Sir,
Dear Madam,
Dear Sir or Madam,

- الأصل في رسائل البريد الالكتروني أن تكون قصيرة، لكن عند الحاجة إلى الإطالة يتم تقسيم الرسالة إلى فقرات إنشائية مستقلة مثل المقال تماماً.
- غالباً لا يحتوي موضوع رسائل البريد الالكتروني الرسمية على تعبيرات تحية.
- في البريد الرسمي لا تُستخدم الاختصارات والتعبيرات الدارجة.
- في الرسائل الإلكترونية الرسمية، يتم إنهاء موضوع الرسالة بطلب القيام بشيء حسب موضوع الرسالة، وهو ما يُعرَف بـ (Call-to-action).
- قبل توقيع المُرسِل في نهاية الرسالة تُستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحية الختامية مثل:

Yours sincerely
Yours faithfully
Best wishes

- يكون توقيع المُرسِل في رسائل البريد الإلكتروني كما يلي:

[Your name]
[Title]
[Company name]
[Contact information]

Model formal email

To : mohammedbendueshy@elmoasser.com ← **To line**

Subject: An urgent technical meeting ← **Subject line**

Dear Mr Mohammed,

We are having a technical meeting for the staff of the department of English. As a prominent member of the team, you are invited to take part in the meeting. We are discussing the plans for the next academic year.

The meeting is to be held in the main hall on the seventh floor, at 17:00 next Thursday, 19th April.

Check your email for the flight tickets. A car will be waiting for you at the airport at the appointed time. I look forward to seeing you at the meeting. Email back if you have any comments.

Body of the email

→ Yours sincerely,
Ayman Soliman,
Head of the Team,
Al-Talaba Bookstore.
157 Ramses St., Cairo.
Telephone number: 01234567890
aymanmoasser@gmail.com

Closing Salutation

Contact Information

2023

15 Assessment Models on the whole curriculum according to the New System

خمسة عشر نموذج للتقييم على المنهج باكمله طبقا للمنظومة الجديدة

Model 1

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If I had your mobile phone number, I from time to time.
 a. would have called b. will call c. may call d. would call
2. Next week, my grandfather 69 years old.
 a. will be b. can be c. is going to be c. would be
3. I have never bought more expensive mobile than this mobile before. This means that
 a. this mobile is the most expensive mobile I have ever bought.
 b. this mobile is the least expensive mobile I have ever bought.
 c. no other mobile is cheaper than this mobile
 d. all mobiles are more expensive than this mobile
4. This man is a very dangerous criminal who escaped from prison last week. We tell the police about him.
 a. had to b. needn't c. didn't have to d. must
5. He was supposed the game yesterday.
 a. winning b. to win c. to winning d. win
6. The doctor the injured boy not to walk on his leg for a week.
 a. encouraged b. suggested c. warned d. recommended
7. Our Chemistry lesson at two o'clock this afternoon.
 a. will start b. starts c. is starting d. is going to start
8. his help, I could have come first.
 a. In case of b. In case c. Without d. Unless
9. English is difficult subject this year. All the other subjects are more difficult.
 a. the most b. the more c. the least d. the less
10. Three houses collapsed in the same street, so people in other houses must to a safe place.
 a. take away b. be taken c. to be taken d. taking away
11. As a secondary school student, you should rely yourself in your studying.
 a. in b. with c. about d. on
12. To means to do an action.
 a. perform b. reform c. reuse d. compare

13. He fell off that high building. Fortunately, he

a. died b. survived c. searched d. donated

14. Don't the chance and try to make the best use of it.

a. lose b. forget c. spend d. miss

15. This technology is bang up-to-date. The synonym of the word "up-to-date" is

a. old-fashioned b. ancient c. modern d. creative

16. We live at the age of technological

a. innovation b. organization c. reclamation d. immigration

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many people have been recently discussing the use of seat belts while driving their cars. Although seat belts have been shown to save lives, people give a number of reasons for not using them. First, many people think that they are a nuisance; they say that the belt is uncomfortable and **inhibits** freedom of movement. Second, many people are lazy. For them, it is too much trouble to put on and adjust a seat belt, especially if they are only going a short distance. Third, many people believe they will not have an accident because they are clever and careful drivers. They think that they are able to avoid accidents. Finally, some people are worried they think the seat belts may trap them in their cars and prevent them from running away. If they have an accident, they may not be able to get out of a car that is burning, or they may be unconscious. In spite of all these reasons, statistics prove that wearing seat belts saves lives and prevents serious injuries.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Many accidents happen because

a. drivers are worried b. of using seat belt

c. of high speed d. drivers are lazy

18. According to the passage, statistics prove that wearing seat belts the bad results of accidents.

a. double b. reduce c. occur d. increase

19. The underlined word '**inhibits**' in the passage can be replaced by

a. allows b. permits c. embarrasses d. prevents

20. Which of the following words from the passage is an antonym of "aware"?

a. Worried b. Careful c. Unconscious d. Uncomfortable

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Give a suitable title to the passage. Why do you think it is suitable?

.....

.....

22. Do you think 'nuisance' has a positive or a negative meaning? How are seat belts considered a nuisance to some drivers?

.....

.....

23. Why do you think some people think they will not have accidents? Do you agree with them or not?

.....

.....

24. Do you think a seat belt is really a trap? Why / Why not?

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Each student has a talent of some kind. The problem is that it is not logical to teach all students in the same way. Can you ask a fish to climb a tree?

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

إن المعلم الناجح هو من يتعامل مع كل طالب بشكل مختلف حسب قدراته واهتماماته، فلا جدوى من إهدار الوقت والجهد فى إجبار الطالب أن يتعلم شيئًا لا يتوافق مع مَلَكَاته الطبيعية.

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

The Olympic Games

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 2

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They would have called me if the results
 a. had shown
 b. were shown
 c. had been shown
 d. are shown
2. I'll have a shower as soon as I home.
 a. am going
 b. are going to go
 c. go
 d. will go

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

3. Mr. Mahmoud is teacher I've ever seen. He gives a hand to everyone.
a. the more helpful b. more helpful c. the most helpful d. the least helpful

4. People in public transport wear face masks or they will be fined.
a. have to b. should c. must d. could

5. It was meant a painting of Cairo Tower, but I damaged it.
a. to be b. to being c. being d. to been

6. They lost the match easily. They should harder.
a. train b. be training c. have training d. have trained

7. Mrs Nagwa to Hurghada with her family next weekend. This is her plan.
a. will fly b. is flying c. flies d. is going to fly

8. She would have taken part in the race she had been ill.
a. if b. unless c. in case d. as long as

9. Tamer and Sherif are twins. Tamer is Sherif.
a. as old as b. older than c. oldest than d. the older

10. Doing sports regularly is very necessary to avoid illness. You do it.
a. must b. should c. have to d. need

11. Can you divide this melon two equal parts ?
a. onto b. into c. out to d. away from

12. The scientific study of the nature and the development of society and social behaviour means
a. physiology b. psychology c. sociology d. biology

13. This site usually has fake news. The synonym of "fake" in this sentence is
a. correct b. false c. real d. true

14. The teacher asked me to an answer to his question, but I couldn't do.
a. save b. win c. take d. give

15. When he had an accident, he was badly and very weak.
a. bleeding b. forgiving c. acting d. performing

16. I think he is in the crime.
a. contained b. excluded c. consisted d. involved

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

We do it every day, making decisions about people just from looking at their faces. The tendency to link facial features to personality has even crept into the English language, with words like **'highbrow'**.

For Naomi Tickle, these are the basis of 'personology' (the study of persons). This science was developed by a judge in the USA who discovered a pattern in the physical characteristics of the witnesses and defendants paraded before him. Since then, studies of thousands of individuals have validated his observations.

Ms Tickle, who had a practice in London, claims that 'personology' can act as an **invaluable** tool for planning careers. It is known that most of us spend 40 years of our life at work, so it is not surprising that 75 percent of our clients come to us for career guidance.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The word "invaluable" in the third paragraph can be replaced by
 a. not valuable b. very valuable c. fake d. valueless
18. What is 'highbrow' an example of ?
 a. Facial features b. Funny personality
 c. Make-up d. Serious illnesses
19. People visit Ms Tickle to ask for career
 a. promotion b. training c. tips d. audience
20. What is this passage mainly about?
 a. Physical characteristics b. Planning careers
 c. Career guidance d. Facial features and personality

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think that facial features are linked to personality? Why?

22. How do you think personology can help you plan your career? Mention **TWO** points at least.

23. Do you think '**highbrow**' gives a positive or a negative meaning? What do you think a 'highbrow person' mean?

24. Have you ever judged a person you don't know by their facial expression? Were you right in your judgment?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Time management allows you to do more tasks in a shorter time. This results in lowering your stress and leads to more career success.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

المشاركة فى الألعاب الرياضية مهمة للأطفال لأنها تقلل من التوتر وتحسن من مزاجهم. فهى تبنى عظام وعضلات صحية، وتزيد من اللياقة، وتحسن النوم وتطور مهارات تعاونهم.

.....

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words to your friend Salma on :

How to attract more tourists to visit Egypt

Your email address is hala@elmoasser.com and your friend's email address is salma@elmoasser.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 3

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

1. I can give you a lift if you with me to the mall.
 a. will come b. come
 c. came d. would come
2. My cousin's plane at 7:00 am.
 a. takes off b. is going to take off c. will take off d. is taking off
3. My brother ran 1000 metres in five minutes. I ran it in 4 minutes fifty-five seconds. This means I'm
 a. much slower than him b. much faster than him
 c. slightly faster than him d. slightly slower than him
4. To build a new building, you take a licence.
 a. must b. have to c. should d. ought to
5. She was meant first in the final exam. She studied hard.
 a. coming b. to be come c. to come d. to coming
6. My English teacher always encourages me better in my exams.
 a. not to do b. to do c. to doing d. not to doing

7. Do you intend to take part in the competition ? This means
 a. Are you taking part in the competition ?
 b. Are you going to take part in the competition ?
 c. Do you take part in the competition ?
 d. Will you take part in the competition ?
8. Were he , he would come on time.
 a. hurrying b. hurry c. to hurry d. hurried
9. The Amazon River is river in South America.
 a. the larger b. the largest c. larger than d. largest than
10. Wearing face masks in public transport is a / an nowadays.
 a. joke b. offer c. idea d. must
11. "Get your tablets and do the exercise on page 35, please." The teacher said to the students.
 a. from b. with c. off d. out
12. means the fact of having a place to live or stay, considered as a basic human need.
 a. Hatred b. Confidence c. Cooperation d. Shelter
13. Do you think he is an experienced mechanic ? The synonym of the word "experienced" is
 a. skilful b. amateur c. genius d. fable
14. They tried hard to first aid, but he was badly injured.
 a. make b. have c. do d. treat
15. He refused to reveal the of his information about the accident.
 a. source b. production c. author d. method
16. I like eating beans for breakfast. It is
 a. suspicious b. previous c. delicious d. ambiguous

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

As the plane circled over the airport, everyone **sensed** that something was wrong. The plane was moving unsteadily through the air. At that moment, the airhostess appeared. Speaking quickly, but almost in a whisper, she informed everyone that the pilot had fainted and asked if any of the passengers knew anything about machines, or at least how to drive a car. After a moment's hesitation, a man got up and followed the hostess into the pilot's cabin.

Moving the pilot aside, the man took his seat and listened carefully to the urgent instructions that were being sent by radio from the airport below. The man had to circle the airport several times in order to become familiar with the controls. The terrible moment came when he had to land. Following instructions, the man guided the plane

towards the airfield. It shook violently as it touched the ground, but after a long run, it stopped safely. Outside, a crowd of people who had been watching anxiously, rushed forward to congratulate "the pilot" on the perfect landing.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The main problem with the plane was
 a. the busy airport
 b. the unconscious pilot
 c. the difficult landing
 d. running out of fuel
18. The man who replaced the pilot
 a. was an ex-pilot
 b. flew a plane in the army
 c. needed to get used to the controls
 d. followed the hostess's instructions
19. But for, the man wouldn't have been able to land the plane safely.
 a. the hostess
 b. the pilot
 c. the fainting
 d. the airport controller
20. The word "**sensed**" can be replaced by
 a. felt b. fell c. filled d. failed

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Did that plane have its full crew? How do you know?

22. What distinguishes يميز a man who drives a car in this situation? Mention TWO points.

23. If you were the man who replaced the pilot, would you agree to fly the plane? Why/ Why not?

24. If you were a passenger on that plane, How would you feel? How would you help ?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

We should carry out high-quality educational programmes to upgrade primary stage students. These programmes should cope with the latest strategies that result in a truly creative child.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

إن المواطن العالمى هو شخص يدرك العالم من حوله ويعرف مكانته فيه، ويقوم هذا المواطن بدور مؤثر فى مجتمعه، ويعمل مع الآخرين لجعل كوكبنا أكثر مساواة واستدامة.

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words to your friend Reda on.

Tolerance

Your email address is nour@elmoasser.com and your friend's email address is reda@elmoasser.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 4

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If I were you, I'd the tablet with me everywhere.
 a. take b. took c. had taken d. have taken
2. My father me a new laptop. He promised me to do that.
 a. buys b. is buying c. will buy d. is going to buy
3. My mother works in a bank near our house. It takes her time to be there.
 a. many b. few c. much d. little
4. If you ate while driving, you'd be fined. You do it.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. needn't d. shouldn't
5. I yesterday.
 a. am supposed to travel b. was supposed to travelling c. am supposed to travelling d. was supposed to travel
6. Why didn't you take part in the race ? You it.
 a. can win b. couldn't won c. could have won d. can't win
7. From ten to twelve tomorrow morning, I an English exam.
 a. will have b. will be having c. am having d. have

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

8. Take this medicine you feel ill.

a. without b. unless c. in case of d. in case

9. Students aren't to use their books during exams. It is an open-book exam.

a. encouraged b. recommended c. prohibited d. allowed

10. My aunt arrived Luxor Airport coming from Mecca.

a. in b. for c. at d. on

11. A time when something special happens means a / an

a. meal b. revision c. occasion d. organisation

12. When something is extremely bad or serious. It is

a. comfortable b. comparable c. severe d. foreigner

13. She's always been mean with her money. The antonym of "mean" here is

a. generous b. active c. negative d. aggressive

14. People don't use means of communication. They are old-fashioned.

a. modern b. global c. artificial d. traditional

15. The car agent gave me an offer to my old car with a new one.

a. place b. produce c. replace d. introduce

16. My elder sister is very kind. She always tries hard to me happy.

a. do b. make c. support d. boost

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A lot of people like to keep a pet. However, those pets sometimes put their owners in embarrassing situations. That's what exactly happened to us.

Our dog, Rex, is a nice little one, which we have had for almost five years. He has soft and white hair, which is so smooth that every one of the family enjoys moving his hand on him. Rex is now convinced that he is actually a member of the family, and so has **equal** rights. It is his rights that Rex insists on but duties he has none. One day we were expecting some guests for dinner. Mother woke up early to prepare food before the guests arrived. Rex followed her and started barking asking for some food. Mother dismissed him from the kitchen, closed the door and carried on her cooking in peace. The guests arrived; took their seats around the table and started eating. All of a sudden Rex jumped in front of one of the lady guests. She was so frightened that she screamed loudly. In spite of Rex's strong resistance, my sister took him away. He kept shouting when he was locked up in a room. Finally, my mother gave him something to eat. One of the good things about Rex is that he forgets our little cruelties to him. Anyhow, he looked up at my mother gratefully, and ate with great appetite.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Rex jumped in front of the lady to
 a. welcome her
 b. show her that he had equal rights
 c. make her scream
 d. take food from her plate
18. One of the good things about Rex is that he
 a. remembers cruelties
 b. doesn't remember unkindness
 c. was ugly
 d. helps everyone
19. Rex has duties.
 a. lots of
 b. many
 c. no
 d. not
20. The underlined word '**equal**' in the passage can be replaced by
 a. the same
 b. same
 c. alike
 d. different

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Would you like to keep a pet? Why / Why not?

.....

.....

22. What do people like most about Rex? How do they express their feeling?

.....

.....

23. Do you think Rex is stupid in that situation? Why / Why not?

.....

.....

24. Did Rex tolerate the mother's punishment? How do you know?

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Global warming is the long-term rise in temperature of the Earth's climate. It is a major aspect of current climate change demonstrated by direct temperature measurements.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

إن الطبيعة البشرية هى الخصائص النفسية العامة، والمشاعر، والصفات السلوكية للبشرية. هناك دائمًا صراع بين الخير والشر تعكسه هذه الطبيعة البشرية المتغيرة.

.....

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Spending time at a café may destroy your personality.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 5

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويبه

1. If you feel thirsty, ... very cold water.
 a. not drink b. not to drink
 c. don't drink d. didn't drink
2. My sister has an interview tomorrow. She hopes that she well.
 a. will do b. is doing well c. is going to do d. does
3. Being bitten by a snake was experience I had during camping for years.
 a. the best b. the worst c. worse than d. better than
4. After coming home, you wash your hands to avoid coronavirus infection.
 a. have to b. ought c. must d. need
5. She the bedrooms on Fridays.
 a. is supposed to tidy b. was supposed to tidying
 c. is supposed to be tidied d. was supposing to tidy
6. The football coach warned the players shout with each other again.
 a. don't b. to not c. not to d. to
7. When I finish my homework, I a football match.
 a. am playing b. am going to play c. am playing d. will play
8. she a good car, she would travel by it to Assuit.
 a. Had b. Had had c. Having d. To have
9. Samah needn't the garbage. Her younger brother did two hours ago.
 a. collect b. to collect c. be collecting d. have collected
10. London is colder than Cairo in winter. This means that
 a. Cairo isn't as hot as London in summer. b. Cairo is hotter than London in winter.
 c. London isn't so cold as Cairo in winter. d. London is hotter than Cairo in summer.

11. When she saw the fire, she called help.
a. at b. with c. in d. for

12. Don't be nervous and calm.
a. stay b. forget c. bring d. forgive

13. Mr. Nabil is known to be meant with his children. The synonym of "mean" is
a. stingy b. kind c. tolerant d. confident

14. To means to do something funny to show that an event is special.
a. celebrate b. prevent c. protect d. estimate

15. This restaurant serves meals. I like eating there with my friends.
a. spicy b. tricky c. rotten d. dirty

16. Don't be You have to apologise for your colleague.
a. smart b. rude c. selfish d. fashionable

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Animals enjoy sports, just like people. Nobody would try to stop animals running in a field, for example, Horse racing is just the same really. Some horses like to run fast. Nobody can seriously argue that horse racing is cruel to animals.

I don't think that you can say that the circus **treat** animals cruelly. The animals get used to it, anyway. It's good entertainment for us, and the animals work hard for their living. At least nobody kills them or eats them !

More and more people think that hunting is wrong. Man doesn't have to kill wild animals any more, and we should all get used to the fact that killing for fun is pointless.

The most important point is that zoos are cruel to animals, and are worse than prisons because animals can never get used to being locked up in cages. And everybody goes and stares at them. We treat people in prison better than that.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. people see that hunting is wrong.
a. A few b. Only a few
c. The minority of d. The majority of

18. When animals are locked in cages, they are deprived of
a. starvation b. freedom c. prison d. leisure

19. The synonym of the word "**treat**" in the passage is
a. cure people and animal b. pay for something
c. behave towards or deal with d. punish someone

20. According to the passage, animals and people have something in common. It is that
a. they get pleasure from sports b. they loathe sports
c. they are cruel d. they stare at each other

B. Answer the following questions:

21. From your point of view, what is the best title for this passage ?
Why do you think that?

.....

.....

22. Are you for or against keeping animals in zoos? Justify your answer.

.....

.....

23. What do you think of using animals in circus? Why?

.....

.....

24. Do you think hunting animals for fun is wrong? Give a reason.

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

We should be optimistic and always think about the good sides in our life. Pessimism is a deadly enemy that defeats our hopes and aspirations . We should always look cheerfully at the future.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

يحلم الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم بعالم من الحب والصداقة، عالم حيث يستمتعون بالحرية والمساواة، وحيث يحب الفقراء الأغنياء، لأنهم يساعدونهم، عالم حيث يوجد احترام متبادل بين الكبار والشباب.

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

How to help your community

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 6

A. Vocabulary and Structures



يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We would have stayed home if it yesterday night.
 a. rained b. has rained c. had rained d. rains
2. Next weekend, we in Ain-Sokhna. It's arranged.
 a. will go diving b. are going diving c. go diving c. are going to go diving
3. In your opinion, of maths and English which is the subject this year ?
 a. more difficult b. little difficult c. most difficult d. least difficult
4. In a "No Camera" area, people are to take photos.
 a. prohibited b. allowed c. asked d. permitted
5. Reham hasn't lost the game, but she seems joking.
 a. to being b. being c. to be d. be
6. I'm very late. me to the club, please ?
 a. Do you drive b. Are you driving c. Will you drive d. Are you going to drive
7. Were they to train well, ... the competition ?
 a. will they win b. would they win c. can they win d. would they have won
8. you practice English, the weaker you are.
 a. The most b. The more c. The less d. The least
9. In very cold countries, people wear heavy clothes in the street.
 a. don't have to b. must c. needn't d. should
10. Her birthday is the fifth of December. I will buy her a present.
 a. at b. in c. by d. on
11. A / An means something that you tell other people to make them laugh.
 a. tale b. aim c. ambition d. joke
12. Living costs are rising all the time. The synonym of "rising" in this sentence is
 a. decreasing b. reducing c. increasing d. producing
13. Try this exercise. It strengthens your
 a. injuries b. muscles c. members d. armies
14. My uncle is very He can make you do what he wants easily.
 a. aggressive b. effective c. cooperative d. persuasive

15. Breakfast in this restaurant is between 7 and 9 a.m.
a. survived b. served c. separated d. celebrated

16. Don't be Everything will be OK.
a. upset b. cool c. exhausted d. magnificent

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Nearly everything we do in the modern world is controlled by computers. Computers are far more efficient than human beings and they have very good memories and can store huge amounts of information. In addition to that, computers can do calculations in a fraction of time and can do many of the things we do, but faster and more accurately. That is why computers are widely used nowadays.

Computers are used in many fields such as the field of health, arts and science. In the field of health, we use computers a lot in medicine nowadays. With the help of computers, doctors can keep patients' records on a computer and any information about the patient can be **obtained** quickly and easily, besides working out what is wrong with a patient or the best treatment to give him or her.

In the field of science, computers are generally associated with the world of science, maths, history and literature. You tell the computer which subject you are interested in and it supplies you with information in seconds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Computers can store amounts of information.
a. few b. massive c. little d. a few

18. everything we do in the world is controlled by computers.
a. Never b. Early c. Rarely d. Almost

19. The word '**obtained**' in the passage can be replaced by
a. lost b. existed c. gained d. applied

20. The passage is mainly about
a. the uses of computers
b. the drawbacks of computers
c. computers endanger the world
d. computer in medicine

B. Answer the following questions:

21. "Computers are far more efficient than human beings". Do you agree or not? Why?

.....

.....

22. Which field do you think computers can help most? Why?

.....

.....

23. Give a suitable title to the passages and say why you think it is suitable.

.....

.....

24. Do you think computers will control the world one day? Why / Why not?

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Literature offers readers the profound pleasure of enriching their lives culturally and morally. Literature tells us about history, epics, heavenly books and wonderful classical works.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English :

إن المرأة الحديدية هى واحدة من أهم روايات الخيال العلمى للكاتب البريطانى تيد هيوز، وتُعتبر هذه الرواية الهادفة تكملة لرواية الرجل الحديدى حيث تتناول واحدة من القضايا العامة.

.....

.....

D. Writing

4 Write an email of about 180 words on :

Write an email to your friend telling him about the bad habits people do in the streets and how to get rid of them. Your email address is magdi@gmail.com and your friend's email address is helmi@gmail.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 7

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you have a problem with your tablet, ... the technician at once.
 a. will phone b. phone c. phoned d. would phone
2. I get up late, so I missed the first lesson. It at 8 a.m.
 a. will start b. is going to start c. is starting c. starts
3. He is careful driver in the factory. He has many accidents recently.
 a. the least b. the less c. the most d. the more
4. When it is very hot and sunny, people walk in the street with umbrellas.
 a. needn't b. aren't allowed c. must d. have to

للبوره
يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

5. He the first prize.
a. was meaning to win b. was meant to win
c. was meant to winning d. was meaning winning

6. My uncle has decided to build a new floor next month. He it.
a. is going to build b. is building c. will build d. builds

7. If it weren't for his assistance, the meeting
a. would been cancelled b. will have cancelled
c. would be cancelled d. would cancel

8. The weather forecast says that it is warmer today yesterday.
a. than it was b. as it was c. than was it d. as was it

9. Old cans and bottles must
a. be recycling b. recycle c. recycling d. be recycled

10. Can you give me a reply this question ?
a. for b. at c. to d. by

11. Tarek was very happy when he his final exam.
a. controlled b. succeeded c. followed d. passed

12. To means to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet, or computer.
a. download b. upload c. update d. upgrade

13. In summer, the sun rises at 5 : 30 every morning. The antonym of "rises" is
a. sets b. moves c. sends d. sits

14. The soldier used his to defend himself against the enemies.
a. sword b. torch c. fork d. spoon

15. They were very happy to their son's success. They had a big party.
a. negotiate b. appreciate c. celebrate d. stimulate

16. I received an encouraging to my new advertisement. I was hopeful.
a. linguist b. suffix c. response d. object

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A student passed all his school examinations and then went to a college to continue his studies. There, he enrolled in a course in geography. But after the first lecture, he didn't attend any more lectures. The geography lecturer noticed this student was always absent and that he had changed to another course, so he was very surprised to see the boy's name on the list of students who wanted to take the geography examination at the end of the year.

The lecturer had prepared a difficult examination paper, which followed his lectures very closely, and he was eager to see how this student answered the questions. When he examined the answers, he found only one small mistake. So, he sent for the student and told him that he was curious to know how he was able to find only one little mistake although the student came to the first lecture and he was absent from all the others. To his great surprise, the student told him that he would not have made that mistake if he hadn't been confused by his first lecture.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. Why was the lecturer surprised when he saw the student's name on the list of the students wanting to take the exams?
 a. As the student didn't like geography lectures.
 b. As the student attended only one lecture.
 c. As the student had changed to another course.
 d. As the student only attended geography lectures.

18. is the synonym of "enroll"
 a. Register b. Pay c. Cost d. Research

19. The student mentioned in the passage must have been
 a. foolish b. a fool c. bright d. sap

20. According to the student, he attended the first lecture he made the mistake.
 a. therefore b. despite c. because d. although

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think learning at universities is different from learning at school? How ?

.....

.....

22. What do you think of the student mentioned in the passage ? Would you like to be like him?

.....

.....

23. Are you for or against difficult exams? Justify your answer.

.....

.....

24. In your opinion, is it useful or not for university students to attend lectures? Why?

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Habits, good or bad, are acquired in childhood. Reading is certainly a good habit. It amuses, instructs, and broadens people's minds. Children learn good habits by imitation of their elders as well as by instruction and encouragement.

.....

.....

.....

26. Translate into English :

إن سر النجاح فى الحياة هو أنه يجب على المرء أن يكون مستعدًا حين تواتيه الفرصة، لذلك لا تنتظر أن يقدم لك النجاح على طبق من فضة. فعليك أن تعمل بجد وأن تتحلى بالعزيمة لتحقق ما تصبوا إليه.

.....

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

What the youth can do to change the future of their country.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 8

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He the faculty he likes if he exerts more efforts.
 a. may join b. would join
 c. could join d. would have joined

2. Today, there's a football match between Al-Ahly and Zamalek. Which team do you think the match ?
 a. is winning b. will win c. wins c. is going to win

3. Of the two tablets, my tablet is
 a. more cheapest b. less cheap c. cheapest d. the cheaper

4. The manger told the employees that they work two additional hours tomorrow.
 a. will need b. had to c. must d. will have to

5. It a nice poem, but it wasn't.
 a. was meant being b. was meant to being
 c. was meaning to be d. was meant to be

6. Mariam refused to the club with me.
 a. to coming b. not to come c. to come d. not to coming

7. Everything is arranged for my brother's birthday party. He it tomorrow evening.
 a. has b. is going to have c. is having d. will have

8. his report, the truth would have been hidden.
 a. In case b. Unless c. As long as d. Without

9. When it is a holiday, all the governmental offices have to
 a. be closed b. closing c. be closing d. closed

10. To take all the money, he plotted his brother.
 a. on b. against c. behind d. above

11. A / An means money for someone who finds or helps someone important.
 a. reward b. gift c. award d. indicator

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويبه

12. Before the exam result, Mona was very upset. The synonym of "upset" is
a. confused b. disappointed c. anxious d. marvelous

13. Your teaching methods are You should depend on some modern ways.
a. natural b. industrial c. normal d. traditional

14. My uncle works as a guide in a tourist company. The word "guide" here is a / an
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb

15. When someone acts in plays, he is a / an
a. novelist b. inspector c. author d. character

16. Modern technology may be very harmful if it is
a. followed b. respected c. wasted d. misused

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Most countries in the world now welcome tourists because of the money they bring in. Many countries make great efforts to encourage tourism, and many also depend on what they earn from it to keep their economies going.

People who travel as tourists can choose the form of tourism best suits them. Some people like adventure tourism while others prefer cultural tourism. People who have an illness of some kind prefer medical tourism. Those who care about wildlife and the environment prefer ecotourism.

People who like adventure will even try to visit countries. Companies regularly arrange trips through the Sahara Desert or to Himalayan Mountains for whoever enjoys such trips, but the numbers of visitors are small. Most tourists try to choose whichever places have fairly comfortable, cheap hotels, quite good food, reasonable safety, sunny weather or unusual things to see. Their choice of a place for a holiday also depends on when they can get away; it is not very pleasant to go to a place when it is having its worst weather.

One big problem for a nation wishing to attract tourists is the cost of building hotels for them. Building good hotels swallows up a lot of money, and many of the countries that need the tourists are poor. What they spend on building has to be borrowed from foreign banks. Another problem is that more and more big international companies are building hotels all over the world, so that the profits from a hotel often do not stay in the country in which it has been built.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Some people don't go to a place for a holiday although they like it because
a. it is very pleasant b. it is fairly comfortable
c. they might be treated well d. of worse weather

18. Which of the following is not a positive thing for poor countries?
a. Comfortable Hotels. b. Hospitable people.
c. High cost of having good hotels. d. Job opportunities.

19. Young people would be more likely to choose tourism.
a. adventure b. medical c. conference d. cultural

20. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?
a. Drawbacks of Tourism b. Forms of Tourism
c. Benefits of Tourism d. Little about Tourist Industry

B. Answer the following questions:

21. What type of tourism would you choose? Why?
.....
.....

22. What type / types of tourism can Egypt provide? Mention at least TWO types.
.....
.....

23. Which tourist destination do you recommend to tourists visiting Egypt? Why?
.....
.....

24. What solutions do you suggest to help poor countries attract more tourists? Make at least two suggestions.
.....
.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Personal hobbies are vital for the health and time of individuals in modern societies. Hobbies help them satisfy their desires and get rid of the pressures of heavy work.

.....
.....

26. Translate into English:

لابد من الاهتمام بالأدب الموجَّه إلى الطفل، فأدب الأطفال يلعب دورًا حيويًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال، فهو يطور كلًا من الثروة اللغوية للأطفال وحسهم النقدى كما يؤدى إلى إثراء خيال الطفل وتطلعاته.

.....
.....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Your past habits

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Model 9

A. Vocabulary and Structures



يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you had had enough money, ... ?
 a. would have you bought that car
 b. would you that car have bought
 c. would you bought have that car
 d. would you have bought that car
2. Stop ! I you.
 a. am killing b. kill c. will kill c. am going to kill
3. Smoking here. You can smoke outside this building.
 a. isn't banned b. isn't allowed c. is allowed d. is permitted
4. This is hotel I've every been to.
 a. best b. better c. the better d. the best
5. He is supposed the site all night.
 a. to guard b. to guarding c. being guard d. to be guard
6. The shopkeeper asked his customers noise at the supermarket.
 a. to make b. not to make c. making d. to making
7. Experts think that electric cars in the near future.
 a. are spreading b. spread c. are going to spread d. will spread
8. We will travel by bus we get train tickets.
 a. unless b. if c. as long as d. in case of
9. People use their mobile phones during driving.
 a. have to b. should c. mustn't d. oughtn't to
10. No sport is more popular than football. This means that
 a. all sports are more popular than football b. football is the most popular sport
 c. sports are as popular as football d. football isn't so popular as other sports
11. I used to stay touch with my friends in summer holidays.
 a. in b. on c. at d. of
12. A / An is a letter or a group of letters added at the end of a word to make another word.
 a. suffix b. award c. article d. prefix
13. It is unhealthy to eat big of ice cream during summer.
 a. amounts b. levels c. grades d. degrees
14. You should follow the proper procedures for dealing with complaints. The synonym of the word "proper" in this sentence is
 a. correct b. wrong c. ambiguous d. positive

15. Your essay is very long. Can you it, please ?
a. recognize b. realize c. specialise d. summarise

16. Rania wanted to buy her mother a new bag, but she doesn't enough money.
a. win b. spend c. pay d. have

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Sport is an important part of today's society and plays a large role in people's lives. Now, more than ever, sport events dominate headlines and athletes have become national heroes.

From a social standpoint, sport plays a positive role in uniting people from different social backgrounds in support of their favourite team. However, just as sport unites people so it can divide them, as is often demonstrated by crowd violence at football matches. Sport is also an important part of every child's schooling, as it plays a big role in their physical and mental development. It teaches children how to work as part of a team and cooperate with others, while at the same time improving their physical condition. The only drawback to this is that children who are less able to perform well in sports are likely to feel inadequate in comparison with their more gifted classmates, which may affect their self-confidence.

From an economic point of view, sport can be very profitable as it attracts a lot of advertising. On one hand, this creates profit for the sporting industry which allows for improvement and expansion, on the other hand, large sums of money are often paid to event organizers to promote products such as cigarettes, which are harmful to one's health.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. According to the passage, sport has two social effects on people, what are they?
a. As well as combining people , it can divide them.
b. It can split people but has no positive effect.
c. It can't unite people and has a negative effect.
d. It can be profitable as it attracts a lot of advertising.

18. The children who are likely to feel inadequate are usually
a. good at sport b. experts at sport c. fan of sport d. weak in sport

19. One demerit of sport at football matches is that
a. it improves the physical condition. b. it often leads to violent actions.
c. it creates profit for the sporting industry. d. it develops the mental condition.

20. The word "....." in the passage is the antonym of "loss" .
a. support b. profit c. drawback d. expansion

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Are you in favour of involving sport during the school day ? Why / Why not ?

.....

.....

22. What do you think of "Fair play" as a sporting slogan? Justify your answer.

.....

.....

23. Do you agree that sporting competitions have a moral ? If yes, what is it? If no, why?

.....

.....

24. Do you think the government should encourage people to practices sport? How?

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

A good friend is a source of strength that keeps you going through all ups and downs of life. He has to be valued like treasures . In fact, the feeling of friendship bears the meaning of intimacy and the purity of relationship.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

لقد أدركت الدولة أن التعليم هو حجر الزاوية فى تحقيق التقدم، ولذا تزود وزارة التربية والتعليم المدارس بكل المقومات الممكنة التى تجعل اليوم الدراسى مفيد وممتع. فالمدرسة ليست أماكن لتعلم العلوم المختلفة فقط، ولكن أيضًا لاكتساب السلوكيات الصحيحة.

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Friendship.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 10

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They the charity if they had enough time.

a. visit
b. would have visited
c. would visit
d. visited

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

2. **Amal :** My birthday party will be next Thursday. Will you come ?
Soheir : Yes, of course. How old ?
a. will you be b. are you being c. are you going to be d. are you

3. Young people show respect to the old people in their conversations.
a. need b. needn't c. mustn't d. must

4. My friend's school bag is mine. He only takes his tablet.
a. heavier than b. the heaviest c. lighter than d. the lightest

5. I recommend buying this flat. It the best flat that you can buy.
a. was supposed to be b. is supposed being
c. is supposed to be d. was supposed being

6. Doctors advised people their face masks in public places.
a. not to wear b. wearing c. to wearing d. to wear

7. At this time next week, I on the beach in Sharm El-Sheikh.
a. play b. will play c. am going to play d. will be playing

8. If it for his laptop, I wouldn't have been examined.
a. had been b. hadn't been c. were been d. weren't

9. Which is popular, football or basketball ?
a. most b. many c. much d. more

10. Our children to follow healthy habits from their early days.
a. must be taught b. should teach c. must teach d. have be taught

11. You should get with your neighbours.
a. in b. about c. by d. on

12. A / An means a letter or group of letters added at the beginning of a word to change its meaning.
a. apex b. index c. suffix d. prefix

13. It three hours to clean your father's car. Hurry up, please.
a. takes b. does c. spends d. makes

14. Being upset all the time is bad for your health. The antonym of the word "upset" is
a. cold b. cool c. warm d. hot

15. The police are investigating the everywhere to know the killer.
a. suspect b. respect c. aspect d. defect

16. My mother asked me to the food because she had had a bad headache.
a. do b. serve c. create d. imagine

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Does anyone know the number of living beings? Have scientists studied all the known species? Do you have an idea that some species have already disappeared or will disappear in the future?

What we know about many creatures on earth is still very little. Even the species that we know haven't all been studied well yet. Here is a marvelous kind of insect. It is the bee. Bees cannot talk, so they dance instead. They do this to let each other know where food can be found. A dancing bee begins by running in a straight line, and as she does so, she waggles her body to attract the other bees' attention. After going a certain distance along, she runs to the left and hurries back to her run again. But this time, she turns to the right at the end, and thus completing a sort of figure eight.

To human observers, the dance lacks meaning. To bees, it is full of detail, and the detail is not only meaningful but it is also vital to survival. It shows them which direction to take off and how far to go to reach the flowers on which they depend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The underlined word **"waggles"** can be replaced by

a. runs b. dances c. shakes d. washes

18. People wrongly think the bees' dance has no

a. vitality b. meaning c. detail d. colour

19. Why does a bee waggle her body?

a. To get in shape.
b. To please other bees.
c. To warm herself.
d. To tell other bees where to find food.

20. What is the best title for the passage?

a. The Language of Bees
b. Unknown Species
c. Endangered Species
d. Extinct Species

B. Answer the following questions:

21. What language do bees speak? Is it a verbal language?

.....

.....

22. Which arithmetic figure does the bee complete in her dance? How do you think she knew how to complete it?

.....

.....

23. Do you think dancing is important to bees? Why / Why not?

.....

.....

24. Are the bees that dance male or female? How do you know?

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Students with special needs are in urgent need of a special educational environment. That's why teachers should maintain an organized classroom and limit distractions to help them.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

يصح اقتصاد البلد أكثر إنتاجية بالتزامن مع زيادة نسبة العمال المتعلمين. فالتعليم هو استثمار في رأس المال البشري، على غرار الاستثمار في معدات أفضل.

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on :

Doing things late does not help you succeed.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 11

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيًا وتصويبه

1. If we water plants regularly, they
 a. will grow b. grow c. would grow d. can grow
2. We a play at the theatre tonight. We've got the tickets.
 a. will watch b. are watching c. watch c. are going to watch
3. Some students think that electronic exams are than paper exams.
 a. easier b. as easy as c. the easiest d. the easiest
4. bring my tablet to school every day or it isn't necessary ?
 a. Do I have b. Must I c. Should I d. Had I
5. It can't be a cat. You seem
 a. be lying b. being lie c. to lying d. to be lying
6. Our English teacher advised us El-Moasser English book because it is very useful.
 a. to buy b. not to buy c. to not buy d. to buying

7. I intend to take an English course during the next summer holiday. I it.
a. will take b. am taking c. am going to take d. take

8. he offer me an apple, I will take it.
a. Had b. Were c. Should d. Unless

9. Shakespeare is writer in the world.
a. most famous b. more famous c. the most famous d. the more famous

10. It is necessary to pay your bill before the 10th of May or you will pay a fine. You pay it.
a. ought to b. should c. have to d. must

11. Can you bring some events happened in your childhood ?
a. forward b. back c. on d. off

12. The car explosion damage to the surrounding buildings.
a. caused b. got c. saved d. sent

13. To means to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy.
a. laugh b. boost c. frown d. exclaim

14. Black pearls are very rare, so they are very valuable. The synonym of the word "rare" in this sentence is
a. scarce b. familiar c. popular d. frequent

15. It's very useful to learn any language from a speaker.
a. negative b. foreign c. strange d. native

16. You can trust him because he is a / an person.
a. recognizable b. reliable c. unreliable d. employable

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I'm going to tell you a meaningful story. Once upon a time, two friends were travelling through a forest on foot. One of them is called Atef. The other is called Hamdi. A bear appeared out of the blue and started to run after them. Without hesitation, Atef rushed to the nearest tree and climbed as fast as he could to its top branches. His friend, Hamdi, threw himself to the ground and pretended he was dead. He stayed very still when the bear came close to him. He didn't move when the bear's nose touched his ear. Then the bear went away.

He waited for a little time and then he called Atef who was in the tree, "It's all right now. The bear has gone. You can come down." Atef, who was frightened, came down slowly, "The bear was close to your ear." Atef said "What did it say?" Hamdi laughed and said, "It told me to look for another friend because a friend who runs away when there is danger isn't a real friend."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The bear didn't eat the friend who pretended to be dead because
 a. he was thin
 b. he was brave
 c. it doesn't eat the dead
 d. he smelt bad
18. The underlined word "**still**" in the passage can be replaced by
 a. movable
 b. moving
 c. motionless
 d. active
19. Atef can be described as a / an friend.
 a. brave
 b. cowardly
 c. loyal
 d. evil
20. Which of the following is the best title for the story?
 a. A False Friend
 b. A True Friend
 c. An Intelligent Bear
 d. A Walk in the Forest

B. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you think the bear really told Hamdi anything? How do you know?

.....

.....

22. Who is wiser, Atef or Hamdi? Why?

.....

.....

23. Which do you think is safer in this situation, climbing a tree or pretending to be dead ?

.....

.....

24. What moral lessons do you learn from this story? Mention at least TWO lessons.

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

School leadership teams have a vital role in shaping the right culture of students. This enables us to create good citizens who can share effectively in society.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

تُعد صعوبات التعلم من أهم الأمور التى تهم العديد من التربويين فى الوقت الحاضر. يمكن أن تعيق بعض هذه المشكلات مهارات التعلم الأساسية مثل القراءة والكتابة.

.....

.....

2* Write an email of about 180 words on : **B. Writing**

Write an email to your friend telling him about the best ways she can follow to develop her skills. Your email address is sohaa@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is lamya@gmail.com

Model 12

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My aunt would be a millionaire if she that factory.
 a. bought b. buys c. has bought d. had bought
2. I don't think it tomorrow.
 a. rains b. is going to rain c. is raining c. will rain
3. The higher you go, ... oxygen there's in the air.
 a. the more b. the most c. the less d. the fewer
4. My father's car broke down last Friday. He a taxi to his work every day.
 a. necessary take b. has to take c. had to take d. should take
5. She was by now.
 a. meaning to recover b. meant recovering c. meant to recovering d. meant recover
6. My cousin promised me a new T-shirt. He is very kind to me.
 a. not to buy b. to buying c. to buy d. not to buying
7. The pharmacy at 12 p.m. Hurry up to buy the medicine we need.
 a. closes b. will close c. is closing d. is going to close
8. I the manager, I would hold a meeting at once.
 a. Had b. Should c. Would d. Were
9. You should read "King Lear" many times. It is play I have ever read.
 a. more exciting b. few exciting c. the most exciting d. less exciting
10. My brother spent much time an essay about globalisation.
 a. to write b. writing c. write d. to writing
11. At the age of technology, you can do many difficult things the touch of a button.
 a. at b. in c. on d. for

12. Damietta is known for good furniture.
a. doing b. transporting c. importing d. making

13. This dance is one of the traditional customs in this area. The synonym of the word "traditional" is
a. informal b. classical c. abnormal d. global

14. A / An means the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.
a. idea b. tone c. topic d. aim

15. I have just made a / an to the Wikipedia article on guerillas.
a. effect b. target c. update d. button

16. Do you think he punishment for his bad behaviour ?
a. deserved b. reserved c. served d. preserved

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Last week, I went to a favourite restaurant of mine, where I often went to eat two or three times a week. I knew the owner well and frequently complimented him on his excellent cooking. While I was waiting for the soup to arrive, I noticed that a man sitting at a corner table near the door kept glancing in my direction , as if he knew me. I certainly didn't know him , for I never forget a face. He was keeping an eye on me. When the waiter brought my soup, the man was clearly puzzled by the familiar way in which the waiter and I addressed each other. Eventually he got up and went into the kitchen . After a few minutes he came out again, paid his bill and left without another glance in my direction.

When I had finished , I asked the owner of the restaurant what the man had wanted. "Well," he said , "That man was a detective" , "Really ?" I said , considerably surprised. "He was certainly interested in me, But why?" "He followed you here because he thought you were a man he was looking for", the owner of the restaurant said, "When he came into the kitchen , he showed me a photograph of the wanted man, he certainly looked like you ! Of course, since we know you here, I was able to convince him that he had a mistake".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. We understood from the passage that the detective
a. was following the wrong man
b. didn't suspect the writer
c. was following the right man
d. knew the man wanted by the police

18. "He was keeping an eye on me" . This means he was me.
a. glancing at
b. looking at
c. watching
d. looking in the direction of

19. The word "....." in the passage is the antonym of "disapproved" .
a. puzzled b. complimented c. addressed d. glanced

20. According to the passage, which of the following is not true ?

a. The detective paid the bell before leaving. b. The restaurant's food was delicious.

c. The waiter hasn't seen the writer before. d. The writer knew the restaurant owner well.

β. Answer the following questions:

21. Do you prefer to have your food at restaurants or at home? Give a reason.

.....

.....

22. The job of a detective needs special qualities, do you agree or not ? Justify your answer.

.....

.....

23. If you were the writer, how would you behave if someone looked at you strangely ? Why ?

.....

.....

24. Do you think that the writer was lucky ? Why / Why not ?

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Unemployment and illiteracy are two major causes that may lead to crimes and violence. So we have to create job opportunities for youth. It is also the responsibility of all sectors of society to eradicate illiteracy.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

الإدمان هو أحد أخطر الأمراض فى هذا العصر. المشكلة التى تواجه معظم الدول ليست فقط فى كيفية مكافحة هذه العادة الضارة بل أيضًا فى كيفية محو آثارها الخطيرة على الشباب.

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Esam telling him about the place where you are going to spend your mid-year holiday. Your name is Hamza and your email address is hamza2003@gmail.com and your friend's email is esam100@gmail.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 13

A. Vocabulary and Structures

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. if your tablet had been broken before the final exam ?
 a. What you would have done b. What would have you done
 c. What you have would done d. What would you have done
2. The more you study, the marks you gain.
 a. less b. higher c. most c. highest
3. Shahd has an important meeting tomorrow morning, so she early.
 a. should have slept b. oughtn't to sleep c. has to sleep d. mustn't have sleep
4. Ahmed is known to be clever. He the full mark easily.
 a. is getting b. gets c. is going to get d. will get
5. It was supposed the easiest exam.
 a. to being b. being c. be d. to be
6. The oculist warned me too much TV.
 a. to watch b. not to watching c. to watching d. not to watch
7. Ali come early, he'd have taken a rest before the conference.
 a. Should b. Had c. Were d. Have
8. Do you think life in the country is life in a new city ?
 a. quieter than b. the most quiet c. the quietest d. as quiet
9. Our teacher said that he walk about 3 km to school every day during his childhood.
 a. has to b. needs to c. had to d. must
10. His theft was like a stab..... the back for his father. He couldn't believe it.
 a. of b. on c. in d. at
11. When you have a health problem, you have to your doctor.
 a. consult b. advise c. suggest d. recommend
12. means old ways of doing things that don't change.
 a. Local b. Traditional c. Normal d. Vocational
13. It's rare to find such loyalty these days. The antonym of "rare" is
 a. dishonest b. unusual c. common d. traditional
14. He us for hours by his stories and jokes.
 a. annoyed b. bothered c. interrupted d. entertained
15. The villagers often livestock on their farms.
 a. buy b. eat c. keep d. sell

16. You should control your or you will face a big problem.
a. degree b. anger c. democracy d. bravery

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Nearly everything we do in the modern world is controlled by computers. Computers are far more efficient than human beings and they have very good memories and can store huge amounts of information. In addition to that, computers can do calculations in a fraction of time and can do many of the things we do, but faster and more accurately. That is why computers are **widely** used nowadays.

Computers are used in many fields such as the field of health, arts and science. In the field of health, we use computers a lot in medicine nowadays. With the help of computers, doctors can keep patients' records on a computer and any information about the patient can be obtained quickly and easily, besides working out what is wrong with a patient or the best treatment to give him or her.

In the field of science, computers are generally associated with the world of science, maths, history and literature. You tell the computer which subject you are interested in and it supplies you with information in seconds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Computers, so the modern world is controlled by them.
a. are as inefficient as people b. are huge machines
c. more efficient than people d. work in an old-fashioned way

18. Computers can store..... amounts of information.
a. few b. massive c. little d. a few

19. You can tell the computer the field of science you are interested in and it supplies you with information
a. in no time b. after a long time c. after two hours d. two hours later

20. The antonym of "**widely**" is
a. to a great extent b. slightly c. little d. narrow

B. Answer the following questions:

21. In your opinion, what is the best title for this passage ? Why is this title in particular ?

.....

.....

22. Computers save time and effort , do you agree ? Why ?

.....

.....

23. Are you for or against using the computer in every thing we do instead of humans ? Explain your point of view.

24. Do you think that modern technology has improved our life, How ?

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Bosses used to discourage humour in the workplace. They thought that if people were laughing or having fun, then they weren't working hard. But now, that opinion has changed. Studies have shown numerous benefits of combining humour and work.

26. Translate into English:

مصر لديها تاريخ ثقافى عريق، ويشهد التاريخ أن أجدادنا هم المعلمون الأوائل للبشرية. وأن مصر هى مهد الحضارة وستظل شريك مسئول وفعال فى جهود نشر التنوير والمعرفة.

D. Writing

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :

Encouraging local products, why and how ?

Model 14

A. Vocabulary and Structures

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your English if you want to get this job. You can take a course.
 a. would improve b. will be improved
 c. should be improved d. can improve

2. I don't think it tomorrow. The sky is very clear.
 a. rains b. is going to rain c. is raining c. will rain

يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

3. Samia is the same weight as Ola. This means that
a. Ola is heavier than Samia
b. Samia is heavier than Ola
c. Ola is as heavy as Samia
d. Samia isn't as heavy as Ola

4. before going camping ?
a. What you do have to buy
b. What do have you to buy
c. What do you have to buy
d. What have you buy to do

5. This novel great success, but it didn't succeed.
a. was meant to make
b. was meaning to make
c. was making to mean
d. was meant to making

6. The police officer asked the driver the limited speed or he will be fined.
a. to exceed b. to exceeding c. not to exceed d. to not exceeding

7. Nourhan will be punished for her mistake she apologizes for her teacher.
a. unless b. provided c. as long as d. in case

8. This laptop is one in the shop. I can't buy it.
a. more expensive
b. most expensive
c. the more expensive
d. the most expensive

9. You have a big competition next week. You train very hard.
a. must b. have to c. had to d. will

10. The metro train was full, so he had to wait the next one.
a. about b. of c. for d. behind

11. The criminal himself not to be recognised by the police.
a. disappointed b. disguised c. described d. discovered

12. This fish has a nice smell. I think it is going to be delicious. The antonym of the word "delicious" is
a. tasteless b. spicy c. tasty d. harmless

13. It's kind of you to his financial problem with the bank.
a. give b. solve c. stay d. evaluate

14. To give people food or drink means to
a. serve b. deserve c. reserve d. preserve

15. When he spilled his cup of coffee on the carpet, he was
a. relaxed b. confusing c. confused d. amazing

16. He for his government for more than ten years. He was active.
a. applied b. spied c. attacked d. attracted

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The neighbours closest to my house are my favourite . The man is a retired army officer and his wife is still working for the nearby university .They are hospitable and usually invite friends to lunch. It is enjoyable to wake up on a Friday morning to the

sounds of their music. However , I also love their laughing when they make a mistake in their playing. The man's main interest is carpentry, he practices his hobby in the garden, making pieces of furniture.

They are ideal because they are helpful . I respect them as they never interfere in my private affairs. We've helped each other with **numerous** emergencies as fire and car accidents. We cooperate with each other in little ways as bringing in the mails. We invite them to with some of their friends who are poets, painters and professors to have meals. Sometimes , we go out together to share special occasions. Simply we live next to door peacefully side by side and I'm happy to say in a friendly neighbourhood.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. One of the reasons why the writer likes his neighbours is that
 a. they always make mistakes in their playing
 b. they are welcoming to guests
 c. they interfere in the writer's affairs
 d. they are unemployed people

18. The writer and his neighbours are to each other especially at the time of need.
 a. neighbourly b. neighbouring c. cruel d. tricky

19. The word "**numerous**" in the passage is synonymous with the word "..... ".
 a. almost b. rare c. many d. few

20. The male neighbour of the writer
 a. works for the university nearby b. is noisy when he practices his hobby
 c. no longer has a job d. he works as an army officer

B. Answer the following questions:

21. It is important to live in a friendly neighbourhood , do you agree ? Why ?

.....

.....

22. Are you for or against helping our neighbours? If yes, say how giving one suggestion, if no say why ?

.....

.....

23. Do you have neighbours from hell? Justify your answer.

.....

.....

24. The writer's neighbour practise his hobby in his garden, do you approve that ? Why /Why not?

.....

.....

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

A man cannot live in society without considering the interests of others as well as his own interests. People in society may make their own decisions, but these decisions ought not to be unjust or harmful to others.

.....

.....

26. Translate into English:

تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية لتحقيق معدلات عالية من النمو والاستثمار في محاولة لخلق فرص عمل جديدة للشباب والقضاء على البطالة التي تعتبر التحدي الرئيسي الذي يواجه مصر في الوقت الحاضر.

.....

.....

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on the following topic :

Write an email to your friend Noha congratulating her on her success. Your name is Lamia and your email address is lamia20@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is noha@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model 15

A. Vocabulary and Structures

بيونيه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you were a celebrity, ... ?
 a. how you would behave
 b. how would you behave
 c. how behave you would
 d. how you behave would
2. Shady is the most intelligent student in the class. This means that
 a. No student is more intelligent than Shady
 b. Shady is more intelligent than a student
 c. Other students are more intelligent than Shady
 c. All students are as intelligent as Shady
3. Huda will be free till eleven o'clock. After that, she an important meeting with her employees.
 a. has
 b. will be having
 c. is going to have
 d. will have

4. If you are very hot or have a cough, you by a doctor at once.
a. have to see b. must be seen c. had to be seen d. should see

5. It was meant a nice taste, but I burnt it.
a. giving b. give c. to giving d. to give

6. My grandfather advised me my teeth before sleeping.
a. to brush b. to not brush c. not to brush d. to brushing

7. You can join the faculty you want passing your exams with high marks.
a. without b. in case c. in case of d. unless

8. Which is the internet or the mobile phone ?
a. most useful b. little useful c. more useful d. much useful

9. to fasten my seat belt while driving ?
a. Must I b. Have I c. Is it must d. Is it a must

10. She was guilty stealing the gold ring.
a. of b. in c. on d. with

11. To means to get something ready to eat or use.
a. repair b. remind c. appear d. prepare

12. It's accepted to a mistake, but it isn't accepted to repeat it many times.
a. create b. invent c. make d. speak

13. Maha cooks delicious food for her family. The synonym of "delicious" is
a. distasteful b. tasty c. unique d. familiar

14. Mr. Nabil is the of the new branch of this clothes factory.
a. detective b. director c. athlete d. surgeon

15. The oculist asked me if I could the difference between the two letters.
a. tell b. say c. speak d. talk

16. My brother's or sister's son is my
a. cousin b. niece c. daughter d. nephew

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Are supermarkets designed to persuade us to buy more? When you enter a supermarket, the manager knows better than you do how you will behave – which way you will walk, where you'll look, what will make you buy one product rather than another. The layout of a supermarket is designed to take shoppers around the store, from left to right. Then, shoppers will **pay attention to** all the products.

Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown near supermarket entrances. This gives the **impression** that only healthy food is sold in the shop. Basic foods that everyone buys, like sugar and tea, are not put next to each other. They are kept in different places so customers go past other attractive goods before they find them. In this way, shoppers are encouraged to buy products that they do not really need.

Customers also buy more when the shelves are full than they are half-empty. They do not like to buy from shelves with few products on them because they feel there is something wrong with those products.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The best title of this text is
 a. Supermarket Owners
 b. Supermarket and Children
 c. Successful Supermarkets
 d. Supermarket entrances

18. The best antonym of the expression " **pay attention to**" in this passage is
 a. distract b. ignore c. attract d. forget

19. The word '**impression**' in the passage can be substituted by
 a. impact b. admiration c. opinion d. disgust

20. Which of the following is not an attractive thing for customers?
 a. Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown away from supermarket entrances.
 b. Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown near supermarket entrances.
 c. Shelves are empty or with few products.
 d. Sugar and tea are shown near supermarket entrances.

B. Answer the following questions:

21. If you were the owner of a supermarket, would you organise it the way mentioned in the passage? Why / Why not?

22. Have you ever bought something you do not need? Why?

23. Why do you think people are attracted by the view of fresh fruit and vegetables? What else can affect them?

24. How do you think a shopper can protect himself from buying things he do not need? Make at least TWO suggestions.

C. Translation

25. Translate into Arabic :

Food preservation prevents the growth of microorganisms besides slowing the oxidation of fats. In fact, this oxidation causes a lot of serious diseases such as cancer.

26. Translate into English:

يُمكن تدوين البيانات على الأطعمة المواطنين من الحصول على معلومات مفيدة حول محتوى المنتجات الغذائية. وهذا يساعد المستهلكين على اتخاذ قرار مستنير أثناء شراء المواد الغذائية الخاصة بهم.

D. Writing

27. Write an email of about 180 words on :

Write an email to your foreign friend about the best habits your neighbours have. Your email address is suzy87@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is areej@mail.com

Model Tests

Model Test 1

Part 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When fertile land always produces good crops, it is
 a. negative b. cooperative c. productive d. selective
2. It's polite to use formal language with people we don't know. Another word for "formal" is
 a. sociable b. official c. artificial d. special
3. A good journalist must his sources before writing any news.
 a. create b. repair c. fix d. check
4. A small part of a play which happens in one place means a /an
 a. activist b. chapter c. act d. scene
5. When his car broke down, he walk a long distance looking for a mechanic.
 a. had to b. needn't have c. didn't have to d. has to
6. No girl is Nourhan in the class.
 a. the fastest b. faster than c. as faster d. faster as
7. I think the English exam easy this year.
 a. is going to be b. is c. is being d. will be
8. "What when you were seven?" My teacher said to me.
 a. could you do b. you could do c. you can do d. can you do
9. **Mother:** You to tidy your bedroom. I tidied it for you.
 Son : Thank you, mum.
 a. must b. needn't c. don't have d. have to
10. if your car had broken down in the high way?
 a. What you would have done b. What would you have done
 c. What have you would done d. What would have you done
11. It seemed the teacher was tired during the lecture.
 a. as b. such c. though d. like

12. He got marks in this exam, so he was very happy.
a. the best b. the worst c. worse than d. the better

13. It's clear that COVID 19 bad effects on all the countries around the world.
a. needs b. has c. gives d. takes

14. When you invent a password for a safe or a mobile, it should consist of special as numbers, symbols or letters.
a. acts b. scenes c. events d. characters

15. The detective asked the boy to the people who kidnapped his sister.
a. arrest b. describe c. forget d. inspire

16. A / An means official name of a job.
a. attendant b. address c. nickname d. title

17. At libraries, people speak quietly.
a. must b. don't have to c. need d. needn't

18. I have enough time, I'll visit you.
a. Unless b. Should c. Had d. Were

19. Jana's training course at five tomorrow.
a. starts b. is starting c. will start d. is going to start

20. It seemed me as if the head teacher wouldn't accept my apology.
a. by b. of c. off d. to

Part 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Most people worry about forgetting things as they get older. But do you know that we have different kinds of memory? What most people think of as memory is, in fact, five different **categories** of memory. Remembering things from the past depends on two categories of memory, remote and recent memory. If you can't remember things about your last birthday, you are having a problem with your remote memory. If you can't remember what you ate for lunch yesterday, that is a problem with your recent memory.

When we take a test, we need to draw on our semantic memories. That is the sum of our acquired knowledge. Or maybe we want to remember to do or use something in the future. Here we use our immediate and prospective memories. Many people think that developing a bad memory is inevitable as we get older, but this is actually not correct. Of our five kinds of memory, immediate, remote, and prospective do not degrade with age.

To have good memories, we need to do some activities like learning new things or even doing crossword puzzles. Regular physical activity is useful to have a better blood supply to the brain. The only thing to avoid is stress. When we are stressed, our bodies release a hormone called cortisol, which is harmful to our brain cells and our memories. Reducing stress through meditation, exercise, or other activities can help to preserve our mental abilities.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. Which category of memory would you use to remember where your car keys are?
 a. Recent memory. b. Immediate memory.
 c. Remote memory. d. Semantic memory.
22. The synonym of the underlined word **"categories"** is
 a. events b. facts c. hormones d. kinds
23. The main topic of this passage is
 a. Types of human memory b. Functions of brain chemicals
 c. Tricks for remembering things d. How to stay active and healthy
24. Which of the following would positively affect your memory?
 a. Watching TV b. Producing cortisol c. Stretching d. Working a lot
25. We need to do some activities like doing crossword puzzles to have good
 a. hearts b. brains c. memories d. technologies
26. Remembering things from the past depends on and recent memory.
 a. near b. distant c. immediate d. late
27. Regular activity helps to have a better blood supply to the brain.
 a. medical b. technological c. mental d. physical
28. Cortisol is a/an which harms our brain cells and our memories.
 a. exercise b. enzyme c. hormone d. cell

Part 3

29. **Translate into Arabic :**

People are liked or disliked for their deeds and behaviour, some are honest and efficient, so they are respected and loved by all. Others are dishonest and selfish, so they are hated.

.....

.....

30. **Translate into English :**

لا يأتـى النجـاح صدفـة أو بالحـظ وبدون بذل مجهود . لكنه يأتى نتيجة لمجهـود وصبر وتخطيط جيد وتحديد واضح للهدف المراد تحقيقه وتعاون فريق العمل.

.....

.....

31. **Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :**

Do you think that writers play an important role in our modern life? Who are favourite writers or novelists and why?

.....

.....

Model Tests

Model Test 2

Part 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. One of the most important tasks for a farmer is to livestock.
 a. kill b. keep c. find d. rise
2. People should their parents when they become old.
 a. avoid b. look after c. look for d. take part in
3. My mother's cake is very delicious. The synonym of the word "delicious" is
 a. tasteless b. tasty c. painless d. crazy
4. Despite its danger effects which are the main reason for the global warming phenomenon, some countries cutting down trees.
 a. bring b. neglect c. avoid d. keep
5. Being is a bad quality of this player.
 a. cruel b. kind c. cheerful d. tolerant
6. A / An is a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre.
 a. incident b. play c. story d. action
7. No girl is more brilliant than Eman. This means that
 a. Eman is the more brilliant girl b. All girls are as brilliant as Eman
 c. Many girls are more brilliant than Eman d. Eman is the most brilliant girl
8. Adham asked me I had enough money to buy that mobile.
 a. to b. not to c. if d. that
9. Look out! You your mobile in water.
 a. are going to drop b. will drop
 c. drop d. will have dropped
10. He didn't mean to hit your car. This means that
 a. he intended to hit it b. he didn't intend to hit it
 c. he didn't hit it d. he doesn't intend to hit it
11. It is healthy to drink much water in hot and sunny days. You do it.
 a. have to b. should c. shouldn't d. don't have to

12. If it hadn't been for the bad weather, they'd have..... early.
a. reaching b. to reached c. been reaching d. reached

13. The repairs tomorrow. It's arranged.
a. are doing b. will do
c. are being done d. are going to do

14. The more you exercise, ... you are.
a. the fatter b. the fattest c. the fitter d. the fittest

15. Do you think your reasons to fight with your colleague are..... ?
a. sociable b. social c. logical d. traditional

16. This winter is severe, so you must be careful. The antonym of the word "severe" here is
a. difficult b. harmful c. painful d. gentle

17. If you want to any noise, go out of here now. I want to read a novel.
a. make b. save c. have d. speak

18. The money, property, etc. that you receive from someone after they died means
a. intelligence b. violence c. inheritance d. confidence

19. Security rules or you will be fined.
a. have to be following b. needn't be followed
c. have to be followed d. shouldn't be followed

20. Oliver Twist is one of interesting novel I've ever read.
a. the more b. the most c. more d. most

Part 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Would you believe that your diet can make a big difference in keeping a youthful appearance? According to a scientific theory, our bodies start aging because of oxidation. This is caused by certain oxygen-containing molecules in our cells, called free radicals.

Free radicals have the capability to attach to and damage parts of our cells, including our DNA. Our bodies have the ability to repair this damage. However, as we get older, these repair mechanisms start to break down, resulting in signs of aging, such as wrinkles. Free radicals are actually produced by our bodies, but their numbers can also increase because of the food we eat. So, we should avoid eating foods that produce more free radicals and eat foods that contain vitamins which help produce molecules called antioxidants that reduce the production of free radicals.

Common antioxidants, like vitamins A and E, can be found in many dark-colored vegetables as carrots, seaweed, spinach, and broccoli. Also, Fruits like apricots and peaches. These nutrients strengthen your skin and make it soft. Also you can eat cow's liver which contains a lot of vitamin A.

Green tea has also been tentatively added to the list of youth promoting substances although we still don't know much about it. It is said that green tea's antioxidant properties can repair cell damage already sustained as well as prevent damage in the future. In fact, green tea works even better if you apply it directly to your skin as an ingredient in facial cream.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. To keep healthy and have a youthful appearance, we should
 a. avoid eating vegetables and fruits
 b. eat dark vegetables only all the time
 c. eat food which contain more free radicals
 d. avoid eating foods with more free radicals
22. What kinds of vegetables contain a lot of vitamin A?
 a. Tasty vegetables. b. Dark vegetables. c. Green ones. d. All of them.
23. What is the main idea of the passage?
 a. Our bodies old-aged. b. Carrots are good for us.
 c. Food affects aging. d. We should use facial cream.
24. Which of the following can summarise the third paragraph?
 a. Which foods can contain vitamins A and E?
 b. When can we eat vitamin A and E?
 c. How can our bodies produce vitamins A and E?
 d. How can we waste vitamins A and E?
25. Green tea works better as a/an in facial cream if you apply it directly to your skin.
 a. recipe b. ingredient c. containing d. container
26. reduce the production of free radicals.
 a. Oxidants b. Antioxidants c. Nutrients d. Fruits
27. According to science, our bodies start because of oxidation.
 a. aging b. death c. damage d. vitamins
28. The cow's contains a lot of vitamin A.
 a. seaweed b. kidney c. heart d. liver

Part 3

29. **Translate into Arabic :**

Population problem doesn't mean the same for all the countries, some countries suffer from overpopulation. However, other countries suffer from lack of population and encourage immigration to them.

.....

.....

30. **Translate into English :**

لـم يعـد التعليـم معتمدًا علـى الطرق التقليدية للتعلم مثل الحفـظ ، ولم يعد المدرس المصدر الوحيـد فى الفصل. بل أصبح الطالب مطالبًا بالبحث والمعلم ميسر.

.....

.....

31. **Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic :**

Modern technology affects our behaviour and life.
How do you think it does ? How can we adapt to this ?

.....

Model Tests

Model Test 3

Part 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you say something by mistake, you'd better apologise at once.
 a. kind b. rude c. polite d. well
2. I trust him because he is
 a. guilty b. rude c. wise d. mad
3. One of my favourite hobbies is to online.
 a. score b. match c. goal d. game
4. Good people are always friendly other people.
 a. at b. for c. with d. against
5. The new team leader chose his men according to their to him.
 a. cruelty b. loyalty c. possibility d. dishonesty
6. A fully grown person who is legally responsible for their actions means a /an
 a. child b. toddler c. adult d. infant
7. I asked him what have a new identification card.
 a. do I have to do to b. I have to do to
 c. have I do to do d. I do have to
8. Mohamed Salah is Egypt's player nowadays.
 a. best b. the best c. better d. the better
9. I will watch a film at the cinema tonight. It at nine o'clock.
 a. will start b. is going to start c. is starting d. starts
10. The criminal threatened the old woman him all her money or he'll kill her.
 a. to giving b. to give c. give d. giving
11. You have a long school day tomorrow, so you stay up late.
 a. have to b. needn't to c. mustn't d. should
12. If you late again, you won't be allowed to attend the lecture.
 a. come b. came c. had come d. coming

13. There some boys playing in my garden yesterday.
a. seemed to be b. seemed to being c. seeming to be d. seem to being

14. Hany and Hala are twins. Hany is as Hala.
a. as older b. older as c. as old d. old as

15. Do you know a word that the opposite meaning of "hospitality"?
a. sends b. forgives c. takes d. gives

16. Thanks to modern technology, you can do many things at the touch a button.
a. of b. by c. about d. for

17. You must away all your bad ideas towards him. He is an honest man.
a. give b. escape c. run d. get

18. To use violence to try to hurt or kill someone means to
a. attach b. adapt c. attract d. attack

19. It's not allowed to smoke at hospitals. We smoke.
a. have to b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. ought to

20. This quiz is the most difficult quiz this term. This means that
a. No quiz is more easier than this quiz
b. This quiz isn't as difficult as any other quizzes
c. No quiz is as easy as this quiz
d. This is quiz is less difficult than any other quizzes

Part 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Are you preparing for a big test? If so, you may want to go and play some basketball between hitting the books. Researchers see an apparent connection between exercise and brain development. According to Judy Cameron, a researcher at Oregon Health and Science University, it seems that exercise can make blood vessels, including those in the brain, stronger and more fully developed. Cameron claims this allows people who exercise to concentrate better.

The effects of exercise on brain development can even be seen in babies. Babies who do things that require a lot of movement and physical activity show greater brain development than babies who are less physically active. Margaret Barnes, a pediatrician, believes in the importance of exercise. She thinks that many learning disabilities children have in elementary school or high school can be traced back to a lack of movement as babies. "Babies need movement that stimulates and connects

their five senses," says Barnes. In this way, as they get older, children will begin to associate physical activity with higher learning."

The benefits of exercise on the brain are not just for babies. Older people can beef up their brains by working out as well. Researchers at Cornell University studied a group of seniors ranging in age from seventy to seventy-nine. Their study showed a short-term memory increase of up to forty percent after exercising just three hours a week. The exercise does not have to be very difficult, but it has to increase the heart rate.

Also, just like the **motion** for infants, exercise for older people should involve some complexity. Learning some new skills or motions, such as with yoga or tai-chi, helps open up memory paths in the brain that may not have been used for a long time. The main goal is to increase the brain's flow of blood. Your brain can benefit from as little as two to three hours of exercise a week.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. Why is yoga recommended for seniors?
 a. It is easy on joints.
 b. It does not increase the heart rate.
 c. It can be done in groups.
 d. It includes learning new motions.
22. Which of the following sentences can summarize the passage?
 a. Exercise helps our brains.
 b. We should exercise individually.
 c. We should pass our tests.
 d. Our brains change our exercise.
23. What type of patient does a pediatrician probably treat?
 a. Poor people
 b. Children
 c. Animals
 d. Old people
24. According to the passage, what is the connection between exercise and brain development?
 a. Exercise makes us less intelligent.
 b. The brain needs special mental exercise.
 c. The more exercise, the bigger the brain.
 d. Physical exercise helps think better.
25. According to the passage, people who exercise better.
 a. concentrate b. eat c. drive d. sleep
26. The word **"motion"** can be replaced by
 a. complexity b. movement c. exercise d. flexibility

27. Margaret Barnes says babies need movement that and connects their five senses.

a. thinks b. disconnects c. motivates d. moves

28. Babies who show greater brain development a lot.

a. stay b. move c. drive d. ride

Part 3

29. **Translate into Arabic :**

Personal hobbies are vital for the health and time of individuals in modern societies. Hobbies help them satisfy their desires and get rid of the pressures of heavy work.

.....

.....

30. **Translate into English :**

قدمت المرأة المصرية العديد من النماذج الرائعة على مدار التاريخ فى كثيرًا من المجالات، فنجد لطفية النادى كأول امرأة تلتحق بمدرسة الطيران ونبوية موسى كأول ناظرة لمدرسة مصرية.

.....

.....

31. **Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :**

Do you think that scientific research is a waste of money and time?

.....